Library Of
Vasco M. Tanner
Fairview
Utah
NO. 108
GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR
From a bust in the British Museum
Caesar's Gallic War

With Introduction, Notes, Vocabulary and Grammatical Appendix

By

Arthur Tappan Walker, Ph.D.
Professor of Latin in the University of Kansas

A Revision of the Edition by C. M. Lowe, Ph.D., and J. T. Ewing, M.A.

Chicago—New York
Scott, Foresman and Company
In its general plan the present edition of Caesar is based on that of Lowe and Ewing, first published in 1891. It retains the features which gave distinction to that book, the most important of which are thus described in its preface:

"The vocabularies, notes, illustrations, and explanatory matter have been placed on the same page with the text, thus saving the student's time, which is uselessly spent in turning leaves and searching for explanations which are here placed immediately before him. At the same time, self-reliance is secured by the use of a separate text in the classroom, without either notes or vocabulary. The special vocabularies have been arranged so that the first four books and the rest of the annotated text may be read consecutively, or the war with Ariovistus (Bk. I, chaps. 30-54) may be omitted and the valuable and less familiar, matter substituted from the annotated chapters of Bks. V-VII. An opportunity for sight reading is afforded in the unannotated parts of these latter books."

While the general plan of the earlier edition has been followed, in all details the book has been rewritten from beginning to end. In its preparation three definite purposes have been kept steadily in mind:

1. To help the pupil to follow the narrative understandingly.
2. To give the pupil, especially at the beginning of his reading, a systematic drill on all the common syntactical principles.
3. To exclude all bits of antiquarian and grammatical lore which, however valuable in themselves, have no direct bearing on an appreciation of Caesar's language or story.

The Study of Caesar's Narrative. It is surely a pedagogical mistake to let a pupil carry away from the study of Caesar nothing but a memory of ablatives absolute and indirect discourse. These things he must learn as a preparation for further reading, it is true, and the language must be his chief study; but there is danger that
a year of grammar only will not tempt him to the further reading for which he has been preparing. Caesar tells an interesting story and tells it well. The universal testimony of the ages to the greatness of his writing is not founded on a universal love for grammar. The interest in finding out what Caesar did should serve as an incentive to solve his sentences. Moreover, a neglect of Caesar's thought is wrong on principle. The habit of careful attention to the subject-matter is the one thing best worth cultivating, whether one reads English or a foreign language; and this should not be forgotten in teaching Caesar.

Therefore as much as possible has been done in the notes and maps to assist in an understanding of the narrative, without introducing any discussion of disputed points. Every effort has been made to adopt the most reasonable theory for each campaign, and to make every note, plan, and map consistent with that theory.

The pupil's progress through the story must be slow, and, however well he understands each move in Caesar's game, he will have difficulty in grasping the whole. It is hoped that the campaign maps may lessen this difficulty by putting before the eyes the total results of the campaigns. In each map the route is laid out on a map of all Gaul, because only in this way can the relation of any one campaign to the whole of Caesar's task be kept constantly before the mind. The system of coloring shows the condition of Gaul at the end of each campaign,—how much had been reduced by fighting, how much had yielded without fighting, and how much was yet untouched. A comparison of any two maps will show the results of the intervening operations.

**System in Grammar References.** An attempt has been made to facilitate and even insure, early in the study of Caesar, a systematic drill on the more important case and mode constructions. In the notes on Book I, 1-29, it is believed that references are given for all the most common constructions. In general, the cases are emphasized during the earlier chapters, and the modes during the later. To each construction reference is made three times, two
sets of references being given close together, that they may reinforce each other, and the third after a few chapters, that the point may be clinched by review. And these references are made not only to the grammatical Appendix given in this book, but also to five leading grammars.

In Book II the same references are given, as nearly as possible in the same order; but the references for each chapter are grouped together after the notes of that chapter. In this way opportunities for the same grammatical drill are afforded, whether the class begins with Book I or Book II; but, if the class begins with Book I, these references in Book II may be omitted as unnecessary.

With such a system it is natural and right to postpone to later chapters or books the consideration of certain constructions. Thus, conditions and the details of indirect discourse are postponed to Book I, 30–54, tenses to Book III. If the teacher does not like the order of presentation he can easily supply needed references; but if he will insist on the study of the references as they come in the notes, it is believed that he will find the necessary ground covered thoroughly and systematically.

Exclusion of Non-essentials. Many things are known or are guessed about ancient military science which in no way help the pupil to understand Caesar. Many facts and theories of grammar are suggested by Caesar's language which the pupil might find useful at some later day, but which help him neither in translating Caesar nor in writing the Latin composition which should accompany the reading. An honest attempt has been made to give what is helpful and to exclude the useless lumber, though it is not hoped, much less expected, that all teachers would draw the line where the editor has drawn it.

Beginning with Book II. The most dreaded portions of Caesar are his indirect discourse. and unfortunately the majority of the speeches are found in the first book. Though the fear of indirect discourse is largely traditional, and though the construction is not really difficult for one who is properly grounded in the essentials of Latin, yet it is clearly a misfortune that the pupil should en-
counter its full difficulties at a time when the ordinary narrative gives him trouble enough. Moreover, it is questionable whether it is worth while to drill the pupil on all details of the construction, since he will see very little indirect discourse elsewhere in his preparatory course. For these reasons many teachers seek to make the pupil's path easier by reading the second book before the first, or by omitting chapters 30-54 of the first book, in which chapters the construction chiefly abounds. In preparing this edition everything possible has been done to make feasible either of these plans, without throwing any obstacles in the way of a consecutive reading from the first. But the editor feels strongly that Book I, 1-29 should be read first. The latter part of the book may well be omitted entirely, and one or more of the very interesting annotated portions of the last three books may be substituted for it.

No editor of Caesar can escape a debt of gratitude to Mr. T. Rice Holmes for having discussed with such impartiality and thoroughness the geographical and military questions of the Gallic War. *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, by Mr. Holmes, should be in the hands of every teacher of Caesar. Though the present editor has found it impossible to agree with all its conclusions, the book is so fair in its discussions that he is under equal obligations whether he agrees or disagrees with the author.

The text of the Lowe and Ewing edition was Kraner's. In the present edition Meusel's readings have been substituted for the most part, but not completely. The quantities are marked in accordance with the revised edition of Lane's Grammar. A few doubtful words were submitted to the decision of Professor Hanns Oertel, of Yale University, who prepared the chapter on Sound in that Grammar. For his ready assistance, thanks are due.

It would be impossible to mention by name all who have assisted the editor by suggestion and in various ways. The labor of preparing the Vocabulary was largely performed by Mr. Earl W. Murray, a former graduate student, now Assistant Professor in the University of Kansas. Mr. Murray also prepared the first draft of the systematized references for Book I, 1-29, and Book II. For the
preparation of the Index the editor is indebted to Miss Martha Whitney. Professor Charles Knapp, of Columbia University, gave the early part of the book the benefit of a most searching and helpful criticism. From beginning to end the editor has been under deep obligations to the editors-in-chief of the series.

Arthur Tappan Walker.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preface</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Maps and Illustrations</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I. The Importance of the Gallic Campaigns</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Life of Caesar</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. Chronological Table</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. Caesar as General</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. Caesar as Author</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. The Gauls</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII. Caesar's Army</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Brief Bibliography</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Abbreviations</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book I, 1-29</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book I, 30-54</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book II</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book III</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book IV</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book V</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book VI</td>
<td>329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book VII</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Direct Form of the Indirect Discourse in Books I and II</td>
<td>412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammatical Appendix</td>
<td>423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocabulary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General Map of Gaul</td>
<td>Front Cover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caesar (Bust in British Museum)</td>
<td>Frontispiece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pila</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gladius and Vagina</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman Soldiers</td>
<td>Facing 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan of a Roman Camp</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camp on the Axona</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vallum and Fossa</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman Officers and Gauls</td>
<td>Facing 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gallic Wall</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storming a City</td>
<td>Facing 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agger</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plutei</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muscul's</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vinea</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catapulta</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prow of Galley</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for Book I, 1-29</td>
<td>Facing 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fortifications on the Rhone</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battle with the Helvetii, first stage</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battle with the Helvetii, second stage</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for Book I, 30-54</td>
<td>Facing 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battle with Ariovistus</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for Book II</td>
<td>Facing 162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battle on the Axona</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battle on the Sabis</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Town of the Atuatuci</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for Book III</td>
<td>Facing 217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galba’s Camp</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operations against the Veneti</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for Book IV</td>
<td>Facing 254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caesar's Bridge</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pile-driver</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Invasion of Britain</td>
<td>294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caesar's Geography</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caesar's Lines around Alesia</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details of Fortifications around Alesia</td>
<td>396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stimulus</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTRODUCTION

I. The Importance of the Gallic Campaigns

The Commentaries on the Gallic War are Caesar's own story of how he conquered the peoples living in what is now France and some of the lands bordering on France. He has told his story simply and directly. It was his genius that made the conquest possible, and the story could not be true without making this evident; but he has spoken of himself as if the writer and the general were different men, and there is no boasting. He has not explained to us the great importance of the war to the Roman state; there is no suggestion of its importance to his personal career; much less has he hinted at his own importance in the history of Rome and the world. These things must be learned from a study of history, not from Caesar's story.

Effect on Rome. Rome was the governing nation of ancient times. In Caesar's time she had conquered the other nations which touched the Mediterranean, and was governing most of them as provinces; that is, she sent Roman governors to them and collected taxes from them. In this way she governed a comparatively narrow strip of land in southern Gaul; and as this was the particular province which Caesar was sent to govern, he calls it simply "the Province," Pròvincia (see map). This province was only partially protected by mountains and rivers from the semicivilized and warlike Gauls on the north; and for this reason it could never be sure of peace and safety until the rest of Gaul was conquered. Moreover, the land on the north was productive and well worth having.
Therefore Caesar’s conquest of Gaul was justified, from a Roman point of view, both by the value of the land and by the necessity of protecting the Province.

3 **Effect on Gaul.** But there was a better reason for that conquest. Though the Gauls were brave they were no match for the less civilized Germans, who lived across the Rhine. Just at the time when Caesar took command of his province the Germans had begun crossing the Rhine in great numbers and were driving the Gauls out of their homes. If this movement had not been checked, the homeless Gauls would have been driven to attack Roman territory; and if the Gauls had been exterminated between the Germans and the Romans, then the Romans would have found the Germans still more dangerous neighbors than the Gauls. For the Gauls themselves, too, it was far better to be conquered by the civilized Romans than by the uncivilized Germans. The one means of safety for both Gauls and Romans was that the Romans should govern all the country west of the Rhine and should hold the Germans at bay on the other side of that great river. This was the result of Caesar’s conquest of Gaul; and this result is the great justification of his bloody warfare there.

4 **Effect on Caesar.** In their effect on Caesar’s own career the Gallic campaigns were all-important, and his career changed the course of history. In Gaul he gained military experience and the devotion of his army. By the aid of that army he overthrew a constitution under which the Roman state was going to ruin, and laid the foundations of an empire which lived for centuries. No doubt he did this from selfish and ambitious motives; but his ambition was so great that it could never have been satisfied until he had brought the empire he ruled to the highest possible degree of excellence, and his genius was so great that he saw the needful measures and the means to carry them out. The daggers of his assassins gave him too short a time to complete his work; but he did enough to prove himself the greatest man in Roman history.
II. Life of Caesar

Early Years, and Choice of Party. Gaius Julius Caesar was born in the year 102, B.C., on the 12th day of the month which was then called Quintilis, but which we now, in his honor, call July. Tradition traced the descent of the Julian family back beyond the foundation of Rome, and even to the goddess Venus as its remote ancestor Caesar, therefore, belonged to the Roman nobility, and in the continuous strife between the Senatorial, or Aristocratic, and the Democratic parties, might have been expected to side with the aristocrats. But none of his own family had been very conspicuous in the state, and his aunt had married Marius, the greatest leader of the Democratic party, the great general who had saved Rome by his victories over the Cimbri and Teutoni. It was natural that his ambition should be fired by his uncle's career, and that his sympathies should incline toward the Democratic party. When he was only fifteen Marius made him priest of Jupiter, an office of some honor and few duties; and in 83, after the death of Marius, he deliberately identified himself with the Democratic party by marrying Cornelia, the daughter of the new leader of that party, Cinna.

Overthrow of Caesar's Party. But the power of the Democratic party was almost at an end. In 83 Sulla, the leader of the Aristocratic party, returned to Italy with his victorious army, after fighting for several years against Mithradates, in the East. A bloody contest drove the Democrats from power; and in 82 the victor, determined to make a revival of that party impossible, slaughtered its eminent men and so changed the constitution of the state that the Senate was in full control. The young Caesar, as nephew of Marius and son-in-law of Cinna, was too conspicuous to be overlooked. Sulla ordered him to divorce Cornelia. Caesar refused, and had to flee for his life until influential friends persuaded Sulla to

1 Or perhaps in the year 100 B.C.
pardon him. Sulla's grudging consent is said to have been coupled with the warning that Caesar would prove as dangerous as many Mariuses.

7 Weakness of Opposite Party. But the form of government set up by Sulla did not stand long, and the years which followed his death made more and more clear the need of some strong man who should give order and stability to the state. During those same years Caesar was testing and developing the powers which were to make him the man to do this work.

8 Revival of Caesar's Party. When Sulla died, in 78, the Senate was in complete control: the Democratic party had neither a leader nor any chance to use its strength. Gradually the Senate lost this control, until, in 70, under the consuls Pompey and Crassus, the changes made by Sulla were completely done away with and the Democratic party again had an opportunity, if it could but find a leader. For a time Pompey seemed likely to be this leader. In 66 the people, contrary to the wishes of the Senatorial party, elected him general to serve against Mithradates. This gave him supreme control in Asia Minor, but kept him out of Rome for the next four years.

9 Development of Caesar's Powers. During all this time Caesar was developing his powers of leadership. He got a taste of military service in Asia Minor, and at twenty-two he won the civic crown of oak leaves for saving the life of a fellow citizen in battle; but as yet he seems to have had no thought of gaining distinction as general. A born politician, he loved the game of politics for its own sake as well as for its rewards. An excellent orator, both by nature and by training, he used his oratorical powers in furthering the plans of his party. He made friends easily, and his influence over them was strong. Therefore, before he was old enough to take office he was a great favorite with the people and a much sought for ally in political scheming; and at the earliest age permitted by law he was elected without difficulty to the offices of Quaestor (for 62), Aedile (for 65), and Praetor (for 62). The greatest test
of his popularity came in 63, when the office of Pontifex Maximus fell vacant and Caesar was elected to this most honorable position over the strongest candidate the Senatorial party could put forward.

**Caesar's First Military Command.** But in spite of his ability and popularity, in the year 63 Caesar was thought of as only a shrewd politician. Rome looked upon Pompey as her greatest man, because he was her greatest general; and Caesar knew that if he should come into conflict with Pompey his shrewdness could never prove a match for Pompey's army and generalship. Caesar felt that he too must be a general, but he did not know whether he could be; for he had never had an opportunity to try his powers. The opportunity offered itself in 61, when he was sent to govern a part of Spain. There he fought with great success against some of the native tribes. His victories were not very important in themselves, and they attracted no great attention in Rome; but they showed Caesar what he could do and made him anxious for a larger field of operations.

**Caesar's Consulship.** Caesar now wanted the consulship, the highest office in the state: if he got it he intended to carry through some measures which would be opposed by the Senatorial party. He therefore needed strong friends. Pompey had returned in triumph from the war with Mithradates, but the Senate had refused to grant some reasonable requests which he had made of it. Crassus too had a grievance against the Senate. With these two men Caesar made a secret agreement that each should further the interests of the others; and thus Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus formed what is known in history as the First Triumvirate, a mere personal agreement, with no public sanction. The influence of Pompey and Crassus helped in securing Caesar's election to the consulship for the year 59, and also assisted him, when consul, in passing measures which were for the advantage of each of the three allies. For himself Caesar took a five-year term of office as governor of Cisal-
pine Gaul (the northern part of Italy), Illyricum (north and east of the Adriatic Sea), and Transalpine Gaul (then including only the southern part of France). To protect these provinces he was given an army of four legions.

12 Caesar's Command in Gaul. In 58, therefore, Caesar entered upon his command. Partly because it was best for the province and the state (cf. 2 and 3), and partly because he needed the training and the reputation of a general (cf. 10), he determined to conquer all the rest of Gaul. How he did this he tells us himself in the Commentaries; and a brief summary prefixed to each book in this edition makes it unnecessary to tell the story here. Since he found the five years originally given him too short for the full accomplishment of his purpose, he secured an additional five years. By the year 50 the last trace of resistance to Roman authority had been crushed, and Caesar's great task was completed. Moreover, he now had a perfectly disciplined, veteran army, enthusiastically devoted to its leader.

13 Outbreak of Civil War. It was high time that Caesar should have his hands free, for a greater task lay before him. For several years Pompey and Crassus had looked out for his interests in Rome. But in 53 Crassus was killed in battle; and at about the same time Pompey began to feel jealous of Caesar's success and fearful of his power. He gradually turned away from Caesar and attached himself to the Senatorial party, which had always hated Caesar. On the first day of the year 49 the Senate voted that Caesar should lay down his command and return to Rome as a private citizen, though the time for which the command had been given him had not yet expired. Caesar was then in Cisalpine Gaul, and his reply was an immediate march toward Rome.

14 Weakness of the Constitutional Government. But during Caesar's absence from Rome the complete failure of the constitutional form of government had shown that the so-called republic could not exist much longer. Trials and elections were decided by bribery and bloodshed. The governing party
had been so weak that for one entire year a succession of riots had prevented the holding of elections. Now when it was attacked by Caesar it again showed its weakness. Although it had taken steps which were sure to bring on civil war it had done nothing to prepare for that war, except to appoint Pompey its commander-in-chief. In about two months from the time when Caesar marched into northern Italy, Pompey set sail from southern Italy with his army and most of the Senate, leaving Rome and Italy in Caesar’s hands.

Civil War Makes Caesar Master of Rome. But the hardest fighting of his life lay before Caesar. Pompey had crossed the Adriatic only to gain time for preparation. Besides, while Pompey’s strong army lay on the east of Italy, there was another large army of Caesar’s enemies in Spain, on the west. But Caesar’s magnificent army and wonderful generalship carried him through all difficulties. In 49 he marched to Spain and defeated his enemies there. In 48 he followed Pompey across the Adriatic and utterly routed his army in the great battle of Pharsalus. Pompey himself fled to Egypt and was assassinated by order of the counselors of the Egyptian king. Caesar followed him to Egypt with an insufficient force and was blockaded for several months in the city of Alexandria by the Egyptian army. Meanwhile the remnants of Pompey’s army made their way to the northern coast of Africa, and a new army was there organized to oppose Caesar. In 46 Caesar defeated this army too, at Thapsus, so decisively that he is said to have lost but fifty men while fifty thousand of the enemy fell. Then the sons of Pompey rallied the last opponents of Caesar, in Spain, for a final struggle, and Caesar’s victory at Munda in 45 made him the undisputed master of the Roman world.

Caesar as Statesman. Caesar was no mere soldier, and it was from no choice of his own that he spent all these years in fighting. He became a general because that was the only way to achieve his purpose of becoming sole ruler of Rome. But that purpose was not prompted wholly by personal ambition.
He had begun as a politician and had matured into a great statesman. There had been many abuses in the state, and the civil war had brought in confusion as well. With characteristic energy and clear-sightedness he set himself to bring order out of chaos, to organize the whole empire, and to improve its details. To carry out this work he needed the best men in the state, regardless of party: hence he pardoned those who had fought against him and gave some of them positions of high honor and great responsibility. He reformed the calendar. He took measures to remedy the financial disorders of the country. He planned a codification of the laws. He intended to carry out some great engineering feats, among others the cutting of a canal through the isthmus of Corinth. In order to protect the frontiers of the empire he planned military expeditions against the Parthians and the nations along the Danube.

17 Assassination of Caesar. Such enormous plans needed time for their execution, and time was denied to Caesar. A form of government which had stood for centuries could not be overthrown without grieving some true lovers of their country. One man could not make himself the master of all others, who had previously been his equals, without arousing jealousy. One man could not select the men to fill all offices without disappointing many. Men of all these classes, patriots, would-be rivals, and disappointed office seekers, joined in a conspiracy, and on the fifteenth of March, 44 B.C., Caesar fell beneath their daggers while presiding over a meeting of the Senate. The history of the following years shows the folly of this murder. For themselves the assassins reaped only death, since in a very few years every one whose fate is known had died by violence. For the state the deed was equally disastrous, since the assassination of Caesar merely caused a bloody civil war to intervene between his rule and that of Augustus.
## III. CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B.C.</th>
<th>Caesar’s Age</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Marius defeats the Cimbri.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Marius appoints Caesar Priest of Jupiter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>Death of Marius. Cinna is Dictator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>Caesar marries Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, the Dictator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Sulla becomes perpetual Dictator. He proscribes and pardons Caesar. Caesar leaves Rome for the East.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>Caesar wins the civic crown at Mytilene.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>Sulla dies. Caesar returns to Rome.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>Caesar sails to Rhodes to study under Molo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>Caesar is elected Military Tribune and Pontifex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>Consulship of Pompey and Crassus. The Sullan constitution is overthrown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>Caesar is Quaestor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>Caesar is Curule Aedile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>Caesar is elected Praetor and Pontifex Maximus. Cicero is Consul.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Conspiracy of Catiline exposed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Caesar is Praetor. Pompey returns from the East.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>Caesar is Propraetor in Farther Spain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>Caesar is elected Consul. “First Triumvirate” is formed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>Caesar is Consul. He marries Calpurnia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>Caesar becomes Proconsul of Gaul. Campaigns against the Helvetii and Ariovistus. Cicero is exiled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>Caesar conquers the Belgae. Recall of Cicero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>Caesar’s campaign in Brittany.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>Caesar invades Britain and Germany. Pompey and Crassus are joint Consuls for the second time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>Caesar invades Britain a second time. Death of Julia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>The northeastern Gauls rebel. Crassus is slain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>General revolt of the Gauls. Alienation of Pompey.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>Caesar completes the conquest of Gaul.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>The quarrel between Caesar and the Senate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>Civil War. Caesar is made Dictator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>Caesar defeats Pompey at Pharsalus. Pompey is killed in Egypt. The “Alexandrian War.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>Caesar, again Dictator, reorganizes the government.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>The “African War.” The Pompeians defeated at Thapsus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>The “Spanish War.” Battle of Munda.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>Caesar Dictator for life. Assassinated March 15th.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
19 The Commentaries present Caesar to our view as a military leader of the first rank, and yet he had reached middle life before he held an independent command. During his youth, when the fascinations of "war's wild trade" may have attracted him, all the channels to military preferment were closed to him on account of his connection with the Marian party. When he finally turned his attention to war, he brought the calm calculation of the man of affairs seeking to accomplish certain desirable ends through its agency. Neither the charm nor the traditions of camp and field life held sway over his mind. Love of military glory alone never lured him on, nor was the sweep of his genius hampered by the shackles of an exclusively military training.

20 Characteristics as General. The Commentaries reveal his method. He clearly conceived the object desired and took the most direct way possible to reach it. When it best suited his purpose he was deliberate and cautious, watching for the best opportunity to strike a crushing blow. Yet in an emergency he would coolly carry out the most daring plans, so that he sometimes appears even reckless; but this apparent recklessness was the result of swift and unerring decision, based on a keen insight into the character and probable action of his opponents. He always took the offensive and endeavored to concentrate his force and strike the enemy unexpectedly. He made up by quickness of movement for his lack of numbers. In battle he was cool and confident. He was devoid of fear, and when necessary fought in the foremost ranks. If the enemy fled he pursued him vigorously with his cavalry, slaughtering without mercy as long as a man was to be reached. He was sometimes cruel from policy, though naturally clement.

21 Power over his Men. Caesar won the entire devotion of his army, and this was one of the secrets of his success. He was careful of the comfort and lives of his men. He saw
to it that they had an abundance of supplies. He cautioned
them against unnecessary risk in battle, and sometimes refused
to allow them to fight in dangerous places even when they
wished to do so. He ruled by tact rather than by fear. He gen-
erously rewarded their valor and fidelity, and knew how to rouse
them on occasion to the highest pitch of enthusiasm. But
such statements only partially account for his ascendancy over
their minds. He possessed in the fullest measure that
combination of natural qualities which makes a man a born
leader. Therefore his army was the obedient instrument
of his will and endured unexampled hardships without a
murmur.

V. CAESAR AS AUTHOR

Caesar's genius was many-sided, and he might have been no
less eminent as an orator and an author than as a statesman
and a general, if he had chosen those fields of activity for
their own sake. Even as it was, though he spoke and wrote
mainly for political effect, he was recognized by his contempo-
raries as an orator second only to Cicero, and the simplicity,
clearness, and terseness of his Commentaries have made them a
classic from his day to our own. In the purity of their
Latinity they rank with Cicero's works as the best that have
come down to us. The interest of the narrative and the
quality of the generalship shown in it have made the book a
favorite with some of the world's greatest generals. The
great Napoleon, for example, recommended it to his officers
and himself wrote an abstract of it.

Purpose in Writing the Commentaries on the Gallic War. Yet the book was written hastily, probably in the winter of
52-51, after the events narrated in Book VII; and it was
written for a political purpose. Absent from Rome and
deprived of his two chief supporters by the death of Crassus
and the alienation of Pompey, Caesar wished to put himself in
a good light before the Roman people. With such a purpose
he might have been expected to misstate some facts; and there have been many attempts to show that he did so. But a fair examination of these attempts shows that not one of them is well-founded. There may be occasional mistakes, where Caesar was forced to rely on information furnished him by the Gauls; but it can not be proved that there is a single intentional false statement in the whole work.

24 Caesar's Other Writings. In addition to the Commentaries on the Gallic War, in seven books, we have Caesar's Commentaries on the Civil War, in three books. Besides these we know of other works, now lost. We hear of some poetry and a collection of jests. He wrote a treatise on grammar while traveling rapidly from Rome to Spain. He wrote a treatise on astronomy when he reformed the calendar. He wrote an attack on Cato to counteract the effect of certain books which in praising Cato attacked Caesar. All this shows his versatility; but probably no one of these works would have been very valuable if it had been preserved.

VI. The Gauls

25 First Appearance of the Gauls in History. Some seven centuries before Christ, a tall, fair-haired race of men, the Gauls, began crossing the Rhine and conquering the original inhabitants of the country on its west. In time they overran everything as far as the Pyrenees, partly destroying the original inhabitants, partly uniting with them. About five centuries before Christ they began crossing the Alps and settling in northern Italy, and in 390 B.C. they took Rome and burned it. Rome was then but a small city, governing only the part of Italy which immediately surrounded it.

26 First Decline of Gallic Power. But from that time on the power of Rome increased and that of the Gauls decreased. A little more than two centuries before Christ, after desperate fighting, the Romans conquered and held northern Italy, Cisalpine Gaul. Again in the years from 123 to 118 there was
hard fighting with Gals, and at the end Rome controlled that part of Gaul which Caesar calls Prōvincia (see 2).

Invasion of Cimbri and Teutoni. In 113 began the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutoni, the most terrible danger of Rome since the day when the Gals burned the city. It is not known whether they were Germans or Gals, and probably the Romans of the time did not discriminate between the two races. They crossed the Rhine with their women and children, and marched slowly through Gaul, leaving a waste wherever they had passed. Several Roman armies met them and were cut to pieces. At last they made ready to invade Italy, the Teutoni by the western Alps, the Cimbri by the eastern. But the great Marius was now in command of a Roman army. In 102 he met the Teutoni and destroyed them. In 101 he joined the other Roman army and destroyed the Cimbri.

Geographical Divisions of Gaul in Caesar’s Time. In Caesar’s time Cisalpine Gaul was almost as Roman as any other part of Italy. From it Caesar recruited his legions and levied new ones; and later he gave its inhabitants the right of Roman citizenship. The Province was peaceable and loyal to Rome, although the Allobroges had rebelled only a few years before. Caesar’s task was the subjugation of all the rest of the Gals, the inhabitants of all the country lying north of the Province and west of the Rhine. This is the country which he calls Gallia. However, he divides it into three parts and often uses the name Gallia of only the great central part, Gallia Celtica, where the Gallic stock was purest. In the southwestern part, Aquitania, fewer of the Gallic invaders had settled, and the population consisted largely of descendants of the original inhabitants. In the northeastern part, Belgium, Germans had settled in large numbers.

Factions in Gaul. If Caesar had found Gaul a compact nation his task would have been more difficult than it was. But faction and division seem to have been a part of the Gallic nature, and he took advantage of this characteristic. Gaul
was cut up into many small states, each feeling itself rightfully independent. These states fought frequently with one another, and the weaker of them were either forced into dependence on the stronger or voluntarily attached themselves to stronger states for protection. In this way loose leagues or confederations were formed, between which rivalry and warfare went on. In Gallia Celtica the chief confederations were the one headed by the Haedui and the one formerly headed by the Arverni, but in Caesar’s time headed by the Sequani. But the evils of faction did not stop here. The individual states, for the most part, had no strong governments. Apparently most of them had been governed by kings one or two generations before Caesar’s time; but a series of revolutions had generally abolished the kingly office and had substituted magistrates elected yearly. The real power lay in the hands of rich nobles, or equites as Caesar calls them. Each of these nobles lived surrounded by numerous slaves and retainers; and as there was no power strong enough to keep them in order, individual nobles or leagues of nobles sometimes pushed their continuous rivalries to the point of civil war.

30 Caesar’s Use of the Gallic Factions. This factional spirit was of great assistance to Caesar, for he usually found means to attach one faction or the other to himself. For example, at the outset he found two factions in the state of the Haedui, headed by two brothers, Diviciacus, friendly to the Romans, and Dumnorix, hostile to them. By strengthening Diviciacus and checking Dumnorix he secured the help of the state. The state was the leader of one of the two leagues in Celtic Gaul, and Caesar thus secured the submission of all the states in that league without fighting for it. In fact, not only did he have their passive submission, but he obtained from them provisions and men to use in conquering other parts of Gaul.

31 Gallic Civilization. The details of the Gallic manners and customs can be learned best from Chapters 11-20 of Book VI. It will be enough to say here that in Caesar’s time the Gauls
were not wild barbarians, but had attained a considerable degree of civilization. They had long passed the stage of roaming about from one part of the country to another; though we find, in the first book of the Commentaries, that for special reasons the Helvetii intended to leave their homes and find new ones. They had roads and bridges and towns of considerable size, fortified by well built walls.

VII. Caesar's Army

The legions formed the strength of Caesar's army. When the enemy met him in hand to hand battle the legions bore the brunt of the fighting and won him the victory. But since they consisted of heavily armed, and therefore comparatively slow, foot soldiers, and since their weapons were useless at any considerable distance, the legions needed the assistance of cavalry and light-armed infantry, to complete their success.

Organization of the Legion. In theory a legion consisted of 6000 men; but battles, accidents, and disease so reduced this number that Caesar's legions probably averaged about 4000 men, or even less. The following table gives the divisions of a legion and their theoretical strength:

- century [centum, hundred] = 100 men
- 2 centuries = 1 maniple = 200 men
- 3 maniples = 1 cohort = 600 men
- 10 cohorts = 1 legion = 6000 men

In theory, again, the legions were made up of Roman citizens; but in fact a large part of Caesar's legionary soldiers came from Cisalpine Gaul, which had not yet received the right of citizenship. However, it was thoroughly Romanized, and, in spirit at least, Caesar's legionaries were Roman citizens.
CAESAR'S GALIC WAR

EQUIPMENT OF THE LEGIONARY SOLDIER

(Plate I)

34 Clothing.  
   a. A sleeveless woolen shirt, reaching nearly to the knees.
      
   b. Tight-fitting leather trousers, or perhaps merely bandages wrapped about the legs.
   
   c. Shoes or sandals.
   
   d. A heavy cloak for bad weather. This served also as a blanket at night.

35 Armor.  
   a. A helmet of leather (galea) or metal (cassis).
      
   b. A leather coat (lorica), strengthened by bands of metal across the shoulders, breast, and back.
      
   c. A curved wooden shield (scutum), covered with leather, and having a metal boss in the center. It was about four feet high and two and a half feet wide.
      
   d. Perhaps a greave on the right leg, though Caesar does not mention it. This was very much like a football shin-guard, but made of metal.

Arms.  
   a. A heavy wooden javelin (pilum, Fig. 1), with a long iron point which was strong enough to pierce any armor but was likely to bend as it did so. Therefore it could not easily be withdrawn when it had pierced a shield, and could not be thrown back by the enemy. After the battle the javelins were gathered and straightened by the Romans. Each soldier carried but one javelin.
      
   b. A straight, heavy, two-edged sword (gladius, Fig. 2), about two feet long, adapted for either cutting or thrusting. Its scabbard (vagina) hung from a belt (balteus) which passed over the left

Fig. 1  PILA

Fig. 2  GLADIUS AND VAGINA
shoulder. The sword was thus on the right side, out of the way of the shield. But the higher officers, who carried no shield, wore the sword on the left side.

**Individual Baggage.** Besides his personal belongings each soldier carried his share of the picks, spades, baskets, etc., used in entrenching the camp; cooking utensils; and several days' rations of grain, which seems to have been apportioned out only twice a month. All this, weighing from thirty to forty-five pounds, was made into a pack (sarcina) and strapped on a forked stick; this the soldier carried on his shoulder. While thus encumbered the soldiers were said to be impediti. If the army was attacked on the march the packs were stacked in one place under guard, and the soldiers were then expediti.

**OFFICERS OF THE LEGIONS**

**Lēgātus.** All governors of provinces were given several legāti, deputies or assistants. These legates were not strictly military officers, but were to be employed by the governors in any way they saw fit. Caesar introduced the innovation of putting a legate in command of each legion just before a battle. When one or more legions were detached from the main army for special service, Caesar put a legate in command; and legates were left in command of the winter quarters during Caesar's absence. But no one legate was in permanent command of any one legion.

**Quaestor.** The quaesters were financial officers, elected yearly by the people at Rome. One was chosen by lot to take charge of the finances of each province, so that Caesar always had one with him. He took charge of the pay and the supplies of the army. When he was competent Caesar employed him in battle as he did his legates, putting him in command of a legion.

**Praefectus Fabrum.** The chief of engineers had charge of such matters as the building of bridges, construction of camps, erection of siege works, repair of artillery, and the refitting of
ships. He probably had special assistants, but the actual labor was performed by skilled men detailed from the ranks.

41 Tribūnus. No single officer permanently commanded a legion, as our colonels command regiments. Each legion had six tribunes, who took the chief command in rotation, while the rest probably commanded groups of cohorts or were assigned to special service. In Caesar’s army many of the tribunes were experienced and capable officers, who did good service; but others were young men without military experience, who had been appointed only because they were friends or relatives of influential men at Rome whom Caesar wished to please. It was for this reason that Caesar put his legates and quaestor in command of the legions in battle. On the march or in camp a tribune was in command.

42 Centuriō. The centurions commanded centuries, and there were therefore sixty in each legion. On them fell the immediate management of the men in battle. They fought in the ranks like the men and were expected to set the men an example of conspicuous bravery. They were therefore promoted from the ranks on the basis of their strength and size as well as their skill and gallantry. They could hope for no promotion above the rank of centurion; but there were grades of centurions from one to the other of which they rose. The highest of all was the first centurion of the first cohort, the primipilus. He and a few others, just how many is not known, were called centurions of the first rank (centuriōnēs primōrum ōrdinum, or primi ōrdinēs), and were commonly summoned to councils of war along with the tribunes and legates.

STANDARDS AND SIGNALS OF THE LEGIONS

43 Aquila. Each legion had as its standard a bronze or silver eagle (aquila), carried on the top of a wooden staff. It was regarded with almost religious respect, and its loss was the deepest disgrace that could befall the legion. It was in charge of the first centurion of the first cohort, and was carried by a
1. *funditor*  
2. *levis armatura*  
3. *legionarii*  
4. *vexillum*  
5. *signiferi*  
6. *aquilifer*  
7. *tubicen*  
8. *bucinator*

*Roman Soldiers*
man of conspicuous strength and bravery, the aquilifer (Plate I, 6).

**Signum.** Each cohort had its own standard (signum), carried by a signifer (Plate I, 5). These standards were of various forms—an open hand, the figure of an animal, etc. On the staff, below the figure, were fastened the decorations of honor which had been bestowed on the cohort—disks, half moons, wreaths, and tassels. The diversity of form was necessary in order that each soldier might recognize easily the standard of his own cohort. In hasty preparation for battle each man found his place by looking for his standard; and all through the battle he regulated his movements by those of his standard. For this reason the technical terms for such maneuvers as advancing and retreating are signa inferre, signa referre, etc.

**Musical Instruments.** There were no bands, and the only use made of musical instruments was in the giving of signals. The only instrument mentioned by Caesar in the Gallic War is the tuba, a straight brazen trumpet, blown by a tubicen, but others were probably used as well (Plate I, 7, 8).

**Baggage of the Legion**

The heavy baggage (impedimenta) consisted of tents, provisions, hand-mills for grinding grain, engines of war, etc., and was carried on pack horses or mules (iūmenta). These were driven or led by the drivers (müliōnēs) and camp servants (cālōnēs), who were probably slaves.

**Auxiliary Infantry and Cavalry**

**Infantry.** The light armed infantry (Plate I, 1 and 2), which Caesar usually calls auxilia, contained no Roman citizens. Caesar had slingers (funditōrēs) from the Balearic Islands, and archers (sagittārii) from Crete and Numidia; but most of his light armed infantry was drawn from friendly Gallic tribes and was armed in the native fashion. He put little reliance on them for serious fighting, but made them
useful in various ways: as skirmishers, to delay the enemy’s attack; as raiders; in making fortifications at a critical time; for mere show, to impress the enemy with his numbers; and in pursuit of a routed enemy. Their higher officers were prefects (praefecti). Their standard was a banner (vexillum, Plate I, 4) attached to a horizontal cross-piece at the end of a staff.

Cavalry. Caesar had no Roman cavalry. During his first six years in Gaul he had none but Gallic cavalry, but in the seventh year he secured some Germans and found them much more effective. They were useless against a line of infantry, but met the enemy’s cavalry. Caesar employed them especially as scouts and raiders, or in pursuit of a routed enemy. Their higher officers were praefecti, and their standards were vexilla (cf. 47).

THE CAMP

A Roman army never halted even for one night without fortifying its camp (castra) with a wall and trench. This must have cost two or three hours of hard work; but it made the army safe from attack, and so allowed the general to choose his own time and place for battle; and in case of defeat the camp was a place of refuge.

Location and Form of Camp. Whenever it was possible the camp was built on a hill sloping gently toward the enemy, so that the Roman army could form its line of battle in front of the camp and make the enemy charge up hill. The normal shape of the camp was a square or oblong, but it had to be accommodated to the shape of the hill. Fig. 3 shows the normal shape, while Fig. 4 shows the actual shape of one of Caesar’s camps. Within the camp, streets were laid out in accordance with a fixed plan, and every legion, every cohort, every maniple had always the same location. Fig. 3 shows the normal arrangement for a camp which would accommodate five legions.
Fortifications of Camp (Fig. 5). The size of the trench 51 (fossa) varied, but was usually about nine feet wide and seven deep. The earth, dug out with spades and carried in baskets, was piled up just inside the trench to make the wall (vallum). This wall was faced partly with sods, partly with bundles of sticks (fascines), so that it was quite steep on the outside. Other fascines were put inside the wall, to strengthen it. It stood about six feet high, was wide enough on top to let the soldiers move about comfortably in fighting, and sloped so gradually toward the inside that soldiers could easily ascend it. Sometimes this slope was faced with logs, so as to make steps. On the outer
edge of the top stood a row of palisades (vālli), about four feet high, which served as a breastwork. In case of an attack the enemy would be halted by the ditch several feet from the wall, and be completely exposed to the Roman javelins, while the defenders stood on a higher position, protected by a breastwork, and could throw their missiles with great effect. In times of especial danger, towers (turrēs) were erected at intervals on top of the wall.

52 Gates of Camp. Usually there was one gate (porta) on each of the four sides; but in the camp represented in Fig. 4 there were two gates in front, where the soldiers had most occasion to pass in and out. The gates were mere openings in the wall, about forty feet wide as a rule. Fig. 4 shows how they were protected. A short curved wall projected into the camp from the left side of the gate. A line of soldiers stood in the gate, and another manned this wall. If the enemy got into the opening they would be exposed on their shieldless side to a shower of missiles from the wall. Ordinarily this was a sufficient protection, and it left the gates open for a sudden charge from within. But in times of great emergency the gates could be walled up solidly.
1. imperator  2. legatus  3. centurio  4. lictor

Roman Officers and Gauls
THE MARCH

Line of March. The vanguard usually consisted of cavalry and light armed infantry. Under ordinary circumstances each legion was followed by a train of pack animals carrying its baggage; but in the near neighborhood of the enemy all the baggage was brought together, preceded by most of the legions and followed by the rest.

Length of March. The length of a day's march of course varied greatly, according to the nature of the country and the need for haste. As the soldier had to carry from forty-five to sixty pounds of arms and baggage, and as the army had to halt early in the afternoon to give time for making camp, the rate of march of the army could be nothing like that of an unencumbered individual. Probably when there was no need of haste the average march was no more than twelve to fifteen miles, and a day of rest was given about every fifth day. But Caesar, like Napoleon, owed much of his success to his power of inspiring his army to great efforts on the march. When he speaks of forced marches (magna itinera, maxima itinera), we are to think of marches of from eighteen to twenty-five miles a day, or even more. On one occasion he marched four legions, without baggage, fifty Roman miles in less than thirty hours, including all stops.

THE BATTLE

Since the legions had to do the serious work of fighting, the line of battle was arranged solely with reference to their tactics. When the enemy were within the short range of the Roman javelins they were met by a volley of these deadly missiles and their ranks were thus broken. Immediately the Romans charged, and the rest of the battle was fought out at close quarters with the sword. When possible, therefore, the line of battle was drawn up facing down a gentle slope. This gave greater range to the javelins and greater impetus to the charge; while the enemy must begin the battle breathless from
a charge up the hill. The auxiliary infantry might be posted in front of the line, but it was expected to do no more than delay the attack of the enemy. More often it was posted on the flanks, sometimes merely as a show of strength. The cavalry might meet the cavalry of the enemy. Otherwise it usually merely awaited the rout of the enemy, when it pursued and cut to pieces the fugitives.

56 Line of Battle. The line of battle was commonly triple (triplex aciēs), though sometimes only double (duplex aciēs). In the triple line of battle the first line was composed of the first four cohorts of each legion, standing side by side, with no intervals between the cohorts. Three cohorts of each legion formed the second line, which stood a short distance behind the first, ready to relieve it when it became exhausted in the battle. The remaining three cohorts of each legion formed the third line, in the rear, and were held as a reserve for any emergency. Each of these lines was eight or ten men deep, and only the front rank of the first line could engage in the battle at any one moment. But that rank would fight vigorously for a few moments, then fall back and be relieved by the next rank, and so on until all the men of the first line had been engaged. Then it was relieved as a whole by the second line.

57 Orbis. When surrounded by the enemy and hard pressed, a body of men would form what is now called a hollow square, and what the Romans called a circle (orbis), with the baggage and camp servants inside the ring of armed men.

The Capture of Towns

58 A great part of Caesar's military operations consisted in the capture of walled towns. The fortification of these towns was rather primitive, but it was quite effective (Fig. 6). The face of the wall showed regular rows of log ends separated by huge stones. No one log could be grappled and pulled out, for they were all fastened together far within the wall. The logs
would not burn, for they were each imbedded in stone and earth. A battering-ram could demolish a solid stone wall, but the framework of timbers defied it. Therefore Caesar relied little on making breaches in the walls and entering in that way. But there were three other possible methods—a blockade, a sudden assault, and a formal siege.

Blockade (obsidio). A ring of fortifications could be built around the town, and the place starved into submission. But this was too slow a method to be employed unless all other methods were hopeless, and Caesar used it only once in the Gallic War.

Sudden Assault (oppugnātiō repentina). If a town had low walls and few defenders, it might be taken by a sudden assault. Archers and slingers kept the wall partly clear of defenders. Soldiers approached the wall in safety by holding their shields over their heads and letting them overlap, forming a testūdō (tortoise, Plate III, 3). If there was a trench around the wall, they filled it with bundles of brushwood (crātēs, fascines). Then they mounted the wall by means of scaling ladders (scālæ, Plate III). But such towns would usually surrender without a struggle, so that the method was little used.

Formal Siege (oppugnātiō). The favorite method was by the use of the agger and tower (turris). The agger was a great causeway, built of logs and earth, which sloped gradually up toward the top of the wall. Generally it was not intended to be as high as the wall. In that case a tower, several stories high, was pushed up the causeway on rollers. From the upper stories, which rose higher than the wall, archers and slingers and artillery shot down the defenders. When the tower was near enough, a drawbridge was let down from one of the lower stories to the top of the wall, and the Romans charged across
it. Sometimes the causeway was as high as the wall, and thus itself gave access to its top (Fig. 7). Sometimes, if the wall was low and the ground about it level, no causeway was built, and the tower was pushed over the ground to the wall. Then a battering-ram might be hung in the lowest story, and the drawbridge was let down from one of the upper stories. Plate III illustrates this method of using the tower, as well as several other devices; but the city is not a Gallic town.

62 Means of Protecting the Besiegers. In building the agger and carrying on the other operations of a siege the assailants had to approach within easy range of missiles from the wall: hence they made use of several forms of protection.

a. The pluteus (Fig. 8) was a heavy shield, several feet high, mounted on wheels. A line of these, parallel to the wall, gave protection to men working immediately behind it; and it could be moved forward at pleasure.

b. The musculus (Fig. 9) was a hut with one end open and the other end partially closed. Its roof was strong enough to withstand the
Plate III
shock of great stones which might be dropped upon it from the wall. It could be pushed up to the wall, and under its shelter men could dig out the foundation of the wall.

c. The testūdō arietāria (Plate III, 2) was a similar hut in which hung a battering-ram (ariēs), a heavy timber capped with iron, intended to be swung against the wall.

d. The vinea (Fig. 10) was a lighter hut, open at both ends. A number of these placed end to end made a safe covered gallery extending from a point out of range up to the musculi, testūdinēs, or plutei.

All these huts were pushed forward on rollers.

The Artillery.—Caesar had with him engines of war, the purpose of which corresponded to that of modern artillery. They were too heavy and clumsy to be of much service in battle: hence their chief use was in siege operations. The general name tormenta is derived from torqueō, to twist, and was applied to them because the propelling force was obtained by twisting a stick between two tightly stretched horse-hair ropes.

a. The ballista
(Plate III, 5) threw heavy stones at a considerable angle from the horizontal.

b. The catapult (catapulta) threw great arrows nearly horizontally. Fig. 11 makes most of its mechanism clear without explanation. (A) is an arrangement for raising or lowering the rear of the nearly horizontal track, thus regulating the range. The track is grooved to hold a long sliding carriage, on the rear portion of which is the trigger (B). The operation of firing was as follows: The carriage was pushed forward till the claws of the trigger were over the bowstring; a block (C) was shoved under the heavy rear end of the trigger, and the claws were thus held down on the string; the carriage was drawn back by means of the windlass, and held in place by the hook (D); the arrow was laid on the grooved upper surface of the carriage, with its end resting on the string between the claws of the trigger; the block (C) was withdrawn and the rear end of the trigger fell by its own weight, thus releasing the string.

c. The scorpiō was a small catapult.

d. The onager (Plate III, 4) threw stones, like the ballista, but was of different construction.

THE FLEET

The fleet is to be considered as belonging to the army, rather than as a separate organization; for when Caesar had need of it he manned it with his legions, put tribunes and centurions in command of indi-
individual ships, and made one of his legates its admiral. The
ships of war were about eight times as long as they were broad,
and were therefore called nāvēs longae, in distinction from the
transports (nāvēs onerāriae), which were shorter and wider.
They had a mast and single sail, but in battle depended
on oars for their propulsion. Their prows (Fig. 12) were
armed with metal beaks (röstra), with which to ram the ships
of the enemy. If the Romans failed in this they sought to
make the battle as much as possible like a battle on land,
their special object being to grapple one of the enemy’s ships
and board it.
A BRIEF BIBLIOGRAPHY

The following list of books will suggest those which are most helpful to pupils and teachers who read only English. Those who wish to make a more detailed study of special points will find that Holmes gives references to almost everything of importance in the enormous literature of Caesar, except on the linguistic side.

Editions

A. Holder. (Freiburg and Tübingen, 1882.) This may be useful for its (inaccurate) index of words, which is intended to be complete.


H. Rheinhard. (Stuttgart, 1896.) Useful for its illustrations.

Of the following English editions the first two are useful:

A. G. Peskett. (Cambridge, 1878-1882.)
St. George Stock. (The Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1898.) Usually good when it follows good authorities.

Caesar’s Life and Campaigns

Col. T. A. Dodge. Caesar. (Houghton, Mifflin & Co., 1894.) Useful if Napoleon can not be obtained, but without much independent value.


T. Rice Holmes. Caesar’s Conquest of Gaul. (Macmillan

Napoleon III. *History of Julius Caesar.* (Out of print, but can be obtained at second hand. If possible get the Atlas with the two volumes. The French edition is more easily obtained.) Volume II gives a more complete narrative and explanation of Caesar’s campaigns in Gaul than can be found elsewhere, but without much discussion of disputed points.

C. W. C. Oman. *Seven Roman Statesmen.* (Edward Arnold, London, 1902.) The characterization of Caesar is too violent a reaction against the views of Mommsen and Froude.


Much that is valuable will be found in the following histories:

Duruy. *History of Rome.*

Long. *The Decline of the Roman Republic.* This is especially good in its treatment of Caesar’s campaigns.

Merivale. *History of the Romans under the Empire.*

Mommsen. *History of Rome.* The chief defect of this extraordinary work is its too great partiality for Caesar.

**Miscellaneous**

H. P. Judson. *Caesar’s Army.* (Ginn & Co., 1888.) This gives much fuller information about the organization and tactics of the Roman army than can be given in the introduction of an edition. It should be at hand for reference.

R. Oehler. *Bilderatlas zu Cäsars de Bello Gallico.* (Leipzig, 1890.)

W. Rüstow. *Atlas zu Cäsars Gallischem Krieg.* (Stuttgart.)

A. Van Kampen. *Quindecim ad Caesaris de Bello Gallico Commentarios Tabulæ.* (Gotha.)
REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS

In the grammatical references, App. = Appendix (following Book VII); G.-L. = Gildersleeve-Lodge; A. = Allen and Greenough; B. = Bennett; H.-B. = Hale and Buck; H. = Harkness. In each case the latest revision has been followed.

References are made to books of the text in Roman characters, to chapters in bold-faced Arabic numerals, to lines in plain-faced Arabic numerals. Thus, III, 2, 11 = Book III, chapter 2, line 11.

In the page vocabularies, the figures 1, 2, 3, and 4, following definitions, indicate the number of times the word is used in Books I-IV. * indicates that the word is used 5 or more times in those books.

For the explanation of some other details, see p. 2 of the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

abbr. = abbreviation.  
abl. = ablative.  
acc. = accusative.  
act. = active.  
adj. = adjective.  
adv. = adverb, adverbial.  
card. = cardinal.  
cf. = confer, compare.  
chap. = chapter.  
comp. = comparative.  
conj. = conjunction.  
dat. = dative.  
def. = defective.  
dem. = demonstrative.  
dim. = diminutive.  
distr. = distributive.  
e.g. = exempli grātiā, for example.  
encl. = enclitic.  
etc. = et cōlēra, and so forth.  
f. = feminine.  
fig. = figure, figuratively.  
freq. = frequentative.  
fut. = future.  
gen. = genitive.  
i.e. = id est, that is.  
imp. = imperative.  
impers. = impersonal.  
impf. = imperfect.  
incept = inceptive.  
ind. = indicative.  
indecl = indeclinable.  
indef. = indefinite.  
inf. = infinitive.  
int. = introduction.  
interrog = interrogative.  
intr. = intransitive.  
irr. = irregular.  
l., ll. = line, lines.  
lit. = literally.  
m. = masculine.  
num. = numerical.  
n. = negative.  
n. = neuter.  
n. (in grammatical references) = note.  
nom. = nominative.  
num. = numeral.  
ord. = ordinal.  
p., pp. = page, pages.  
part. = participle.  
pass. = passive.  
pers. = personal.  
pf. = perfect.  
pl. = plural.  
plupf. = pluperfect.  
poss. = possessive.  
prep. = preposition.  
pres. = present.  
pron. = pronoun.  
reflex. = reflexive.  
rel. = relative.  
sc. = scilicet, supply.  
sing. = singular.  
subj. = subjunctive.  
sup. = superlative.  
tr. = transitive.
BOOK I, CHAPTERS 1 TO 29. WAR WITH THE HELVETII

The Helvetii were a Gallic people living in northern Switzerland. Hemmed in by the mountains, they had retained without loss their strength and independence. During the invasion of Gaul by the Cimbri a part of the Helvetii had left their country independently and defeated a Roman army in 107 B.C. Many of the Helvetii had joined the Cimbri and Teutoni in their attempted invasion of Italy in 102 and 101 B.C. After the disastrous result of these attempts the Helvetii had remained comparatively quiet for a long time; but now, dissatisfied with the narrow limits of their country, they determined to seek wider fields.

The originator of this plan was Orgetorix, their most powerful nobleman. But the Helvetii soon learned that he was trying to further ambitious plans of his own and to use them as tools; that he intended to make himself their king, and then to unite with two neighboring states in the subjugation of all Gaul. The penalty for the crime of aiming at royal power was death, but Orgetorix anticipated the punishment by committing suicide. Yet the Helvetii persisted in the plans which they had adopted at his suggestion. They made all preparations, then burned their homes and gathered near the western end of Lake Geneva, ready to set out.

But Rome had been watching their preparations in some alarm. If the Helvetii marched through the province, they could not fail to give trouble to the Romans. And what was a more serious matter, if the Helvetii left their country vacant it would be occupied by the Germans; and the Germans were dangerous neighbors. Caesar's term of office as governor of Gaul began in the year of their departure. Learning that the Helvetii intended to set out sooner than he had expected, he hurried to Geneva, so that when they gathered he was there to meet them. He destroyed the bridge across the Rhone, which they had failed to secure, and with his one legion hastily made and manned a line of defenses on the south bank of the river. He then forbade their crossing, and easily checked their attempts to disobey his orders.

The baffled Helvetii now obtained permission of the Sequani to pass to the west through their territory. The great host, with its women and children and thousands of wagons, marched slowly through this to the Saone, and its van crossed the river and began plundering the land of
the Haedui. Meanwhile Caesar had hastened back to northern Italy and returned with five legions. The Haedui, who had been nominal allies of the Romans for many years, now appealed to Caesar. He was not sorry to appear as the champion of Gallic freedom, for he thus gained a footing in Gaul. Finding that one of the four divisions of the Helvetii had not yet crossed the Saone, he fell upon it and cut it to pieces. Immediately he crossed the river in pursuit of the main body. For fifteen days he followed it, but on account of the nature of the country he was unable to head off the slowly moving mass. Finally the lack of provisions compelled him to turn aside to Bibracte. Believing that this action was due to cowardice, the Helvetii in turn became the pursuers, thus allowing Caesar to meet them on ground of his own choosing. In a hard fought battle he defeated them with immense loss; and the remnant of the once proud and mighty people sadly returned to its mountain home.

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

Brown indicates the part of Transalpine Gaul which belonged to Rome when Caesar entered upon his command.

Red indicates the states whose submission Caesar secured by conquering them in battle. The Boii are shown in the homes given them after their defeat. The Latobrigi and the Tulingi lived across the Rhine and are not shown on this map. The Ceutrones, the Graioceli, and the Caturiges were forced to permit the passage of the army, but were probably not reduced to submission, and are therefore left uncolored.

Blue indicates the states which submitted without fighting. In chap. 30 we are told that envoys from "nearly all Gaul" came to Caesar as a result of his victory over the Helvetii. It is certain that Celtic Gaul is meant; therefore Aquitania and Belgium are left uncolored. In chap. 31 we are told that Ariovistus held a part of the territory of the Sequani; this is left uncolored. In II, 34 we are given a list of states which did not submit till 57; these also are left uncolored. All the rest of Celtic Gaul may be supposed to have submitted at the close of the war with the Helvetii; it is therefore colored blue.

The line of march shows Caesar's route in crossing the Alps the second time, with the five legions. It also shows the route of the Helvetii after they left their territory. After crossing the Arar Caesar's route coincides with that of the Helvetii.

Crossed sabers indicate battlefields. Colonel Stoffel's identification of the main battlefield (Histoire de Jules César: Guerre Civile, ii, 439-453) is almost certainly right and is indicated on this map.
Campaign Map for Book I, 1-29
Belli Gallici
Liber Primus

1. Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam

1. Gallia, -ae, f., Gallia (gā'li-a), better, Gaul, including either (1) Belgium, Celtica, and Aquitania, or (2) only Celtica. See map. *

sum, esse, fui (App 66), intr., be, exist, live; stay, remain; serve for; with gen. in predicate, be the mark or sign of; belong to; be the duty of; with dat. of possessor, have. *

omnis, -e, adj., all, every, all the, every kind of; the whole, as a whole; m. pl. as noun, all, every one; all the rest; n. pl. as noun, all possessions or goods. *

dividō, dividere, divisi, divisum, tr. divide, separate; divisum, pf. part. as adj., divided. *

in, prep. with acc. and abl. With acc. (1) of motion, from one place into or towards another place, into, to; in, among; towards, for, against; at; upon: (2) of time, till, into; for; on, at: (3) other uses, in, in respect to, for, under, over, on; in diēs, from day to day; in fugam concīere, put to flight; in Caesarem incidere, meet with Caesar; summmum in cruciātum venire, be severely punished. With abl. (1) of rest or motion within a place, in among, over, within, throughout; on, upon: (2) of time, in, during, in the course of; on: (3) other uses, in, in the case of; in consequence of, in view of; on, upon; in Arari, over the Arar; in eō, in his case; in ancoris, at anchor; in opere esse, be engaged in the work. *

pars, partis, f., part, portion; party; faction; direction, side, place, district. *

trēs, tria, gen. trium (III), card. num. adj., three. *

qui, quae, quod, rel. pron. (and see quis), who, which, what; often implying an antecedent, he who, those who; with force of dem., this, that; quam ob rem, wherefore; quem ad modum, in what manner, how, as; quō, with comparatives, the; quō ... eō, the ... the. *

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, gen. ūnīus (App. 32), card. num. adj., one, the same one; single, alone; the sole, the only; the sole or only one. *

Chap. 1. A brief description of the great divisions of Gaul, and of their inhabitants.

1. Gallia: in translating, proper names should always be pronounced like English words. The pronunciation is always indicated in the vocabulary. The values of the vowel markings are shown in the table on p. 2 of the vocabulary at the end of the book.

omnis, “as a whole,” shows that Gallia here has meaning (1) of the vocabulary.

divisa: the adjective.

partēs trēs: on the divisions of Gaul, see Int. 28.


*The asterisk, in the vocabulary, shows that the word occurs five or more times in Books I-IV. A figure, 1, 2, 3, or 4, similarly placed, is used when the word occurs less than five times.
incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam qui ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hi omnēs linguā, institūtīs, légibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garumna

2. incolō, -colere, -colui, —, tr. and intr. [colō, cultivate], inhabit, dwell in; live. *

Belgae, -ārum, m. (ABdefg), the Belgae (bēl'jē), or Belgians. *

alius, -a, -ud, gen. alius (App. 32), another, other; alius ... alius, one ... another; in pl., some ... others. *

Aquitānus, -a, -um, adj., of Aquitania, Aquitanian; pl. as noun, the Aquitāni (āk"wi-tā'nī), possibly Aquitanians, inhabiting southwestern Gaul. *

tertius, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [ter, thrice], third. *

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen. ipsius (App. 59), intensive pron., self (as opposed to some one else; not to be confused with the reflexive sē, self. App. 163); himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, it, they; as adj., very; in gen., his, her, its, or their own. *

lingua, -ae, f., tongue, language. 3.

3. Celtae, -ārum, m., the Celtae (sēl'tē), better, the Celts, 1.

noster, -stra, -strum, poss. adj. [nōs, we], our, ours, our own; in pl. as noun, our men, our troops. *

1. incolō, -colere, -colui, —, tr. and intr. [colō, cultivate], inhabit, dwell in; live. *

2. Belgae: it is impossible to understand and appreciate Caesar’s story unless one follows it on the map. The letters in parentheses which follow geographical names, in the vocabulary, correspond to the letters on the margins of the map in the front of the book. By their aid places can easily be found.

6. alliam, tertiam: sc. partem incolunt. qui = tī qui: a nominative pronoun antecedent is often omitted.


linguā, institūtīs, légibus, “in language, institutions, and laws.” Notice the absence of a conjunction. Latin usually says either “a, b, c,” or “a and b and c,” while English usually says “a, b, and c.” For case see App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

flūmen, ā Belgis Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium 5 fortissimi sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānī\- tāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercā-

hortāti inter sē, encouraging one another. *

sui, sibi, sē, or sēsē, reflex. pron. of 5th person (App. 163, 164, 165), himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, they, etc.; inter sē, see inter and App. 166. *

differō, differre, distulī, dilātum, tr. and intr. [ferō, carry. App. 81], scatter, spread; put off, defer; be different, differ. 1.

ā (before consonants), ab (before vowels and some consonants), abs (before tē, and in some compounds), prep. with abl., originally denoting separation; (1) of place, persons, time, etc., from, away from, from the vicinity of: (2) denoting position, in some phrases, at, in, on, on the side of; ā tergō, in the rear: (3) with expressions of measure, away, off; ab milibus passuum duōbus, two miles away: (4) with the pass. voice often denoting the agent, as the person from whom the action comes, by: (5) variously translated in other relations, from, by, in respect to, after. *

Garumna, -ae, m. (DEcld), the Garumna (ga-rūm'na), or Garonne, a river forming the boundary between Aquitania and Celtic Gaul. 3.

5. flūmen, -inis, n. [flūō, flow], river, stream. *

Matrona, -ae, m. (Bef), the river Matrona (mā'trō-nā), now the Marne. 1.
et, conj., and; also, too, even; et . . . et, both . . . and. *

Sēquana, -ae, m. (BCdef), the river Sequana (sēk'wā-na), better, Seine. 1.

6. fortis, -ē, adj., strong, valiant, brave. *

proptereā, adv. [propter, because of], on this account; proptereā quod, because. *

quod, conj. [adv. acc. of the neuter of qui, who, which], as to which, in that, that; as to the fact that, insomuch as; because; quod si, but if; proptereā quod, because. *

cultus, -ūs, m. [colō, cultivate], cultivation; civilization; mode of life; dress. 2.

atque, ac (ac only before consonants, atque before vowels and consonants), conj., usually adds something especially important, while et usually associates objects of equal importance; and also, and even, and; after words denoting a comparison or difference, than, as, from. *

hūmānītās, -tātis, f. [hūmānus, human], humanity, refinement, culture. 2.

7. prōvincia, -ae, f., office of governor of a province; province, a territory subject to Rome and governed by a Roman governor; especially the Province, the southern part of France. *

longē, adv. [longus, long], far, far away, distant; longē lātēque, far and wide. *

absūm, abesse, āfūi, intr. [sum, be. App. 78], be away from, be absent or distant, be wanting or free from. *

minimē, adv. [minimus, least], least,


7. prōvinciae: see Int. 2, 26.

tōres saepe commentat atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important, proximique sunt Germānīs, qui tràns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

very little; by no means, not at all.

que, conj. (always affixed to the word or some part of the expression it connects), and; que...que, or que...et, both...and.

ad, prep. with acc., originally denoting motion toward; (1) denoting motion, to, toward, against, to the vicinity of; (2) denoting position, at, by, near; (3) denoting purpose, with gerund and gerundive, to, for; (4) with numerals, up to, about; (5) of time, up to, until; at, on; (6) variously translated in other relations, at, after, for, to, according to, in the eyes of, among.

is, ea, id gen. eius (App. 57), weak dem. pron. referring to some person or object named in the context, this, that, these, those; he, she, it, they; the, a; is locus quō, a, or the, place where; ea quae, (the) things which; eō, with comp., the; eō magis, all the more; eō...quō, with comparatives, the...the.

mercātor, -ōris, m. (mercōr, trade), merchant, trader.

8. saepe, adv., often, frequently; many times, again and again; saepe numerō, often, time and again, frequently; comp. saepius, oftener, more frequently; time and again; too often.

commeō, 1, intr. [meō, go], go back and forth; with ad, resort to, visit.

effēminō, 1, tr. [ex + fēmina, woman], make effeminate, enervate, enfeeble.

animus, -ī, m., soul, spirit; mind, intellect; feelings; character; resolution, courage; animī causā, for amusement; in animō habēre, intend.

9. pertineō, -tinēre, -tinui, —, intr. [teneō, hold], hold or reach to, extend; pertain, have reference to, concern; tend, aim at; eōdem pertinēre, tend to the same purpose or result, amount to the same thing.

importō, 1, tr. [in + portō, carry], carry or bring in, import.

proximus, -a, -um, adj., sup. (App. 43), nearest, next; last, previous; with acc. (App. 122, b), next to.

Germani, -ōrum, m., the Germani (jēr-mā'ni), better, Germans.

trāns, prep. with acc., across, beyond, over; in compounds, trāns or trā, across, over, through.

10. Rhēnus, -ī, m. (ABCfgh), the river Rhenus (rē'nūs), better, the Rhine.

cum, prep. with abl., with, along with, together with.

continenter, adv. [continēns, continuous], without interruption, continually, continuously.

bellum, -ī, n., war.

gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum, tr., bear, carry, wield; (of war) carry on.

ad effēminandōs animōs, "to weaken the courage"; the gerundive construction will be treated later.


10. quibuscum: use and position of cum? App. 140; 60, b: G.-L. 392; 413, 1: A. 413, b; 150, d: B. 222; 142, 4: H.-B. 418, a; 419, 4: H. 473, 1; 182, 2.
11. dé, prep. with abl., originally denoting motion from; (1) of place, from, down from, away from, out of; (2) of time, just after, about; (3) variously translated in other relations, about, concerning, of, from, in accordance with, for. *

causa, -ae, f. cause, reason, grounds, motive; situation, condition; a (legal) case, cause; causam dicere, to plead a case; causā, following a gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of, for. *

Helvetius, -a, -um, adj. (Cgh), of the Helvetii (hēl-vē-shēi), Helvetic; as noun, one of the Helvetii, an Helvetic; pl., the Helvetii, possibly Helvetians. *

quoque, conj, following the word emphasized, also, likewise. *

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. [relinquo, leave], left, remaining, the rest, the rest of; future, subsequent; n. as noun, remainder, rest. *

virtus, -ūtis, f. [vir, man], manliness, valor, merit, worth, virtue, courage; strength, energy; pl., good qualities, virtues, merits. *

praecēdō, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum, tr. [cēdō, go], go before; surpass, excel. 1.

ferē, adv., almost, nearly, about, for the most part. *

cotidiānus, -a, -um, adj. [cotidiē, daily], every day, daily; usual, customary. *

proelium, -ī, n., battle, contest, engagement; proelium committere, join or begin battle, risk a fight, engage in battle, fight. *

contendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tendentum, tr. and intr. [tendō, stretch], push forward, hasten; march; strive, contend, fight; be anxious for; maintain, insist. *

13. cum, conj., when, as, while; after, as soon as; whenever; since, because; although; cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also, both . . . and; cum primum, as soon as. See App. 238-242. *

aut, conj., used where the difference is important or exclusive, or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or. *

suus, -a, -um, reflex. pronominal adj. referring to subject (App. 163, 164, 165, 167, a) [sui, himself, herself, etc.], of or belonging to himself, herself, etc., his own, their own; his, hers, its, theirs; sua, n. pl. as noun, one's property; suī, m. pl. as noun, their men (friends or countrymen). *

finis, -is, m., boundary, limit, border, end; pl., boundaries; territory, country. *

prohibēō, 2, tr. [habeō, have, hold], keep from, keep, restrain, prevent, prohibit; keep out or away from; protect, guard. *

Helvētii: although the rest of the chapter is concerned with the larger divisions of Gaul, Caesar speaks of this tribe in particular, because it is to be prominent in the following chapters. 

virtūte: ablative of specification.

13. suī finibus: the reflexives suī and suus regularly refer to the subject:
bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinere dic-
tum est, initium capit à flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Ga-
rumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab
Sēquanīs et Helvētiōs flūmen Rhōnum; vergit ad septen-
triōnes. Belgae ab extrēmis Galliae finibus orientur; persp-

14. obtineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -ten-
tum, tr. [teneō, hold], hold, retain, pos-
sess, maintain; acquire, obtain. *
dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum, tr., say,
tell, speak, express, mention; name,
appoint; causam dicere, plead a case;
fūs dicere, administer justice. *

15. initium, -ī, n. [īneō, go into],
beginning, commencement, origin; edge
of a country, borders. *
capiō, capere, cēpi, captum, tr.,
take, capture, seize, catch; take in,
beguile, induce; take up (arms); choose,
select (a place); form, adopt (a plan);
reach, arrive at (a place); make (a begin-
ning); collem capere, take position on
a hill; fugam capere, take to flight. *

Rhodanus, -ī, m. (Cdfg), the river
Rhodanus (rōď'a-nūs), better, Rhone. *
contineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -ten-
tum, tr. [teneō, hold], hold together;
hold, keep, restrain; bound, shut in; con-
tain; sē contineō, with abl., remain
in, on, or within. *

16. Ōceanus, -ī, m., the ocean; as
adj., with mare, the ocean. *

sūs therefore refers to the Helvetii.
For case see App. 134: G.-L. 390, 2: A.
400: 401: B 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 2: H. 464, 1;
and notice that the preposition ab is
often used in the same sense, as in ab
Aquītānīs, l. 4.
eōrum refers to the Germans. For
case see App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B.

14. eōrum refers back to the Gauls
as a whole, not to the Helvetii, who have
just been mentioned.
quam is the object, Gallōs the sub-
ject of obtinēre: App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2:
infinitive clause, quam . . . ob-
tinēre, is the subject of dictum est:

attingō, -tīgere, -tīgī, -tāc-
tum, tr. [ad + tāgō, touch], touch or
border on, reach, extend to, arrive at,
attain. *
etiam, conj., and also, also, even,
yet. *

17. Sēquanus, -a, -um, adj., of or be-
longing to the Sequani; pl. as noun,
Sēquani (Cf), the Sequani (sēk' wā-
ni). *

vergō, -ere, —, —, intr., look or
lie towards, be situated; slope. 3.
septentriōnes, -um, m. [septem,
seven + triōnes, plough oxen],
the seven plough oxen, the stars of the Great
Bear, hence the north. *

18. extrēmus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of
exterus. App. 44], outermost, utmost,
farthest, extreme; the farthest part of;
extrēmi (as noun), the rear; ad extrē-
mum, at last, at the end; as a last
resort. *
orior, oriri, ortus sum, intr., arise,
begin, spring up, rise, start; be born,
descend; oriōn sōl, the rising sun,
sunrise; the east. *

App. 266: G.-L. 343, 2; 650: A. 580: B.
314, 1: H.-B. 589: H. 442. The whole
may be freely translated, "which,
as has been said, the Gauls occu-

15. ā flūmine, "at the river." There
are many phrases in which we feel "at"
or "on" to be the appropriate prepo-
position, but in which the Romans seem to
have thought of a starting-point and
consequently used ab or ex, which lit-

16. ab Sēquanīs, "in the direction
of" or "on the side of." Cf. the preced-
ing note.

18. extrēmis finibus: i. e. those
farthest from the Roman province.
nent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentrioniēs et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnæōs montēs et eam partem Oceani quae est ad Hispanicīm pertinet; spectat inter occasūm sōlis et septentrioniēs.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā, M. Pisoē consulibus, regnī cupi-

19. inferus, -a, -um, adj., low, below; comp., inferior, lower; inferior; ab inferiōre parte, below, down stream; sup., inēmus or imus, lowest, last; with collis, the base of; ad infāmum, ab infimō, at the bottom. *

spectō, 1, tr. [freq. of speciō, see], look at, regard; look, face, lie. 3.

20. sōl, sōlis, m., the sun; ad occidentem sōlem, toward the setting sun or west; ad orientem sōlem, toward the rising sun or east. *

Aquitānia, -ae, f. (DEdc), Aquitania (āk"wi-tā'ni-a), southwestern Gaul between the Garonne and the Pyrenees. *

21. Pyrēnæus, -a, -um, adj., Pyrenean; Pyrēnæi montēs (Edec), the Pyrenees (pīr"ē-nē/i), better, Pyrenees Mountains. 1.

mōns, montis, m., mountain; mountain range; hill, height. *

22. Hispanicā, -ae, f. (Abcd), Hispanicia (his-pā'ni-a), better, Spain. 2.

occāsus, -ūs, m. [occidō, fall, set], falling down, setting; with sōlis, sunset; the west. 4.

1. apud, prep. with acc., at, among, near, with; (with persons) at the house of, in the presence of. *

nōbilis, -e, adj. (nōscō, know), well known, distinguished, noted; of noble birth, noble; as noun, a noble. *

dives, dīvitis, adj., wealthy, rich.

Sup., dītissimus. 1.

2. Orgetorix, -igis, m., Orgetorix (ōr-jēt'o-riks), a chief of the Helvetii. *

M., abbr. for Marcus (mār'kus), a Roman praenomen. *

Messālā, -ae, m., Marcus Valerius Messala (mār'kus vā-lē'ri-ús mē-sā'la), consul, 61 B.C. 2.

Piso, -ōnis, m., Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus (mār'kus pū'pi-ús pī'sō kāl-pūr'ni-ás), consul with Messala, 61 B.C. 2.

cōnsul, -ulus, m., a consul, one of the two chief magistrates elected annually by the Roman people. *

rēgnum, -i, n. [rēx, king], kingly or royal authority, royal power, sovereignty; kingdom. *

cupidītās, -tātis, f. [cupidus, eager], eagerness, desire, greed, avarice. 3.

19. in septentrioniēs . . . sōlem: i.e., toward the northeast.

22. ad Hispanicām, "near Spain"; the reference is to the Bay of Biscay.

inter occasūm . . . septentrioniēs: i.e., toward the northwest.

Chap. 2-4. The ambition and downfall of Orgetorix.

Chap. 2. Orgetorix persuades the Helvetii to invade Gaul.


2. M. Messālā . . . cōnsulibus, "in the consulsip of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso." Case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419, a; 420, 1: B. 227, 1, 2, a: H.-B. 421, 1: H. 489, 1. These men were consuls in the year 61 B.C., three years before Caesar went to Gaul. In giving dates the Romans designated the year by naming the consuls of that year.

3. indūcē, -dūcre, -dūxi, -duc-tum, tr. (dūcō, lead), lead or draw on; induce, influence, instigate; cover.

4. coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f. [coniūrō, swear together], a swearing together; plot, conspiracy; secret league, confederacy.

5. nōbilitās, -tātis, f. [nōbilis, well known], celebrity; noble birth, nobility, rank; the nobility, the nobles.

3. faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, tr. and intr.: tr., make, construct, form, do, execute (commands, etc.); give (opportunity, etc.); with ut, bring about, cause: intr., do, act. Pass., fīō, fīerī, factus sum (App. 83), with passive of above meanings, and, used impersonally, result, happen, come to pass.

4. ut exīreō, -ire, -ii, -itum, intr. [ēō, go].

3. civitās, -tātis, f. [civis, citizen], citizenship; the citizens (as forming a community), state, city.

5. cōpia, -ae, f., supply, plenty, abundance, number; pl., resources, forces, troops.

4. cōpiis here includes the women and children.

5. perfacile esse . . . potīri is indirect discourse, depending on a verb of saying implied in persuāsit. Indirect discourse (App. 265) is very common in Caesar, and for this reason its essential principles should be grasped as soon as possible. No reference to details of the construction will be given in I, 1-29. The most essential fact to grasp is that when a declarative sentence is turned into indirect discourse the verb of the principal clause becomes an infinitive: App. 266: G.-L. 648: 650: A. 580, a: B. 314, 1, 2; H.-B. 589: H. 642, 1. This infinitive, however, cannot properly be translated by an English infinitive. In the present instance, what Orgetorix said was, perfacile est . . . potīri, “it is very easy to get control.” The est has become esse, but the English equivalent is “(saying) that it was very easy to get control.”

5. perfacile esse . . . potīri

6. perfacilis, -e, adj. [facilis, easy], very easy. 2.
imperīō potīrī. Id hoc facilius iis persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, qui agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dividit; alterā ex parto Monte Iūrā altissimō, qui est inter praestō, -stāre, -stīti, -stātum, tr. and intr. [stō, stand], stand or place before; show, exhibit, supply, furnish; be superior, excel, surpass; ĭmpers., praestat, it is better or more advisable. *

tōtus, -a, -um, gen. tōtīus (App. 32), adj., the whole, the whole of; entire, all; with force of adv., wholly, entirely. *

6. imperium, -ri, n. [imperō, command], command, order; authority, sway, supreme power, dominion, sovereignty; supreme military command, highest official power. *

potior, 4, intr. [potis, powerful], become master of, get control or possession of, obtain, capture. *

facile, adv. [facilis, easy], easily, readily. Comp., facilius; sup., facillimō (App. 41). *

undique, adv. [unde, whence], from all parts; on all sides, everywhere. *

7. locus, -i, m. (pl. loca, -ōrum, n.), place, position, locality, situation; topic, subject; condition; state; rank, family; opportunity; obsidium locō, as hostages. *

nātūra, -ae, f. [nāscor, be born], nature; natural disposition, character; constitution. *

ē (only before consonants), ex (before vowels and some consonants), prep. with abl., originally denoting motion out of; (1) of place, out of, from, away from; denoting position, in some phrases, on; ūnā ex parte, on one side; (2) of time, from, after, since; ex itinere, immediately after the march; (3) variously translated in other relations, from, out of, of, because of, in accordance with; ē regiōne, opposite. *

8. lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide, extensive. 4.

altus, -a, -um, adj., high, lofty; deep; neut. as noun, the deep, the sea. *

ager, agrī, m., field, land; district, territory. *

9. alter, -era, -erum, gen. alterius (App. 33), the other (of two); second; the one: alter ... alter, the one ... the other; altēri ... altēri, the one party ... the other. *

Iūra, -ae, m. (Cg), the Jura (jūrā) mountains. 3.
Séquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dividit. His rēbus fīebat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; quà ex parte hominēs bellandi cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem

10. lacus, -ūs, m., lake. 3. 

Lemannus, -ī (with or without lacus), m. (Cg.), Lake Lemannus (lē-mān’ūs), better, Lake Leman, or the Lake of Geneva. 3.

12. rēs, rel., f., of indefinite meaning; variously translated according to the context; thing, object, matter, event, affair, occurrence; circumstance, case; act, action, deed; reason, ground; rēs familiāris, property; rēs frūmentāria, supplies; rēs militāria, warfare; novae rēs, revolution; rēs pública, state; rēs āctae, deeds, achievements;quam ob rem, see qui and quis. * minus, adv. comp. [parvus, little], less; not at all, too little; quō minus, see quōminus. *

lātē, adv. [lātus, wide], widely, extensively; longē lātēque, far and wide. 4. 

vagor, 1. intr. [vagus, roaming], roam about, rove, wander. 4. 

finitimis, -a, -um, adj. [finis, limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; pl. as noun, neighbors. *

13. inferō, inferre, intuli, illātum, tr. [ferō, bear], bear into, import, inflict, cause, produce; cast into; in equum inferre, mount on a horse; causā illātā, making an excuse; signa inferre, advance the standards, attack. *

possum, posse, potui, —, (App. 80), intr. [potis, able=+sum, be], be able, can; to have power or influence, have strength, be strong; with quam and sup., as possible, e.g. quam plūrimās possunt, as many as possible; multum posse, plús posse, and plūrimum posse, see multum. *

homō, -inis, m., human being, man, as distinguished from the lower animals; in pl., mankind, humanity, men. *

bellō, 1. intr. [bellum, war], make or carry on war, wage war. 3.

14. cupidus, -a, -um, adj. [cupiō, desire], eager, desirous, zealous, fond. 2.

magnus, -a, -um, adj., great (in size, quantity, or degree), large, abundant, much; important, extensive; loud (voice); high (tide); magni (gen. sing. neut.), of great importance; magnis itineribus by forced marches. Comp., maior; sup., maximus. *

dolor, -ōris, m. [doleō, grieve], grief, distress, pain (physical or mental), vexation, annoyance. 3.

afficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, tr. [ad+faciō, do, to, treat, affect; magnō dolōre afficere, to annoy greatly. 3.

prō, prep. with abl. [cf. prae, before], before, in front of; for, in behalf of; on account of, in consideration of, in


14. prō . . . hominum, “considering the great size of the population.”
hominum et pró gloriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē in fines habēre arbitrābantur, qui in longitūdinem milia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

3. His rébus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī

return for; as, in the disguise of; in place of, instead of; in proportion to, according to; in compounds (written pró, pro, and prōd), for, before, forward, forth. *

multitūdō, -inis, f. [multus, much], a great number, multitude; the multitude, the common people, the populace. *

autem, conj. but (a weak adver- sative); however, on the other hand; now; moreover. *

15. gloria, -ae, f., glory, renown, honor, fame, reputation. 2.

fortitūdō, -inis, f. [fortis, brave], bravery, courage. 1.

angustus, -a, -um, adj. [angō, squeeze], compressed, confined, straitened, narrow; in angustō, in a critical condition. *

16. habēō, 2, tr., have, hold, possess; think, consider, regard; deliver (with orātīonem); in animō habēre, intend; ratiōnem habēre, have regard for; take care or see that (followed by an ut clause); consilium habēre, form a plan; in numerō hostium habēre, consider as enemies; aliter sē habēre, be otherwise or different; for habēre with pf. pass. part., e.g. vectigāla redempta habēre, see App. 286, b. *

arbitror, 1, tr. and intr. [arbiter, umpire], decide; think, believe. *

longitūdō, -inis, f. [longus, long], length, extent; long duration. 1.

mille, indecl. num. adj., a thou-
sand; pl. as noun, milia, -ium, n., thousands (usually followed by genitive); milia passuum, thousands of paces, miles. *

passus, -ūs, m. [pāndo, extend], a pace, the distance from where the foot leaves the ground to where the same foot strikes it again, a measure of 4 feet, 10 1-4 inches (five Roman feet); mille passūs or passuum, a Roman mile, 4851 feet. *

17. ducenti, -ae, -a (CC), card. num. adj. [duo, two + centum, hundred], two hundred. *

quadrāgintā (XL), card. num. adj., indecl., forty. 2.

lātitūdō, -inis, f. [lātus, wide], width, extent, breadth. *

centum (C), indecl. card. num., a hundred. 4.

octōgintā (LXXX), card. num. adj., indecl. [octō, eight], eighty. 3.

pateō, -ère, -ui, —, intr., lie or be open, be passable; stretch out, extend. 4.

1. addūcō, -düere, -düxi, -dūctum, tr. [dūcō, lead], lead or draw to, bring to; induce, influence. *

auctōritās, -tātis, f. [auctor, producer], influence, character, authority, reputation. *

permoveō, -moveō, -mōvi, -móvem, tr. [moveō, move], move thoroughly, arouse, incite, excite; affect, influence. *


angustōs finēs, “(too) narrow limits.” finēs: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404. Caesar has somewhat overstated the size of Helvetia, because he had to depend on the reports of the Gauls. It comprised rather more than half of modern Switzerland. According to chap. 29 the population was 263,000, while Switzerland now has a population of about 3,000,000.

cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinent comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cópia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnfiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxē-

2. cōnstituō, -stītuerē, -stītui, -stītūtum, tr. [statūō, set up], set up, erect, construct; appoint, decide, decree, determine, establish, set, settle; (of troops) draw up, station; (of ships) anchor, station; raise (a legion). *
proficiscor, proficiscē, profectus sum, intr. [cf. prōficio, advance], set out, start, depart; set out for, start for; go, proceed. *
comparō, 1, tr. [parō, prepare], prepare, get ready; acquire, gain, secure; prepare for. *

3. iūmentum, -ī, n. [lōnō, join, yoke], yoke or draft animal, beast of burden. 2.
carrus, -ī, m., cart. *
quam, (1) adv., (a) interrog., how? (b) rel., as; with sup. and with or without posse, as ... as possible, very; quam diū, as long as; (2) conj. with comp., than; prius ... quam, before; post ... quam, posteā ... quam, after. *
maximum, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of magnus, great. App. 42], greatest, largest. *

numerus, -ī, m., number, quantity, amount; account; in numerō, with gen., among, as. *
coēmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, tr. [emō, buy], buy, buy up. 1.
sēmentis, -is, f. [sēmen, seed], sowing. 1.
iter, itineris, n. [ēō, go], route, road; journey, march; passage; facere iter, march, travel; magnīs itineribus, by forced marches. *
frūmentum, -ī, n., grain; pl., crops. *
suppetō, -petere, -petīvi, -petītum, intr. [sub+petō, seek, obtain], be near or at hand; be in store, be supplied, hold out. 2.
pāx, pācis, f., peace; favor. 2.
amīcitia, -ae, f. [amicus, friend], friendship. *
cōnfirmō, 1, tr. [fīrmō, strengthen], establish, strengthen, encourage, console; declare, assert. *

6. cōnfiō, -ficere,-feci, -fectum, tr. [faciō, make], make or do thoroughly, complete, accomplish, finish; finish

Chap. 3. The Helvetii make preparations. Orgetorix conspires with other chiefs.

comparāre, coēmere, facere, cōnfirmāre all depend on cōnstituērunt; “they decided to get ready ... to buy ... to sow ... , and to establish ...”

quam maximum numerum, “as great a number as possible” or “as many ... as possible.”


5. cum ... cōnfirmāre: although the Helvetii were warlike they wished to march peaceably while encumbered with their women and children and baggage train.

6. ad ... cōnfiendās, lit. “for these things to be completed” = “for completing these preparations.” Study
runt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfirmantr. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendiās Orgetorix dēlīgitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suspicit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedes filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et a senātū populī Rōmānī amicus appellātus

up, exhaust, weaken; furnish; dress (leather). *

biennium, -nī, n. [bis, twice+annus, year], two years. 1.
satis, adv. and indecl. adj. and noun; (1) as adv., enough, sufficiently; rather; very; well; (2) as adj., sufficient; (3) as noun, enough. *
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, tr., lead, conduct, guide, draw; bring, fetch; trace, construct, extend; deem, consider, judge; protract, defer. *

7. annus, -ī, m., year. *
profectiō, -ōnis, f. [proficiscor, set out], a setting out, start, departure. 3.

8. dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, tr. [legō, choose], pick out, select, choose. *
lēgatiō, -ōnis, f. [lēgō, delegate], embassy,legation;commission. *
suscipīō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,

carefully this very general gerundive construction: App. 288; 293: G.-L. 427; 432: A. 506; 506: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, III: H. 623; 628. Compare with it the gerund in l. 2. Notice that ad governs rēs and that cōnficiendās is an adjective in agreement with rēs. App. 157: G.-L. 289: A. 286: B. 234: H.-B. 320: H. 394. But cōnficiendās must be translated as if it were a verbal noun (gerund) governing rēs as its object.


biennium... dūxērunt, "they judged that two years were sufficient." Dūcō with this meaning is followed by indirect discourse: cf. 2, 5. The Helvetiī intended to spend the years 60 and 59 in preparation and to leave home in the spring of 58.
erat, ut rēgnum in civitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgi Haeduō, frātrī Diviciāci, quī cē tempore principātum in civitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plebī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eique filiam suam

the crowd, as opposed to individuals; a people or nation. *

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj. [Rōma, Rome], Roman; as noun, a Roman. *

amicus, -a, -um, adj. [amō, love], friendly, well disposed; devoted; as noun, a friend, an ally. *

12. occupō, 1, tr. [ob+capiō, take], take possession of, seize, occupy; engage, employ. *

ante, (1) adv., before, above, previously; (2) prep. w. acc., before, in advance of. *

13. item, adv., in like manner, so, also, just so. *

Dumnorīx, -īgis, m., Dumnorīx (dūm'nō-riks), a Haeduan chief-tain, brother of Diviciācūs. *

Haedūs, -a, -um, adj. (Cef), of the Haedui (hēd'ū-i); Haeduān; as noun, a Haeduan; pl., the Haedui, possibly Haeduans, one of the most powerful of the Gallic tribes. *

frāter, -tris, m., brother. *

Diviciācūs, -ī, m., Diviciācūs (div'i-

right, but it is very likely to be wrong. "Obtained" would be wrong here.


amicus: an honorary title often granted to foreign states or chiefs by the Roman Senate in recognition of special services or to attach them to Roman interests.

12. ut occupāret, "to seize." This clause is the object of persuādet in 1.10: mode? App. 226, a: G.-L. 546, 1, 2: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, a: H. 563, 1; 565. Cf. ut suppeteret, 1.4, which is not used as an object.

13. Dumnorīgi: younger than Diviciācūs, and a bold leader of the anti-Roman party among the Haeduān.

Haeduō: the Haeduān were the rivals of the Sequani for the leadership among the Gallic states. See map, and Int. 29.

quī: i.e. Dumnorīx.


principātum, "the leading position"; but he was not a magistrate.


15. ut idem cōnārētur, "to attempt the same thing"; i.e. attempt to overthrow the constitutional government and make himself king.

in matrimonium dat. Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: Nōn esse dubium quin tōtius Galliae plurimum Helvētiī possent: sē suīs cópiōs suīque exercītū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfirmat. Hāc oратīōne adducti inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum

16. mātrīmōnium, -nī, n. [māter, mother], marriage, wedlock, matrimony; in mātrīmōnium dare, to give in marriage; in mātrīmōnium dūcere, to marry (said of the man). 2.

do, dare, dedi, datum (App. 85), tr., give, bestow, present, grant, furnish; offer; yield, give up; in fugam dare, put to flight; dare manūs, yield; dare negōtium, with dat., employ, engage, direct. (Some compounds of dō are derived from an obsolete verb. dō, put). 4.

ille, illa, illud, gen. illius, dat. illī (App. 56), dem. pron. (of what is remote in time, place, thought, etc., cf. hic), that, that man, woman, or thing; he, she, it; hic . . . ille, the latter . . . the former, see App. 170, a. 4.

probō, 1, tr. [probus, good], consider good, approve; prove, show, demonstrate. 3.

cōnātum, -ātum, n. [cōnāre, try], attempt, undertaking. 1.

17. perficēo, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [faciō, make, do], make or do thoroughly or completely, complete, finish; construct, build; achieve, accomplish, cause. *

18. nōn (App. 188, a), adv., not; no. *
dubius, -a, -um, adj., uncertain, doubtful. 1.

quin, conj. [qui, who or how+ne, negative], that not, but that; after negative words of doubt or hindrance, but that, that, from, to; quīn etiam, nay even, moreover. *

multum, adv. [acc. of multus, much], much, very, greatly, especially; comp. plūs, more; plūs posse, be more able or powerful, have more influence; nāp. plurimum, most, very; plurimum posse, be most powerful; be very powerful or influential. *

19. exercitus, -ūs, m. [exercēō, train], a trained or disciplined body of men, an army. *

conciliō, 1, tr. [concilium, assembly], bring together; gain or win over, secure; reconcile, conciliate. 1.

20. ērātīō, -ōnīa, f. [ōrō, speak], a speaking, speech, language, words, address, argument. *

fidēs, -ei, f. [fidō, confide], faith, con-

16. perfacile . . . perficere, lit. “he shows to them to accomplish the attempts to be very easy to do [faciē, the supine]” = “he showed them that it was very easy to carry out the undertaking.” esse: cf. 2, 5.

17. propterea quod obtentūrus esset, lit. “because he was about to seize upon” = “because he intended to seize upon.” The clause is causal, like propterea quod absuēnt in 1, 6; but the subjunctive is used because it is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. The second important fact about indirect discourse (cf. 2, 5) is that all subordinate verbs which in the direct form were either indicative or subjunctives must be subjunctives in the indirect form: App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1; H.-B. 554, 2, l; 535, 2; H. 643.

18. nōn . . . quīn, “(he proved that) there was no doubt that.”

19. sē illīs conciliātūrum (sc. esse), “that he would win for them.” Esse is usually omitted from the future infinitive.

illīs: i.e. for Casticus and Dumnorix.

20. hāc ōrātīōne, “by this argument.”

inter sē, “to one another.”
dant et, régno occupátō, per trés potentissimós ac firmissimós populós tótius Galliae sécē potirī posse spērant.

4. Ea rés est Helvētiis per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculis causam dicere \ coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut ignī cremārētur. Diē

fidence; faithfulness, loyalty, trustworthiness; allegiance, protection, dependence; pledge, assurance; fidem facere, convince, give a pledge; fidēm sequī, surrender. *

īus iūrandūm, iūris iūrandī, n. (īus, right + iūro, swear), an oath. *

21. per, prep. with acc., through, throughout; by means of, through the agency of, on account of, through the efforts or influence of; per sē, of their own accord, on their own responsibility; sometimes with intensive force, in itself, themselves; in composition, through, very, thoroughly, completely. *

potēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of possum, be able], powerful, influential. 4.

firmus, -a, -um, adj., strong, stable, vigorous, firm. 3.

spērō, 1, tr. [spēs, hope], hope, hope for, anticipate. 2.

1. indicium,-ī, n. [indicō, disclose], disclosure, information; per indicium, through informers. 1.

ēnūntiō, 1, tr. [nūntiō, announce], report, declare, disclose. *

21. rēgnō occupātō potirī posse spērant, "they hoped that after they had seized the royal power [each in his own land] they could get control of."


per trés populōs: i.e. the Helvetii, the Sequani, and the Haedui.


mōs, mōris, m., manner, custom, practice; pl., customs, habits; character. *

2. vinculum, -ī, n. [vincīō, bind], bond, fetter, chain. 3.

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, tr. [co + agō, lead], lead or bring together, collect, draw together, assemble; force, compel, constrain. *

3. damnō, 1, tr. [damnum, damage], declare guilty, sentence, condemn. 1.

poena, -ae, f., punishment, penalty. 3.

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, tr. and intr., follow, follow after, pursue; accompany, attend; follow in point of time; with poena, be inflicted; fidem sequī, seek the protection. *

opportet, -ēre, -uit, —, intr. imper., it is necessary, needful, becoming, proper; when translated as personal verb, must, ought. *

ignis, -is, m., fire. 4.

cremō, 1, tr., burn. 2.

diēs, -ēi, m. and f., day; time; in diēs, from day to day; diem ex diē, day after day. *


Chap. 4. Orgetorix is tried for conspiracy, but escapes. His sudden death.

1. ea rés, "this conspiracy."


2. ex vinculis, "in chains." Cf. note on 1, 15.

3. damnātum . . . cremārētur, lit. "it was necessary for the punishment to
cónstitútā causae dictiónis Orgetoríx ad iūdicium omnem suam famíliam, ad hóminum milia decem, undique coëgit, et 5 omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quàrum magnum numérum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, né causam diceret, sé éripuit. Cum cívītās ob eam rem incitāta armiss iūs suum exsequī cónārētur, multitūdinemque hóminum ex agris

4. dictió, -ōnis, f. [dicō, say], speaking, pleading. 1.
   iūdicium, -oi, n. [iūdex, judge], judicial proceedings, trial; opinion, judgment; iūdicium facere, express an opinion; iūdīciō, by design, purposely. 4.

5. familia, -ae, f., household (including slaves); retinue (including all dependents); family. 2. decem (X), indecl. card. num., ten. *

6. cliēns, -entis, m., f. [clueō, hear, obey], client, vassal, dependent, retainer. 3.
   obaerātus, -a, -um, adj. [aes, money], in debt; as noun, debtor. 1.

7. eōdem, adv. [old dative of idem], to the same place, to the same point (result, end, etc.). *
   condúcērī, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr. [ducō, lead], lead or bring together, assemble; conduct; hire. 4.

   nē (App. 158, b), (1) conj. with subj., that . . . not, so that . . . not, in order that . . . not, lest; after verbs of fearing, that, lest: (2) adv., not; nē . . . quidem [enclosing the emphatic word], not even. *

8. éripō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, tr. [rapī, seize], wrest or take away, extort, deprive; rescue, relieve, save. *
   ob, prep. with acc., on account of, for; in compounds, opposed to, to, toward, against; quam ob rem, wherefore, why. *
   incitō, 1, tr. [citō, put in motion], set in motion; incite, arouse, urge on, stimulate; exasperate; cursū incitātō, at full speed. *
   arma, -ōrum, n. pl., arms; equipment; by metonymy, battle, war. *
   iūs, iūris, n., right, justice, law; rights; power, authority. *

9. exsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, tr. [sequor, follow], follow out, enforce. 1.

follow (him) condemned that he should be burned with fire" = "if condemned it was necessary that the punishment of being burned be inflicted upon him."


5. ad, "about."

6. obaerātōs: those who had become slaves on account of debt.

7. per eōs, "by their help."


8. cum cónārētūr . . . -que magis-trātūs cōgerent, "when the state was attempting . . . and the magistrates were collecting": mode? App. 240, 242, a: G.-L. 585: A. 546, notes 1, 2, 3: B. 288, b: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II, 1.
magistratūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētii arbitrātur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnsicērīt.

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētii id quod constituenter facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant: Ubi iam se ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum

10. magistrātus, -ūs, m. [magister, master], public officer, magistracy; public officer, magistrate. *

morior, mori, mortuus sum, intr. [mors, death], die. 2.

neque (nec) (App. 188, a), conj. [ne-que], and not, not, nor; but not: neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor. *

11. suspicio,-onis, f. [suspicor, suspect], suspicion, distrust; cause for suspicion; indication, appearance. *

mors, -tis, f., death; sibi mortem cōnsicēscere, commit suicide. 4.

12. cōnsicēscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scītum, tr. [sciscō, resolve], resolve upon; sibi mortem cōnsicēscere, commit suicide. 2.

1. post, adv., and prep. with acc. (1) as adv., later, afterwards; (2) as prep., behind, after; post tergum or post sē, in the rear. *

nihilō, adv., by no means; nihilō minus, nevertheless; nihilō sētius, none the less, nevertheless. 3.

11. ut with the indicative usually means either “as,” or “when.”

quīn . . . cōnsicērīt, “that he committed suicide.”

Chap. 5-8. Caesar thwarts the efforts of the Helvetii to cross the Rhone and march through the Roman Province.

Chap. 5. The Helvetii burn their dwellings and secure allies.


2. ubi, adv. (1) of place, in which place, where; (2) of time, when, whenever; as soon as; ubi primum, as soon as. *

iam, adv., now, at this time; already, by this time, at last; really, indeed, even; neque iam or iam nōn, no longer; ubi iam, as soon as. *

3. parō, 1, tr., prepare, get ready; procure, acquire; prepare for, get ready for; parātus, pf. part. as adj., ready, prepared; equipped. *

oppidum, -i, n., fortified town, town, stronghold. *

4. duodecim, card. num. adj. [duo, two + decem, ten], twelve. 2.

vicus, -i, m., hamlet, village. *

quadringenti, -ae, -a, card. num. adj., four hundred. 2.

privātus, -a, -um, adj., private, personal, individual; as noun, person, individual. 3.

5. aedificium, -cī, n. [aedificō, build], building, house. *

incendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēn-

ut exeānt, “(namely) to go forth,” is a substantive volitive (or purpose) clause in apposition with id.

3. ad eam rem, “for the enterprise.”

parātōs is the adjective.

esse, “were”: indirect discourse.

oppida, vicōs, aedificia: notice the absence of conjunctions, and cf. note on 1, 3.


ad, “about.”

portātūri erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōres ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādēnt Rauracēs et Tulingis et Latobrigīs, fīnitimīs, utī eōdem ūsi

War With the Helvetii, B.C. 58

sum, tr. [cf. candēō, shine], set fire to, fire, burn; inflame, excite. * praeterquām, adv., besides, except 1. portō, 1, tr., carry, transport, bring, take. 3. combūrö, -ārere, -ussi, -ustum, tr. [com(b)+ur6, burn], burn up. 1. domus, -ūs (App. 29, d), f., house; home; native country. * reditiō, -ōnis, f. [redeō, return], return. 1. spēs, -ei, f., hope, anticipation, expectation. * tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublātum, tr., lift, elevate: take on board; take away, remove; do away with; destroy; cancel; sublātus, pf. part. as adj., elated. *

7. periculum, -ī, n., trial, test, attempt; risk, danger, peril. * subeō, -ire, -ii, -itum, tr. [eō, go]. App. 84], come or go under, come up to, come up; undergo, endure. 4. mēnsis, -is, m., month. 3. molō, -ere, -ui, -itum, tr. [cibus, food]. cibārius, -a, -um, adj. pertaining to food; n. pl. as noun, provisions; molita cibāria, meal, flour. 2. quisque, quidque, and quisque, quaeque, quodque, universal indef. pron. (App. 62), each one, each; every one, all. *

efferō, efferre, extulli, ēlātum, tr. [ex+fērō, carry. App. 81], bring or carry out, carry or take away; raise; spread or publish abroad, make known; elate, puff up. 2. iubeō, iubère, iussi, iussum, tr., order, bid, command, enjoin. *

9. Rauracē, -orum, m. (Cg), the Rauracē (raw’re-si). 2. Tulingi, -orum, m. (Cgh), the Tulingi (tū’lin’ji), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. 4. Latobrigī, -orum, m. (Bh), the Latobrigī (lāt’o-brī’ji), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. 3.

Ātor, ātī, āsus sum, intr., make use of, employ, use, avail one’s self of, exercise; have, enjoy, experience, possess, show; adopt, accept; āsus, pf. part. often translated with. *

6. portātūri erant, lit. “they were about to take” = “they intended to take.” ut essent is a purpose clause.


spē sublātā: translate the ablative absolute by a temporal clause.


Napoleon III estimates that 8,500 wagons, drawn by 34,000 draft animals, were needed to transport the necessary provisions and baggage of the Helvetian host; even this is probably an underestimate.


cōnsiliō, oppidīs suis vicīisque exustīs, ūnā cum iīs pro-
ficiscantur; Bōiolique, qui trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in
agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnābant, receptōs
ad sē sociōs sibi asciscunt.

6. Erant omninō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exire

cōnsilium, -ī, n., consultation, deliberation; counsel, advice; plan, de-
sign; measure, course of action; judgment; prudence, wisdom; an assembly for
deliberation, council, council of war; cōnsiliō, by, or in accordance with,
general action; cōnsiliō, by action of the state; cōnsilium cap-
ere or inire, form or adopt a plan; cōnsilium habēre, think, consider.

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussi, -ustum, tr. [ūrō, burn], burn up. 1.
ūnā, adv. [ūnus, one], (1) of place, together, along with, in one place; (2) of
time, together, along with, at the same time, also. *

11. Boii, -ūrōrum, m. (Ce), the Boii
(bōyi), a Celtic tribe once very powerful in
southern Germany and Cisalpine Gaul. Those who joined the
Helvetii were afterwards settled by Caesar as indicated on the

12. Nōricus, -a, -um, adj., pertaining to
Noricum (a country between the Danube and the Alps), Norican.

Boii is the object of asciscunt:
390: H. 404.

12. receptōs . . asciscunt, lit.
"the Boii, received to themselves [ad sē], they admit to themselves [sibi] as
allies" = "they received among their people and joined to themselves as associates the Boii, who had," etc.


As explained in the notes on 1, 1, each
of the most common principles of syntax is referred to three times in the notes on
1, 1-29. At the end of the chapter in which the third reference to any construc-
tion has been given, attention is
called to the fact; and if the pupil has not yet mastered the construction he
should do so immediately.

Third References:
Direct object
Ablative of specification

Chap. 6. The Helvetii decide to
march through the Roman Province.

1. erant, "there were."
quibus itineribus, "by which." Cae-
ser sometimes repeats the antecedent in the
relative clause, where English usage
requires its omission. Case? App. 144:
G.-L. 389: A. 429, a: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426,
a: H. 476.
quibus . . possent, "by which they
possent: unum per Sêquanôs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iûram et flûmen Rhodanum, vix quâ singuli carri dûcerentur; môn autem altissimus impendebat, ut facile perpauci prohibère possent: alterum per prôvinciam nostram, multò facilius atque expeditius, proptereà quod inter fines Helvêtîorum et Allobrogum, qui nûper pâcâtî erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque non nûllis locis vadô transtitur. Extrêmum oppidum

2. difficilis, -e, adj. [facilis, easy], not easy, hard, troublesome, difficult. 3.
3. vix, adv., with difficulty, barely, hardly, scarcely. 4.
4. quă, adv. [abl. fem. of qui], by which way or road; in which place, where. *
5. singuli, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., one each, one at a time, single, separate; each; every; the several; in annôs singulôs, annually. *
6. impendêô, -pendère, —, —, intr. [in-]pendêô, hang, overhang, impend. 2.
7. perpauci, -ae, -a, adj. [pauci, few], very few, but very few; m. pl. as noun, very few. 4.
8. multò, adv. [abl. of multus, much], by far, much. 4.

facilis, -e, adj. [faciô, do], easy.
4. expeditus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of expediô, set free], unimpeded, free, unobstructed; without baggage; light armed; as noun, a light armed soldier. *
7. Allobrogês, -um, m. (Dsg), the Allobroges (âlôbrôjêz), a powerful Gallic people in the Province. *
8. fluô, fluere, fluxî, —, intr., flow, run. 2.

vadum, -i, n., ford, shallow. *

2. unum (iter) and alterum (iter) are appositives of itinera duo; App. 95, b: G.-L. 330: A. 281; 282, a: B. 109, 1, 2, 5: H.-B. 317, 2; 319, 1, a: H. 393, 4. Study the two routes on the map, p. 70. The one involved passing through Pas de l'Écluse, the other involved crossing the Rhone.
3. vix: notice its emphatic position before the relative, and cf. note on quae pertinent. 1, 8.
4. dûcerentur, "could be drawn." This is another subjunctive of characteristic, but it differs from possent in that here the subjunctive mode has the potential meaning "could": App. 230, c: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 517, 2. The place referred to is Pas de l'Écluse; see map, p. 70.

5. prohibère: sc. eôs.
7. nûper pâcâtî erant: in 61 B.C., after a desperate struggle to regain their independence.

vadô transtitur, lit. "is crossed by a ford" = "is fordable."
extrêmum: i.e. it is on the northern frontier.
Allobrogum est proximumque Helvetiorum finibus Genava.  

9. Genava, -ae, f. (Cg), Genava (jēn'ə-və), a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva. 3.
10. pōns, pontis, m., bridge. *
11. nōndum, adv. [nōn, not+duum], not yet. *

12. videō, vidēre, vīdi, visum, tr., see, perceive, observe, examine, understand; see to, take care; in pass., be seen; seem, appear; seem proper, seem best. *
existimō, 1, tr. [aestimō], estimate, reckon, think, consider. *
vel, conj. and adv. (1) as conj., or; vel . . . vel, either . . . or; (2) as adv., even. *
vis, vis (App. 27), f., force, might, energy, strength; violence, severity; authority, power; a force, a great number; pl., virēs, strength, force; vim facere, use violence. *
13. eō, ire, ī (īvi), itum (App. 84), intr., go, proceed, march, pass. *
patior, pati, passus sum, tr. and intr., endure, withstand, suffer; permit, allow. *
14. ripa, -ae, f., bank (of a stream). *
15. conveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ven-

ut paterentur is a substantive volatile (or purpose) clause, the object of both persuasūrōs and coāctūrōs.
13. omnibus rēbis comparātīs, "when they had made everything ready."
quā dīē omnēs conveniēnt, "on which they should all assemble."
15. a. d. V. Kal. April. = ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilēs = dīē quīntō ante Kalendās Aprilēs. The former phrase is idiomatic but can not be parsed. In all such reckonings the Romans counted both ends, while we count but one. The date here meant is the twenty-eighth of March, which we should consider the fourth day before the
7. Caesari cum id nüntiätum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnāri, mātūrat ab urbe proficiscī, et quam maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest

tum, tr. and intr. [venīō, come], come together, assemble; convene, meet; come to, arrive; be agreed upon; impersonal, be convenient, suitable, necessary. *

quintus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [quinque, five], fifth. 3.

Kal., abbr. for Kalendae, -ārum, f., the Calends, the first day of the Roman month. 1.

Aprilī, abbr. for Aprilīs, -e, adj., of April, April 2.

L., abbr. for Lūcius, Lūcius (lū/-shyūs), a Roman praenomen. *

Pisō, -ōnis, m., Lūcius Calpurnius Piso (lū/-shyūs kāl-pēr'ni-ūs pi'sō), Caesar's father-in-law, consul 58 B.C. 2.

A., abbr. for Aulus (aw'lūs), a Roman praenomen. 1.

16. Gabinius, -nī, m., Aulus Gabinius

first of April, instead of the fifth. L. Pisōne . . . consulibus: cf. note on 2, 2.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Apposition
Purpose clauses

Chap. 7. Caesar hastens to Gaul and delays the Helvetii by a pretext.

1. Caesari: he had been consul in the year 59, and at the end of his year of office he had immediately become proconsul of Gaul. See Int. 11, 12. He was at this time near Rome, preparing to leave for his province. The news merely hastened his movements.


2. ab urbe, "from [near] the city," instead of ex urbe, because one who held a military command could not legally be in the city.

quam maximīs potest itineribus, lit. "by [as great] day's journeys as the greatest he can" = "by as long day's journeys as possible." quam maximīs itineribus would have meant the same thing. These two idioms are very common in Caesar. We learn from Plutarch that Caesar traveled about ninety miles a day. itineribus: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 290, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

3. ulteriōrem = trānsalpīnam, "beyond the Alps" from Rome.


prōvinclae imperat, "he levied upon the province."
militum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem qui erat ad Genavam iubet rescindī. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvēttiī certiorēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, nōbilissimōs cīvitātīs, cuius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinēbant, qui dicerent sībi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut eius

5. miles, -itis, m., soldier, private soldier; infantry (opposed to equītēs); militēs imperāre, levy soldiers up-
on. *

imperō, 1, tr. and intr. [in+parō, procure], demand from, enjoin or levy upon; command, order, instruct, rule. *

6. legiō, -ōnis, f. [legō, choose], a legion. *

rescindō, -scindere, -scīdī, -scis-
sum, tr. [re+scindō, cleave], cut away or down, break down, destroy. 2.

7. adventus, -ūs, m. [veniō, come], coming, arrival, approach. *

certus, -a, -um, adj. [for crētus, pf. part. of cernō], decided; certain, sure, fixed; certiōrem facere, to inform (acc. and inf.); order (ut or nē and subj.); certior fieri, be informed. *

lēgātus, -i, m. [lēgō, delegate], one with delegated powers; ambassador, envoy, legate; lieutenant, legatus. *

8. mittē, mittere, misī, missum, tr., send, send off, dismiss, let go, dispatch; hurl, discharge. *

Nammēius, -i, m., Nammētus (nā-mē’ tus). 1.

9. Verucloetius, -tī, m., Verucloetius (vĕrū’kloâ’ti’shūs), an Helvētian envoy, sent to Caesar. 1.

princeps, -ipīs, adj. [primus, first]+
capiō, take], taking the first place; chief, most prominent, first; as noun, chief or principal person, leader, chief. *

10. sine, prep. with abl., without. *

āllus, -a, -um, gen., āllius (App. 32), adj., a single, any; as noun, any one, anybody. *

maleficium, -ci, n. [malum, evil+ faciō, do], evil doing, mischief, harm, injury. 4.

11. nūllus, -a, -um, gen., nūllius, adj. [ne+āulus, any], not any, no; as noun, no one, none; nōn nūllus, some; as noun, some, some persons. *

rogō, 1, tr., ask; request, ask for. *


5. legiō: this was the tenth, afterwards Caesar’s favorite legion. On the organization of a legion see Int. 33.

7. certiōres factī sunt, lit. “were made more certain” = “were informed.”


8. nōbilissimōs: used as a noun.

9. qui dicerent, “who were to say”

="to say": a relative clause of purpose.


11. quod habērent is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Cf. 3, 17.

rogāre (sc. sē), “that they asked.” The speakers said to Caesar rogāmus, “we ask.”

ut sibi liceat, “that it be permitted them” or “that they be allowed.” For mode see App. 228, a: G.-L. 546, 1: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 550, 2: H. 563, 1; 565.

eius: i.e. Caesar’s.
voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoria tenēbat
L. Cassium cōnsulem occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvētīis
pulsum et sub iugum missum, concédendum nōn putābat;
neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvincia

12. voluntās, -tātis, f. [volō, wish], wish, will, desire, inclination; good will,
favor; consent, approval. *
licet, licēre, licuit and licitum est,
intr., impers., it is lawful, one has permission,
it is permitted, one may, one is allowed; licet mihi, I may; petere ut
liceat, to ask permission. *
memoria, -ae, f. [memor, mindful],
the faculty of memory; recollection,
memory, remembrance; tradition;
memoriā tenēre, remember; patrum me-
moriā, in the time of our fathers. *
teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentum, tr.,
hold, keep, occupy, possess, hold possession
of; hold in, restrain, bind; sé
tenēre, remain; memorīa tenēre, re-
member. *

13. Cassius, -sī, m., Lucius Cassius
Longinus (lū'şh'yūs kāsh'yūs lōn-gi'nūs),
consul 107 B.C., slain in battle by the
Tigurini. 3.
occidō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, tr. [ob+caedo, cut, slay], cut down, kill,
slay. *
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum,

tr., beat, defeat, rout; drive out, ex-
pel. *
sub, prep. with acc. and abl. (1) With
acc., (a).with verbs of motion, under, be-
neath; up to: (b) of time, just at, about,
toward. (2) With abl., (a) of position,
under; beneath; toward, near to; at the
foot or base of: (b) of time, during, with-
in: in compounds, sub or subs, under;
up, away; from beneath; secretly; in
succession; slightly. *
iugum, -i, n. [lungō, join], yoke;
ridge, crest. *
concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,
tr. and intr. [cēdō, go], go away, depart,
withdraw; grant, yield, allow, permit. *
putō, 1, tr., think, consider, believe. *
inimicus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+ami-
cus, friendly], unfriendly, hostile; as
noun, an enemy (personal), rival, to be
distinguished from hostis, a public en-
emy. 3.
facultās, -tātis, f. [old adj., facul-
facilis, easy), power; opportunity,
chance; resources, supply. *

12. voluntāte is an ablative of ac-
cordance.
tenēbat: mode? App 244: G.-L. 540:
A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H.588, I.
13. occisum, pulsum, 'missum are
perfect passive infinitives in indirect
discourse, and depend on memoriā tenē-
bat, which is equivalent to a verb of
knowing. The perfect infinitive repres-
ts the action as past at the time of
tenēbat; “that Lucius Cassius had been
slain,” etc.
14. sub iugum, “under the yoke.”
This “yoke” was made of three spears,
two planted in the ground and the third
fastened across them at a suitable
height. Under this the soldiers of the
captured army were compelled to pass,
in token of submission and degradation.

concēdendum (esse), “that permission
ought to be granted.”
15. hominēs temperātūrōs (esse),
“that men would refrain.” The future
infinitive shows that a future indicative
was used in the direct form. Caesar
thought nōn temperābunt, “they will not
refrain.”
datā facultāte may be translated by a
conditional clause; “if an opportunity
should be given.”
itineris faciendi, temperaturōs ab iniuriā et maleficio existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum militēs quōs imperāverat convenirent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad deliberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Íd. April.

reverterentur.

16. temperō, 1, intr., restrain or control one's self, refrain; temperātus, a, n. part. as adj., temperate, mild. 2.

iniuria, -ae, f. [in-+iūs, right], wrong; injustice; outrage, injury, harm, violence. *

17. tamen, adv. (opposed to some expressed or implied concession), yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still, however; at least. *

spatium, -tī, n., space, distance, extent, length of space; period or length of time, hence time, opportunity. *

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessā, -cessum, intr. [cēdō, go], go or come between, lie between, intervene, be between; pass. 4.

dum, conj., while, as long as; till, until. *

18. respondēō,-spōndere,-spōndi,-spōnsum, tr. and intr. [spōndeō, promise], reply, answer. *

dēliberō, 1, tr. [librā, balance], weigh well; consider, deliberate. 2.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmptum, tr. [sub+emō, take], take away, take; assume; with supplicium, inflict; with labor, spend. *

sī, conj., if, if perchance; to see whether or if; whether; quod sī, but if, now if. *

quīs, quid, 'and qui, quae, quod (App. 61 and 62), (1) interrog. pron., who? which? what? quam ob rem, why? quem ad modum, how? (2) indef. pron., especially after sī, nisi, né, num, any one, anything, any; somebody, something, some. *

volō, velle, volui, — (App. 82). tr. and intr., wish, be willing, want, desire; prefer, choose; intend; mean; quid sibi velit, what did he intend or mean? *

Ídūs, -uum, f., pl., the Ides: the 15th of March, May, July and October, and the 13th of other months. 1.

20. revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, intr., used almost exclusively in the perfect tenses, and revertor, -vertī, -versus sum, intr., used in the tenses direct form. Caesar said sī quid vultis, revertimini, "if you want anything, come again." The third (cf. 2, 5 and 3, 17) important fact about indirect discourse is that all imperatives of the direct form become subjunctives in the indirect form: App. 267: G.-L. 652: A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 642.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Predicate nouns and adjectives
Agreement of adjectives
Partitive genitive
Subject of infinitive
Substantive volitive (or purpose) clause
Causal clauses with quod, etc.
Infinitive in indirect discourse
Gerund
Gerundive
formed on the present stem [re-+vertō, turn], turn back, come back, return. *

1. intereā, adv., in the meantime, meanwhile. 4.

3. influō, -fuere, -flūxi, —, intr. [flūō, flow], flow into, empty into. *

4. undēvīgintī (XIX), card. num. adj., indecl. ( unus, one+ dē, from+ vīgintī, twenty), nineteen, twenty; indecl., one.

mūrus, -i, m., a wall. *

altītūdō, -inis, f. [altus, high, deep], height; depth; thickness (of timber). *

5. pēs, pedis, m., the foot; a foot, 11.65 inches in length; pedibus, on foot; pedem referre, retreat. *

sēdecim (XVI), card. num. adj., indecl., sixteen.

fossa, -ae, f. [pf. part. fem. of fodīō, dig], trench, ditch. *

perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr. [dūcō, lead], lead through or along, conduct, bring over, bring; construct, extend; influence, win over; draw out, prolong. 4.

opus, operis, n., work, labor; military work or works, fortifications, defenses; a work of engineering or architecture; nāturā et opere, by nature and art; opera, crafts. *

praesidium, -dī, n. [praesideō, guard], guard, garrison; safeguard, protection; fortification, stronghold; help, aid; safety. *

6. dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuí, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], place apart or about; distribute, arrange, station.

castellum, -i, n. [castrum, fort], fortress, redoubt. *

commāniō, 4, tr. [mūniō, fortify], fortify strongly, intertrench.

quō, conj. [abl. case form of quī, who, who, whom].

Chap. 8. Caesar prevents the Helvetii from crossing the Rhone.


2. a lacū . . . ad montem: see map, p. 70.


milia passuum XIX = about 17½ English miles. This is the distance from the lake to Pas de l'Écluse, following the windings of the river. Caesar's plain statement is that he constructed a wall and a trench nineteen miles in length. Napoleon III believed that the banks of the river were so steep for most of the distance that no artificial fortifications were needed, and the map on p. 70 shows the only places where he believed that Caesar constructed the wall and trench—a total of about three miles. Napoleon's view is generally accepted, but there are good grounds for doubting its correctness.

in altītūdinem pedum sēdecim, lit. "of sixteen feet into height" = "sixteen feet high."

pedum: App. 100: G.-L. 355, 2: A. 345, b: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3. The "section of Caesar's wall," set into the map, p. 70, makes clear the method of constructing this wall. The top of the bank was cut down so as to make a steep front sixteen feet high: this was the mūrus. The earth which was dug out was simply thrown down the hill. A line of palisades was set on top, to serve as a breastwork for the Roman soldiers.

6. dispōnit, "stationed at several points." Caesar had too few men to man the entire line. He therefore sta-
cōnārentur, prohibēre posset. Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat
cum lēgātīs vēnit et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre
et exemplō populi Rōmānī posse iter ūlli per provinciam dare;
et, si vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētī

which], in order that, so that, that. *
invitus, -a, -um, adj., against one’s wish or will, unwilling, reluctant; sē
invitō, against his will. *
8. veniō, venire,vēni,ventum,intr.,
come, arrive, go, advance; in spem
venire, have hopes; pass. often imper.,
as ventum est, they came, it came,
etc. *

negō, 1, tr. and intr., say no, refuse, say . . . not. 1:
9. exemplum, -ī, n., example, precedent. 2.
10. ostendō,-tendere,-tendi,-ten-
tum, tr. [obs-tendō, stretch], stretch
before; present, show, bring into view,
reveal; tell, declare; point out, men-
tion. *

mentioned detachments (praesidia) in cas-
tella, at suitable points, and of course
had pickets all along the line. At an
alarm the nearest detachments were to
run to the threatened point.

quō facilius posset: when is quō used
in purpose clauses? App. 235, a, 2: G.-L.
545, 2: A. 531, 2, a: B. 282, a: H.-B. 502, 2, b:
H. 568, 7.
sī cōnārentur, “if they should try.”
sē invitō: construction? App. 150:

G.-L. 409: A. 419, a; 420, 1: B. 227, 1,
2, a: H.-B. 421, 1: H. 489, 1.
8. negat sē posse, “he said that he
could not.”
mōre et exemplō: case? App. 142, a:

Caesar’s Fortifications on the Rhone

FOSSA.
CASTELLA.
POINTS OF OBSERVATION.

1 2 3 4 5
ROMAN MILES.
eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūncītīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadis Rhodonī, quà minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnitione et militum concursū et tēlīs repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quà Sēquanīs

11. dēiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, tr. [iāciō, throw. App. 7], hurl or cast down; dislodge; kill; foil, disappoint. *

nāvis, -is, f., ship, boat; nāvis lon-ga, galley, ship of war; nāvis one-rāria, transport. *
jungō, iungere, iūnxi, iunctum, tr., join or unite together, attach, connect. 4.

ratis, -is, f., raft. 2.

complūres, -a, adj. [plūs, more], several, many; a great many. *

12. parvus,-a,-um, adj., little, small, insignificant; comp., minor, minus, lesser, smaller; shorter; minus, as noun, less; sup., minimus, -a, -um, least, very small. *

13. numquam, adv. [ne-+umquam, ever], not ever, never; nōn numquam, sometimes. 3.

interdiū, adv. [diēs, day], during the day, by day. 1.


nāvibus iūnctīs, "by joining together boats," and thus making a pontoon bridge.

12. aliō: we should expect some corresponding word in the previous phrase, nāvibus . . . factīs. The meaning is that most of the Helvetii tried to cross by boats and rafts, but others by fords.

13. sī possent, "(to see) whether they could." For this use of sī, see App. 284, b: G.-L. 460, 1, b: 467: A. 576, a: B. 300, 3: H.-B. 582, 2, a: H. 649, II, 3.


noctū, adv. [nox, night], by night. 4.

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -rup-tum, tr. and intr. [rumpō, break], break through, force one's way through, force a passage. 1.

14. mūnitiō, -ōnis, f. [mūniō, fortify], fortifying; fortification, rampart, works, intrenchments. *

concursus, -ūs, m. [concurrō, run], a running together, attack, onset; collision. 2.

tēlium, -i, n., a weapon for fighting at a distance, missile, dart, javelin. *

repellō, repellere, repulli, repul-sum, tr. [re-+pellō, beat, drive], beat or drive back, repel, repulse. 4.

15. cōnātus, -ūs, m. [cōnor, try], attempt, undertaking. 1.

dēsistō, -sistere, -stiti, -stītum, intr. [sistō, stand], abandon, cease, give up. 4.

1. relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -līc-

repulsi, "were repulsed and."

15. cōnātū is an ablative of separation.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Accusative of extent of space
Ablative of separation
Ablative of means
Ablative absolute

Chap. 9-15. The Helvetii march out through the territory of the Sequani. Caesar, with a reinforced army, cuts to pieces a fourth of them and follows the rest.

Chap. 9. The Helvetii obtain permission from the Sequani to pass through their country.

1. ūna via, "only the way." This was through Pas de l'Écluse, the way mentioned in 6, 2.

quā, "and by this." Case? App. 144:
invitis propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā
sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem
Haedummittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquānis impetrārent.
Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquānōs plūrīmum
poterat et Helvētiīs erat amicus, quod ex ēa cīvitātē Orgetorīgis
filiam in mātrimōnium dūxerat, et cupidītāte rēgni adductus
novis rēbus studēbat et quam plūrīmās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō
habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquānis

1. invitis, adj., pleasing, pleasing, good; gratiam agere, thank;
gratiam habēre, to feel grateful; gratiam referre, to return a favor;
hanc gratiam referre, to return a favor in this way; grātiam inire, to
gain favor; grātiā following a gen., for the purpose of, in order to. *

2. largitio, -onis, f. [largior, brie], bribery. 1.

3. novus, -a, -um, adj., new, novel, unusual; fresh; rēs novae,
   a change of government, revolution; sup., novissimus,
   -a, -um, latest, last; as noun or with agmen, those in the rear, the
   rear. *

4. studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, intr., be eager or zealous; desire, strive after, devote
   one's self to; pay attention to; accus-
   tom one's self to. *

5. obstringō, -stringere, -strinxi, -stringit, -stringem, -stringere,
   -strinxisse, -strinxi, to hold bound by his kindness.
impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ĕre patiantur, obsidēsque uti inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trānseant.

10. Caesari renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quin nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae cīvītās est in prōvinciā. Id si fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum periculō prōvinciāe

-strictum, tr. [stringō, tie], bind, hold under obligations, pledge. 2.

itaque, conj. [ita, so], and so, therefore, accordingly. *

10. obses, -īdis, m. and f. [obsideō, blockade], one that is guarded, hostage; pledge, security. *

1. renūntiō,1. tr.[re-+nūntius, message], bring back word, bring news, report; declare elected. *

10. obsidēs: all through Caesar’s narrative we find that states were obliged to bind themselves to carry out their agreements by giving hostages. The hostages were usually the children of the most influential men of the state, and were liable to enslavement or death if the state failed to fulfill its agreement.

11. Sēquanī, Helvētiī: sc. obsidēs dent; i.e. the Sequani bound themselves not to stop the Helvetii, etc. The clauses are substantive volitive clauses, objects of the implied phrase “bind themselves.”

Third References:
Dative with special verbs
Dative with adjectives

Chap. 10. Caesar brings more troops from Italy.


2. Santonī, -ōrum, or Santonēs, -um, m. (Ded), the Santoni (sān'tō-nī), or Santones (sān'tō-nēz). 3.

3. Tolōsātēs, -ium,m., the Tolosates (tōlō-sā'tēz), the people of Tolosa. 1.

4. intellegō,-legere,-lēxi,-lēctum, tr. [inter+legō, choose, select], select or distinguish between; understand; know; see, perceive, realize; find out, learn. *

esse is the subject of renūntiātur.

2. facere is the subject of esse.

3. nōn longē: the distance is really about 130 miles, but the Helvetii would be more dangerous in the territory of the Santones than in their own country, because they would no longer be hemmed in by natural barriers. Caesar had reason to fear that either the Helvetii or the Gauls whom they should drive from their homes would raid the Province; and since it was his duty to protect the Province he was justified in forcing the Helvetii to remain at home. He does not choose to add, however, that this movement of the Helvetii gave him an excellent opportunity to interfere in the affairs of Gaul, and thereby fitted in with his plans for the conquest of the country.

4. id si fieret, “if this should be carried out,” is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse, depending on futūrum: mode? App. 209: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314: H.-B. 584, 2, II: H. 643. Caesar’s thought was, “if this shall be carried out [future indicative], it will, etc.”

magnō . . . futūrum, “that it would be (attended) with great danger to the province.” prōvinciāe is a genitive.
futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsos, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus maximēque frumentāriīs finitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnitionī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum légātum praeficit; ipse in Ītaliam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscribit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hibernīs ēdūcit, et quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem

5. bellicōsus,-a,-um, adj. [bellum, war], of or full of war, warlike. 3.
6. patēns, -entis, adj. [pateō, be open], open, unobstructed, accessible. 1.
frumentārius, -a,-um, adj. [frumentum, grain], of or pertaining to grain; of places, fruitful, productive of grain; rēs frumentāria, supply of grain, provisions. *
7. T. abbr. for Titus (tī'tūs), a Roman praenomen. *
Labiēnus, -i, m., Titus Atius Labiēnus (tī'tūs a'tiōs läb'renīs), Caesar’s most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War. In the Civil War he aided Pompey and was slain at Munda 45 B.C. *
8. praeficiō, -ficiere, -fēcī, -flectum, tr. [faciō, make], make before; place over, put in command of, put at the head of, place in charge of. 4.

Italia, -ae, f., Italy, sometimes (in Caesar) including Cisalpine Gaul, but usually including only the rest of the peninsula. *
9. ibi, adv., there, in that place. *
cōnscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr. [scribō, write], write together in a list; levy, enroll, enlist; write. *
circum, prep. with acc. [circus, a circle], around, about, near. 2.
Aquilēia, -ae, f., Aquileia (āk'wi-le'ēya), a city of Cisalpine Gaul. 1.
hiemō, 1, intr. [hiemis, winter], pass the winter, winter. *
10. hiberna, -ōrum, n. [sc. castra, camp], winter camp, winter quarters. *
edūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr. [dūcō, lead], lead out or forth; draw (a sword). *

inimīcōs is here used as a noun, and therefore a genitive depends on it. If used as an adjective it would govern the dative.
locīs is probably a dative depending on finitimōs, though it may be an ablative of place.
6. habēret: sc. prōvincia.
légātum: see Int. 38.
8. Ītaliam: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul, which was one of the provinces under his proconsular command.
itineribus: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399:

9. cōnscribit: he did this without authority from Rome. He had been given only four legions,—the one in Transalpine Gaul and the three at Aquileia. But the situation was more serious than the Roman Senate realized. He therefore increased his army to six legions, perhaps 34,000 men. With these legions and some auxiliary troops he had to oppose 92,000 fighting men, according to the Gallic records given in chap. 29.
quā proximum iter erat, “where there was the shortest route.” He chose the pass of Mount Genèvre, and the route is shown on the map facing p. 42. He did not wish to return to Geneva, for by this time the Helvetii had left their
Galliam per Alpes erat cum his quinque legiö nibus ire contendit. Ibi Ceutrones et Graioceli et Caturiges, locis superioribus occupatis, itinere exercitum prohibere cönuntur. Compluribus his proeliis pulsis, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citerioris provinciae extrēmum, in fines Vocontiōrum ulterioris provinciae die septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fines, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā provinciam trans Rhodanum primī.

11. Helvētīi iam per angustiās et fines Sēquanōrum suās copiās tradūixerant, et in Haeuoōrum fines pervēnerant

11. Alpēs, -ium, f. pl. (Cghi), the Alps (āl’pēz), better, the Alps. *

quinque (V), card. num. adj., indecl., five. 4.

12. Ceutrones, -um, m. (Dg), the Ceutrones (sū’trō-nēz). 1.

Graioceli, -ōrum, m. (Dg), the Graioceli (grā’yōs’ē-ī). 1.

Caturiges, -um, m. (Dg), the Caturiges (kā’tv’rī-jēz). 1.

superior, -ius, adj. [comp. of superus, high. App. 41], (1) of place, upper, higher, superior; (2) of time, previous, earlier, former. *


citerior, -ius, comp. adj. (App. 43), nearer, hither; Gallia Citerior (=Cis-alpina), Cisalpine Gaul, on the nearer (Italian) side of the Alps. *

15. Vocontiō, -ōrum, m. (Df), the Vocontiō (vō-kō’n/shī’ī). 1.

septimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [septem, seven], seventh. *

inde, adv., from that place, thence; then, thereupon. *

17. Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m. (Def), the Segusiāvī (sēg’ū-shī’ā’ī). 1.

extrā, adv., and prep. with acc., out of, outside of, beyond, without. 1.

18. primus, -a, -um, adj., sup. (App. 43), first, foremost; first part of; pl. as noun, the first, the front rank or ranks; leaders, chiefs; in primis, especially. *

2. tradūcō, -ducere, -duxi, -ducēnum, tr. [trāns-dūcō, lead], lead across.

Third References:

Possessive genitive
Indirect object
Dative with compound verbs
Ablative of place from which
Ablative of accompaniment
Historical present
Subordinate clause in indirect discourse

Chap. 11. Three states ask Caesar to protect them against the Helvetii.

1. iam, "by this time."

angustiās: at Pas de l’Écluse.

2. pervēnerant: i.e. the head of their column had crossed the Arar, though its rear was some miles from
eorumque agrōs populābantur. Haedui, cum sē suaque ab iis dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omni tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in conspectū exercitus nostri agrī vāstāri, liberi in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnāri nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarri, necessāriī et cōnsanguinei Haeduōrum

lead over; take across, transport; transfer, convey, pass on; win over. *

3. popular, 1, tr., devastate, ravage, lay waste. 4.

4. dēfendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēn-sum, tr. [fendō, strike], keep or ward off; repel; defend, protect. *

5. auxilium,-li, n. [augeō, increase], help, assistance, aid; pl., auxiliary troops; reinforcements. *

ita, adv., so, thus, in this way; as follows; ut . . . ita, in proportion as . . . in such proportion, as . . . so; nōn ita, not so very, not very; ita . . . ut, just . . . as; so . . . that. *

mēreo, and mēreor, 2, tr., deserve, merit, be worthy of; win, earn, incur (odium); serve as a soldier (i.e. earn pay). 3.

6. paene, adv., nearly, almost. *

cōnspectus, -us, m. [cōnspicō, look at], sight, view; presence. *

vāstō, 1, tr. [vāstus, waste], lay waste, ravage, devastate. 3.

liberi, -ōrum, m., [liber, free], the free members of the household (as opposed to slaves); children. *

7. servītūs, -ūtis, f. [servus, a slave], slavery, servitude. *

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr. [ducō, lead], lead away, draw or carry off, withdraw. 1.

expugnō, 1, tr. [pugnō, fight], take or carry by storm, capture by assault; overpower, sack. *

dēbō, 2, tr. [dē-habēō, have], have, or keep from some one; owe; with inf., ought, must; pass., be due. *

8. Ambarri, -ōrum, m. (Cf), the Ambarri (ām-bār'ī), clients of the Haedui. 2.

necessārius, -a, -um, adj. [necesse, necessary], necessary, requisite, pressing; with tempus, critical; as noun, kinsman, friend. *

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, adj. [sanguis, blood], of the same blood; as noun, kinsman, relative. 3.

meritōs esse depends on the idea of “saying” which is implied in rogātum. About sixty years before, the Haedui had been called “brothers” of the Roman people, and ever since that time their relations with Rome had been friendly; but we do not know that they had ever been of assistance to Rome.


nostri = Rōmānī. It agrees with exercitūs.

that river. They had traveled only about a hundred miles during the two months of Caesar's absence. Much of this time, however, had been spent in negotiations with the Sequani. Their line of march must have been at least fifty miles in length, and their progress was necessarily slow, especially at the pass. For their route see the map facing p. 42.

3. cum possent: causal.

suaeque, "and their property."
Caesarem certiorum faciunt sé sé dépopulátis agrís nón facilé
ab oppidis vim hostium prohibére. Item Allobrogès qui tranš
Rhodanum vicós possessiónésque habébant fugá sē ad Caesarem
recipiunt et dēmônstrant sibi præter agrí solum nihil esse
reliqui. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nón exspectandum sibi
statutum, omnibus fortúnís sociórum cónsúmtis, in Santonós
Helvétii pervenírent.

12. Fūlmen est Arar, quod per finés Haeduórum et

all, by no means; nón nihil, some-
what. ∗
13. exspectō, 1, tr. [spectō, look at],
look out for, await, expect; wait to see;
anticipate, apprehend. ∗
14. statuō, statuere, statui, statút-
tum, tr. [status, position], put in posi-
tion, set up, place; determine, resolve;
judge, pass sentence; think, consider.
∗
fortūna, -ae, f. [fors, chance], for-
tune, luck, chance, opportunity; lot,
condition; good fortune, success; prop-
erty, estate. ∗
consúmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsi,
-súmpsum, tr. [sūmō, take], take
together or all at once; devour, consume,
destroy; use up, waste, pass. 3.
1. Arar, Araris (acc. -im), m. (CDfg),
the Arar (ā'rar), the modern Saone. 4.

9. sēsē dépopulátis agrís, “that
their lands had been laid waste and that
they,” etc. In a number of deponent
verbs the perfect participle is used with
a passive meaning.
10. Allobrogès, qui . . . habébant:
most of the Allobrogés were south of the
Rhone and were not troubled; but the
map shows that some were north of the
river and on the route of the Helvetii.
12. sibi nihil esse reliqué, “that
to them there was nothing of a re-
mainder” = “that they had nothing left.”
B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430. reliqué is used
as a noun and is a partitive genitive:
App. 101, a: G.-L. 369, R. 2: A. 316, a: 1:
B. 201, 2, a: H.-B. 346, a: H. 440, 5, note.
173, a: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 303, 2: B. 251, 6:
H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.
nón exspectandum (sc. esse) sibi,
“that it was not to be waited by him”=
“that he must not wait.” exspec-
tandum: construction? App. 285, II, a:
G.-L. 251, 1: A. 194, b: B. 337, 7, b, 1: H.-B.
600, 3; 162: H. 237. sibi: case? App. 118:
G.-L. 215, 2: A. 374, a: B. 189, 1: H.-B.
373, 1: H. 431.
14. dum pervenírent, “until they
should arrive.”

Third References:
Dative of possessor
Relative instead of demonstrative
Chap. 12. Caesar destroys the Tig-
urni, the rearguard of the Helvetii.
1. fūlmen est Arar, “there is a river
(named) the Arar.”
Sēquānōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdībīli lēnītāte, ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus īnnectis trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs 5 Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id ūlum trādūxisse, quārām fērē partem cītra ūlum Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pērvēnit quae nōndum ūlum trān-

2. incrēdībilis, -e, adj. [in- + cré-
dībilis, credible], incredible, unlikely; extraordinary. 4. 
lēnītās, -tātis, f. [lēnis, smooth], smoothness, gentleness. 1. 
3. oculus, -i, m., eye. 3. 
uter, utra, utrum, gen. utrius (App. 32), adj. (1) as interrog., which one or which of two; (2) as rel., the one who, of two, whichever. 1. 
iūdīcō, 1, tr. [iūdex, a judge], pass judgment on, judge, decide, determine; think, consider. * 
4. līnter, -tris, f., skiff, rowboat, canoe. 2. 

explōrātor, -ōris, m. [explōrē, search out], explorer, scout, spy. * 
6. quārtus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [quattuor, four], fourth. * 
citrā, prep. with acc., on this side of. 3. 
7. vigiliā, -ae, f. [vigil, awake], wakefulness, watching; a watch, one of the four equal divisions of the night, used by the Romans in reckoning time. * 
castrum, -i, n., fort; pl., castra, castrōrum, fortified camp, camp; castra facere or pōnere, pitch camp; castra movēre, break up camp. * 

2. incrēdībilis lēnītāte, "of remarkably slow current": descriptive ablative. 


Why is the present tense used? Strictly because Caesar meant "can," not "could." Every subjunctive tense has a meaning and is used because that meaning is needed in the sentence; at the same time, however, they are almost invariably used in accordance with the rule for sequence of tenses. Learn once for all this very important rule, and the distinction between principal and historical tenses: App. 202; 203: G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, B; 267, 1, 2, 3: H.-B. 476, foot-note 2: H. 198; 543; 544; 545. 

3. in ... fluat, "in which direction it flows": mode? App. 202: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B. 534, 2, III; 537, b: H. 649, II. 

4. ratibus, lintribus: ablatives of means. 

īnnectis modifies only lintribus. 

trānsībant: at a point about twelve miles north of Caesar's camp. Excavations in this vicinity have brought to light numerous graves which give evidence of hasty interment, as if after a battle. 

5. trēs ... trādūxisse, "that the Helvetii had already conveyed three-fourths of their troops across this river." The verb trādūxisse governs two objects,—partēs depending on the meaning of the simple verb dūcō, flūmen depending on the meaning of the preposition trāns: App. 127: G.-L. 311, R. 1: A. 388, b: B. 175, 2, a, 1: H.-B. 391, 2: H. 406. 

6. citrā: i.e. on the east. 

7. dē tertiā vigiliā, "just after (the beginning of) the third watch"—"just after midnight." 

dē legiōnibus: how many men in a legion? Int. 33.
9. impeditus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of impediō, hinder], hindered, burdened, impeded, delayed; hindered or burdened by baggage; occupied or engaged in; at a disadvantage; of places, difficult of passage. *

inopināns, -antis, adj. [in—opīnāns, expecting], not expecting, not suspecting, unawares, off one's guard. 2.

aggreōridi, -greōdi, -gressus sum, tr. [ad+gradior, step], advance to or against; attack. 4.

10. concidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsum, tr. [caedō, cut], cut down, slay, kill; cut off. 3.

mandō, 1, tr. [manus, hand+dō, give], give into one's hands; entrust, commit; enjoin, order, command. *

11. Silva, -ae, f., a wood, forest, woods. *

agdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr. [dō, put], put away, remove, withdraw, hide, conceal. *

pāgus, -ī, m., village; district, province, canton. *

Tigurinus, -a, -um, of or belonging to the Tigurini; pl. as noun, Tigurini (Cg), the Tigurini (tīgū-rī'nī). 2.

12. nam, conj., for. *

quattuor (IV), card. num. adj., indecl., four. *

14. interficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, tr. [faciō, make], make away with, kill, destroy. *

sive and seu, conj. [sī, if+ve, or], or if, if; or, whether; sive . . . sive, either . . . or, whether . . . or, to see if . . . or. *

cāsus, -ūs, m. [cadō, fall], what befalls; accident, chance; misfortune, fate; crisis; cāsū, by chance. *

dēus, -i (nom. pl., dīi; dat. pl., dis), m., god, deity. 4.

immortālis, -e, adj. [in—mortālis, mortal], not mortal, immortal. 3.

16. insignis, -e, adj. [signō, mark], marked, remarkable; n. as noun, mark, sign; ornament, trapping. 4.

calamitās, -tātis, f., misfortune, disaster, defeat. *


in silvās: from the English point of view we might expect the ablative (place where), but the verb implies motion into,—"ran into and hid." *


16. quae pars . . . ea, "that part which." Not infrequently the antecedent is thus expressed in the relative clause instead of the principal clause, and the relative clause then precedes the antecedent.

populō: the compound inferō governs the indirect object.
Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum públicas sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus est, quod eīus soceri L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem légātum, 20 Tigurīnī eōdem proelīō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

13. Hoc proelīō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī possēt, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētii repentinō eīus adventū commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diebus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō dīē fēcisse intellegeīrent, légātōs ad

17. princeps persolvit, "was the first to pay."
19. Note the accumulation of appositives, — Pisōnis with soceri, Pisōnem with avum, légātum with Pisōnem.
20. quō Cassium: the same verb interfēcerant belongs in the relative clause and in the principal clause.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Ablative of time
Result clause
Narrative cum clause

Chap. 13. The Helvetii haughtily ask for peace.

1. ut would usually stand before reliquās.
2. pontem faciendum cūrat, "he had a bridge made": construction? App. 285, II, b: G.-L. 430: A., 500, 4: B. 337, 7. b, 2: H.-B. 612, III: H. 623. This bridge was probably of boats, and was made by the chief of engineers: see Int. 40.

3. in Ararī, "over the Arar."
4. cum intellegeīrent, "since they saw," or better "seeing." The object of intellegere is illum fēcisse. id is the object of fēcisse. ut transīrent, "(namely) the crossing of the river," is in apposition with id: mode? App. 239, a: G.-L. 553, 1: A. 568: B. 297, 1: H.-B. 521, 3, a: H. 571, 4.
5. légātōs, "envoys."
eum mittunt; cuius lègatiònìs Divicò prìnceps fuit, qui bellò Cassiànò dùx Helvètiòrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare égit: Si pácem populus Ròmáníus cum Helvètiìs faceret, in eam partem itùròs atque ibi futùròs Helvètiòs ubi eòs Caesar cönsìstìtùisset atque esse voluisset; sin bellò persequì persevèràret, remini-sìceréttur et veteris incommodì populì Ròmání et prístìnae

6. Divicò, -ònis, m., Divico(divi-kö), an Helvetian chieftain. 2.
7. Cassiànus,-a,-um, adj., of Cassius, see Cassius. 1.
agò, agere, égì, áctum, tr., set in motion; drive (of animals); move forward, advance (of military works); do, transact, carry on (of business); discuss, speak; hold (conventum); give, render (grátìas); plead (causam or rem); quod agitùr, the matter in hand; rès agitùr, something is at stake. *

6. Divico was an old man, for the battle was fought 49 years before.
7. The rest of this chapter and the whole of the next are in indirect discourse. If the teacher wishes the class, at this point, to make a more detailed study of the construction than is called for by the notes, he will find help in the direct form of these speeches as printed after Book VII.

Remember the important facts already learned,—that in every declarative sentence the principal verb will be an infinitive, and that in every subordinate clause the verb will be a subjunctive. Usually the future infinitive shows that the speaker used a future indicative, a present infinitive shows that he used a present indicative, and a perfect infinitive shows that he used a past tense of the indicative. But note that not every infinitive stands for an indicative in the direct form; for all infinitives in the direct form are retained unchanged in the indirect. Note that every subjunctive follows the rule of sequence of tenses: App. 202; 263; G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, B; 267, 1, 2, 3: H.-B. 476, foot-note 2: H. 198; 543; 544; 545.

sì, conj., if however, but if. 1.
10. persequor, -sequi, -secútus sum, tr.[sequor, follow]. follow through, continue in; pursue, follow up; avenge. 2.
perseverò, 1, intr., persist, persevere. 1.
remini-scìtor, -i, intr. [mèns, mind], call to mind, remember. 1.
11. vètus, -eris, adj., old, ancient, former; with militès, veteran. *
incommodum, -i, n. [incommodus,
sì . . . facerèt. "if . . . should make." Only the sense of the passage shows that facerèt stands for an original future rather than a present, and for an indicative rather than a subjunctive.
9. Helvètiòs is the subject of itùròs and futùròs.
eòs is the subject of esse.
ubi cönsìstìtùisset, "where he should have decided"="where he should decide" or "where he decided." The pluperfect can stand equally well for the perfect, the pluperfect, or the future perfect; but the Helvetii do not promise to return to their own country, and Caesar had not yet decided to settle them anywhere else; therefore cönsìstìtùisset must stand for a future perfect, a tense rarely used in English.
10. persevèràret stands for a future, like facerèt, l. 8.
remini-sìceréttur, "he should remem-
ber." Since this is a principal clause the use of the subjunctive shows that the sentence is not declarative. App. 267: G.-L. 652: A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 642.
11. et . . . et, "both . . . and."
incommodi: i.e. the defeat of Cassius: case? App. 107: G.-L. 376: A.
virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum ī quī flūmen trānsissent suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribuēret aut ipsōs dēspiceret; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suis didicisse ut magis virtūte contendenter quam dolō aut insidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōnstitissent

inconvenient], inconvenience, disadvantage; trouble; disaster, defeat, loss, injury. 1

pristinus, -a, -um, adj. [for pri-

12. imprōvisō, adv. [imprōvisus, un-

13. ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum (App. 81),

14. magnopere, adv. [magnus, great

15. dēspiciē, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-

16. ut contenderent: a result-clause.

masīs quam, “rather than.”


17. The meaning of the last sentence is, “Do not let the spot on which we stand become famous as the scene of your bloody defeat.”

cōnstitissent stands for a perfect in-
ex calamitate populī Rōmānī et internecionē exercitus nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

14. His Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētīi commemorāssent memorīā tenēret, atque eō gravior ferre quō minus merito populi Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicuīs iniūriae sībi cōnscius fuisse, nōn fuisse difficultē cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod 5

dicative: “where they had taken their stand” for “where we have taken our stand.”

Third Reference:
Substantive clause of result or fact

Chap. 14. Caesar proposes terms, which the Helvetii refuse.

1. his: i.e. the envoys.

eō is an ablative of cause, explained by the causal clause quod . . . tenēret.

minus dubitationis, “less hesitation.” dubitationis: partitive genitive.

2. eās rēs: i.e. the defeat of Cassius.


to heart, be annoyed or vexed (at); graviter premere, press hard. *

meritum, -i, n. [mereor, deserve], desert, merit, service; favor, kindness, benefit. 2.

4. accidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, intr. [ad+cadō, fall], fall to or upon; befall, happen, fall to the lot of; occur; ac- cidit, it happens. *

aliquis, -quid, and alīqui, -qua, -quod, indef. pron. [quis, who. App. 62, a], some one, something; any one, anything, any. *

consicūs, -a, -um, adj. [sciō, know], conscious; aware. 1.

5. caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, intr., be cautious, be on one’s guard; ob- sidibus cavēre, exchange hostages as security. 1.

décipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [capio, take], entrap; deceive. 1.


4. qui sī, “now if they,” Caesar uses the singular in referring to the collective noun populus, but English prefers the plural.


sībī, lit. conscious “to themselves,” should not be expressed in translating.

5. nōn fuisse difficultē, “it would not have been difficult.”

eō, is an ablative of cause, explained by the clause quod . . . pušāret.

dēceptum: sc. populum Rōmānum . . . esse.
neque commissum à sē intellegèrent quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāssent, memoriam dépōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admirārentur, eōdem

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], lay down or aside, put away, give up; place, station, deposit. 3.
11. victōriā, -ae, f. [victor, victor], victory. *
	tam, adv., so, so very. *
Insolenter, adv. [Insolēns, unwonted], unusually; insolently. 1.

glōrior, i, intr. [glORIA, glory], glory, glory in, boast of. 1.
12. diū, adv., for a long time, long; quam diū, as long as; comp., diātiūs, longer, too long, any longer; sup., diū-
tissimē, for the longest time. *
impūne, adv. [in- + poena, punishment], without punishment. 1.

admirōr, 1, tr. [mīror, wonder at], wonder at, be surprised at, admire. 1.

6. commissum (sc. quicquam ... esse), “that anything had been done.”
ā sē, “by them”; i.e. the Roman people.

quārē timēret, “because of which they should be afraid.” For mode see App. 230, c: G.-L 631, 2; H.-B. 513, 2.


quod sī, “but if.”


8. vellet: the subject is still populus Rōmānus.

num posse, “they could not, could they,” or simply “could they.” This is a principal verb, but not in a declarative sentence. For mode see App. 268, II:

6. timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, tr. and intr., fear, be afraid of, dread; with dat., be anxious about, be anxious for, dread; nihil timēre, have no fear. *

7. contumēlia, -ae, f., afront, indignity, insult; injury, violence. 3.

obliviscor, oblivisci, oblivitus sum, intr. [oblivīō, forgetfulness], forget. 1.

8. num, interrog. particle implying the expectation of a negative reply. 1.

recēns, -entis, adj., recent, late; fresh, new, vigorous. 3.

9. temptō, 1, tr., make an attempt upon, try to gain possession of, attack; try, test; try to win over. 4.

10. vexō, 1, tr. [intensive of vehō, carry], carry or drag hither and thither; harass, plunder, waste, overrun. 3.

600, 2.

6. commissum (sc. quicquam ... esse), “that anything had been done.”
ā sē, “by them”; i.e. the Roman people.

quārē timēret, “because of which they should be afraid.” For mode see App. 230, c: G.-L 631, 2; H.-B. 513, 2.


quod sī, “but if.”


8. vellet: the subject is still populus Rōmānus.

num posse, “they could not, could they,” or simply “could they.” This is a principal verb, but not in a declarative sentence. For mode see App. 268, II:

6. timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, tr. and intr., fear, be afraid of, dread; with dat., be anxious about, be anxious for, dread; nihil timēre, have no fear. *

7. contumēlia, -ae, f., afront, indignity, insult; injury, violence. 3.

obliviscor, oblivisci, oblivitus sum, intr. [oblivīō, forgetfulness], forget. 1.

8. num, interrog. particle implying the expectation of a negative reply. 1.

recēns, -entis, adj., recent, late; fresh, new, vigorous. 3.

9. temptō, 1, tr., make an attempt upon, try to gain possession of, attack; try, test; try to win over. 4.

10. vexō, 1, tr. [intensive of vehō, carry], carry or drag hither and thither; harass, plunder, waste, overrun. 3.

6. commissum (sc. quicquam ... esse), “that anything had been done.”
ā sē, “by them”; i.e. the Roman people.

quārē timēret, “because of which they should be afraid.” For mode see App. 230, c: G.-L 631, 2; H.-B. 513, 2.


quod sī, “but if.”


8. vellet: the subject is still populus Rōmānus.

num posse, “they could not, could they,” or simply “could they.” This is a principal verb, but not in a declarative sentence. For mode see App. 268, II:
pertinere. Consuèssé enim deós immortáles, quô gravius hominés ex commútatiöne rérum doleant, quós pró scelere eórum ulciscī velint, his secundiorés interdum rès et diùturni-ß orem impúntitatem concédere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsidés ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea quae pollicieantur factúros intellegat, et si Haeduís dē iniúriis quās ipsis sociisque eórum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iis pācem esse factūrum. Dívico respondit: Ita Helvetiös à maióribus 20 suıs institútös esse uti obsidés accipere, non dare, consuérint;

13. consuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, intr. [suēscō, become used], become accustomed; pf. (App. 193, I, a), be accustomed, be wont; consuētus, pf. part. as adj., accustomed, usual, wonted. *

14. commūtātiō, -onis, f. [commūtā, change], a changing, change. 2. 

15. secundus, -a, -um, adj. [sequor, follow], following, next, second; favorable, successful, prosperous; secundō flūmine, down the river. *

interdum, adv. [dum, while], in the meantime; at times, sometimes. 2.

diùturnus, -a, -um, adj. [diù, long], long. 1.

16. impúntās, -tālis, f. [impoena, punishment], impunity, freedom from punishment. 1.

17. pollicēor, 2, tr. and intr. [prō- liceor, bid, offer], hold forth, offer, promise, pledge. *

19. satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -fac- tum, intr. [satis, enough + fació, make], make or do enough for; give satisfaction, satisfy; make amends, apologize, ask pardon. 2.

21. instituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum, tr. and intr. [stātuō, set up],

13. consuēsse = consuēvisse.

quō: for use see 8, 6.

14. doleant: so far the subjunctive tenses have all been imperfests and pluperfects, because the indirect discourse depends on the past verb respondit. But it is quite common for the writer of indirect discourse to use the tenses that were used in the direct form instead of following the rule of sequence of tenses. Thus presents and perfects are used to the end of the chapter. This usage, called repraesentatio, is due to the same desire for vividness which leads to the use of the historical present for a past tense. It is usually better to translate as if the regular past tenses were used, just as it is better to translate the historical present indicative by a past.

15. secundiorēs rēs, “a considerable degree of prosperity”; diùturnōrem, “quite long.” The comparative may often be rendered by such words as “too,” “rather,” “quite,” all of which imply comparison with some unexpressed standard.

16. concédere depends on consuēsse. 

cum sint, by itself, might be either causal or adversative. Notice that the tamen which follows shows which it is: App. 239: G.-L. 587: A. 549: B. 309, 3: H.-B. 526: H. 598.


factūros: sc. sē . . . esse.

18. si Haeduís: sc. satisfaciant.

ipsius: i.e. the Haedui.

19. sēsē: i.e. Caesar.
ei̇us rėi populum Rōmānūm esse testem. Hōc responsō datō
dissessit.

15. Posterō dīc castra ex eo locō movent. Idem facit
Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor milium,
quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociis coāctum
habēbat, praemittit quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter
faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen insecūtī aliēnō locō

set up or put in order, draw up; train,
educate; procure, prepare; build, con-
struct; begin, determine, decide upon,
adopt; institutus, pf. part. as adj.,
usual, customary; finished, in addition to
definitions above. *

accepitō, -cipere, -cipī, -ceptum, tr.
[ad-]capio, take, take or receive to
one’s self, accept; experience, suffer;
learn, hear, take. *

22. testis, -is, m. and f., witness. 2.
responsum, -i, n. [respondeo, an-
swer], reply, answer. 2.

23. discēdiō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,
intr. [cēdō, go], go away, depart,
retire; leave (especially with ab or
ex). *

1. posterus,-a,-um, adj. [post],
after, following, next; in m. pl. as noun,
posterity; sup., postremus or postu-
num, last. *

moveō, movère, mōvī, mōtum, tr.,
set in motion, move; affect, influence;

with castra, move camp from one place
to another, or break camp. *

2. equitātus, -ūs, m. [equitō, ride;
equus, horse], cavalry, horsemen. *

4. praemittō,-mittere,-miśi,-mis-
sum, tr. [mittō, send], send before or
in advance. *

5. cupidē, adv. [cupidus, desirous],
desirously, eagerly. 2.

agmen, -inis, n. [agō, move], a mov-
ing body; a marching column; army;
in
agmine, on the march; prīnum ag-
men, the van; novissimōm or ex-
trēnum agmen, the rear. *

insequor, -sequī, -secūtum sum, tr.
and intr. [sequor, follow], follow up or
after, follow close upon, pursue. *

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj. [alius, other],
of or belonging to another, another’s;
strange, alien, unfamiliar; unfavorable;
foreign to the purpose; aes aliē-
num, debt; aliēnissimī, entire stran-
gers. 4.

Third Reference:
Objective genitive
Ablative of agent
Ablative of cause
Ablative of degree of difference
Adversative cum clause

Chap. 15. The Helvetii march on,
followed by Caesar. His cavalry are
defeated.

1. castra movent, “march on.” The
map facing p. 42 shows the route fol-
lowed by the Helvetii. They could not
march due west toward the Santones be-
cause the country is too mountainous.
They therefore marched north, then
northwest, intending to reach the Liger

(Loire) and march down its valley.

2. equitātum: see Int. 48.

3. quem coāctum habēbat, “which
he had collected,” almost=quem coēge-
rat: App. 286, b: G.-L. 238: A. 497, b: B.
337, 6; H.-B. 605, 5, a: H. 640, 2.

4. qui videant: a purpose clause.
qui is plural, agreeing with the collect-
ive noun equitātum.

quās . . . faciant, “in what direction
the enemy were marching.” faciant:
mode? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573, 574:
B. 300, 1, a: H.-B. 534, 2, III; 537, 6: H.
649, II.

5. cupidius: cf. note on 14, 15.
locō: case? App. 151, b: G.-L. 385, n.1:
cum equitātū Helvetiōrum proelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quō proeliiō sublāti Helvetiī, quod quingentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audacīus subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliiō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliiō continēbat ac sātis ā habēbat in præsentia hostem rapīnis, pābulātionibus, populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum

6. pauci, -ae, -a, adj. (used rarely in sing.), few; as noun, few persons or things. *
7. cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, intr., fall; fall in battle, be slain, die. 3. quingenti, -ae, -a (D), card. num. adj. [quīnque, five+centum, hundred], five hundred. 3.
8. eques, -itis, m. [equus, horse], a horseman, a rider; pl., cavalry. Then (as originally serving on horseback), a knight (one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate). Also, a knight (of Gaul, of a corresponding class). *

tantus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. tam, so], so much, so great, so powerful, such; quāntō ... tantō, with comparatives, see quāntō. *
prōpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, tr. [pelliō, drive], drive forward, put to flight, rout; dislodge, drive back. 2.
audăcēr, adv. [audāx, bold], boldly, fearlessly, daringly. Comp., audācius; sup., audācissimē. *

9. subsistō, -sistere, -stītī, —, intr. [sistō, stand], halt, make a stand; be strong enough, hold out. 1.
10. lacessō, -ere, -ivi, -itum, tr., arouse, harass, provoke, irritate, attack. *
coepi, coepisse (App. 86 and a), tr., began, commenced, undertook; coepitus, pf. part., begun, commenced. *
11. præsentia, -ae, f. [praesēns; praesum, be present], presence; the present moment; in præsentia, for the present; then. 1.
rāpina, -ae, f. [rāpiō, seize], plunder; pl., plundering. 1.
pābulātiō, -ōnis, f. [pābulor, forage], getting fodder, foraging. 1.
populātiō, -ōnis, f. [populor, ravage], ravaging, pillaging. 1.
12. circiter, adv. [circus, circle], about, near. *
quīndecim (XV), card. num. adj., indecl. [quinque, five+decem, ten], fifteen. *

6. pauci dē nostrīs, “a few of our men.” The rest fled at the instigation of their commander, the treacherous Dumnorix, as Caesar afterwards learned.

9. novissimō ... lacessere, “to challenge our men to battle with their rearguard.” Both agmine and proeliiō are ablatives of means.

10. sātis habēbat ... prohibēre, “considered it sufficient... to keep.” Caesar had never before commanded so large an army or met so strong an enemy. His army was outnumbered by an enemy whom the Romans had long dreaded. Defeat meant the total destruction of his army. Nothing was lost by postponing the battle. Therefore he wisely decided to wait until he could choose his own time and place.

12. ita utī, “in such a way that,” introduces a result clause.
primum nōn amplius quīnis aut sēnīs milibus passuum 15 interesset.

16. Interim cotidiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum quod essent públicē pollicitiā flāgitāre. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septentrīōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agris mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis

14. amplius, -a, -um, adj., of large extent, spacious, large; illustrious, splendid, noble; generous, magnificent; amplius, comp. as noun, more, a greater number; a greater distance. *
quinī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [quinque, five], five each, five at a time, five. 1. sēnī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj., six each, six. 1.

15. intersum, -esse, -sūi, intr. [sum, be, App. 66], be or lie between, intervene; be present at, take part in; imperā, interest, it concerns, it is important; there is a difference or an interval; magnī interest, it is of great importance. 3.
1. interim, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime. *
cotidiē, adv. [quot, how many + diēs, day], daily, every day. *
2. públicē, adv. [públicus, public], publicly, in the name of the state, on behalf of the state. 2.

16. Interim cotidiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum quod essent públicē pollicitiā flāgitāre. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septentrīōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agris mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis

14. primum: sc. agmen.

amplius: is the subject of interesset.
quīnis aut sēnīs, “five or six [each day].”

THIRD REFERENCE:

Ablative of place:

Chap. 16-20. Caesar learns that Dumnorix is treacherously thwarting his plans, but pardons him.

Chap. 16. The Haeduī fail to furnish supplies to Caesar.

1. interim: i.e. during the fifteen days of marching.


quod essent pollicitī, “which [as he said] they had promised.” This subordinate clause employs the subjunctive to imply that Caesar made the statement in demanding the grain. It is indirect discourse; but, because there is no verb of saying and the clause does not depend on an accusative and infinitive, it is called “implied indirect discourse”: App. 273: G.-L. 628: A. 592, 3, n.: B. 323: H.-B. 535, 1, a: H. 649, 1.


3. sub septentrīōnibus, lit. “under the northern stars” = “toward the north.”

4. frūmenta: the plural means grain standing in the fields.
mātūra nōn erant: it was now late in June.
pābuli: for the cavalry horses and
magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine s Arari nāvibus sub vexerat proptereā ūtī minus poterat, quod iter ab Arari Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discōdēre nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Haedui; cōnferri, comportāri, adesse dicere. Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellexit et diem instāre quō diē frūmentum militibus mētīri oportēret, convocātīs eōrum 10 principibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in his Diviciācō et Liscō, qui summō magistrātūi praerat, quem

least, truly; on the other hand; nē . . . quidem, not even. *
6. subvehō, -vehere, - vexi, -vectum, tr. [vehō, carry], bring or carry up; convey. 1.
7. āvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, tr. [vertō, turn], turn away from or away, turn aside; turn back, repulse; pf. part. as adj., with back turned. *
   nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, — (App. 82), tr. and intr. [ne-]volō, wish], not wish, be unwilling; refuse; imp. nōli or nōlite, with inf. (App. 219), do not. *
8. cōnferō, cōnferre, contuli, collātum, tr. [ferō, bring. App. 81], bring or get together, collect, gather, carry, bring; crowd together; ascribe to; put

off, defer; compare; sē cōnferre, be take one's self, take refuge. *
   comportō, l, tr. [portō, carry], carry together, collect, bring. *
   adsum, adesse, afruit, intr. [sum, be. App. 77], be near or present, be at hand, appear. 3.
9. instō,-stāre,-stiti,-stātum, intr. [stō, stand], stand upon or near, be at hand, press on; threaten. 4.
10. mētior, mētīri, mēnsus sum, tr., deal or measure out, distribute. 2.
   convocō, l, tr. [vocō, call], call together, summon, assemble. 4.
12. Liscus, -i, m., Liscus (lis'kūs), a chief magistrate of the Haedui. 4.
   summus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of super-

pack animals. The cattle of the Helvetii had swept the country clean.
6. nāvibus, "in ships," is an ablative of means.
   iter āverterant: see map facing p. 42.
8. diem: accusative of duration of time.
   dūcere, "put him off," is an historical infinitive.
   cōnferri, comportāri, adesse (sc. frūmentum) are the objects of the historical infinitive dūcere.

sē diūtius dūcī, "that he was being put off too long."
quō diē, "on which." Cf. 6, 1.
10. frūmentum mētīri oportēret, lit. "for him to measure out grain was right"="he had to distribute grain." This was done twice a month. oportēret: subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Its subject is frūmentum mētīri.

convocātis principibus, "summoning," etc. Remember that the ablative absolute must not be translated literally.

   summō . . . praerat, "held the highest office."
CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, I, 17

vergobretum appellant Haedui, qui creatur annuus et vitae necisque in suo habet potestatem, graviter eos accusat, quod, cum neque emi neque ex agris sumi posset, tam necessario tempore, tam propinquus hostibus, ab iis non sublevetur; praesertim cum magna ex parte eorum precibus adductus bellum susceperit, multo etiam gravius quod sit destitutus queritur.

17. Tum demum Liscus oratiōne Caesaris adductus quod

14. in suōs, "over his fellow-citizens."

quod nōn sublevētur, "because [as he said] he was not aided." This is another case of implied indirect discourse: cf. 1. 1, and see App. 214: G.-L. 511: A. 540, 2: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 535, 2, a: H. 649, 1.

15. posset: sc. frumentum.

16. tempore may be either ablative absolute or ablative of time; hostibus is an ablative absolute.

17. With praesertim, cum is almost always causal.

magna ex parte, "in great part."


Third References:

Ablative of the way (route)
Ablative with utōr, etc.

Chap. 17. Liscus tells Caesar that a powerful faction among the Haedui is working against the Romans.

), Supply id as the antecedent of quod and the object of properit.
anteā tacuerat prōpōnit: Esse nónn ullōs quorūm auctóritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, qui privātim plús possint quam ipsi magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiosā atque improbā oratiōne multitudinem dēterrēre né frūmentum cōnferant quod dēbeant: 5 Praestāre, si iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nónn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab īsdem nostra

2. anteā, adv. [ante, before+eā, this], formerly, before, previously, once; always with a verb. 2.

taceō, 2, tr. and intr., be silent; keep silent, pass over in silence; tacitūs, pf. part. as adj., silent. 3.

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posūl, -posītum, tr. [pōnō, place], place or put forward, present, offer; relate, tell of, explain; propose, purpose; expose. *

3. valeō, 2, intr., be strong or vigorous, have weight, influence, or strength; plūrimum valēre, be very powerful. *

privātīm, adv. [privātus, private], privately, individually, as private citizens. 1.

4. sēditiosus, -a, -um, adj. [sēditīō, sedition], seditious, mutinous. 1.

improbūs, -a, -um, adj. [in+probus, good], unprincipled. 1.

5. dēterreō, 2, tr. [terreo, frighten], frighten away or off, hinder, deter, prevent. 3.

7. perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, tr. [ferō, bear], bear or carry through, convey, deliver; announce, report; submit to, endure, suffer. *

dubitō, 1, intr. [dubius, doubtful], be uncertain, doubt; hesitate, delay. *

8. superō, 1, tr. and intr. [supér, over], go over; overmatch, be superior to, surpass, conquer, master, overcome, prevail; be left over, remain; vitā superāre, survive. *

9. libertinās, -tātis, f. [liber, free], freedom, liberty, independence. *

2. The direct form of the indirect discourse in this and the following chapters will be found after Book VII.

3. valeat: for tense see note on 14, 14.

quam magistrātūs: the ablative without quam might have been used instead of this nominative: App. 139, a: G.-L. 296, R. 1: A. 406; 407: B. 217, 1, 2: H.-B. 416: H. 471, 1.

4. improbā, "reckless."

5. dēterreō né cōnferant, "were preventing... from bringing."

6. praestāre... sint ēreptūrī, "(saying) that it was better," etc. This is the indirect form of the malcontents' sēditiosā orātiō. The subject of praestāre is perferre.

si (sc. Haeduī) iam obtinēre nón pos-
sint, "if they could no longer hold."

The Haeduī claimed the leadership among the Gallic states. See Int. 29.

7. neque (sc. sē) dubitāre, "nor did they doubt"; i.e. they said "we do not doubt."

8. quīn Haeduīs sint ēreptūrī, "that they would wrest from the Haeduī.


superāverint, "should conquer," is a perfect subjunctive, for a future perfect indicative in the direct form.

ūnā: the adverb.
Caesar's

Coercet, 2. tr. [arceo, shut up], shut up completely, restrain, check. 1.

Necessariō, adv. [abl. of necessarius, necessary], necessarily, of necessity, unavoidably. *

Quantus,-a,-um, adj. [cf. quam, how? as], (1) interroga., how much? how great? how large? what? quantum, as adv., how much? (2) rel., as much as, as; quantum, as adv., as much as, as; quantō ... tantō (with comparatives), the ... the. *

Designō, i. tr. [signō, mark], mark out; mean, indicate. 1.

Sentio, sentire, sensi, sensum, tr., perceive, be aware of, notice; experience, undergo; realize, know; decide, judge; sanction, adhere to. 4.

Iactō, i. tr. [freq. of iacio, throw], throw or hurl repeatedly, toss about; talk about, discuss. 2.

Celeriter, adv. [celer, swift], quickly, rapidly, speedily. Comp., celerius; sup., celerrimē (App. 40). *

Supply ea as the antecedent of qua and as one of the subjects of ēnuntiāri. Hōs a se coercerī non posse; quin etiam, quod necessariō rem coactus Caesar ēnuntiārit, intellegere sēse quantō id ēum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.

Caesar hāc orātiōne Lisci Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātrem, désignāri sentiēbat; sed, quod pluribus praesentibus cās rēs iactāri nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlo ea quae in conventū dīxerat. Dicit liberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā,

Concilium, -li, n., gathering, assembly, council. *

Dimitto, -mittere, -mīsi, -missum, tr. [-mitterō, send], send in different directions, send away or off, dismiss; break up; let go, let slip, let pass, give up, lose. *

Retineō, 2, tr. [re-+teneō, hold], hold back, detain, keep; restrain, hinder; detain forcibly, seize; retain, preserve, maintain. *

Quaerō, quaeerere, quaesivi, quaesitum, tr. and intr., seek or look for; inquire, ask, ask or inquire about. *

Sōlus, -a, -um, gen. sōlius (App. 32), adj., alone, only; the only. *

Conventus, -ūs, m. [conveniō, come together], a coming together, meeting, assembly; court. 1.

Liberē, adv. [liber, free], freely, without restraint, boldly. 1.

Sēcrētō, adv. [sēcernō, separate], separately, privately, secretly. 2.

Reperīō, reperire, reperī, repertum, tr. [re-+pariō, procure], pro-

2. Pluribus praesentibus, "when many were present."

4. Ex sōlo, "from him in private." Most verbs of asking may take two accusatives (cf. 16, 1), but the person is more commonly expressed by the ablative with a preposition: App. 125, a: G.-L. 359, a: R. 1: A. 396, a: B. 178, 1, a: H.-B. 393, c: H. 411, 3.

6. Reperit esse vēra, "he learned that this was the truth"; explained by
magnā apud plēbem propter liberālītātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portūrīa reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, propterea quod illī licente contrā licēri audēvit nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmpτū semper alere et circum sōlum domī, sed etiam apud
cure; find; find out, discover, ascertain; devise. *
verus, -a, -um, adj., true; n. as noun, the truth; vēri similīs, likely, probable.
audācia, -ae, f. [audāx, bold], boldness, daring, courage; presumption, effrontery. 1.
liberālītās, -ātīs, f. [liber, free], freedom in giving, etc.; generosity. 2.
portūrīum, -ī, n., toll, tariff on imports or exports. 2.
vectīgālis, -ālis, n. [vectīgālis, tributary], tax, tribute; pl., revenues. 2.
prietum, -ī, n., price. 2.
redimō, -imēre, -ēmi, -emptum, tr. [red- + emō, buy], buy back; buy up, purchase. 3.
liceor, 2, intr., bid (at an auction). 2.
contra, adv. and prep. with acc.: (1) as ade., against him or them; on the other
the indirect discourse which follows.
ipse sē Dumnorīgēm, “that Dumnorix was the very man” or “that it was, in fact, Dumnorix.” By putting together what is said of Orgetorix in 4, 5, 6, and the following description of Dumnorix we are able to appreciate the extraordinary power of some of the Gallic nobles.
portūrīa... redēmpta habēre: instead of collecting the duties and taxes by its own agents, the state farmed
hand; contrā atque, contrary to what; (2) as prep., against, contrary to; opposite, facing. *
audēō, audère, ausus sum (App. 74), intr., dare, risk, venture. *
nēmō, acc. nēminem, m. and f. [ne- + homō, man], no man, no one, nobody. *
nīmīlāris, -ē, adj. [familia, household], personal, private; as noun, intimate friend; rēs familīāris, personal property, estate. 4.
augeō, augere, auxi, auctum, tr., increase, augment, enhance, add to. 3.
largior, 4, tr. [largus, large], give largely or freely; brībe. 1.
sūmpsum, -ūs, m. [sūmō, spend], expense. 1.
semper, adv., always, ever, continually. 3.
aio, alere, aluī, altum, tr., nourish, feed, support; promote, foster, encourage. 4.
hand; contrā atque, contrary to what; (2) as prep., against, contrary to; opposite, facing. *
audēō, audère, ausus sum (App. 74), intr., dare, risk, venture. *
nēmō, acc. nēminem, m. and f. [ne- + homō, man], no man, no one, nobody. *
* 
11. familīāris, -ē, adj. [familia, household], personal, private; as noun, intimate friend; rēs familīāris, personal property, estate. 4.

12. augeo, auxi, auctum, tr., increase, augment, enhance, add to. 3.
largior, 4, tr. [largus, large], give largely or freely; brībe. 1.
sūmpsum, -ūs, m. [sūmō, spend], expense. 1.
semper, adv., always, ever, continually. 3.
aio, alere, aluī, altum, tr., nourish, feed, support; promote, foster, encourage. 4.

them; i.e. it sold at auction the privilege of collecting them. The successful bidder collected all he could, paid to the state the amount of his bid, and pocketed the difference.
10. illī licente, “when he bid.”
finitimás civitātēs largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causā
mātre in Biturīgibus hominī illic nōbilissimō ac potentissimō
collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre
et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitātēs collocāsse. Favorē
et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affīnitātem, ōdisse etiam suō
nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia
eius dēminūta et Dīvīciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiae
atque honorīs sit restitūtus. Si quid accidat Rōmānīs, sum-
num in sperm per Helvētiōs rēgni obtinendī venire; imperiō
populi Rōmānī non modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam
habeat grātīa dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō

14. largiter, adv. [largus, large],
largely, freely, much; largiter posse,
to have great influence. 1.

potentia, -ae, f. [potēns, powerful],
power, authority, influence. 2.

15. māter, -tris, f., mother; mātrēs
familiae, matrons. 3.

Biturīgēs, -um, m. (Cēde), the Bituri-
gēs (bītū-rī'jēz). 1.

illīc, adv. [ille, that], in that place,
there. 1.

16. collocō, 1, tr. [con-locō, place],
place, set, station; arrange; nūptum
collocāre, to give in marriage. *

uxor, -ōris, f., wife. 3.

sorōr, -ōris, f., sister. 2.

17. nūbō, nūbere, nūpsi, nūptum,
intr., veil one’s self for the marriage cer-
emony, marry. 1.

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, intr.,
favor. 1.

18. cupiēre, cupere, cupīvi, cupītum,
tr. and intr., long or be eager for, desire;
wish well to, favor. *

affinitās, -tātis, f., alliance by mar-
riage, relationship. 2.

ōdī, ōdisse (App. 86), tr., pf. with
meaning of pres., hate, detest. 2.

20. dēminūo, -minuere, -minul,
-minūtum, tr. [minuō, lessen], lessen,
diminish, impair. 1.

antiquus, -a, -um, adj. [ante, be-
fore], former, old, ancient. 2.

21. honōs, -ōris, m., honor, regard,
glory, distinction; honorable position,
office. 3.

restituō, -stituere, -stitul, -stitū-
tum, tr. [re-+stātuō, set up], set up
again, rebuild, renew, restore. 4.

24. dēspērō, 1, intr. [spērō, hope],
despair, be hopeless, lack confidence;
dēspērātus, as part., from transitive
meaning, despaired of; as adv., desper-
ate. *

14. causā: see vocabulary.

16. collocāsse: sc. nūptum.

ipsum: i.e. Dumumorix. His wife was
the daughter of Orgetorix: cf. 3, 15.

sorōrem ex mātre, “sister on his
mother’s side”; i.e. his half-sister.

17. nūptum: construction? App.295:
G.-L. 435: A. 509: B. 340, 1; b: H.-B. 618:
H. 632; 633, 1.

in civitātēs: the accusative implies
“sent them into and caused them to be
married there.”

18. Helvētiīs: indirect object with
verbs meaning to favor.

19. nōmine: ablative of cause.

20. dēminūta: sc. sit.

21. si quid: why quid? App. 174:
G.-L. 315: A. 310, a: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1:
H. 186.

summam in sperm venire, “he ente-
rained the highest hopes.”

22. imperiō, “under the sover-
eignty”: case? App. 142, b: G.-L. 399:
B. 221: H.-B. 422, I: H. 474, 1.
Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus esset factum, initium fugae factum ad Dumnorigne atque eius equitibus (nam equitatu quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī miserant Dumnorīx praeerat); eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum Caesar.

19. Quibus rebus cognitis, cum ad hās suspicionēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquantōrum Helvētiōs trāduxisset, quod obsidēs inter ēōs dandōs cūrāsset; quod ea omnia nōn modo iniusū suō et cīvitātis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fēxisset, quod ā mag. strātū Haeduōrum

25. equester,-tris,-tre, adj. [eques, horseman], of or belonging to a horseman, equestrian, of cavalry, cavalry. *

adversus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of adversō], turn to, turned to or against; opposite, fronting; adverse, unfavorable; unsuccessful; adversō flāmine, up the river; in adversum ōs, full in the face. *

29. perterreō, 2, tr. [terreō, frighten], frighten thoroughly, terrify greatly. *

1. cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -ni-

25. quod... esset factum, “as to the fact that an unsuccessful cavalry engagement had been fought,” etc. = “as to the... engagement which,” etc. See 15, 5-7.

paucis ante diebus, lit. “before by a few days” = “a few days before.” diebus is an ablative of degree of difference, with the adverb ante.


Third References:
Contrasted verb forms
Descriptive ablative

Chap. 19. Caesar consults Diviciacus about the punishment of his brother.

1. cum certissimae rēs accēde-

rum, tr. [co+g(n)ōscō, learn], learn, ascertain; study, investigate; pf., I have learned, I know (App. 193, I, a). *

2. accēdō,-cēdere,-cessi,-cessum, intr. [ad+cēdō, go], approach, draw near to, arrive at, come to; be added; ac-
cēdēbat, it was added. *

4. iniusū, abl. of iniusās, -ūs, m. [tūbeō, order], without command or order. 1.

5. insciēns,-entis, adj. [in-+sciēns, knowing], not knowing, unaware, ignorant. 1.

rent, “since the most clearly proven facts were added.” These facts are stated in the following quod clauses, which are in apposition with rē. For tense see App. 202; 203: G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, B; 267: H.-B. 470: H. 198; 543.


3. quod... cūrāsset, lit. “that he had taken care of hostages to be given between them” = “that he had caused hostages to be exchanged.” eōs = Hel-
vētiōs et Sēquanōs.


5. ipsis: i.e. Caesar and the Haedu.
accusatur, satis esse causae arbitrabatur quære in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitatem animadvertere iubet. His omnibus rebus unum repugnbat, quod Diviciaci fratre summum in populum Romanum studium, summam in sè voluntatem, egregiam idem, iustitiam, temperantium cognoverat: nam ne eius suppliciò Diviciaci animum ofìnderet verèbatur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cönärétur, Diviciacum ad sè vocari iubet et, cotidiànis interpretibus remòtis, per C. Valerium Troucillum, princípem Galliae pròvinciae, familiàrem suum, cui summam omnium rérum fidem habèbat, cum eò

7. animadvertere, -vertère, -verti, -versum, tr. and intr. [animus, mind] + ad-vertò, turn], turn the mind to; notice; animadvertere in, punish. *
8. repugnō, 1, intr. [re-+pugnō, fight], fight back; resist, oppose. 2.
9. studium, -di, n. [studio, be zealous], zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm, desire; good will, devotion; pursuit, occupation. *
10. egregius, -a, -um, adj. [ē+gresx, herd], out of the common herd; excellent, superior, eminent, remarkable. 2.
11. iustitia, -ae, f. [ius+stus, just], justice, fair dealing, uprightness. 2.
12. temperantia, -ae, f. [temperō, control one's self], prudence, self-control. 1.
13. supplicium, -i, n. [sub+plicio, bend], a bending over to receive punishment; punishment, death. 4.
14. offendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnsum, tr. [ob+fendo, strike], strike against, hurt, harm; animum offendere, hurt the feelings, offend. 1.
15. vereor, verēri, veritus sum, tr., revere; fear, dread, be afraid of. *
16. priusquam or prius, -um, conj., sooner than, before; until. *
17. vocō, 1, tr. [vox, voice], call, summon; invite. 3.
18. interpres, -etis, m., f., interpreter; mediator. 1.
19. removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr. [re-+moveō, move], move back or away, remove, withdraw; remōtus, n. part. as adj., remote, far away. 4.
20. Valerius, -ī, m. (1) Gaius Valerius Troucillum (gā'yus va-le'ri-us tru-sīl'ūs), a Gallic interpreter and confidential friend of Caesar. *

6. causae: partitive genitive with satis, which is used as a noun.
quære animadverteret, "why he should punish." For mode see App. 230, c: G.-L. 631, 2; H.-B. 513, 2.
8. unum, "one thing," is explained by its appositive, the clause quod cognoverat.
9. Note the lack of conjunctions, and cf. the note on 1, 3.
10. cognoverat, lit. "had learned" = "knew."
11. ne offenderet, "that he should offend." Meaning of ne, and mode? App. 228, b: G.-L. 550, 1, 2; A. 564: B. 296, 2; H.-B. 502, 4; H. 567, 1.
eius: i.e. Dumnoniorix.
12. priusquam . . . cönärētur, "before he ventured on anything."
13. per . . . colloquitur: English order, colloquitur cum eò per, etc.
14. principem: not necessarily a chief, but a prominent man.
colloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit. Petit atque hortātur ut sīne eius offensīōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cognītā statuat, vel cīvītātem statuere iubeat.

20. Diviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsceōrē coeptī nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plus quam sē dolōris capere, propterē quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrīmum domī atque in reliquā Gallīā, ille minimum propert adulēscēntiām posset, 5

16. colloquor, -loqui, -locūtus sum, intr. [con-+loquor, speak], speak with, converse, confer, have a conference. *

simul, adv., at once, at the same time, thereupon; simul... simul, both... and, partly... partly; simul atque, as soon as. *

commonefaciō, -facere, -feci, -fac¬ tum, tr. [moneō, remind+faciō, make], remind forcibly. 1.

17. sēparātīm, adv. [sēparō, separate], separately, privately. 2.

18. petō, -ere, -ivi or -ii, -itum, tr. and intr., seek, hunt for, aim at, make for, attack, go to, direct one's course to or toward; seek to obtain, strive after; ask, request, beseech. *

hortor, 1. tr., exhort, encourage, incite, urge strongly. *

19. offensīō,-ōnis, f. [offendō, hurt], offense. 1.

1. lacrima, -ae, f., tear. 2.

comptector, -pleti, -plexus sum, tr. [pletō, fold], embrace, clasp, enclose. 1.

2. obsceō, 1. tr. [sacer, sacred], implore, entreat, beseech. 1.

gravis, -e, adj., heavy, oppressive, hard, severe, serious; advanced (in years). *

sciō, 4, tr., distinguish; know, understand. *

5. adulēscēntia, -ae, f. [adulēs-

16. quae sint dicta, quae dixerit: indirect questions
ipsō: i.e. Diviciācus.

18. ut... statuat, "that without wounding his [i.e. Diviciācus's] feelings he might either himself [i.e. Caesar] investigate the case and pass sentence on him [i.e. Dumnorīx]."

Third Reference:
Sequence of tenses

Chap. 20. At the earnest request of Diviciācus Caesar spares Dumnorīx, but he takes precautions for the future.

1. complexus: probably clasping Caesar's knees, for this was the ancient attitude of suppliante entreaty.


315: A. 310, a: B. 91,5; H.-B. 276,1: H. 186. gravius, "too severe."

scīre: the indirect discourse depends, on the idea of "saying," which is implied in obsceōrē. The direct form is given after Book VII.

3. nec quemquam, "and that no one."

ēō: i.e. Dumnorīx.

capere, "felt."

4. ipse: i.e. Diviciācus. It is the subject of posset, to be supplied from the next clause.


5. minimum posset, "had very little influence." Supply cum from the preceding clause.
per sé crēyisset; quibus opibus ac nervis nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam ētētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne vulgī commovēri. Quod sī quid ei ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem existimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum utī tōtiūs Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plāribus verbis flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat finem ērōndi faciat; tāntī eius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit

cēns, youth], youthfulness, youth. 1. 6. crēscō, crēscere, crēvi, crētum, intr., grow or increase (in size, power, age, etc.), swell. 1. ops, opīs, f., help, aid; pl., wealth, resources; authority, influence, strength. 3. nervus, -ī, m., sinew; in pl., vigor, strength, power. 1. 7. minuō, minuere, minūi, minūtum, tr. and intr. [minus, less], lessen, impair, diminish; settle (contrōver-siās); minuente aestū, the tide ebbing. 3. perniciēs,-ēī, f. [cf. nex, death], ruin, destruction. 2. 8. amor, -ōris, m. [amō, love], love. 1. frāternus, -a, -um, adj. [frāter, brother], brotherly, fraternal, of a brother. 2. existimātiō, -ōnis, f. [existimō, estimate], judgment, opinion. 1. vulgus, -i, n., the common people, the multitude, the public, the masses; a crowd. 3. 12. verbum, -ī, n., word; pl., speech; entreaty; verba facere, plead. 3. flēo, fēre, fēvi, fētum, intr., weep, shed tears, lament. 4. 13. dextra, -ae, f. [dexter, right; sc. manus], the right hand. 1. prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsum, tr., seize, grasp. 1. cōnsōlor, 1, tr. [sōlor, comfort], cheer, comfort. 1. 14. ērō, 1, tr. [ōs, mouth], speak; seech, entreat. 3.

6. sē: i.e. Diviciacus. He said per mē, "by my help." opibus: ablative with ētētur. 7. suam refers to Diviciacus. 8. sēsē: i.e. Diviciacus. 9. quod sī, lit. "as to which, if": quod is strictly an adverbial accusative, but with sī it has become a mere connective, and is translated "and," "but," "now," etc. accidisset stands for an original future perfect. ipse: i.e. Diviciacus. eum, "such." 10. eum: i.e. Caesar. 11. suā refers to Diviciacus. voluntātē: ablative of accordance. futūrum (sc. esse) utī ... āverteren-tur, lit. "it would be that ... would be turned from him." This construction is the regular substitute for the future passive infinitive, which very rarely occurs. utī āverterentur is a substanti-ve clause of result. 12. ā Caesare: the usual construction after verbs of asking, instead of a second accusative. 13. rogat (sc. ut) faciat, "he asked him to make." In what kind of clauses and after what verbs may ut be omitted? App. 228, a: G.-L. 546, R. 2: A. 565, a: B. 295, 8: H.-B. 502, 3, a: H. 565, 4. 14. tāntī: case? App. 105: G.-L. 380, 1: A. 417: B. 203, 3: H.-B. 356, 1: H. 448, 1.
utī et reī publicae iniūriam et suum dolorem eius voluntāti ac 15 precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās querātur prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspicīōnēs vitet; praeterītā sē Diviciācō frātrī condōnāre dicit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, 20 quibuscum loquātur, scire possit.

21. Eōdem dīc ab explorātoribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse milia passuum ab ipsius castrīs octō, quālis

16. condōnō, 1, tr. [dōnō, give], give up; pardon, forgive. 2.  
adhibēō, 2, tr. [habēō, have], bring to, bring in, summon; employ, use. 4.  
17. reprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, tr. [re-+prehendō (=prendō), seize], hold back; criticise, blame, censure. 1.  
moneō, 2, tr., warn, advise, instruct, order. 3.  
vītō, 1, tr., avoid, shun, evade, escape. 3.  
praetereō,-ire,-iī,-itum, tr. and intr. [eō, go. App. 84], go beyond, pass by, omit; praeteritus, pf. part. as adj., past; n. plu. as noun, the past. 1.  
20. custōs, -ōdis, m., guard, watchman, spy. 2.  
21. loquor, loqui, locātus sum, intr., speak, talk, converse. *  
2. cōnsidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessum, intr. [sidō, sit down], sit down together, settle; take a position, halt, encamp. *  
octō (VIII), card. num. adj., indecl., eight. *  
quālis, -e, interrog. adj., of what sort, kind, or nature? 2.

15. utī condōnet: a result clause.  
voluntāti, "out of consideration for his wish," is indirect object of condōnet.

H. 425, 4.  
It was tactful of Caesar to make Diviciacus believe that Dumnorix was spared for his sake. In reality, however, Caesar had his hands full with the Helvetii and could not afford to stir up a revolt of the Haeduī in addition—a result which might easily have followed an attempt to punish their most popular noble. A few years later Caesar put Dumnorix to death for obstinate disobedience. See V, 7.

THIRD REFERENCES:  
Use of the indefinite quis  
Dative of reference  
Construction with verbs of asking, etc.  
Indirect question  

Chap. 21-22. The failure of a plan to attack the Helvetii.  
Chap. 21. Caesar plans a double attack on the Helvetii.  

Chapters 16-20 interrupted the narrative of Caesar's pursuit of the Helvetii. The events of this chapter follow immediately after those narrated in chapter 16.  
1. sub monte: the exact location is unknown; it was only a few miles from the battlefield south of Bibracte. See map facing p. 42.  
2. milia: accusative of extent of space.  
quālis esset: indirect question, object of cognōscerent.
esser nātūra montis et quális in circuitū ascēnsus qui cognōscerent misit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertīā 5 vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus qui iter cognōverant summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsilī sit ostendit. Ipse dē quártā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, qui reī 10 militāris peritissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

3. circuitus, -ūs, m. [circumeō, go around], a going around; a winding path; circumference, circuit. 4. ascēnsus, -ūs, m. [ascendō, climb up], a climbing up, ascending; approach, ascent. 2. praetor, -ōris, m., praetor; commander. 1. dux, ducis, m. [ducō, lead], leader, guide, commander. *

7. ascendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsum, tr. and intr. [ad+ascendō, climb], climb up, ascend, mount, climb. 2.

9. P., abbr. for Pūblius, a Roman praenomen. 2. Cōnsidius, -ēdī, m., Publius Cōnsidius [pūb'li-iūs kōn-sīd'i-ūs], one of Caesar’s officers. 3.

10. militāris, -ē, adj. [miles, soldier], of a soldier, military, martial; rēs militāris, military matters, warfare, the science of warfare. *

peritus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. experior, try], tried, experienced, skilled; familiar with, acquainted with. 2.

Sulla, -ae, m., Lucius Sulla (lū’shyūs sūl’a), the dictator; leader of the nobility; engaged in civil war with Marius, leader of the popular party; lived from 138 B.C. to 78 B.C. 1.

11. posteā, adv. [post, after], after this, afterwards. *

Crassus, -ī, m., Marcus Licius Crassus (mār’kūs li-sīn/i-ūs krās-ūs), triumvir with Caesar and Pompey. 2.

3. in circuitū, “in going around [behind] it.”

qui cognōscerent misit, “he sent (men) to learn.”

4. faciēm esse: sc. ascēnsum.

dē tertīā vigiliā: see on 12, 7.

5. lēgātum prō praetōre, “lieutenant with the powers of a general”; i.e. he was temporarily given special independent powers. Labienus was Caesar’s most competent and most trusted officer.

cum iīs ducibus, “with those men as guides.”

7. quid . . . sit, lit., “what is of his plan” = “what his plan was”; namely, that Labienus should take a position on the top of the mountain, in the rear of the enemy, and that he and Caesar should attack them at the same moment.

cōnsilī is a possessive genitive, used predicatively.

dē quártā vigiliā: the fourth watch would begin at three A.M. when the nights were twelve hours long. As this was June, the nights were shorter, and the fourth watch began about two.

9. P. Cōnsidius . . . fuerat: Caesar states these facts about Cōnsidius to excuse his own ready acceptance of the latter’s statements, as told in the next chapter.


11. in M. Crassī, “in (that) of Marcus
22. Príma lúce, cum summus móns á Labiēnó tenérétur, ipse ab hostium castrís nón longius mille et quíngentís passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captívis comperit, aut ipsíus adventus aut Labiēnī cogníitus esset, Cónsidiús equó admíssó ad eum accurrít, dícit montem quem á Labiēnó occupári 5 voluerit ab hostibus tenéri; íd sè á Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognóvisse. Caesár suás cópiás in proximum collem subdúcit, acíem instruit. Labíēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum á

1. lúx, lúcis, f., light, daylight; príma lúce, at daybreak. 3. captívus, -i, m. [captiō, take], captive, prisoner. 4.

comperiō, -perire, -peri, -pertum, tr. [pariō, procure], find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. 4. equus, -i, m., horse. *

admittō, -mittere, -mísí, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], admit; commit; incur; let go; give reins to (a horse). 3.

accurrō, -currere, -curri or -currūrī, -currum, intr. [ad-currō, run], run or hasten to. 2.

6. Gallicus, -a, -um, adj. [Gallia, Gaul], pertaining to Gaul or the Gauls, Gallic. *

7. collis, -is, m., hill. *

Crassus.” In such cases the word for “that” is never expressed in Latin.

**Third Reference:**

**Genitive with adjectives**

Chap. 22. Caesár’s plan is frustrated by a mistake of Cónsidiús.

1. summus móns, “the top of the mountain.” For the adjective in agreement, where we should expect a noun followed by a genitive, see App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

2. ipse: i.e. Caesár.


4. ut, “as.”


8. subdúcō, -ducere, -düxi, -duc-tum, tr. [ducō, lead], draw or lead up; lead or draw off, withdraw; with návēs, haul up, beach. 3.

aciēs, -ēī (old gen., aciē), f., sharp point or edge of a weapon; sharp or keen sight, glance; a line (as forming an edge), battle line; príma, the van; media, the center; novíssima, the rear. *

instruō, -struere, -struxi, -strúctum, tr. [struō, build], build upon, build, construct; form, draw up in battle array; equip, furnish. *

præcipliō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [capīō, take], take or obtain beforehand, anticipate; instruct, bid, order. 1.

**cognitus esset:** the force of *cum* still continues.

**equō admíssō, “at full gallop.”**

7. insignibus: the decorations on their helmets, shields, etc. See Plate II, 5-8.

8. aciēm instruit: Caesár concluded from the report of Cónsidiús that Labíēnus had been defeated, and expected that the victors would immediately attack him.

**ut... praeceptum, lit. “as it had been directed to him” = “as he had been directed.”** Intransitive verbs can not be used in the passive except impersonally. English idiom generally requires the personal construction in translation. eī: case? App. 116, c: G.-L. 217: A. 365: B. 187, II, b: H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.
Caesar nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cópiae prope
hostium castra visae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs
impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs expectābat proelīōque
abstinēbat. Multō dénique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit
et montem ā suīs tenēri et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Con-
sidium timōre perterrītum quod nōn vīdisset prō visō sībī
renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur
et mīlia passuum triā ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

23. Postrīdiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō biduum supererat
cum exercitūi frumentum mētīri oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte,

9. nisi, conj. [ne–sī, if; if not, ex-
cept, unless. *
prope, adv. and prep. with acc. (1) As
prep., near, close to. (2) As adv., almost,

nearly; recently. * 

11. impetus, –ūs, m., attack, onset,
charge; impetuosity, force, vehemence. *

12. abstineō, –tinēre, –tinui, –tenu-
tum, intr. [teneō, hold], keep aloof
from, refrain; spare. 1.

dēnique, adv., and then, thereupon,
finally, at last; at least. 3.

14. timor, –ōris, m. [timeō, fear].
fear, alarm, dread. *

15. intervāllum, –ī, n. [vāllus, pal-
isade], the space between two palisades;
interval (of space or time); distance. *

1. postrīdiē, adv. [posterus, follow-
ing+diēs, day], on the day following
the next day: postrīdiē eius diēi, on
the next or following day. *

biduum, –ī, n. [bis, twice+diēs, day],
space or period of two days, two days. 2.
supersum, –esse, –fui, intr. [sum, be.
App. 77], be over or above; be left,
remain, survive. *

2. Bibracte, –is, n. (Cef). Bibracte (bi-
brāktē), the chief town of the Haedui. 2.

9. nē committeret: a substantive
volitive (or purpose) clause, subject of
erat praecceptum.

nisi visae essent: mode? App. 273:
G.-L. 662; 663, 2, b: A. 592, 1: B. 323: H.-B.
536, a: H. 649, 1. The pluperfect stands
for an original future perfect.

ipsius=Caesaris.

10. ut fieret: a purpose clause.

11. proeliiō: ablative of separation.

12. multō diē, “late in the day.”

14. timōre perterrītum, “panic-
stricken.” This was probably due in
part to the exaggerated notion of Gallic
prowess that prevailed in the Roman
army.

quod ... renūntiāvisse, “had re-
ported to him what he had not seen as if
seen.” visō is a participle used as a
noun.

15. quà ... intervāllō=eo intervāl-
lō quà sequā sūnserā. For case see App.
142, b: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 221: H.-B.
422, I: H. 473, 3. According to 15, 14, the
distance was five or six miles.

Third Reference:
Ablative of comparison

Chap. 23-29. Caesar defeats the
Helvetii in a great battle and forces
the survivors to return home.

Chap. 23. Caesar marches toward
Bibracte to secure grain, and is fol-
lowed by the Helvetii.

2. cum ... oportēret, “(before the
time) when he would have to distribute
grain to the army.” See on 16, 10. The
peculiar cum clause is best explained by
H.-B. 509.

Bibracte: now Mont Beuvray, twelve
miles west of Autum.
oppidō Haeduorum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mihilībus passuum xviii aberat, rei frumentāriae prōspiciendum existimāvit: itaque iter ab Helvētiis āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemili, decurionis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterrītōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātīs proelium nōn com- mīssissent, sīve eō, quod rē frumentāriā interclūdī posse cōn- fiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō-atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine insequī ac lacessee coeptūrunt.

3. cōpiōsus, -a, -um, adj. [cōpiā, plenty], well supplied, wealthy. 1.

4. duōdēvigintī (XVIII), card. num. adj. [duo, two + dē, from + vigintī, twenty], eighteen. 4.

prōspiciō, -spīcerē, -spexi, -spectum, intr. [speciō, look], look forward; look to beforehand, see to, provide for, take care. 1.

6. fugitivus, -a, -um, adj. [fugiō, flee], fleeing; as noun, runaway slave. 1.

Aemilius, -ii, m., Aemilius (ē-mil'i-ūs). 1.

decurīō, -ōnis, m. [decem, ten], de- curion, a cavalry officer in charge of a de- curia, a squad of ten. 1.

4. mihilībus: ablative of comparison.

rei ... prōspiciendum, "that he must look out for supplies." Evidently his vigorous talk to Dumnorix and the rest of the chiefs, two days before, had as yet produced no results. prōspici- endum: construction? App. 285, II, a: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 194, b: B. 337, 7, b, 1: H.-B. 600, 3; 162: H. 237.

5. itaque ... contendit: he was south and a little east of Bibracte. The plan on p. 104 shows that the Helvetii were marching northwest, and that the more northerly route taken by Caesar was almost parallel, for some distance, with the route of the Helvetii. This explains the fact that the Helvetii were able to overtake Caesar's army.


eō magis quod, "all the more because." eō is an ablative of cause.

9. quod ... commīssissent: the Hel- vetii did not understand the reason for the failure of Caesar and Labienus to attack them on the previous day.

10. sīve eō, "or for this reason." interclūdī posse, "that (the Romans) could be cut off"; i.e. by being prevented from reaching Bibracte.

11. commūtātō cōnsiliō: if the Hel- vetii had held to their plan of march, they might have foiled Caesar. Their safety lay in avoiding battle, which they could do as long as they were in advance of him, on account of the rugged nature
24. Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque qui sustineret hostium.

completely, turn or wheel around; turn, change; signa convertere, face about. *quam, than, after, as soon as.

1. postquam, conj. [post, afterwards

2. sustineō, 2, tr. and intr. [su(b)s+ teneō, hold], hold up from below; hold

Battle with the Helvetii. First stage, Chap. 24-25, 10.

| a | Camp of the Romans on the night before the battle. |
| b | Camp of the Helvetii on the night before the battle. |
| c | Wagons of the Helvetii during the battle (24, 9). |
| d | Roman fortification (24, 8). |
| e | The Helvetii. |
| f | The Romans. |

of the country. Their fatal mistake lay in thinking that they were strong enough to throw away this advantage.

'à novissimō agmine, "on the rear." See on 1, 15.

Third References:

Accusative of place to which
Implied indirect discourse
Passive periphrastic conjugation


1. animadvertit: mode and tense?


2. qui ... sustinēret: i.e. to check the skirmishers of the enemy and give Caesar time to form his lines. The cavalry was not expected to meet the main attack.
impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instruxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō ingō duās legiōnes quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē conscripterat et omnia auxilia collocārī, ac tōtum montem hominibus complēri, et interea sarcastās in ūnum locum conferrī, et eum ab iīs qui in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūnīrī iussit. Helvētīi cum omnibus suis carrīs secūti impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

up, sustain; hold back, check, restrain; hold out against, withstand, endure, bear; hold out. *

3. mediō, -a, -um, adj., in the middle of; in the middle, intervening, intermediate; locus mediō utriusque, a place midway between the two. *

triplēx, -īcis, adj. [trēs, three-plexō, fold], three-fold, triple. 4.

4. veterānus, -a, -um, adj. [vetēs, old], old, veteran; pl. as noun, veterans. 1.

5. proximē, adv. [proximus, last], last; lately. 4.

6. compleō,-plēre,-plēvi,-plētum, tr. [obsoletē, pleō, fill], fill up or completely; complete; cover. *

7. sarcastā, -ae, f., pack, luggage; pl., baggage, packs (of individual soldiers, which they carried). 3.


triplēcēm aciēm: on the battle formation of the Romans see Int. 55, 56.

legiōnum quattuor veterānārum: case? App. 102: G.-L. 368, R.: A. 344: B. 197: H.-B. 349. These legions were the one which Caesar found in Transalpine Gaul (cf. 7, 5), and the three which he brought from their quarters near Aquileia (cf. 10, 9).

quās ... conscripterat: cf. 10.

Caesar dared not put these untrained and untried troops in the fighting lines.

auxilia: Caesar never expected much of his Gallic infantry. See Int. 47.

8. mūnīō, 4, tr., defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect; mūnitus, pf. part. as adj., fortified, defended, protected. *

9. impedimentum, -i, n. [impēdīō, hinder], hindrance, obstacle, impediment; pl., baggage, luggage (of an army), baggage-train (including the draught animals). *

10. cōnfertus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of cōnferciō, crowd together], dense, thick, compact. 4.

rećiō, -īere, -īeci, -iectum, tr. [re-+iacō, hurl. App. 7], hurl or drive back, repel; cast down or off; drive off or out. 4.

11. phalanx, -ngis, f., a compact body of troops, phalanx. 4.

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, intr. [sub+cēdō, go, go or come under; collocārī, complērī, cōnferri, mūnīrī; all depend on iussit.

sarcinās: see Int. 37.

eum: sc. locum.

īis ... cōnstiterant: i.e. the two new legions.

8. mūnīrī: the location of the battle-field was long uncertain, but in 1886 excavations were made on one of the proposed locations, and evidences of a semi-circular wall and ditch were found on the top of a hill, as indicated in the plan, p. 104. Three years later nine trenches were found in which the dead had been buried.

9. in ūnum locum: marked c on the plan. Bits of Gallic pottery have been found there.

11. phalange: in the phalanx for-
25. Caesar primum suō, deinde omnium ex conspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Militēs e locō superiōre pilīs missīs facile hostium phalanget perfregērunt. Ea disiectā gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō quod, pluribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pilorum transfixīs et colligātīs, cum ferrum sē infrēxisset,

come up to, come up, advance, be next to; succeed, take the place of; succeed, prosper. *

1. prīmum, adv. [prīmus, first], first, at first, in the first place, for the first time; cum prīmum, or ubi prīmum, as soon as; quām prīmum, as soon as possible, very soon. *
dinde, adv. [dē+inde, thence], thereupon, then, next. *

2. aequō, 1. tr. [aequus, equal], make even or equal, equalize. 1.

3. cohōrto, 1. tr. [co−horto, encourage], encourage greatly, cheer, animate. *

4. pilum, -ī, n., heavy javelin, pike. *

perfringo, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāc-
tum, tr. [frangō, break], break or burst through. 1.

disiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], scatter, rout, disperse. 2.

5. gladius, -dī, m. sword. *
dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum, tr. [stringō, bind tight], unbind, unsheath, draw (gladius). 1.

6. pugna−ae, f. [pugnō, fight], fight, battle, contest; genus pugnae, method of fighting. *

scūtum, -i, n., shield, buckler; oblong, connect (2½X4 ft.), made of wood covered with leather or iron plates, with a metal rim. *

7. ictus, -īs, m., stroke, blow. 1.

transīgō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, tr.

mination the soldiers overlapped their shields, shingle fashion, so as to make an impenetrable covering. The front rank held the shields vertically, the other ranks horizontally. If the phalanx remained unbroken, it could break the opposing line by sheer weight; but if it broke, the men were too closely packed to use their weapons effectively.

Chap. 25. The Helvetii fight bravely, but are forced to retreat.

1. suō: sc. euqō remōtō.

omnium: i.e. of the higher officers, not of the cavalry. Caesar wished in part to encourage his men by showing that the officers shared their danger, and in part to prevent some timid tribune from setting an example of flight. See Int. 41.

2. aequātō periculō, "by making the danger equal."

3. cohortātus suōs: Caesar was a skillful orator (see Int. 22), and usually encouraged his men before battle by a short speech.

ē locō superiōre: see Int. 55.

4. pilīs: see Int. 36, a.

5. gladiis: see Int. 36, b.


6. quod … poterant is the subject of erat. For mode see App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 1: A. 572: B. 299, 1, a: H.-B. 552, 1: H. 588, II. 3.

pluribus … colligātīs: remember that the shields overlapped.

neque ëvellere neque sinistra impedita satis commodè pugnàre poterant, multi ut diù iactató bracchiò praœoptárent scútum manù émittere et núdò corpore pugnàre. Tandem vulneribus 10 défessi et pedem referre et, quod mòns suberat circiter mille passuum spatiò, eò sè recipere coepèrunt. Captò monte et succédentibus nostris, Bòiì et Tulingi, qui hominum milibus

8. évellò, -vellere, -vellì, -vulsum, tr. [vellò, pluck]. pluck out, pull out. 1.

9. bracchium, -chi, n., the arm, forearm. 1.

praœoptò, 1, tr. [optò, wish], wish before; prefer. 1.

10. manus, -ús, f., the hand; in manibus, near at hand; manù, by hand, by art; ferreà manus, a grappling-hook; dare manús, yield; an armed force, troop, band, company. *

émittò, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [mittò, send], let go, send out or forth, release; hurl, discharge; drop. 2.

nūdus, -a, -um, adj., naked, unclothed, bare; exposed, unprotected. 1.

corpus, -oris, n., body; person; a (dead) body. *

tandem, adj., at last, at length, finally; in interrog. clauses to add emphasis, as quid tandem, what, pray? what then? 3.

vulnus, -eris, n., a wound. *

11. défessus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of défetis cor, grow weary], wearied, exhausted, faint. 3.

referè, referre, rettuli, relátum, tr. [re-ferô, bear. App. 81], bear, carry, or bring back, report; pedem referre, go back, retreat; grátiam referre, show one's gratitude, make a requital. *

subsum, -esse, -ful, intr. [sum, be. App. 77], be under or below; be near or close at hand. 2.

12. éò, adv. [old dative of is], thither, there (in sense of thither), to the place (where, etc.), to them (it, him, etc.). *

tain was near at hand, (separated) by a distance of about a mile"="there was a mountain about a mile away." pas-suum: case? App. 103: G.-L. 365, 2: A. 345, b: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3.

spatiò: ablative of degree of difference. 12.

eò: the adverb.

captò monte, "when they had reached the mountain."

13. qui ... claudébant: they had formed the van of the Helvetian army, and became the rear when the line of march was reversed. They had proba-
circiter xv agmen hostium claudébant et novissimis præsidio erant, ex itinere noströs ab latere apertō aggressi circumvenire,

14. claudō, claudere, clausi, clausum, tr., shut, close; agmen claudere, close the line, bring up the rear. 4.
15. latus,-eris, n., side; wing or flank of an army. *

apertus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of aperiō], open, exposed; ab latere apertō, on the unprotected flank. *

circumveniō, -venire, -vēni, -veniōn, tr. [veniō, come], come or get

BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII. Second stage, Chap. 25, 10, through Chap. 26.

a. Camp of the Romans on the night before the battle.
b. Camp of the Helvetii on the night before the battle.
c. Wagons of the Helvetii during the battle (24, 8).
d. Roman fortification (24, 8).
e. The Helvetii.
f. The Romans.
g. The Boii and Tulingi.

bly been separated from the Helvetii by a wagon train, which they had been obliged to pass on the road. This accounts for their coming up so late in the battle.

15. ex itinere: i.e. they went straight from their march into the battle, without a halt.

ab latere apertō: i.e. the right flank, for their shields protected the soldiers' left sides. The plan shows that the left flank was the nearer to the Boii and...
et id cōnspicātī Helvētii, qui in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coeōperunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipertitō intulerunt: prima et secunda acīsēs, ut victīs ac submōtīs resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

26. Ita ancipītī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impētus nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeōperant, in montem recēperunt, alterī ad impēdimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab

around, surround, cut off, beset; betray, defraud. *

16. cōnspicor, 1, tr. [speciō, look], observe, descry, perceive. 3.

17. rūrsus, adv. [for reversus, from revertō, turn back], again, back, anew; in turn. *

redintegrō, 1, tr. [red+-integrō, make whole], make whole again, renew, restore, revive. *

18. signum, -i, n., mark, sign, signal, watchword; signal for battle, standard, ensign; ab signīs discēdere, withdraw from the ranks; signa infere, advance to the attack; signa conversa infere, face about and advance to the attack; signa ferre, advance on the march; direct the attack; signa convertere, face or wheel about; ad signa convenire, join the army. *

Tulingi, but they came up in the rear, trying to work their way around (circumvenire) to the more advantageous position. circumvenire depends on coeōperunt, to be supplied from l. 17.

13. conversa . . . intulerunt, lit. "carried forward in two directions their turned standards"="faced about and advanced in two directions." In reality only the third line faced about. signa: see Int. 44.

prima et secunda acīsēs; tertia (sc. acīsēs): in apposition with Rōmānī.

19. victīs ac submōtīs = Helvētīus. venientēs = Bōīsēs et Tulingēs.

Third References:

Descriptive genitive
Ablative of manner
Substantive quod clause

bipertitō, adv. [bis, twice+partīor, divide], in two parts or divisions, in two ways.

19. vincō, vincere, vici, victum, tr., conquer, overcome, vanquish; prevail; have one's way or desire.

submoveō,-movēre,-mōvi,-mōtum, tr. [moveō, move], move away, drive away, dislodge.

resistō, -sistere. -stiti, —, intr. [re+-sistō, stand], stand back, remain behind, halt, stand still; withstand, resist, oppose.

1. anceps, ancipītīs, adj. [ambō, both+caput, head], two headed, with two sides or fronts, double. 1.

ācriter, adv. [ācer, sharp], sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously. Comp. ācērīus; sup. ācerrīmē (App. 40). *

Chap. 26. The Helvetii are routed and flee northwards. Caesar follows.

1. ancipītī: i.e. against the Helvetii on one side and the Boii and Tulingi on the other.

pugnātum est, "they fought." For translation see note on 22, 8.

2. alterī . . . alterī, "the one body [the Helvetii] . . . the other [the Boii and Tulingi]."

3. ut coeōperant: see 25, 12.

4. nam: this sentence gives the reason for Caesar's statement that the enemy withdrew, instead of fleeing in disorder.

cum pugnātum sit: an adversative clause. Note that the perfect subjunctive is an exception to the rule of sequence of tenses.

ab hōrā septimā, "from about noon."
5. hōra, -ae, f., hour. The Roman hour was the twelfth part of the day or night (reckoning between sunrise and sunset), and hence varied according to the season. * vesper,-eri, m., evening; sub vesperum, towards evening. 3.

6. nox, noctis, f., night; media nox, middle of the night, midnight; multā nocte, late at night. *

7. vāllum,-ī, n. [vāllosum, palisade], wall or rampart of earth set with palisades; entrenchments, earthworks. * obiciō, -i, -eci, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw against or in the way; place in front or opposite, present; expose; obiectus, pf. part. as adj., lying in the way or opposite, in the way. 2.

The seventh hour began at noon, and in such expressions the Romans probably reckoned from the beginning of the hour.

7. prō vāllo, "as a rampart." ē locō superiores: i.e. from the tops of the wagons.

8. coniciēbant, "kept throwing." The imperfect here denotes repeated action.

12. captus est agrees with the nearer subject.

milia CXXXI superfuérunt: according to chap. 29 the original number was 368,000. If both statements are correct the slaughter in this battle was terrible, though we must remember that the original number had been reduced by the destruction of the Tigurini, and or course by natural deaths on the journey, especially among the children and the aged.


nullam... pervēnērunt: the map facing p. 42 shows the direction of this flight. Of course no individual traveled every day and every night. There was only a panic-stricken mob, under no leadership, every member of which rested or moved on at his own pleasure, so that as a whole it was in ceaseless motion. Tonnerre is about a hundred miles north of the battlefield, and only the strongest could have traveled so far.
partem noctis itinere intermissō in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepul-
tūram occisōrum nostrī triduum morātī eōs sequī non potui-
issent. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque misit nē eōs
frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī si īuvissent, sē eōdem
locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum
omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī coepit.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopia adductī lēgātōs dē
dēditōne ad eum misērunt. Quī cum eōm in itinere con-
vēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūti
flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent
suum adventum expectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam

14. intermittō, -mittere, -misē, -missum, tr. and intr. [mīttō, send],
send between; intervene, separate; abate, cease, discontinue; delay, neglect, omit; let pass. *

Lingonēs, -um, m. (Bf), the Lingones (līngōnēz) 4.

15. sepultūra, -ae, f., burial. 1.

16. triduum, -i, n. [trēs, three+dies, day], three days. *
morō, 1. tr. and intr. [mōra, a delay], delay, hinder; tarry, linger. *

17. littera, -ae, f., a letter of the alphabet, a written sign, mark, or character; in pl., letters of the alphabet; letter, epistle. *
nūntius, -tōs, m., messenger; mes-
sage, news, report. *

18. nēve (neu) (App. 188, b), conj. [nē+ve, or], and not, nor. 3.
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, tr., aid, assist. help. 3.

1. inopia, -ae, f. [inops, needy], need, want, poverty, lack; want of provisions, hunger. *

2. dēditōne, -onis, f. [dēdō, surrender], capitulation. *

3. prōiciō, -icere, -iēcē, -iectum, tr. [lāciō, throw. App. 7], throw forward or away; throw, cast; reject, give up; sē prōicere, cast one’s self; jump. 4.
supplīciter, adv. [supplex, suppli-
ant], as suppliants, humbly. 1.

5. pāreō, 2. intr. [cf. pāriō, bring

sē ... habitūrum: i.e. he should treat them as enemies.

19. quō Helvētiōs: sc. habēret.

THIRD REFERENCE:
Commands in indirect discourse

Chap. 27. Surrender of the Helvētiī. Six thousand escape.

2. quī cum, “when they.”

4. essent: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said quō nunc estis, “where you [the Helvētiī as a whole, not the envoys] now are.”

5. iussisset: supply Caesar as the subject.

postquam pervēnēt: mode and tense?
Caesar pervénit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent posposci. Dum ea conquiritur et confueruntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia vi eius pāgī quī Verbīgenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterrītī nē armīs trādītī suppliciō afficerentur, sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditīorum suam fugam aut occultāri aut omnīnō ignōrāri posse existīmārent, primā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēsque Germanōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescīt, quōrum per finēs ierant, ĕs

forth], appear; obey, yield to, be subject to. 1.

6. servus, -ī, m., slave, servant. 1. perfugīō, -fugere, -fugi, -fungitum, intr. [fugīō, flee], flee for refuge, take refuge; desert. 1.

7. poscō, poscere, poposcī, —, tr., ask, demand, request, require. 3.

conquirō, -quirere, -quisīvī, -quisītum, tr. [quaerō, search], seek for carefully, search for, hunt up. 2.

8. sex (VI), card. num. adj., indecl., six. *

Verbīgenus, -ī, m. (Cgh), Verbīgenus (vēr-bī'ē-nüs), a canton of the Helvetii. 1.

9. trādō, -dere, -dīdī, -ditum, tr. [trāns+dō, give], give over, give up, surrender, deliver; intrust, commit; hand down, transmit; teach, communicate; recommend. *


perfugissent: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said quī ad vōs perfugērunt, “who have fled to you.” 7.

7. dum ea conquiritur, “while these were being sought out.” For mode and tense, see App. 234, a: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, 1: H.-B. 571: H. 533, 4.

ea = obsidēs, arma, servōs.

9. timōre nē suppliciō afficerentur, “by the fear that they would be punished”; lit. “be treated with punishment.” For the meaning of nē, see App. 228, b: G.-L. 550, 1, 2: A.

10. salūs, salūtis, f. [salvus, safe], welfare, security, safety; preservation, deliverance; place of safety; life (when in danger). *

11. dēditīcus, -a, -um, adj. [dēdō, surrender], surrendered; as noun, one surrendered, prisoner, subject. 4.

occultō, 1, tr. [occultus, secret], hide, keep secret, conceal. 1.

ignōrō, 1, tr. [ignārus, not knowing], not know, be ignorant of; fail to observe, overlook. 1.

12. ēgreddior,-gredi, -gressus sum, intr. [gradior, step], step or go out, come forth, depart; march out, make a sortie; land (from a ship), disembark. *

1. resciscō,-sciscere, -scivī, -scītum, tr. [re-+sciscō, inquire], find out, learn. 1.

564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1. perterrītī agrees with mīlia, but is masculine because the idea of men is prominent.


THIRD REFERENCES:
Adjectives with partitive meaning
Clauses introduced by postquam, etc.

Chap. 28. The six thousand are re-taken and put to death. The others are sent back to their homes.

1. rescīt = rescītē.

hīs is the antecedent of quōrum and the indirect object of imperūvit.
utī conquerēre et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgāti essevellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs in dēditionēm accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant 5 profectī, revertī iussit et, quod omnibus frūgībus āmissīs domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut īs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; īpsōs oppida vicōsque quōs incenderant restituere iussit. Id ēā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiō discesserant vacāre, nē propert bonitātem agrōrum Germanī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suīs finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsīrent et fīnitīmī Galliī provinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs potentibus Haeduīs,

2. redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -duc- tum, tr. [re- + dūcō, lead], lead or bring back; draw back, pull back; extend back. *

pūrgō, 1. tr. [pūrus, clean + agō, do, make], clean, clear, excuse, exonerate; pūrgātus, pf. part. as adj., freed from blame, exonerated. 2.

4. perfuga, -ae, m. [perfugiō, flee for refuge], refugee, deserter. 3.

5. unde, adv., from which place, whence. *

6. frūx, -gis, f. [fruor, enjoy], fruit; pl., crops, produce.

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send away, dismiss; let go; lose. *

7. famēs, -is, f., hunger, starvation. 1.

tolerō, 1. tr. [cf. tollō, lift up], bear, endure; hold out; nourish, support; with famēm, appease, alleviate. 1.

9. ratiō, -ōnis, f. [reor, reckon], reckoning, account, estimate; design, plan, strategy, science; method, arrangement; cause, reason; regard, consideration; condition, state of affairs; manner, way; condition, terms; in pl., transactions. *

10. vacō, 1. intr., be empty or uncoupled; lie waste. 4.

11. bonitās, -tātis, f. [bonus, good], goodness; fertility. 1.

2. sī vellent: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said sī vultis, "if you wish."

sibī: dative of reference. It refers to Caesar.

3. in... habuit: i.e. he had them put to death. They had broken a military agreement.

4. in dēditionēm accēpit: this act made them subjects of Rome.


ut īs facerent, "to provide them with."

8. īpsōs: i.e. the Helvetii and their allies.

īpsōs restituere is the object of iussit. The object of iubeō is regularly an accusative and infinitive, while the object of imperō is regularly a substantive volitive clause, as in 1. 2.

9. ēā maximē ratiōne, "chiefly for this reason," is explained by the quod clause.

13. provinciāe Allobrogibusque, "the province and (especially) the Allo-
quod egregiā virtūte erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedérunt quōsque posteā in parem iūris libertātīisque condicionem atque ipsī erant recēpérunt.

29. In castris Helvetiorum tabulae reperta sunt litteris Graecis confectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulis nōminātim ratio confecta erat, quī numerus domō exisset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim quot puerī, senēs,

16. pār, paris, adj., equal, like, similar; equal to, a match for; with words of number and quantity, the same; pār atque, the same as. *
condiciō, -ōnis, f., condition, state; agreement, stipulation, terms. *
1. tabula, -ae, f., board; tablet; list. 2.
2. Graecus, -a, -um, adj., of or belonging to the Greeks, Greek, Grecian; pl. as noun, the Greeks. 1.

Broges"; for the Allobroges were a part of the province.
Boiōs is the object of collocārent. It is put first for the sake of the emphatic contrast with Helvelīōs, Tulingōs, Lato-brīgos, in 1.5.
Haeudīs: indirect object of concessit.
14. egregiā virtūte, "(men) of very great courage": a descriptive ablative.
ut collocārent is the object of concessit. The Boi had had no fixed home, as is shown by 5, 11, 12. The map facing p. 42 shows where they were settled by the Haedui. The Haedui wished to strengthen their frontier against invasions by neighboring states, just as Rome wished the Helvetii to guard her frontier against the Germans.
15. quibus, quōs: the antecedent is Boiōs.
16. parem... atque ipsi erant, lit. "equal... as they themselves were (in)" = "the same... as they themselves enjoyed."

Third Reference:
The locative

3. nōminātim, adv. [nōminō, name], by name; expressly; in detail. 3.
4. quot, adj., indirect., (1) interrog., how many? (2) rel., as many as, the number that. 2.
puer, -erī, m., boy, child, son; in pl., children (of both sexes); à pueris, from childhood. *
senex, senis, adj., old; as noun, old man. 1.

Chap. 29. Enumeration of the Helvetii and their allies.

1. tabulae, "lists," written on wax tablets. The tablets used by the Romans were like folding slates, but made entirely of wood, with the inner surfaces thinly coated with wax. They wrote on this wax with a pointed stylus.
litteris Graecis: Gallic words were written in Greek characters, the Gauls having no alphabet of their own. The Greek alphabet was known to the Gauls through their intercourse with the Greek colony, Massilia, and was used by the Druid priests.
2. quibus in tabulis, "in which." 3. ratio, "an account."
quī exisset: indirect question.
puerī, senēs, mulierēsque are subjects of exisset, to be supplied from exisset. Note that this use of -que is an exception to the statement of the note on 1, 3.
mulierēsque. Summa erat caputum Helvētiōrum milium 5 CCLXIII, Tulingōrum milium XXXVI, Latobrigōrum XIV, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex his, qui arma ferre possent, ad milia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad milia CCCCLXVIII. Eōrum qui domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesār imperāverat, repertus est numerus milium C et X. 10

6. quattuordecim (XIV), card. num. adj., indecl., fourteen. 2. nōnāgintā, card. num. adj., indecl., ninety. 1. redeō, -ire, -īi, -ītum, intr. [red-+ēō, go. App. 84], go or turn back, return; come; fall to, descend; be referred. * cēnsus, -ūs, m., enumeration. 1.

XXXII = trigintā duōrum. qui possent: cf. l. 4. Supply fuērunt; “there were . . . who could, etc.”

8. ad, “about,” is an adverb in both instances. fuērunt agrees in number with the predicate noun milia. 9. CCCCLXVIII = trecenta sexāgintā octō.

BOOK I, CHAPTERS 30 TO 54. WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS

The complete success of Caesār’s campaign against the Helvetii at once established his prestige in Gaul. Representatives from most of the states came to beg his aid against their common enemy, Ariovistus, a German king who had established himself in Gaul. It was still early in July, and there was time for another campaign that summer. Caesār willingly accepted the task, for if ever he was to become master of Gaul he must first put out of his way this rival conqueror; and in any case it was most important that the Germans should be kept to the east of the Rhine. Yet the Germans were no mean antagonists, and Caesār was ready to make some concessions rather than fight them. He first proposed to Ariovistus that they settle their differences in friendly conference, but he met a haughty refusal. Determined to bring the king to terms before he should be joined by other German tribes, Caesār marched against him with all speed.
During a few days' halt at Vesontio the soldiers heard such fearful tales of the Germans that they were on the point of mutiny. By a masterly speech Caesar quieted their fears and aroused their enthusiasm to the highest pitch; and at once he led them on toward the enemy. Never again during the Gallic campaigns did his soldiers give him trouble.

Impressed by Caesar's activity, Ariovistus in his turn now proposed a conference; but when they met he replied boastfully to Caesar's demands, and the interview was broken off by an attack of the German guard. Caesar refused to meet Ariovistus a second time but sent two representatives in his place. These Ariovistus threw into chains. The negotiations were thus finally broken off.

At once Ariovistus marched past Caesar's camp, keeping up on the slopes of a mountain where he was safe from attack, and boldly established his camp in such a way as to command the road by which Caesar had come, and by which his provisions were to follow. Caesar immediately offered battle, but the Germans were not ready to fight. Five days later Caesar marched back past the German camp and fortified and garrisoned a small camp to protect the way for his provisions. The Germans were unsuccessful in an assault on this small camp.

At last Caesar determined to force a battle, and he marched straight at the German camp. As this was not fortified, Ariovistus was obliged to lead out his army and draw it up against the Romans. Caesar in person led his right wing, which was successful; his left, on the contrary, was beaten back. The reserves, hurrying to this spot, decided the contest. The Germans broke and fled to the river III, a branch of the Rhine, so closely pursued that only a few, including, however, the king, escaped to the other bank.

In the two campaigns of this one year important results were achieved. The Rhine for the first time became the frontier of the Roman possessions; the tide of barbarian invasion was rolled back for five hundred years; the destiny of Gaul as a future dependency of Rome was fixed; and the Roman's traditional fear of the Gauls and the Germans was dispelled.
EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

Brown indicates Roman possessions when Caesar entered Gaul. Red indicates states which Caesar conquered. Blue indicates the states which submitted without fighting. Compare all these with the map facing page 42.

Crossed sabers indicate the battlefield. Colonel Stoffel’s identification of it (Guerre de César et d’Arioviste) is very probable, and is indicated on this map.

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō tōtius fērē Galliae lēgātī, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: Intellēgere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populi Rōmānī ab his poenās bellō repetīsset, tamēn eam rem

2. grātulor, 1, intr. [grātus, pleasing], express joy, congratulate, thank. 1.
3. tametsī, conj. [tamen, however +et, even if], although, though, notwithstanding. 1.

Chap. 30-36. At the request of the Gallic states Caesar warns Ariovistus to cease encroaching on Gallic territory, but he receives a defiant reply. Chap. 30. Deputations from the Gallic states congratulate Caesar and ask permission to hold a council.

1. tōtius fērē Galliae: Gallia Celtīca is meant. The blue color on the map facing p. 42 shows the part of Gaul from which envoys may have come; but probably not all the states so colored were represented at this time.

3. Since there is a large amount of indirect discourse in 30-54, it is necessary to make a more detailed study of the construction than has been called for by the notes on 1-29. It is assumed that the following points are clearly understood by the student: the accusative and infinitive in principal declarative clauses; the subjunctive in principal imperative clauses; the subjunctive in subordinate clauses. The direct form of all long passages of indirect discourse is given after Book VII.

sēsē: the envoys said "we." The reflexive pronoun suī or the corresponding possessive suus is regularly used in indirect discourse wherever a pronoun of the first person is changed to one of the third. In this use the reflexive is often called the indirect reflexive, in contrast with the direct reflexive, which refers to the subject of the clause in which it stands. App. 165: G.-L. 590; 521: A. 300, 2: B. 244, 1, H.-B. 262, 2: H. 504.

Helvētiōrum ... Rōmānī, "the wrongs inflicted by the Helvetii upon the Roman people," refers to the defeat of Cassius, 12, 13. Since the phrase implies "the Helvetii wronged the Roman people," Helvētiōrum is a subjective genitive, populi Rōmānī an objective genitive: App. 98: G.-L. 363, 1, 2: A. 348, n.: B. 199: 230: H.-B. 344: 351: H. 440. 1, 2.
5 non minus ex usu Galliae quam populi Römâni accidisse, propterea quod eō consiliō florēntissimīs rebus domōs suās Helvētīi reliquissent, uti tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potīrentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā copiā deli- gerent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum ac frūctuōsīmum iūdicāssent, reliquāisque cīvitātēs stipendiāriās habērent. Petiērunt uti sibi conciliō tōtius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: Sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs quās ex commūnī cōnsensū ab eō petere vellent. Ea rē permissā diem conciliō constituērunt et iūre iūrandō cōnsentiērunt et iūre iūrandō  

5. usus, -ūs, m. [ütor, use], use, experience, practice, skill; service, advantage; need, necessity; usus est, there is need: usu esse or ex usu esse, be of advantage or service; usu venire, come by necessity; happen. *

6. flōrens, -entis, adj. [flōrēō, flower], flourishing, prosperous, influential.

8. domicilium, -ī, n. [domus, house], residence, dwelling, home, domicile.

9. opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., fit, opportune, lucky, suitable; favorable, advantageous. *

frūctuōsus, -a, -um, adj. [fructus, fruit], fruitful, productive.

10. stipendiārius, -a, -um, adj. [stipendium, tribute], paying tribute, tributary; pl. as noun, tributaries.

12. indicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, tr. [dicō, say], say publicly, proclaim, appoint, call.

13. quidam, quaedam, quiddam and quidam, quaedam, quoddam; indef. pron. (App. 63 and b), a certain one, some one; a certain, some, a; a kind of. *

commānis, -e, adj., common, general; rēs commūnis, the common interest. *

cōnsensus, -ūs, m. [cōnsentiō, agree], united opinion, agreement, consent; coalition.

14. permittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], give up or over, surrender; entrust, commit; permit, allow. *

11. petiērunt uti siblicēret, “they requested permission.”

conciliō: The envoys mentioned in 1.1 did not constitute this council. They issued a call for representatives from each state. The blue color on the map facing p. 117 indicates the part of Gaul from which envoys probably came to the council.

12. Caesaris voluntāte: “with Caesar’s consent.” They did not wish Caesar to suspect that the council was for the purpose of making war on him. The request shows that they were impressed by Caesar’s power, and may fairly be regarded as the first step in their submission to him.
nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus communī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

31. Eō conciliō dimissō idem principēs civitātum qui ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque utī sībi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impestrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: Nōn minus sē id contendere et laborāre, nē ea quae dixissent ēnūntiārentur; quam utī ea quae vellent impestrārent, proptera quod, sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērēnt. Locūtus est prō hīs Dīvīciācus Hæduus: Galliae tōtius factiōnēs esse duās: hārum alterius principātum tenēre Hæduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hi cum tantopere dē potentātū

16. sānciō, sāncire, sānxi, sānctum, tr. [cf. sacer, sacred], make sacred, sanction; bind; sānctus, pf. part. as adj., sacred, inviolable; established. 2.
5. labōrō, 1. intr. [labor, toll], toil, work hard; be anxious, troubled, or perplexed; labor, suffer, be hard pressed. 3.
7. cruciātus, -ūs, m. [cruciō, torture; crux, cross], torture, torment. *
9. factiō, -onis, f. [faciō, make], party, faction. 1.
10. Arvernum, -i, m. (CDe), an Ar-

15. nē ēnūntiāret is the object of sānxērunt.

nisi (iis) quibus mandātum esset, "except to those to whom they should be directed" (to disclose it). mandātum esset is impersonal. The plurperfect subjunctive stands for a future perfect indicative by implied indirect discourse, for the agreement was in effect "we will tell no one except those whom we shall have agreed upon."

Chap. 31. They implore him to aid them against the German king Ariovistus.

1. eō conciliō dimissō: Caesar leaves it to be inferred from the fact that his permission was given (30, 14) that the council was held.

idem principēs: when they had come to Caesar before (30, 2) they had had no authority to act for their states. Now the council had authorized them to ask for Caesar's help.

3. dē . . . salūte, "for their own safety and (that) of all."

agere, "to confer."

4. Caesarī ad pedēs, "at Caesar's

5. bonum, etc., "(saying) that they were no l ss urgent and anxious that . . . should not be reported, than that, etc."

sē: cf. note on sēsē, 30, 3.

quae dixissent, "which they should say."

7. sī ēnūntiātum esset, "if reports should get out." The verb is used impersonally. All the conditional clauses in this chapter employed the indicative in the direct form. ēnūntiātum esset stands for a future perfect and is a vivid future condition: App. 256: G.-L. 595: A. 516, a, c: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579, a: H. 574, 1.

8. Galliae: Gallia Celtica is meant.

9. factiōnes: see Int. 29.

10. cum contendere, "when they had fought." We might expect the plurperfect, but the imperfect is used on the principle laid down for the imperfect indicative in App. 191, b: G.-L. 234: A. 471, b: B. 260, 4: H.-B. 485: H. 555, 1.
inter se multos annos contenderent, factum esse uti ab Arvernis Sequanisque Germani mercè arcesserentur. Horum primò circiter milia xv Rhénum transisse; posteaquam agrós et cultum et omnem Galliam hominés feri ac barbari adamăssent, traductòs plurès; nunc esse in Gallià ad centum et viginti milium numerum. Cum his Haeduós eorumque clientés semel atque iterum armís contendisse; magnam calamitatem pulsós accépisse, omnem nóbilitátem, omnem senátem, omnem equitátem amisisse. Quibus proélisis calamitátibusque fractós, qui et suá virtúte et populi Römáni hospitó atque amicitía plurimum ante in Galliá potuissent, coactus esse Sequanis obsidés dare, nóbiliissimos civitátis, et iúre iúrandó civitátem obstringere sésé neque obsidés repetitióres neque auxílium à vernian; pl. thè Arverni (ár-ver'ni), possibly the Arvernians. 3. tantopere, adv. [tantus, so great + opus, work], so greatly, so earnestly. 1. potentá tus, -ús, m. [potēns, powerful], chief power, supremacy. 1. 12. mercés, -édís, f., pay, hire. 1. arcessó, -ere, -ivi, -itum, tr., summon, send for, invite. * primó, adv. [primus, first], at first, in the first place. 13. posteaquam, adv.[postea, afterwards + quam, than], after. 4. 14. ferús, -a, -um, adj., wild, savage, fierce. * barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign (to Greeks and Romans), uncivilized, barbarous; pl. as noun, savages, barbarians. * adamó, 1. tr. [amó, love], love strongly, covet. 1. 15. nunc, adv., now, at present, at this time. 3. 16. semel, adv., once, a single time; ut semel, as soon as. 2. 17. iterum, adv., again, a second time; semel atque iterum, again and again. * 19. frangó, frangere, frégi, fractum, tr., break, wreck; crush, discourage. 2. 20. hospitium, -ti, n. [hospes, host or guest], the relation of host and guest; friendship, hospitality. 2.

11. factum esse uti, "it had come to pass that." The perfect infinitive, factum esse, stands for factum est of the direct form, as contendere (I. 5) stands for a present indicative, and as veri urōs (I. 7) stands for a future indicative. For the uses of the infinitive tenses in indirect discourse, see App. 205: G.-L 530; 831: A. 584: B. 270. I, a, b, c: H.-B. 472, a: H. 617; 618; 619; 620.

12. mercéde: the Germans were at first simply hired soldiers. This was fourteen years before Caesar came to Gaul.
populó Rómanó implórátürós neque recúsátorós quóminus perpetúo sub illórum dicíone atque imperió essent. Únum sē esse ex omni civítate Haeduórum qui addúcì non potuerit ut iūraret aní liberós suós obsidés dare. Ob eam rem sē ex civítate profúgisse et Róman ad senátum vénisse auxílium postulátum, quod sōlus nēque iūre iūrandó nēque obsidibus teneretur. Sed peius victóribus Séquanís quam Haeduís victís 30 accídisse, próptereá quod Ariovístus, réx Germánórum, in eórum finibus cónsédisset tertiamque partem agrí Séquaní, qui esset optimus tótius Galliæ, occupávisset et nunc dē alterá parte tertiá Séquanós dēcédere iubéret, próptereá quod paucis

24. implórō, 1. tr. [in + plórō, call out], beseech, entreat, implore. 3. recúsō, 1. tr. and intr., refuse, reject; object to, make objections, complain; with perículum, shrink from. 2. quóminus, conj. [quó, so that + minus, not], so that not, that not; from. 2.

25. perpétuó, adv. [perpétuus, continuous], continuously, constantly; forever. 1. díciō, -onis, f., dominion, authority, rule, sway. 3.

26. iūrō, 1. tr. and intr. [iūs, right], take oath; swear. 1.

28. profugiō, -fugere, -fugi, -fug-


25. únnum sē esse, "that he was the only one." sē is Diviciacus. Cf. note on sé, 30. 3.

26. qui potuerít: mode? App. 230: G.-L. 631, 1: A. 535, b: B. 283, 1, 2: H.-B. 521, 1, a, b: H. 591, 5. So far in this chapter all the subjunctives have been imperfects and pluperfects, in accordance with the rule for sequence of tenses; for the indirect discourse depends on an historical tense, locutus est, 1. 8. But in potuerit we have an instance of representatio; i.e. the tense of the direct form is retained in the indirect: App. 270, a: G.-L. 654, n: A. 555, b, n: B. 318: H. 644, 1.

itum, intr. [fugió, flee], flee, flee from, run away, escape. 4.

Róma, -ae, f., Rome. 1.

29. postuló, 1. tr., request, ask, demand; require, necessitate. 2.

30. malus, -a, -um, adj., evil, bad, injurious; comp., peior, peius; n. as noun, a worse thing; sup. pessimus. 1.

victor, -óris, m. [vincó, conquer], conqueror, victor; as adj., victorious. 2.


rēx, régis, m., king. 2.

34. dēcédō, -cédere, -cessi, -cέssum, intr. [cédō, go], go from or away, depart, withdraw, leave, forsake; die. 3.

29. postulátum: the supine. His request for assistance was made three years before this time, and was unsuccessful. Cicero met him in Rome and speaks of him with admiration.

50. peius accídisse, "a worse fate had befallen."

32. tertiam partem: this was probably an exaggeration. The part taken by Ariovístus corresponds pretty well with upper Alsace, on the Rhine, and is colored red on the map facing p. 117.

33. alterá, "a second."

34. paucis ménsibus ante, lit. "before by a few months" = "a few months before." ménsibus is an ablative of degree of difference.
mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum xxiv ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs uti omnēs ex Galliāe finibus pellentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent; nequē enim conferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem victūs cum illā comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proelīo vicerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crudēlīter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque liberōs poscēre et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsus edere, si quā rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem cīus factā sit. Hominem esse barbarum, irācundum, temerārium; nōn posse eius imperia diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in Caesare

35. Harūdēs, -um, m. (Ch), the Harūdes (Ha-ry’dēs), a German tribe. 3.
36. sēdēs, -is, f. [sedeō, sit], seat; residence, abode, settlement. 4.
39. cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f. [cōnsuēscō, become accustomed], habit, custom, practice; mode of life. *
victus, -ūs, m. [vivō, live], living, mode of life; provisions, food. 1.
40. comparō, 1, tr. [pār, equal], place in comparison, compare. 1.
41. Magetobriga, -ae, f. (Cf), Magetobriga (māj’ē-tō’bri-ga), a Gallic town

36. futūrum esse uti omnēs pellentur, lit. "it would be that all would be expelled."="all would be expelled." The direct form was omnēs pellentur. As the future indicative must be rendered by the future infinitive, one might expect pulsūm irī; but this form of the future passive infinitive is very rare and the periphrasis found in the text is the usual method of expressing the future passive infinitive: App. 205, b: G.-L. 551: A. 569, 3; a: B. 270, 3, a: H.-B. 472, c: H. 619, 2.
37. omnēs [ex]: i.e. all the Gauls.
38. Gallicum: sc. agrum.
39. hanc = Gallicam.
victūs: note the quantity of ĭ, and compare victus, the perfect participle of vincī.

where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls. 1.
42. superbē, adv., proudly, haughtily. 1.
crudēlīter adv. [crudēlis, cruel], cruelly. 1.
44. édō, -dere, -dīdī, -ditum, tr. [dō, give], give out; inflict. 1.
nūtus, -ūs, m. [nuō, nod], nod; sign, command; ad nūtum at one's nod or command. 2.
45. irācundus, -a, -um, adj. [ira, anger], irritable. 1.
temerārius, -a, -um, adj. [temerē, rashly], rash, imprudent, reckless. 1.
populōque Rōmānō sit auxili, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum quod Helvētīī fecerint, ut domō emigrēnt, aliud domicilium, alias sēdēs, remotās ā Germanīs, petant fortūnamque, quaeque accidat, experiantur. Haec si enuntiāta Ariovistō sint, non dubitāre quin de omnibus obsidibus qui apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctoritāte sua atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populi Rōmānī déterrēre posse nē maior multitūdō Germanōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī inūriā posse défendēre.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Diviciācō habitā, omnēs qui aderant magnō flētū auxiliūm ā Caesare petere coeperunt. Anìquid advértit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Séquanōs nihil earum rērum facere quās cēterī facerent, sed tristēs capite démissō terram intueī. Êius rei quae causa esset mirātus ex ipsis quaeśit. Nihil Séquanī respondēre, sed in eādēm tristitiā tacētī perānērē.

48. émigrō, 1, intr. [migrō, migrāte], depart, migrate. 1.
50. quicumque, quaequecumque, quodcumque, indef. (or generalizing) rel. pron., whoever; whatever; whatsoever; whatsoever, any . . . whatever; everyone who; everything that. *experior, -erīri, -pertus sum, tr., prove, try, test, experience. *
5. flētus, -ūs, m. [fleo, weep], weeping, lamentation. 1.
4. cēteri, -ae, -a, adj. the rest of, the remainder; as noun, the rest, remaining, others. 4.
3. tristis, -ae, adj. sad, dejected. 1.

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send, thrust, or let down; sink; bow; sé dēmittere, come or get down, descend; sé animō dēmittere, lose courage; dēmissus, pf. part. as adj., low. 1.
terra, -ae, f., earth, land, soil, ground; region, district; terrae (pl.) and orbis terrarum, the world. 3.
intueor, 2, tr. [tueor, look], look at. 1.
mīrōr, 1, tr. and intr., wonder or marvel at; wonder, be astonished. 1.
6. tristitia, -ae, f., sadness. 1.
permaneō, -manēre, -mānsi, -mān-

Chap. 32. The desperate condition of the Sequani.

2. magnō flētū: Caesar often mentions the demonstrative manners of the Gauls.

auxiliūm petere: the Gauls failed to see that they were simply changing masters in appealing to Caesar against Ariovistus.

5. quae causa esset: an indirect question depending on mirātus.
Cum ab his saepius quaeret neque ullam omninō vocem exprimere posset, idem Diviciācūs Haedūns respondit: Hōc esse miserīorem et graviorem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōli nē in occultō quidem queri neque auxilium implōrāre andērent absentisque Ariovistī crudēlitātem, velūt si córam adisset, horrērent, propertē quod reliquis tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum recepissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eīus essent, omnes crūciātūs essent perferendi.

33. His rébus cognitis Caesar Gallōrum animōs veribus confirmavit pollicitusque est sībi eam rem cūræ futūram: Magnam sē habēre spēm et beneficiō suō et auctorītāte adductum  

sum, intr. [maneō, remain], stay through or to the end, stay, remain; continue, persist. 3.
7. vōx, vocís, f., voice, tone; outcry, cry; word; pl., words, language; variously translated according to context, as entreaties, complaints, tales, etc. *
8. exprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, tr. [premō, press], press out, extort, elicit; raise. 1.
9 miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate; poor, worthless. 2.
10. occultus, -a, -um, adj., covered, hidden, concealed, secret; n. as noun, a hidden place, an ambush. 2.

6. respondēre, permanēre: historical infinitives.
7. quaerēt: a pluperfect would seem more natural.
8. hōc: ablative of cause.
11. absentis: “even when absent.”
   velūt sī adisset: mode and tense?
12. tamen: “at any rate”; i.e. though they could not resist Ariovistus.

Chap. 33. Caesar decides to under-

take their defense. His reasons for doing so.

2. sibi . . . futūram, “that the matter should receive his attention.” For the two datives, see App. 119: G.-L. 356, 3: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, a: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.
3. beneficiō suō: in Caesar’s consulship, only the year before, the senate had conferred upon Ariovistus the titles “rēx” and “amicus.” This had been done to keep Ariovistus from interfering with Roman interests in Gaul until Caesar should be ready to take charge of his province.
Ariovistum finem iniurias facturum. Hac oratione habitab curculium dimisit. Secundum ea multae res eum hortabantur 5 quare sibi eam rem cogitandum et susciendi aputaret, in primis, quod Haeduos, fratres consanguineosque saepe numero a senatu appellatos, in servitu atque dicione videbat Germanorum tenendi, eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanos intellegebat; quod in tantio imperio populi Romani 10 turpissimum sibi et rei publicae esse arbitrabatur. Paulatim autem Germanos consuuccere Rhenum transire et in Galliam magnum eorum multitudoem venire populum Romanum periculosem videbat; neque sibi hominés feros ac barbaros temperaturos existimabant quin, cum omnem Galliam occupavissent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonique fecissent, in provinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contenderent, praeerit cum Sequanos

5. secundum, prep. with acc. [sequor, follow], along; in the direction of; besides, in addition to. 3.
6. cogito, 1, tr. and intr. [co-agitâ, consider], consider thoroughly or carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. 3.
11. turpis, -e, adj., ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable.

6. quare putaret: "to think," lit. "why he should think."
   sibi: dative of the agent, with the passive periphrastic.
7. Haeduos tenerii is the object of videst.
   fratres appellatos, "who had been called brothers." See note on 11, 5.
10. quod, "and this"; i.e. the condition of the Haedui, as set forth in the preceding infinitive clauses.
11. sibi refers to Caesar, the subject of arbitrabatur, not to the subject of the clause in which it stands; it is therefore the indirect reflexive: App. 165: G.-L. 530; 521: A. 300, 2: B. 244, 1, II: H.-B. 262, 2: H. 504.

Paulatim, etc., "he saw that for the Germans to get gradually in the habit of crossing and . . . to come . . . (was) dangerous," etc.
13. periculosem: see Int. 3.
14. sibi: indirect object of temperaturos. It refers to homines, the subject of the clause in which it stands; it is therefore the direct reflexive: App. 164:
16. ut, "as"; for fecissent stands for fecerunt of the direct form.
Cimbri Teutonique: see Int. 27.
17. praesertim cum: cf. note on 16, 17.
34. Quam ob rem placuit ei ut ad Ariovistum légátōs mitteret qui ab eō postularent uti aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquió déliceret: Velle sēsē dē rē pública et summis utriusque rébus cum eō agere. Eī légationi Ariovistus respexit: Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum respondit: Sī quid insīdīa nostro Rhodanus divideret; quibus rébus quam māturrimē occurrentum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiām sūmpserat ut ferendus non vidērētur.

19. mātūrē, adv. [mātūrus, ripe], early, speedily, soon. 3. occurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, intr. [ob+currō, run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon; go to, come to; oppose, counteract; occur. *

20. spīritūs, -ūs, m. [spīrō, breathe], breath, air; in pl., haughtiness, pride. 2. arrogantia, -ae, f. [arrogāns, arrogā], arrogance, haughtiness, presumption, insolence. 2.

1. placēō, 2, intr. [cf. plācō, appease], please, satisfy; often impera., seem good to one, hence, decide, resolve, determine. 2.

3. uterque, utraque, utrumque, adj. [uter, which of two], each of two, either of two; both. *

5. opus, indecl. noun. n. [cf. opus, work, deed], need, necessity; opus est, it is necessary, there is need, the thing needed being expressed either by the nom. or abl. (App. 146.) *

18. Rhodanus divideret, “only the Rhone separates.” Caesars’s statement of the reasons for espousing the cause of the Gauls is candid and convincing. No doubt the enterprise fell in with his bold, and ambitious spirit; but it appealed also to the statesman and lover of his country. Gaul must certainly yield to the barbarism of the German or the civilization of the Roman. No half-way ground was possible.


Chap. 34. Ariovistus haughtily rejects Caesars’s proposal to confer with him.

1. ad Ariovistum: he was somewhere in the country he had taken from the Sequani. Cf. note on 31, 52. 3. colloquō; dative of purpose. velle sēsē agere, “(saying) that he wished to confer.” Caesar was anxious to secure his end without a war and probably thought that the diplomatic relations which had been maintained with Ariovistus could be kept up (cf. note on 33, 3).

4. summis ... rébus, “matters of the greatest importance to both.”

5. sī esset, sēsē ventūrōm fuisset: the direct form was sī esset, vēnīsem, “if I wanted anything, I should have gone,” a contrary to fact condition: App. 254: G.-L. 507, R. 1: A. 517, a: B. 304, 1, 2: H.-B. 581: H. 579, 1. When such a condition is turned into indirect discourse, the conclusion always takes the infinitive form -ūrus fuisset, although some of the grammars make the mistake of saying that the imperfect subjunctive becomes -ūrus esse: App. 272, II: G.-L. 597, R, 4: A.

To one, hence, decide, resolve, determine. 2.


colloquium, -qui, n. [colloquor, talk together], talking together; conference, parley, interview. *

opus, indecl. noun. n. [cf. opus, work, deed], need, necessity; opus est, it is necessary, there is need, the thing needed being expressed either by the nom. or abl. (App. 146.) *

1. mātūrē, adv. [mātūrus, ripe], early, speedily, soon. 3.

20. spīritūs, -ūs, m. [spīrō, breathe], breath, air; in pl., haughtiness, pride.

1. placēō, 2, intr. [cf. plācō, appease], please, satisfy; often impera., seem good to one, hence, decide, resolve, determine. 2.

5. opus, indecl. noun. n. [cf. opus, work, deed], need, necessity; opus est, it is necessary, there is need, the thing needed being expressed either by the nom. or abl. (App. 146.) *
ventūrum fuisse: si quid ille sé velit, illum ad sé venire oportere. Praeterea sé neque sine exercitu in eâs partés Galliae venire audère quás Caesar possidéret, neque exercitum sine magnó commeátu atque molímentó in únum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mirum vidérit quid in suá Galliá, quæ belló vicisset, aut Caesári aut omnínó populó Rómānō negoti esset.

35. His responsis ad Caesarem relátis iterum ad eum Caesar lègátōs cum his mandátis mittit: Quoniam tantó suò populiqve Römānī benefició affectus, cum in cónsulátu suó réx atque amicus à senátu appellátum esset, hanc sibi populóque

7. praetereá, adv. [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore.
8. possideó, -sídere, -sédī, -ses-sum, tr. [sedeó, sit], occupy, hold, possess.
9. commeátor, -us, m. [commeó, go back and forth], trip, voyage; supplies, provisions.
10. mirus, -a, -um, adj. [miror, wonder at], strange, astonishing; mirum in modum, surprisingly.
11. negotiátum, -ī, n. [negat- + ótium, leisure], concern, business, undertaking; trouble, difficulty, labor; negotiátum dare, employ, direct; quid negoti, what business; nihil negoti, no difficulty.
12. mandátum, -ī, n. [mandō, command], charge, injunction, order, command; message.
13. quoniam, conj. [quom = cum, since + iam, now], since now, since, inasmuch as, because, whereas.
14. cónsulátus, -us, m. [cónsul, consul], consulship.

which Ariovistus assumes that Caesar has conquered.

10. mirum; predicate adjective with vidérī; “it seemed strange.”

quid Caesarī negoti esset, lit. “what of business there was to Caesar” = “what business Caesar had”; an indirect question, subject of vidérī. Caesarī is a dative of possessor.

omnínō, “in general.”

Chap. 35. Caesar demands that Ariovistus cease his oppression of the Gauls.

3. The German was shrewd enough to estimate the beneficiúm at its true value.
4. quoniam (1. 2) hanc grátiam re-
5 Römānō grātiam referret, ut in colloquium venire invitātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē dicendum sibi et cognōscendum putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: prīnum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde, obsīdēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet

10 Sēquanisīque permittērēt ut quōs ipsī habērent voluntāte eius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Haeduīs iniūriā lacereret, nēve his sociīisque eōrum bellum ūnfērret. Si īta fēcisset, sibi populōque Römānō perpetuam grātiam atque amicitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā M.

ferret, ut, "since he made this requital, that." The direct form given after Book VII represents Caesar's words to his envoys, in which Ariovistus was spoken of in the third person. It would also be possible to give the form in which the message was to be repeated to Ariovistus, in which he would be addressed in the second person. In the latter case referret stands for refer, "you make."


7. haec esse quae, "these were (the things) which."

nē tradūceret: as addressed to the envoys the direct form was nē trādico, "that he shall not bring," a substantive volitive clause, in apposition with haec. As addressed to Ariovistus it would be nōlī trādūcere, "do not bring," a prohibition: App. 219: G.-L. 271, 2: A. 450: B. 276, c: H.-B. 501, 3, a: H. 561, 1.

10. Sēquanisīque . . . licēret, "and grant permission to the Sequani to return with his [Ariovistus's] approval those [hostages] whom they [the Sequani] had [from the Haeduī]," lit. "permit that it be allowed." illīs= Sēquanīs.


sī nōn impetrāret, "if he [Caesar] should not obtain (such assurances)."

sēsē: the direct form would be ego, if expressed at all. It is the subject of neglēcitūrum, 1: 18; but, because the sentence is so long, the subject is repeated in sē, 1: 17.

Pisone cōnsulibus senātus cēnssisset utī quicunque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō rei publicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmāni dēfenderet, sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī ut quī vicissent īēs quōs vicissent quem ad modum vellent imperāre; item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse. Si ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet quem ad modum suō iūre uterētur, nōn oportēre sē a populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri. Haeduōs sībi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et ārmīs congressi ac superātī essent, stipendiāriōs esse factōs. Magnam

15. cēnseō, cēnśere, cēnsul, cēnsūm, tr., think. decide (acc. and infinitive); propose, advise, vote (ut and subjunctive); propose, vote for (accusative). 1.

16. commodum, -i, n. (commodus, convenient); convenience, interest, advantage. 2.

18. neglēgō, -legerē, -lēxi, -lēctum, tr. [neg-+legerō, choose, regard], not heed, disregard, neglect. *

3. praescriptum, -i, n. (praescribō, order), order, dictation, command. 1.

4. arbitrium, -ri, n. [arbitrer, umpire], decision or judgment (of the arbitrator); opinion, discretion, pleasure. 1.

5. praescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr. [scribō, write], write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe, dictate to. 3.

8. congregō, -gregō, -gressus sum, intr. [gradior, step], meet, encounter, meet in battle; join peacefully. *

15. senātus cēnssisset: this decree of the senate was the only result of the entreaties of Diviciacus (cf. 31, 28), and no governor had paid any attention to it, as Ariovistus very well knew.

16. quod . . . posset, "so far as he could do it in accordance with the interests of the state"; a common formula in decrees of the senate.


Chap. 36. Ariovistus responds defiantly.

1. ut imperārent: a substantive volitive clause, in apposition with īēs. vicissent, vicissent, vellent might all have been indicative in the direct form, but would probably be attracted into the subjunctive.

iīs: indirect object of imperārent.

3. ad alterius praescriptum, "in accordance with the dictates of anyone else."

4. ipse: direct form, ego. The reflexive cannot be used to replace a pronoun of the first person (cf. note on esse, 30, 3) when a nominative is required, because it has no nominative. Usually no pronoun is used; but if there is emphasis, as here, ipse is used.

5. quem . . . uterētur, "how they should exercise their rights."

6. nōn oportēre sē impediri, "he [Ariovistus] ought not to be hampered."

7. sībi: dative with the adjective stipendiāriōs.
Caesarem iniuriām facere, quī suō adventū vectigālia sibi
dēteriōra facet. Haeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse,
neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniuriā bellum illātūrum, si
in eō manērent quod convenisset stipendiumque quotannis
penderent; si id nōn fecissent, longē iis frāternum nōmen
populi Romānī a futuro. Quōd sībi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē
Haeduōrum iniuriās nōn neglōctūrum, nēmīnem sēcum sine
suā pernicie contendisse. Cum vellet, congrēderētur: intel-
lēctūrum quid invictī Germanī, exercītātissimī in armīs, quī
inter annōs xiv tectum nōn subissent, virtūte possent.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur,

10 dēterior, -iūs, comp. adj. (App. 43), worse, less. 1.
12. manēō, manēre, mānī, mān-
sum, intr., remain, continue, abide, stay. 2.
stipendium, -di, n., tax, tribute. *
quotannis, adv. [quot, as many as +
annus, year], every year, yearly. 2.
13. pendō, pendere, pependī, pēn-
sum, tr., weigh, weigh out; weigh out
money, pay, pay out; with poenās,
suffer. 2.

9. qui faceret may be translated by
a causal clause, “since he, etc.,” but the
indicative was probably used in the
direct form. Apparently the presence
of Caesar had given hope to the Haedui
and had made them less careful in pay-
ing their tribute to Ariovistus.
neque . . . neque, “but . . . not . . .
or.”
11. illātūrum, si manērent: a vivid
future condition.
12. in . . . convenisset, lit. “should
remain in that which had been agreed
upon” = “adhered to the terms which
had been agreed upon.”
13 fēcissent stands for a future
perfect indicative.
longē . . . a futuro, “the name of
brothers of the Roman people would be
of little value to them.”
14. quod, “as to the fact that”:
et légati ab Haeduís et á Tréverís veniēbant: Haeduí questum quod Harūdês, qui nuper in Galliam transportātī essent, finēs eōrum populārentur: Sēsē nē obsidibus datis pacem Ariovísti redimere potuisse; Tréverī autem, pāgōs centum 5 Suebōrum ad ripās Rhenī consēdisse, qui Rhenum trānsire cōnārentur; his prācessē Nasuam et Cimerium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōitus mutāriān du sibi existimāvit, nē, si nova manus Suebōrum cum veteribus copibus Ariovísti sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque 10 rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

38. Cum tridui viam prōcessisset, nūntiatum est ei Arío-

2. Trévir, -eri, m., one of the Treveri; pl. Tréveri (Bfgh), the Treveri (trévĕ-ri). *
3. trānsportō, 1, tr. [portō, carry], carry across or over, bring over, convey, transport. *
6. Suebus,-a,-um, adj. of or pertaining to the Suebi, Sueban; pl. as noun, Suēbi, (Bhi), the Suebi (swē’bi), a powerful people of central Germany, consisting of several independent tribes, the modern Swabians. *
7. Nasua, -ae, m. Nasua (nāsh’ū-ə), a leader of the Suebi. 1.

3. Harūdês: cf. 31, 35.
4. eōrum: the indirect reflexive, suīs. would have been more correct, since the Haedui said “our.”
5. questum: the supine.
6. Tréveri: sc. veniēbant questum, followed by indirect discourse.
7. Suebus, -a, -um, adj. of or pertaining to the Suebi, Sueban; pl. as noun, Suēbi, (Bhi), the Suebi (swē’bi), a powerful people of central Germany, consisting of several independent tribes, the modern Swabians. *
8. vehementer, adv. [vehemēns, violent], violently, severely, strongly, very much, greatly. 4.
9. coniunxō, -iunxere, -iunxī, -iunctum, tr. [iungō, join], join with or together, connect, unite, bind. *
10. prōcédo, -cédere, -cessi, -cessum, intr. [cédo, go], go forth or forward, proceed, advance. *

2. questum: the supine.
3. Harūdês: cf. 31, 35.
4. eōrum: the indirect reflexive, suīs. would have been more correct, since the Haedui said “our.”

obsidibus datis, ”by giving hostages.”
5. Tréveri: sc. veniēbant questum, followed by indirect discourse.
6. trānsire: somewhere north of where Ariovístus was, probably near modern Mayence. The Treveri were a strong people, and it is probable that Ariovístus was marching north to help the Suebi cross when he was interrupted by the news of Caesar’s approach.
9. si coniūnxisset: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative.
10. minus . . . posset, lit. “it could be less easily resisted (to them).”

11. magnīs itineribus: cf. Int. 54. Caesar intended to strike Ariovístus before he could effect a junction with the Suebi. He started from the country of the Lingones, where he had received the surrender of the Helvetii and where his army had been encamped near Tonnerre pending the result of his negotiations with Ariovístus. See map facing page 117.

Chap. 38. Caesar occupies Vesontio.

1. tridui: descriptive genitive. The descriptive genitive must ordinarily be modified by an adjective; but tridui = trium dīērum.


The three days’ march was east from Tonnerre (see map facing p. 117), and
vistum cum suis omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere triduique viam ā suis finibus processisse. Id nē accidisset magnopere

5 sibi praecavendum Caesar extendit. Namque omnium rerum quae ad bellum suī erant summa erat in eo oppidō facultās, idque nātūrā locī sic mūniēbātur ut magnā ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, propťerea quod flūmen Dubis, ut circīnō circumductum, paene tūtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatiōrum, quod est nōn amplius pedum sescentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mons continet magnā altitudīnī, ita ut rādīces eius montis ex utraque parte ripae flūminis contin-

2. Vesontiō, -ōnis, m. (Cf) Vesontio (vē-sōn'th-shō), the chief town of the Sequentii, situated on the Doubs, modern Besançon. 2.

5. prae caveō, -cavēre, -cāvi, -cautum, intr. [caveō, guard against], guard against before hand, take precautions. 1.

namque, conj. [nam, for], for. 3.

sic, adv. so, thus, in this manner; sic . . . ut, so . . . that; so . . . as. *

9. Dubis, -is, m. (Cf)g, the (river) Dubis (dū'bis), now the Doubs. 1.

circīnus, -ī, m. [circus, circle], a pair of compasses. 1.

circumduōcō, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, tr. [ducō, lead], lead or draw around. 2.

cingō, cingere, cinxī, cinctum, tr., encircle, surround, invest, encompass; man (a walk). 1.

10. sescentī, -ae, -a, (DC), card. num. adj. [sex, six], six hundred. *

12. rādīx, -icis, /, root; in pl. with montis or collis, foot, base. 1.

contingō, -tingere, -tīgi, -tāctum, tr. and intr. [tangō, touch], touch, reach; extend to; befall, happen to. 2.

brought Caesar to the point where his route turns to the southeast.

nūntiātum est: this report that Ariovistus was marching toward Vesontio proved false. Probably it grew out of the fact that Ariovistus had got his army together for the purpose of marching north to help the Suebi. Cf. note on 37, 6.

3. quod agrees in gender with oppidum, although its antecedent is masculine. A subject pronoun often agrees in gender with a predicate noun.

4. id: i.e. the capture of Vesontio.

6. summa facultās, “a very great supply.”

9. ut, “as if.”

paene cingit: i.e. the river makes a loop, the two sides of which (according to Caesar) are at one point only 600 feet apart. The neck of land at this point is very high. The town lies within the loop. A wall encloses both the town and the high neck of land.

10. spatiōrum: object of continet.


11. quā flūmen intermittit, “where the river does not flow.”

magnā altitudīnī: descriptive ablative.

12. rādīces is the object of contingō, ripae its subject.
gant. Hunc murus circumdatum Caesar effici et cum oppidó coniungit. Huc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit occupatóque oppidó ibi præsidium collocat.

39. Dum paucós diés ad Vesontiönum, rei frumentáriæ commetátusque causā morátur, ex percontatione nostrórum vocibusque Gallorórum ac mercatórum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germánōs, incredibili virtūte atque exercitatiōne in armis essé praedicabant (saepe numeró sēsē cum his congressós s nē vultum quidem atque aciem oculórum dicebant ferre potuisse), tantus subítō timor omnem exercitum occupávit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentés animósque perturbaret. Hic

13. circumdō, -dare, -dēdī, -datum, tr. [dō, put], put around, encompass, surround. 3.

domus, fortēs, -is, citadel, fortress, stronghold. 1.

efficiō, -facere, -feci, -fæctum, tr. [ex faciō, make], make or do completely, complete, accomplish, construct; make, cause, bring about, render. *

14. húc, adv. [old form for hóc from hic], to this place, hither, here; against these, to these. *

nocturnus, -a, -um, adj. [nox, night], at night, nocturnal, nightly. 1.

diurnus, -a, -um, adj. [diēs, day], of the day, by day, daily. 1.

2. percontātiō, -onis, f., inquiring, inquiry. 1.

3. ingēns, -entis, adj., enormous, huge, vast, large. 2.

magnitūdō, -inis, f. [magnus, great], greatness, great size, size, extent; stature (corporum); violence (venti); severity (poenae); magnitūdō animi, courage. *

4. exercitatiō, -onis, f. [exercitō, freq. of exerceō, exercise], exercise, training; practice, experience. *

5. praedicō, 1. tr. [dicō, proclaim], proclaim publicly or before others; declare, report, tell of. 3.

6. vultus, -ūs, m., countenance, looks. 2.

7. subítō, adv. [subitus, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. *

8. mediocriter, adv. [mediocris, mediocriter, adv. [mediocris, mediocriter, adv. [mediocris, mediocriter, adv. [mediocris, mediocriter, adv. [mediocris, mediocriter, adv. [mediocris, mediocriter, adv. [mediocris,
primum ortus est à tribūnis militum, praefectis, reliquisque qui ex urbe amicitiae causa Caesarem secūti nōn magnum in re militāri usum habēbant; quōrum alius alīa causā illātā, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessāriam esse diceret, petēbat ut eius voluntāte discēdere licēret; nōn nūli pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspicionem vitārent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abdiī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suis commune periculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castris testāmenta obsignābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātīm etiam iī qui magnam in castris usum habēbant, militēs centurīōnēsque quiunque equitātūi praeerant, perturbābantur. Qui

moderate], moderately: nōn mediocrī-
ter, in no small degree. 1.
mēns, mentis, f., the thinking fac-
ulty, mind, intellect; thought; disposi-
tion, feelings; mentēs animōsēque,
minds and hearts; aliēnātā mente, bereft of reason. 4.
perturbō, i, tr. [turbō, disturb], dis-
turb greatly, throw into confusion, em-
barrass, disturb; alarm, terrify. *
9. tribūnus, -ī, m. [tribus, tribe],
tribune, a magistrate elected by the people
voting in tribes, to defend the interests of
the plebs; tribūnus militum, or mili-
tāris, a military tribune. *
praefectus, -ī, m. [praeficiō, place
over], overseer, prefect, commander,
officer, captain (usually of cavalry). 4.
13. pudor, -ōris, m. [pudet, it
shames], shame, sense of shame; sense
of honor. 2.
14. remaneō, -manēre, -mānsi,
-mānsum, intr. [re- + manēo, remain],
stay or remain behind, remain. *
15. fingō, fingere, finxi, fictum, tr.,
form, imagine, devise, invent. 2.
16. tabernāculum, -ī, n., tent. 1.
fātum, -ī, n. [fārī, to speak],
fate, lot. 1.
17. miseror, i, tr. [miser, wretched,
bewail, lament over, deplore. 1.
vulgō, adv. [vulgus, the crowd], com-
monly; everywhere. 2.
18. testāmentum, -ī, n. [testor, be
a witness], will. 1.
obsignō, i, tr. [signō, mark], seal,
sign and seal. 1.
19. centurīō, -onis, m. [centum, a
hundred], centurion, the commander of
the century, the sixtieth part of a legiōn. *

9. tribūnīs; see Int. 41.
10. amicitiae causā: Caesar puts it
delicately. We know from other sources
that Caesar had with him young men,
friends or relatives of influential men
at Rome, who hoped for personal gain
from their connection with him in his
province. Some of them had little taste
for real fighting.
11. quōrum . . . illātā, “one of
them alleging one reason, another
another.”
12. diceret, “they said,” agrees in
number with alius. Mode? App. 230:
G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535; B. 283, 1: H.-B. 521, 1:
a: H. 501, 1.
14. vultum fingere, “control their
features,” so as to look unconcerned.
17. tōtīs castrīs: why is there no
preposition? App. 151, b: G.-L. 388: A.
429, 2: B. 228, 1, b: H.-B. 436, a: H. 485,
2.
19. centurīōnēs: who were appoint-
ed especially for their bravery.
20. qui ex his, “(those) of them
who.”
WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS, B.C. 58

135

sé ex his minus timidös existimāri volēbant, nōn sé hostem verēri, sed angustiās itineris et magnitūdinem silvārum quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportāri posset, timēre dīcebant. Nōn nūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac 25 signa ferri iussisset, nōn fore dīctō audientēs militēs neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

40. Haec cum animadvertissent, [convocātō cōnsiliō] omni-umque ordinum ad id cōnsilium adhibītis centurīōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: Prīnum, quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcērentur sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sé cōnsule cupidissimē populi Rōmānī

21. timidus, -a, -um, adj. [timeō, fear], fearful, frightened, timid, cowardly, afraid. 1.

24. supportō, 1, tr. [sub+portō, carry], carry or bring up from beneath; bring, convey; supply, furnish. 4.

26. dictum, -ī, n. [pf. part. of dīcō, say], saying, remark; command; dīctō audiēns, obedient. 1.

22. angustiās itineris: the valley of the Dubis is narrow and very rough, and if Ariovistus had really been marching toward them it would have given opportunity for ambushes.


26. cum iussisset: indirect discourse for cum iussēris, “when you shall have ordered,” = “when you order.” The clause depends on what follows, not on nūntiābant.

fore=futūrōs esse.
neque signa lātūrōs, “and would not advance.” See Int. 44.

Chap. 40. Caesar encourages his officers.

1. omnium ordinum: to the ordinary council of war only the centurions of the first rank were admitted (Int. 42). This, however, was a special gathering of all the officers to listen to Caesar’s speech.

3. incūsāvit: this implies a verb of saying, and what follows is in indirect discourse. The tactful and self-reliant combination of rebuke and encouragement makes the speech very effective. Military discipline demands severe punishment for mutiny, but this speech prevented open mutiny and served Caesar’s purpose better than punishment. There was never again any sign of mutiny in the Gallic war.

4. dūcērentur: subjunctive in an indirect question.

sibi . . . cōgitandum, “that they ought to inquire or consider.” The grammatical subject is the clause aut . . . dūcērentur.

5. sé cōnsule: in the preceding year. sé and the other reflexives through l. 9
amicitia amptesse; cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum iudicaret? Sibi quidem persuadere, cogniti sui postulatis atque aequitatem condicionum perspecta, eum neque suam neque populum Romani gratiam repudiatum. Quod si furor atque amemtia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem vererentur? aut cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentiae desperarent? Factum eius hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoria, cum Cimbri et Teutoni a C. Marii pulsi non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperator meritus vide-

6. appeto, -petere, -petivi (-petiti), -itum, tr. and intr. (ad+peto, seek), seek for, aim at, encroach upon; approach, be near. 3. cur, interroaug. and rel. adj., why, for what reason; for which reason, wherefore. 4. temere, adv., rashly, blindly, without good reason. 2. officium, -ci, n., service, allegiance, duty; official duty, business; esse, manere, or permanere in officio, to remain faithful. *

8. postulatum, -i, n. [postulō, demand], demand, claim, request. 4. aequitas, -tatis, f. [aequus, equal], equality; fairness, equity; animi aequitas, contentment. 1. perspicio, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, [tr. spectō, look], look or see


6. cur indicaret: the direct form was cur iudicet, "why should anyone suppose?": App. 210, a; 268, III: G.-L. 265; 651, R. 2: A. 444; 587: B. 277; 315, 3: H.-B. 513, 1: H. 559, 4; 612, 3. Contrast with this subjunctive question the infinitive in 14, 8.


through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, realize, learn, find out, ascertain. *

9. repudiō, i, tr., reject. 1.

10. furor, -ōris, m., rage, frenzy, madness. 2.

ameitia, -ae, f. [mēns, mind], be-wilderment of mind, folly, insanity. 1.

impellō, -pellere, -pulsi, -pulsum, tr. [in+pellō, drive], drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel. 3.

11. diligentia, -ae, f. [diligēns, careful], carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking, care. 4.

13. C., abbr. for praenomen Gāius (gāi/yūs). *

Marius, -ri, m., Gaius Marius (gāi/yūs mā/ri-ūs), the conqueror of the Cimbri and Teutoni. 1.

14. laus, laudis, f., praise, com-


ipsius: i.e. Caesar's; suā could have been used here as the indirect reflexive, but it would be confusing because it has just been used as the direct reflexive. The use is something like that of ipse in 36, 4.

12. periculum, "a test."


14. vidēbātur: no satisfactory ex-

planaation can be given for the retention of this indicative in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse.
bânum; factum quum numer in Ætaliâ servili tumultu, quòs is tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina quam à nobis accipissent sublevarent. Ex quô iudicâri posse quantum habet in sê boni constantia, propterea quod, quôs, aliquid diu inermês sine causa timuissent, hœs postea armâtos ac victòres superâssent.

Dênique hös esse eòsdem Germanös quibuscum saepè numerò 20 Helvêtii congressî nón sôlum in suis, sed etiam in illórum finibus, plèrumque superârînt, qui tamen pâres esse nostrô exercitui nôn potuerint. Si quôs adversum proelium et fuga Gallórîm commovérêt, hös, si quaeererent, reperire posse, diuturnitâte belli défatigâtis Gallis, Ariovistum, cum multòs 25

mendation; renown, popularity, glory. 3.

imperâtor, -ôris, m. [imperò, command], commander-in-chief, general. *

15. servílis, -e, adj. [servus, a slave], of or like a slave, servile.

tumultus, -ús, m. [tumulo, swell], up roar, confusion, disorder, tumult; uprising, insurrection. 2.

16. disciplina,-ae, f. [discó, learn], learning; discipline; instruction; system. 2.

ego, mei (App. 51), first pers. pron., I; pl. nös, we, us, etc. *

18. constantia, -ae, f. [côstô, stand firm], firmness, steadfastness. 1.

15. factum: sc. esse periculum.
servíi tumultu: the insurrection of the gladiators under Spartacus in 73-71 B. C. Many of the gladiators and slaves who joined the uprising were Germans.

quôs: the antecedent is implied in the adjective servíi, which is equivalent to servórum.

17. quantum boni, “how great an advantage.”

18. inermês: a part of Spartacus’s band was at first armed only with stakes: yet they won victories and thus secured arms.

20. quibuscum Helvêtii congressî
mēnēs castris sē ac palūdibus tenuisset nēque sūi potestātem fecisset, désperantēs īam de pugnā et dispersōs subito adortum magis ratione et consiliō quam virtūte vicisse. Cui rationi contra hominēs barbaros atque imperitōs lōcus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in reī frumentāriāe simulatioνem angustiāisque itineris conférrent facere, arroganter, cum aut dē officio imperātorīs désperāre aut praescibere viderentur. Hāc sībi esse ĉūrāe / frumentum Sēquanos, Leuēs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frumentā mātūra; dē itinerē ipsōs brevī tempore lūdīcāturos. Quōd non fore dictō audiēntēs neque habērēs lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē ēā re ĉōmmōverī; scīre ĉuin, quibuscumque exercitūs dictō audiēns rōn fuerit, aut māle rē gestā fortūnam défuisse aut aliquō facinōre comperītō avāritiam esse convictam;
avēritia, -ae, f. [avārus, greedy],
greed, covetousness. 1.
convincō, -vincere, -vici, -victum,
tr. [vincō, conquer], conquer completely;
prove. 1.
40. innocentia, -ae, f. [innocēns, innocent], integrity. 1.
fēlicitās, -tātis, f. [félix, happy],
happiness, success, good fortune. 1.
41. longus, -a, -um, adj., long, distant; of long duration; tedious. *
42. representō, 1, tr. [re+praesēns, present], make present; do at once. 1.
43. utrum, conj. [uter, which of two], whether; utrum ... an, whether ... or; utrum ... necne, whether ... or not. 3.
44. an, conj., used to introduce the
second member of alternative questions, or, or rather. *
45. decimus, -a, -um, ord. num.
adj. [decem, ten], tenth. *
46. praetōrius, -a, -ūm, adj. [praetor, commander], praetorian, belonging to the general. 2.
cohors, -tis, f., cohort. *
47. indulgeō, -dulgere, -dulsi, —,
intr., be indulgent to, favor. 1.
praecipuē, adv. [praecipuus, especial], especially, particularly. 1.
1. modus, -i, m. measure, quantity, size; manner, method, style; eius modi, of such a kind, such; abl., modō, with gen., in the character of, like. *
2. alacritās, -tātis, f. [alacer, lively], liveliness, ardor. 3.
46. praetōriam cohortem, "his body-guard," which would naturally be composed of the bravest troops.
Chap. 41. The panic is checked and the army advances.
4. grātiās ēgit, "expressed its thanks."
reliquae legiones cum tribunis militum et primorum ordinum centurionibus egerunt, uti Caesari satisfacerent: Se neque
umquam dubitasse neque timuisse neque de summa belli suum
iudicium, sed in operatoris esse existimavisse. Eorum satisfac-
tione accepta et itinere exquisito per Diviciacum, quod ex
Gallis ei maximam fidem habebat, ut, miliam amplius quin-
quagintat circuitu, locis apertis exercitum duceret, de quartat
vigilia, ut dixerat, protectus est. Septimo die, cum iter non
intermitteret, ab exploratoribus certior factus est Ariovistih
copiae a nostris militia passuum quattuor et viginti abesse.

42. Cognitò Caesaris adventu Ariovistus lègatòs ad eum
mittit: Quod anteà dè colloquiò postulasset, id per sè fieri

8. umquam, adverb, at any time, ever; neque ... umquam, and never, never.

9. satìsfactiò, -onis, f. [satisfaciò, give satisfaction], satisfaction; excuse, apology.

6. cum tribunis egerunt uti, "arranged with the tribunes that "or "begged the tribunes to."

8. neque dè ... existimavisse, "and that they had not thought that the decision regarding the conduct of the war was theirs, but (knew that it was) the commander's."

10. itinere ... Diviciacum ut ... duceret, "having sought a route, with the help of Diviciacus . . . , in order that he might march his army through open country, (though) by a circuit of more than fifty miles."

ex Gallis, "of (all) the Gauls."


12. circuitu: he passed around to the north of the broken country in the valley of the Dubis near Vesontio (see map facing p. 117), and then marched straight on. The distance marched around the bend was fifty miles.

13. ut dixerat: cf. 40, 42. septimò dìe: the seven days' march brought him to the battlefield indicated on the map facing p. 117. Ariovistus, who had probably been marching northward (cf. note on 37, 6), had learned that Caesar was marching toward him, and had turned back to meet Caesar. At this time he was not far from Strasburg.

cum ... intermitteret: i.e. he did not allow the day of rest which was usually given about every fifth day. Cf. Int. 54.

Chap. 42 - 47. Negotiations with Ariovistus are fruitless.

Chap. 42. Ariovistus asks for a conference, under conditions which Caesar grants.

2. postulasset: sc. Caesar.

id ... licère, "that ... might be done as far as he was concerned." Id is the antecedent of quod.
licère, quoniam propius accessisset, sèque id sine periculò facere posse existimàret. Non respuit conditionem Caesar imque eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabantur, cum id quod anteà petenti dénegisset ultro pollicéretur, magnamque in spem veniebat, pró suis tantis populisque Römání in eum benefícias, cognitis suis postulátis, fore uti pertinacia désisteret.

Dies colloquió dictus est ex eo die quintus. Interim saepe cum légáti ultro citròque inter eós mitterentur, Ariovistus ío postulavit ne quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar adduceret: Voreri sè ne per insidias ab eo circumspíretur: uterque cum equitàtû veniret; alía ratione sèque nón esse ventúrum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interposita causa tolli volébat neque salutem, cum Gallis equitáti committere audébat, commodissimùm esse statuit, omnibus equis Gallis equitibus.

3. propius, adv. and prep. with acc. (App. 122, b) [comp. of prope, near], nearer.

4. respúò, -spure, -spuí, —, tr. reject, spurn. 1.

5. sánitás, -tátis, f. [sánus, sound, soundness of mind, good sense, discretion, sanity. 1.

6. dēnegó, 1, tr. [negó, deny], refuse. ultró, adë, to or on the farther side, beyond: of one’s own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without provocation; besides, moreover: ultró citròque, oack and forth. *

8. pertinacia, -ae, f. [pertineó, hold through or fast], obstinacy, stubbornness, pertinacity. 1.

10. citrò, adv., hither; ultrò citròque, back and forth. 1.

11. pedès, peditis, m. [pës, foot], foot soldier; pl., infantry, foot. 3.

14. interpónó, -pònerê, -posuí, -positum, br. [pòné, place], place between, interpose; allege; cause; fidem interpònerê, pledge. 4.

15. commodus, -a, -um, adj. [modus, measure], in full measure; convenient, suitable, satisfactory. 3.

3. accessisset: Ariovistus’s reason for refusing a conference (see 34, 7) no longer existed. Caesar’s prompt advance had impressed him and he was more inclined to confer.

6. petentí, “when he [Caesar] asked it.”

8. fore uti désisteret, lit. “that it would be that he would give up” = “that he would give up.” The use of this periphrasis is here a matter of choice on Caesar’s part, since the verb is active and has a future infinitive form. Cf. note on 31, 36, and App. 205, 6: G.-L. 531: A. 569, 3, a: B. 270, 3, a: H.-B. 472, c: H. 619, 2.

13. veniret: the subjunctive of command in indirect discourse.

alía ratione, “on any other terms.”

15. salutem . . . audèbat: Caesar could not be sure of the trustworthiness of the Gallic cavalry, and he knew that in any case they were no match for German cavalry.

detractis, eō legiōnāriōs militēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam
mancum confidēbat, impōnere, ut praedium quam amīcis-
simium, si quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret,
non irridiculē quidam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dixit
plānitiēs erat magna et in ea tumulus terrēnus satis
grandis. Hic locus acērum ferē spatium ā castris utriusque
aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium vēnērunt. Legiō-
nem Caesar quem equis vexerat passibus ducentīs ab eō tumu-

17. dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr. (trahō, draw), draw off or
away, withdraw, take off, remove. 4.
legiōnāriōs, -a, -um, adj. (legiō,
legion), relating to a legion, legionary. 4.
impōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr. (in+pōnō, place), place
upon, set on, put or impose on; mount. 4.
irridiculē, adv. (in+ridiculus, witty), without wit, unwittily. 1.
rescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr. (re+scribō, write),
write again; transfer. 1.

1. plānitiēs, -ēi, f. [plānus, level],
level ground, plain. 4.
tumulus, -i, m. [tumeō, swell], swell-
ing; mound, hill. 1.
terrēnus, -a, -um, adj. [terra, earth],
of earth. 1.
grandis, -e, adj., great, large,
bulky. 1.
eaquis, -a, -um, adj., even, level, equal;
equitable, impartial; just; aequus ani-
mus, equanimity. composite. 3.
vēhō, vehere vexī, vectum, tr.,
carry; bring along. 1.

17. eō, the adverb, = in eōs.
19. sī ... esset, lit. “if there should
at all be need of something done” = “if
there should be any need of their ser-
334: A. 390, c: B. 175, 3: H.-B. 387, III: H.
416, 2. factō: construction? App. 146, b:
G.-L. 406: A. 411, a: B. 218, 2, c: H.-B. 400,
2: H. 477, III. esset: implied indirect
discourse, for in making his plans
Caesar thought sī erit, “if there shall
be.”
20. nōn irridiculē, “wittily.”
21. pollicitum ... rescribere: the
soldier said, in substance, “After prom-
ising only to make us his body-guard,
Caesar is actually making us cavaliers.”
The pun is based on the double meaning
of ad equum rescribere, namely, (1) to
transfer to the cavalry, a part of the
army looked down upon by the legionary
soldiers, and (2) to knight, i.e. raise
to a high rank in Roman society. “Cav-
aller” means either “cavalry man” or
“knight.”

Chap. 43. At the conference Caesar
repeats his previous demands.
1. erat, “there was.” The hill was
about twelve miles north of the battle-
field, and has been identified with con-
siderable certainty.
2. spatium: accusative of extent of
space.
3. ut erat dictum, “as had been
agreed.”
4. equis, “on horseback.”
passibus, intervālō: ablatives of
degree of difference with ab, “away
from.”
constitutit. Item equites Ariovisti pari intervallō constitérunt. 5 Ariovistus ex equis ut colloquerentur et praecepit se dénēs ad colloquium adducerent postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initió oratiónis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemoravit, quod rēx appellātus esset à senātū, quod amicus, quod munera amplissimā missa; quam rem et pauciis contigisse et pró magnō 10 hominum officiis consegusse tribui docēbat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulāndi iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac liberalitātē suā ac senātūs ca praemia consolation. Docēbat 15 eīam quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitudinis ipsīs cum Haeduī intercedērent, quae senātūs consulā quotiens 16 quamque honorīscīa in eōs facta essent, ut omni tempore totius Galliae principātum Haeduī tenēssent, prius eīam quam nostrām amicitiam appetissent. Populi Rōmānī hanc esse

6. dēnī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [decem, ten], ten each, ten at a time, by tens. 1.
9. mūnus, -eris, n., duty, service, task; present. 1.
11. doceō, docēre, docūi, doctum, tr., show, teach, instruct; inform. *
12. aditus, -ūs, m. [adeō, go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. *
īustus, -ā, -um, adj. [īūs, right], in accordance with law or right, lawful, valid, just, fair; proper, regular; with fūnēra, appropriate. 4.

6. constiērunt: distinguish carefully between constiō and constītūō.
6. ex equis, "on horseback." Cf. 1.
4: in that line the horses are the means by which the soldiers are brought to the hill; in this they are the places from which the conversation goes on.
10. missa: sc. essent. The three quod clauses are substantive clauses in apposition with beneficia, and the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.
13. aditum: i.e. to the senate.

13. praemiōm, -mī, n., distinction, prize, reward. *
14. necessitūdō, -inis, f. [necessē, cf. necessāriōs, friend], friendship, alliance. 1.
15. cōnsultum, -ī, n. [cōnsulō, take counsel], result of deliberation; decree, enactment, decision. 1.
quotiens, adv. [quot, how many], (1) interrog., how many times? how often? (2) rel., as often as. 1.
16. honorificus, -a, -um, adj. [honōs, honor + faciō, make], conferring honor. 1.

13. ipsīs . . . intercedērent, "existed between them [the Romans] and the Haeduī." intercedērent: subjunctive in an indirect question.
16. in eōs, "in their behalf." ut, "how," introducing an indirect question.
17. Galliae: i.e. Celtic Gaul; but we have learned in 31, 8 that even there their supremacy had always been disputed.
prius . . . quam = priusquam. The subjunctive which it introduces is due to the indirect discourse.
consuetudinem, ut socios atque amicos non modo sui nihil 

deperdere, sed gratia, dignitate, honore auctiores vellet esse:
quod vero ad amicitiam populi Romani attulissent, id iis eripi 
quis pati possit? Postulavit deinde cadem quae legatis in 
mandatis dederat: Né aut Haedus aut eorum sociis bellum 

derret; obsides redderet; si nullem partem Germanorum 
domum remittere posset, at nè quos amplius Rhenum transire 
pateretur.

44. Ariovistus ad postulatam Caesaris paucis respondit, de 
suis virtutibus multa praedicavit: Transisse Rhenum sese non 

saepe sponte, sed rogatum et arcessitum a Galis; nón sine 
magna spe magnisque praemia domum propinquosque 

reliquisse; sédès habère in Galliá ab ipsis concessis, obsides 

ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendium capere füre bellí quod 
victóres victis imponere consueturint. Nón sese Gallis, sed 

Gallós sibi bellum intulisse; omnès Galliae civitátes ad sè

---

20. déperdō, -perdere, -perdidi, 

-perditum, tr. [perdō, destroy], de-

stroy utterly; forfeit, lose. 2.

dignitás, -tātis, f. [dignus, worthy],

worthiness, dignity, merit, rank. 3.
auctus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of 
augēō, increase], increased, advanced, 1.

21. afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum,

tr. [ad+ferō, carry. App. 81], bring,
take or carry to, present; occasion,
cause; bring forward, allege; report. 3.

25. remittō, -mittere, -misi, -mis-

sum, tr. [re-+mitterō, send], send or de-

spatch back, return, restore, remit; re-

lease, relax, give up; remissus, pf. part.
as adj., mild. *

at, conj., but, at least. *

19. ut vellet, “to wish”; a substan-
tive clause of result, in apposition with 
hanc consulētudinem.

sui, “of their own”; the neuter of 
suus, used as a noun.

20. sed auctōres esse, “but rather 

to be advanced.”

gratia, etc.: ablatives of specifi-
cation.


22. quis posset: the direct form was 
quois posset, “who would be able?” and 
the subjunctive is retained in the in-
direct discourse.

23. dederat: as stated in chap. 35.

24. inferret, etc.: subjunctives of 

command in indirect discourse. What 
was the direct form of nē inferret? App. 
219: G-.L. 271, 2: A. 450: B. 276, c.: H-.B. 
501, 3, a; H. 561, 1.

Chap. 44. Ariovistus justifies his 
own course and makes counter de-

mands and proposals.

3. rogātum et arcessitum: the parti-
ciples may be translated by a causal 
clause.

ā Gallis: cf. 31, 11.

5. ab ipsis: sc. Gallis.

6. füre: ablative of accordance.

7. consēurint: the tenses in the early 
part of this chapter are due to repre-

sentatio.
oppugnandum venisse ac contrà se castra habuisse; eas omnès copiás à se uno proelió pulsás ac superatas esse. Si iterum 10 experiri velint, sè iterum parátum esse décertáre; si pæce útii velint, iniquum esse dé stipendió recúsáre, quod suá voluntáte ad id tempus pependerint. Amícitiam populi Rómani sibi ornamentó et praesidó, nón détérmentó esse oportère, atque sè hác spè petisse. Si per populum Rómanum stipendium 15 remittátur et déditicii subtrahantur, nón minus libenter sècè recusátúrum populi Rómani amícitiam quam appetierit. Quod multitúdinem Germánórum in Galliam tráduçat, id sè sui muniendi nónum Galliae impugnandae causá facère; eius rei testimonium esse quod nisi rogáitus nón vénérít et quod bellum nón intulerit, sed défenderit. Sè prius in Galliam venisse quam populum Rómanum. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populi Rómani Galliae prövinciae finibus égressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cúr in suás possessionés veniret? Prövinciam
25. sicut or sicut, adv. [sic, so+ut-(I), as], so as; just as, as; just as if. 1.  
27. interpellō, 1, tr., interrupt, hinder. 1.  
31. contentiō, -ōnis, f. [contendō, strive], striving, struggle, contest, dispute. 1.  
33. suspicor, 1, tr. [suspiciō, suspect], suspect, distrust; surmise. * simulō, 1, tr. [similis, like], make like; pretend. 2.  
34. opprimō, -primere, -pressi,  

25. hanc Galliam, "this (part of) Gaul." He claims that his right of possession in the land near the Rhine is as clear as that of the Romans in the Roman province. 

ut ... oportet, "just as there ought to be no yielding to." The direct form of the conditional sentence was probably oportet, si faciam, lit. "it would be right if I should make." This is a less vivid future condition: App. 257: G.-L. 593: A. 516, 2: B. 303: H.-B. 580: H. 576. Such a condition has the same form in indirect discourse as a vivid future condition, and can be distinguished only by the sense of the passage.  

27. quod diceret, "as to the fact that he said," "or "as to his statement." 

---

29. imperitum rērum, "ignorant of political matters."  
30. bellō Allobrogum: cf. note on 6, 7. 

Haeduōs ... ōsōs esse: Ariovistus here lays his finger on the weak point in Caesar's argument; for in fact the alliance of the Haeduī and the Romans had been mere words until now when it suited Caesar's purpose to consider it binding.  

31. ipsōs = Haeduōs.  
32. dēbere sē suspicāri, "he had a right to suspect."  
33. simulātā amicitīā, "although he made a pretense of friendship" toward Ariovistus.  

quod, "inasmuch as."  
35. sēsē ... amīcō habitūrum, "he would regard him [Caesar] not as a friend."
multis sese nobilibus principibusque populi Romani gratum esse facturum; id se ab iphis per eorum nuntios comportum habere, quorum omnium gratiam atque amicitiam eius morte redimere posset. Quod si decessisset et liberam possessionem Galliae sibi tradidisset, magnum se illum praemio remuneratum et quaecumque bella gerit vellet sine ulllo eius labore et periculou confecturum.

45. Multa a Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quare negoti

desistere non posset: Neque suam neque populi Romani consuetudinem pati uti optimo merito socios desereret, neque se iudicare Galliam potius esse Ariovist quam populi Romani. Bellum superatios esse Arvernos et Rutenos a Q. Fabii

37. gratus, -a, -um, adj., pleasing, agreeable, acceptable. 1.
40. liber, -era, -erum, adj., unrestrained, free; undisputed. 1.
41. remuneror, i. 1. [re-+muneror, present], repay, reward. 1.
42. labor,-oris, m., toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship. *
1. sententia, -ae, f. [sentio, think], way of thinking, opinion, sentiment; purpose, design, scheme, plan; decision, resolve; verdict; sentence. *
3. bene, adv. [bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully. Comp., melius; sup., optime. 2.

37. multis ... facturum: as the head of the democratic party, Caesar had made many bitter enemies in the aristocratic party, especially during his consulship. It is entirely possible that some of them had indicated to Ariovistus their desire to have him put out of the way.

38. id comportum habere differs very slightly from id comperisse, "had found this out," This means "he possessed this as a thing fully ascertained": App. 286, b: G.-L. 238: A. 497, b: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 603, 5, a: H. 540, 2.

Chap. 45. Caesar insists on Roman rights in Gaul.

deserere, -serere, -serui, -seritum, tr. [sero, entwine, join], disjoin; abandon, desert, forsake; deserere, pf. part. as adj., deserted, solitary. 3.
4. potius, adv. [comp. of potis, able], rather. 2.
5. Ruteni, -orum, m. (DEde), the Ruteni (ru-te'ni). *
Q., abbr. for Quintus, Quintus (kwin'tus), a Roman praenomen. *

Fabius, -bi, m. Quintus Fabius Maximus (kwin' tus fai'bi-us mak'sim-us), victor over the Gauls, 121 B.C. 1.

1. in eam sententiam, quare, lit.
"to this effect, why" = "to show why." quare posset is an indirect question.
3. pati uti desereret, "allowed him to abandon." patior is usually followed by an infinitive instead of an ut clause.
5. superatos esse: in the year 121, at the time when the Allobroges were conquered. As this was fifty years before Ariovistus had entered Gaul, it disposed of the claim (44, 21) that Ariovistus had come into the country before the Roman people.
Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prō
vinciam redēgisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si
antiquissimum quoque tempus spectāri oportēret, populi
Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; si iūdicium
10 senātūs observārī oportēret, liberam dēbēre esse Galliām, quam
bellō victam suīs lēgibus utī voluisset.

46. Dum haec in colloquīō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum
est equitēs Arioquistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs
adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar
loquendī finem fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit suīsque imperāvit
nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēcercerit. Nam etsi sine ūllō
periculō legiōnis délēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vídēbat,
tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī
posset eōs ab sē per fidem in colloquīō circumventōs. Posteā-

6. Maximus, -ī, m., Quintus Fabius
Maximus (quīn'tūs fā'bi-ūs māk'si-mūs), victor over the Gauls, 121 B. C.
1.
ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum, intr. (in—+(g) nōscēns, knowing:
nōscō, forgive, pardon. 3.
7. redigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr.
[red-+agō, put in motion], bring back,
bring under; render, make; reduce. *
10. observō, i, tr. [servō, give heed],
observe, mark, watch; regard, obey; celebrate. 1.
3. adequitō, 1, intr. [equitō, ride;
equus, horse], ride up. 1.
lapis, -idis, m., stone. *
5. etsi, conj. [et+si, if], even if, although. *

6. neque ... redēgisset: the
intransitive ignōvisset governs the dative, quibus; but redēgisset is transitive and
we must supply quōs; quibus is needed
again with imposuisset. The Arverni
and Rutheni lay on the other side of the
Cevennes Mountains, which formed a
natural frontier for the Roman prov-
cince: this was the real reason for the
forbearance of the Romans.

8. antiquissimum quoque tem-
pus, lit. "each most ancient time"="
"priority of time."
11. lēgibus: ablative with ūtī.
voluisset: sc. senātus as the subject.

Chap. 46. An attack by the Ger-
man cavalry breaks up the confer-
ence.

5. quod: the adjective form of the
indefinite pronoun.
6. legiōnis délēctae, "to his picked
legion"; the genitive cannot always be
translated by "of."
7. committendum ut dīcī posset,
lit. "that it ought to be permitted that
it could be said"="that he ought to
permit it to be said."
pulsīs hostibus, "after the deēcat of
the enemy."
8. per fidem, "because of their con-
dence (in Caesar's honor)." This is
equivalent to saying "treacherously."
quam in vulgus militum clatum est quâ arrogantia in colloquiō Ariovistus úsus omni Galliâ Rómâniis interdixisset, impetumque ut in nostrós eius equitēs fēcissent eaque rēs colloquium dirēmisset, multō maiōr alacritās studiumque pugnandī maiōs exercitūi iniectum est.

47. Biduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarēm lēgātōs mīsit: Velle sē dē īis rēbus quae inter ēós agī coeptae neque perfectae essent agere cum éō; utī aut iterum colloquiō diem cōnstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suīs lēgātīs alīquem ad sē mitteret. Colloquēndī Caesarī causa visa nōn est, et ēō magis, quod prīdiē eius diēī Germanī retīnērī nōn potuerant quin tēla in nostrōs conicerent. Lēgātum ex suīs sēsē magnō cum periculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum existimābat. Commodissimum visum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Cabūrī

10. interdicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dic-tum, intr. [dicō, say], prohibit, exclude, forbid, interdict; aquā atque ignī inter-dicere, forbid the use of fire and water, banish. 1.

11. dirimō, -imere, -ēmi, -ēmp-

9. quā arrogantia Úsus, "using what arrogance" = "with what arrogance. It is often well to translate Úsus in this way.

10. omni . . . interdixisset, "had forbidden the Romans all Gaul." Galliā is an ablative of separation. Rōmāniās is the indirect object.

11. ut, "how," introduces both fēcissent and dirēmisset. It would more naturally precede impetuēm.

Chap. 47. Ariovistus requests a second conference, but seizes the envoys sent by Caesar.

1. biduō post, "on the following day." The literal meaning is "afterwards by two days," but the Latin writer counts the day of the interview as one, the next day as the second. In this case the meaning is proved by l. 5.

2. quae agī coeptae essent, "which had begun to be discussed," or better, tum, tr. [emō, take], take apart, interrupt, break off. 1.

13. inciō, -iere, -ieri, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], throw into or upon; put or place on; inspire, infuse. 3.

9. Proculus, -i, m., Gaius Valerius "which they had begun to discuss." The passive forms of coeptī are used when the dependent infinitive is in the passive voice.

3. uti cōnstitueret: a substantive clause, the object of an implied verb of asking.

4. lēgātīs, "legates," not "envoys." Ariovistus wished to confer with an officer of the highest rank, if Caesar should refuse a second personal interview.

5. colloquēndī . . . est, "Caesar saw no occasion for a conference."

prīdiē eius diēī is only a fuller expression for prīdiē, and has the same meaning.


8. commodissimum visum est, "it seemed best." The subject is mittere, l. 15.

Procillus (gā' yus va-lē'ri-us prō-sil' us), a Gaul. 2.

Cabūrus, -i, m., Gaius Valerius Cabūrus (gā'yus va-lē'ri-us ka-bū'ri-us), a Gaul who possessed Roman citizenship; father of C. Valerius Procillus and C. Valerius Domnatorius. 1.

10. adulēscēns, -entis, m. [pres. part. of adulēsco, grow up], youth, young man. 4.

11. Flaccus, -i, m., Gaius Valerius Flaccus (gā'yus va-lē'ri-us flāk' ūs), Governor of Gaul, 83 n. c. 1.

dōnō, 1, tr. [dōnum, gift], give, present; endow with. 1.

12. scientia, -ae, f. [sciō, know], knowledge, science, skill. 4.

13. longinquus, -a, -um, adj. (long-us, long), far off, distant, remote; long, long continued. 2.

peccō, 1, intr., sin, transgress, do wrong. 1.


17. cōnapiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, tr. [spiciō, look], look at, observe, desery, perceive. *

conclāmō, 1, intr. [clāmō, cry out], shout or cry out, call aloud. 2.

18. speculor, 1, intr. [cf. speciō, look], spy. 1.

19. catēna, -ae,f., chain, fetter. 3.

11. civitāte dōnātus erat, "had been granted citizenship."

et . . . et (l. 12) . . . et (l. 13), "both . . . and . . . and."

12. quā multā utēbātur, "which Ariovistus spoke fluently."

13. in eō, "in his case."

14. Germaniās: dative of possessor. esset, implied indirect discourse, for Caesar is quoting the reason which influenced him at the time of his action: "because (as he thought) the Germans had."

ūnā, "with him."

15. hospitiō, "guest-friendship."

This is an awkward rendering, but as we no longer recognize such a relationship we have no name for it. In its simplest form it bound two men, residing in different states, to give hospi-

1. prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr. [moveō, move], move forward, advance, push forward. 2. ultra, prep. with acc., beyond, on the farther side of. 2. continuus, -a, -um, adj. [contineō, hold together], holding together, position for a battle, since the camp formed a place of refuge if the Romans should be defeated (Int. 49). Although Caesar could not tempt the Germans to fight him in this position, he at least encouraged his men by making it clear that the Germans were not anxious to fight them.

7. aciēm ... habuit, “kept his line drawn up.”

ut deesset: a purpose clause, although nē is regularly used in negative purpose clauses instead of ut nōn. Here nōn belongs closely with the verb. nōn deesset, lit. “might not be lacking” = “might be offered him.”

8. vellet: implied indirect discourse, for the thought in Caesar’s mind was si vult, “if he wishes.”


10. proelīō: cf. references on castrīs, l. 9.

genus ... exercuerant, “the kind ... was as follows.”
quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omni cópiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā délēgerant; cum hīs in proelīs versābantur, ad eōs sē equites recipiebant; hī, si quid erat dūrius, concurrebant; si qui graviōre vulnere acceptō équō déciderat, circumsistēbant; si quō erat longius prō-deundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exer-citātiōne celeritās ut iubīs sublevātī eqūorum cursum adaequārent.

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellexit, nē diūtius commeātā prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Germānī

11. exercēō, 2, tr., practice, train, exercise. 1.
12. totidem, indecl. adj. [tot, so many], just as many, the same number. 3.

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., swift, rapid, speedy. 1.
14. versō. 1, tr., turn; deal with; pass. as deponent, turn one’s self; be, remain; engage in; fight. *
15. dūrus, -a, -um, adj., hard, rough, difficult, dangerous; severe, inclement. 1.
concurrō, -currere, -currī, -currum, intr. [currō, run], run or rush together; hurry, run, rush; run to the rescue; come, gather. 2.
16. decidō, -cidere, -cidī,—, intr. [cadō, fall], fall from or off. 1.
circumsistō, -sistere, -stītī,—, tr.

12. numerō; ablative of specification, with totidem.
13. singulī singulōs délēgerant, lit. “individuals had chosen individuals” = “had chosen, each for himself.”
hi . . . concurrebant, “if there was anything too hard (for the cavalry to accomplish), the infantry ran to their aid.”
15. quī: the substantive indefinite pronoun, instead of the more usual quis.
16. quō: this adverb, like the pronoun quis, is used as an indefinite after sē, nisi, nē, and num.

Chap. 49. Caesar constructs a smaller camp, beyond the camp of Ariovistus.
1. eum = Ariovistum.

nē . . . prohibērētur; the plan shows that the second camp commanded the road and protected it from the Germans.
cōnſederant, circiter passūs sescentōs ab iis, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgī [acīēque triplicī instructī] ad eum locum vēnīt. Primam et secundam acīem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussīt. [Hic locus ab hoste circiter passūs sescentōs, utī dictum est, aberat.] Eō circiter homīnum sēdecim mīlia expeditā cum omni equitātū Ariovistūs misīt, quae cōpiae nōstrōs perter-rērēnt et mūniṭiōne prohibērēnt. Nihilō sētiūs Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās acīēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus

3. idōneus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suitable, adapted. 
9. sētiūs, adv., less, otherwise; nihilo
10. prōpulsō, 1, tr. [freq. of prō-

Battle with Ariovistus.

a, Large Roman camp. 
b, Small Roman camp. 
c, Camp of the Germans. 
d, The Roman legions. 
e, The German infantry. 
f, The Roman auxiliaries. 
g, The Roman cavalry. 
h, The German cavalry. 

3. castrīs: dative with the adjective idōneum. 
4. acīē triplicī: see Int. 56. Usually the army marched in column; but on this occasion it had to expect an attack at any moment, and therefore it marched in battle formation.

5. in armīs: to repel the expected attack. 
perficere iussit. Munitis castris duas ibi legiones reliquit et partem auxiliorum, quattuor reliquias in castra maiora reduxit.

50. Proximò die institutò suo Caesar ex castris utrisque copiàs suàs eduxit, paulumque a maiòribus castris progressus aciem instruxit, hostibusque pugnandì potestàtem fécit. Ubi nè tum quidem eòs pròdíre intellèxit, circiter meridiè exercitum in castra reduxit. Tum dèmum Ariovistus partem suàrum copiàrum quae castra minòra oppugnàret misit. Àcriter utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnàtum est. Sòlis occásù suàs copiàs Ariovistus multís et illàtis et acceptís vulneribus in castra reduxit. Cum ex captivis quæreret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliò nòn dècertàret, hanc reperièbat causam, quod apud Germanòs ea consuetùdö esset, ut mātrès familìae

pellō, drive forward, drive back, repel; ward off. 1.  
2. paulum, adv. [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *
prògregī, -redi, -gressus sum, intr. [gradior, step], step or go forward, advance, proceed, go. *
4. meridiēs, -ēi, m., [for mediīae, from medius, middle+dìēs, day], the middle of the day, midday, noon; the south. 1.  
7. utrimque, adv. [uterque, each of two], on each side, on both sides. 2.  
usque, adv. (1) of place, all the way to, even to, as far as; (2) of time, up to, till; with ad, until. 3.

12. reliquās; sc. legioneś. reduxit: although Caesar's forces were divided, he had regained the control of the communications and was in a position to fall upon Ariovistus's flank if he should attack either of the Roman camps.

Chap. 50. Ariovistus unsuccessfully attacks the smaller camp. Caesar learns that he wishes to postpone the decisive battle.

1. institutò: ablative of accordance.
2. paulum . . . progressus: Caesar had failed to secure a battle in the position most favorable to himself (see 48, 6, and note); therefore he now offered battle in a position equally favorable to both armies.
7. utrimque pugnàtum est, "both sides fought."
9. quam ob rem, "why," is here interrogative and introduces an indirect question.
10. proeliò: see note on castris, 48, 9. décëtāret: i.e. fight a general and decisive battle.
11. quod ea consuetūdō esset, "that there was this custom," is a substantive quod clause in apposition with hanc causam. The subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.
ut déclàrarent: a substantive clause of result in apposition with ea consuetūdō.

mātrès familìae: Tacitus tells us that the Germans ascribed prophetic powers to their women. He describes the lots (sortibus, i. 12) as twigs, cut into small pieces, marked, and scattered on a white cloth. Three of them were picked up at random, and an examination of the marks (runes) disclosed the will of the gods.
eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus déclarārent utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necem; eās ita dicere: Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proelīo contendissent.

51. Postridiē eius diēi Caesar praesidiō utrisque castrīs quod satis esse visum est reliquit; ēlāriōs omnēs in conspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus constituit, quod minus multitūdine militum legiōnārīorum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ēlāriīs ūtērētur; ipse triplī īnstrūctā acīe usque 5 ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxĕrunt generātimque consūtīo ē rout.
paribus intervallis, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam rædis et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā reliqueretur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficiscēntēs mūltēs passīs manibus flentēs implōrābant nē sē in servītūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

52. Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulōs légātōs et quaestōrem praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadvertērat, proelium commīsit. Ita nostri āciter in hostēs signō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendi nōn darētur. Rēiectīs pīlis comminus gladiīs pugnātum est. At Germānī, celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā, impētūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Reperti sunt complūrēs nostri qui in phalangem seek), a quaestor (kwēs'tōr), one of a class of officers in charge of the public revenues or the finances of the army. 3. dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., on the right, right. 4. cornū, -ūs, n., horn; (of an army) flank, wing. 5. repente, adv. [repēns, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. 2. prōcurrō, -curre, -curri, -currum, intr. [currō, run], run or rush forward, rush out, charge. 1. comminus, adv. [manus, hand], hand to hand, In close contest. 1. excipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. and intr. [capīō, take], tr., take up, of the five legates. See Int. 33, 39. 3. eam partem: i.e. the enemy's left wing. 5. signō datō: by trumpeters. itaque = et ita. 6. pīla . . . coniciendi: on this and other details of the battle see Int. 55. 7. rēiectīs, "throwing aside." The pīla were intended only for casting, and were useless in a hand-to-hand encounter. 8. phalange: on this formation see 24, 11, note. 9. in phalangem insilirent: i.e.

8. Marcomanni, -ōrum, m. (Bh), the Marcomanni (märkō-mān'ī). 1. Triboci, -ōrum, m. (Bgh), the Triboci (tribō-sī). 2. Vangiones, -um, m. (Bgh), the Vangiones (vān-jī'-ō-nez). 1. Nemetēs, -um, m. (Bh), the Nemetēs (nēmē-tēz). 1. Sedusiōs, -ōrum, m. (Bh), the Sedusiōs (sē-du'-shīy). 1. 

12. pandō, pandere, pandi, passum, tr., spread or stretch out, extend; passīs capillis, with disheveled hair; passīs manibus, with outstretched hands. 2.

1. quaeestor, -ōris, m. (quaerō, and encouragement to the combatants." (Church and Brodribb's translation of the Germania). 8. intervallis: ablative of attendant circumstance. 10. circumdedērunt: i.e. on the rear and both flanks. 11. eō, "on them," is the adverb.

Chap. 52. A fierce battle is fought. 1. singulis . . . praefēcit: i.e. each of the six legions was put under the command of either the quaestor or one

8. intervallis: ablative of attendant circumstance. 10. circumdedērunt: i.e. on the rear and both flanks. 11. eō, "on them," is the adverb.

Chap. 52. A fierce battle is fought. 1. singulis . . . praefēcit: i.e. each of the six legions was put under the command of either the quaestor or one
insilirent et scūta manibus revellere et dēsuper vulnerārent. 10 Cum hostium aciēs a sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, a dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem prēmēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātūi praeerat, quod expeditiō erat quam iī qui inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nos- 15 trīs subsidīō misit.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt nec prius fugere dēsitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt. Ibi

catch, receive; take up (in turn); meet, withstand; relieve (of soldiers in battle); intr., follow. *

10. insliē,-silire,-silui,-sultum, tr. [saliō, leap], leap upon. I.

revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, tr. [re-+vellō, pluck], pluck or tear away, pull out. I.

dēsuper, adv. [super, above], from above. I.

13. premō, -premere,-pressī,-pressūm, tr., press, press upon, press hard; oppress, burden, annoy, harass. *

Crassus, -i, m. Publius Licinius Crassus (pūb’li-ūs ës-sīn’/i-ūs krās’ūs)

the soldiers leaped on the roof of shields. If the Romans had been able to begin the battle with the customary volley of javelins, this solid array of shields would have been broken up as it was in the battle with the Helvetii. 25, 3-10. in- silirent: subjunctive in a clause of characteristic.

11. cum, “though.”

ā sinistrō cornū, “on the left wing,” which was the weakest part of the German line.

14. expeditiōr, “freer to act.” Crassus and the cavalry were posted behind the Roman left wing (see plan, p. 153), out of the way of the German cavalry, for whom they were no match. They were taking no part in the battle, but were waiting to pursue the enemy when the legions should win the victory.

one of Caesar’s lieutenants, a son of the triumvir. *

16. subsidium, -di, n. [subsideō, sit near or in reserve], sitting in reserve; reserve force, reserves; help, aid, assistance. *

1. tergum, -ī, n., the back; terga vertere, to flee; post tergum or ab tergō, in the rear. *

2. vertē, vertere vertī versum, tr., turn, turn around; terga verte- re, flee. *

fugiō, fugere, fugī, fugitum, tr. and intr. [fuga, flight], intr., flee, run away, escape; tr., shun, avoid. 4.

15. tertiam aciem: as usual, this was being held in reserve for just such an emergency.

labōrantibus nostrīs subsidīō, “to the assistance of our hard-pressed men.”

Chap. 53. The Germans are routed. Caesar’s envoys are rescued.

1. terga vertērunt: the line of wagons (51, 9) might hinder their flight, but could not entirely prevent it. It is possible, too, that during the battle the Germans had advanced so far that there was space enough for flight between the wagons and the German line.

2. flūmen Rhēnum: as the Rhine is much more than five miles from the battlefield, it is probable that the Ill river is meant, and that Caesar mistook it for the Rhine.
perpauci aut viribus confisi tränare contendérunt aut lintribus inventis sibi salútem repperérunt; in his fuit Ariovistus, qui nāviculam déligátam ad ripam nactus eā profugit; reliquós omnēs cōnsecūti equitēs nostri interfécérunt. Duae fuérunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātione, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Voccōnīs soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat, ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā perīt. Fuérunt duae filiae: hārum altera occisa, altera capta est. C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā trīniīs catēnīs vincust traheōrum, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātī însequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesāri nōn minōre quam ipsa victorīa voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ex manibus hostium sibi restitūtum vidēbat, neque eius calamitātē

perish. 2.
12. trīnī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj., three each; three, triple. 1.
vincīō, vincīre, vinxi, vincērunt, tr., bind. 1.
13. trahō, traheō, trāxī, tractum, tr., drag, drag along. 1.
14. incidō, -cidere, -cidē, —, intr. [cadō, fall], fall into or upon; fall in with; happen, arise. 2.
15. voluptātās, -tātis, f. [volō, wish], what one wishes; pleasure, delight, enjoyment. 2.
honestus, -a, -um, adj. [honōs, honor], honorable, worthy, distinguished, eminent. 1.
16. hospes, -itis, m., host, entertainer; guest, friend; stranger. 1.
17. duae uxōrēs: among the Germans polygamy was permitted in the case of the nobles only.
18. nātione: ablative of specification.
19. dūxerat: “had married”; while dūxerat in l. 9 means “had brought.”
21. Įsequentem, “who was following.”
22. neque . . . déminuerat, “nor had Fortune, by injury to Procillus,
dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum dīcēbat utrum ignī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium 20 beneficiō sē esse incolōmem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

54. Hōc proelīō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suebī qui ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant domum revertī coepērunt; quōs Ubīi, qui proxīmī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs īnsecūtī magnum ex iīs numerm occīdērunt. Cāesar, ūnā aēstāte duōbus maximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūrius paulō quam tempus ānī postulābat, 5 in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxīt; hībernum Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliām ad conventūs agendōs prefectus est.

18. grātulātiō, -onis, f. [grātulor, express joy], expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. 1. 19. ter, num. adv. [cf. trēs, three], three times. 1. cōnsulō, -ere, -ui, -tum, tr. and intr.; tr., take counsel, consult, consider; intr. with dat., take counsel for, study the interests of, take care of; spare. 1. 20. statīm, adv. [stō, stand], as one stands, hence, forthwith, immediately, at once. necō, 1. tr. [nexit, death], put to death, kill, murder. 2.

lessened in any degree Caesar's great satisfaction and rejoicing”; lit. “les-sened anything of,” quicquam being the direct object.

19. sē praesente, “in his presence.”

cōnsultum: sc. esse. 20. necārētur: this is an indirect question, but the subjunctive is not due to that fact: App. 210; 263: G.-L. 265; 467: A. 444; 575, b: B. 277; 300, 2: H.-B. 503: H. 559, 4.

Chap. 54. The fate of the Suebi. Arrangements for the winter.

1. quī . . . vēnerant: cf. 37, 5.

reservō, 1. tr. [re-+servō, save, keep], keep back, save up, reserve. 2.

21. incolōmus, -e, adj., unhurt, uninjured, safe and sound, unimpaired. 4.

2. Ubīi, -ōrum, m. (ABgh), the Ubīi (ū'bi-i). *

4. aēstās, -tātis, f., summer. *

5. paulō, adv. [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *

7. praepōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -pos-i-tum, tr. [pōnō, place], place before or over, put in command of, put in charge of. 1.


5. mātūrius paulō: in the latter half of September. The army needed rest after such arduous labors.

6. in Sēquanōs: probably in Veson-tio. The quartering of the army on Gallic soil signified Caesar's intention to assume a protectorate over Gaul, and thus brought about the Belgic uprising of the following year.

7. ad conventūs agendōs, “to hold the provincial courts.” This was a part of his duty as governor of the province. Moreover he wished to be as near Rome as possible in order to keep in touch with affairs there.
BOOK II. WAR WITH THE BELGAE

Caesar's first year of fighting had brought central Gaul under Roman control (see map facing p. 117), and this fact was made clear to the Gauls when Caesar kept his army through the winter in Vesontio; for no Roman army had ever before been stationed north of the Province. The Belgae, fearing that they would be attacked next, formed during the winter a league of defense, and levied a force of nearly three hundred thousand men, which they massed not far from the southern frontier. Early in the spring Caesar moved against them. At his approach the Remi, ambitious to gain supreme power in Belgium as the Haedui had in central Gaul, came to terms with him and furnished him valuable information regarding the strength of the allied army. At first he did not venture to attack with his much smaller army an enemy so noted for daring and warlike skill as the Belgae. Therefore he chose a strong position on the Axona (Aisne) river, and sent a force of the Haedui under Diviciacus to ravage the territory of the Bellovaci, hoping by this means to break up the army of the enemy. The Belgae made an unsuccessful assault upon Bibrax, a town of the Remi, and then encamped before Caesar's position on the Axona. A little skirmishing discouraged the badly organized and poorly fed Belgic army. The men of each state went off to defend their own territory, all falsely promising to come to the rescue of whichever state Caesar should first attack. Caesar was thus left free to deal with the states one at a time.

Sweeping through western Belgium he quickly received the submission of the Suessiones, the Bellovaci, and the Ambiani. No doubt the neighboring states too sent envoys of peace, though they are not mentioned. The eastern tribes, however, still remained unconquered and defiant. Forming a second and closer union, the Nervii, the Viromandui, and the Atrebates assembled a numerous army in the forests near the Sabis (Sambre) river, and planned to surprise and destroy the legions while separated on the march. When the Roman van reached the stream and began to fortify a camp, the enemy suddenly burst out of the coverts near by and fell upon it; Caesar was taken unawares. So fierce was the conflict and so great the danger that he seized a shield and fought in the foremost rank. After long uncertainty, Roman tactics and discipline prevailed. The enemy lost
heavily, especially the Nervii, who made the last desperate stand and were slain almost to a man.

The battle of the Sabis was decisive. Only the Atuatuci dared to raise a brave but ineffectual opposition. They were quickly subdued, and on account of an attempt at treachery were sold into slavery. The conquest of Belgium was complete, with the exception of the Morini and the Menapii, who were not attacked and who sent no envoys. With his customary moderation Caesar was content with a general disarmament and the furnishing of hostages. The treacherous Remi were raised to supreme power in Belgium, and were thus firmly attached to the Roman interest.

Meanwhile, the states of northwestern Gaul had submitted to Publius Crassus, Caesar's legate, apparently without fighting.

This is one of the most interesting of the Gallic campaigns in its presentation of the strong qualities of the Roman leader. His tactical skill, celerity of movement, energy, and courage are seen at their best. Yet the surprise at the Sabis was due to his failure to observe the most common rules of prudence in the presence of the enemy. That it was not a disastrous defeat must be attributed chiefly to the excellence of his soldiers.
EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

For the meaning of the colors, see the explanation of the campaign map for I, 1-29, facing p. 42.

The same territory is colored red as in the campaign map for I, 30-54, facing p. 117. In addition, the Nervii, the Viromandui, the Atrebates, and the Atuatuci are colored red, for they seriously fought with Caesar.

Most of the rest of Belgium is colored blue, though it is hard to decide between blue and red for some of the states. Although all the states had promised to send quotas to the great army which melted away before Caesar at the Axona, we cannot be sure how many did so; and it can hardly be said that Caesar won the submission of the several states by defeating that army. The Suesiones prepared to fight, but did not do so. The Bellovaci and the Ambiani did not even prepare to fight. Therefore these three states are colored blue. The states which are not mentioned must in general have sent embassies of submission; but the Morini and the Menapii are left uncolored, because in III, 28 we are told that they had never sued for peace.

The northwestern states mentioned in chap. 34 are colored blue. Crassus went to them with only one legion, and the events of Book III make it certain that one legion could not have defeated those states in battle. Evidently they submitted without fighting.

The battle-fields on the Axona and on the Sabis are as certain as they well can be. The site of the town of the Atuatuci is very uncertain. The one indicated on the map is Mont Falhize, championed by Von Gölker (Caesars Gallischer Krieg, pp, 90 ff.). Caesar does not tell us that the town was on a river; but all the other sites which have been suggested are open to more serious objections.
Campaign Map for Book II
LIBER SECUNDUS.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Galliā, ita uti supra dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur, litterīisque item Labiēni certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliāe partem dixerāmus, contra populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obśiālsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās: prīmum, quod verērentur nē omni pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster adducērentur; deinde, quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur,

1. supra, adv. and prep. with acc. (1) as adv., before, previously; (2) as prep. with acc., above; before. *
rumor, -ōris, m., hearsay, report, rumor. 2.
afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum, tr.

Chap. 1. The Belgae form a league against Caesar.

1. citeriōre Galliā: Caesar's province south of the Alps; now northern Italy.

dēmōnstrāvimus: in I. 54. Caesar uses the rhetorical ve. Caesar the writer is spoken of in the first person, Caesar the general in the third.

3. Labiēni: as commander of the winter quarters, he of course sent regular reports to Caesar on all matters of importance.

certior fiēbat, "was informed from time to time." The imperfect of repeated action.

Belgās: see Int. 28.

quam . . . dixerāmus, "who, as I said, are a third part of Gaul." quam refers to Belgās, but agrees in gender and number with the predicate noun partem. The pluperfect dixerāmus is occasionally used in such statements instead of the more common perfect.

4. coniūrāre, "were forming a league," not "conspiring." The Belgae were not rebelling, for they had never been subject to Rome. Caesar had no scruples about conquering them, but he did not treat them as rebels.

5. quod verērentur: a substantive quod clause, in apposition with causās. The subjunctive is due to indirect discourse.

omni . . . Galliā, "now that all Gaul had been brought under control." Galliā here refers only to Celtic Gaul. See Int. 23.

7. sollicitārentur: the indirect discourse still continues, but stops at this point. Apparently Labienus reported the two reasons for the action of the Belgae, but Caesar himself supplies the three reasons why Celtic Gauls instigated a rising of the Belgae.
partim qui, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versāri nōluerant, ita populi Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim qui móbilitāte et levitāte animī novis imperīis studēbant, ab nōn nūllis etiam, quod in Galliā a potentiōribus atque iis qui ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant vulgō rēgna occupābantur, qui minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cŏsequī poterant.

8. partim, adv. [acc. of pars, part]. partly, in part; partim . . . partim, partly, in part; partim . . partim, partly, in part; partim . . partim, partly, in part; partim . . partim, partly, in part.

9. inveterāscō, -veterāscere, -veterāvī, -vetērātum, intr., grow old; become established. 1.

10. molestē, adv., with annoyance; molestē ferre, be annoyed. 1.

11. ab nōn nūllis (solicitūārentur): a third class, such men as Orgetorix (I. 2), Casteicus (I. 3), and Dumnorix (I. 18).

12. ad . . . hominēs, “for employing mercenaries.”

13. qui . . . poterant: see Int. 29, end. Of course this power of the nobles would be held in check by a strong government like that of the Romans.


*These grammar references are as far as possible duplicates of those given in the notes on each of the first 29 chapters of Book I. They are given for the convenience.
2. His nūntiis litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legīōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscripsit et initā aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam qui dēdūcēret, Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīisque Gallīs qui finītīmī Belgīs erant 5 uti ea quae apud eōs gerantur cognōscant sequé dē his rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgi, exercitum in ūnum locum conducī. Tum vērō dubitandum

Chap. 2-4. Caesar marches to Belgium and gets information from the Remi.

Chap. 2. Caesar makes preparations and moves against the Belgae.

1. duās legīōnēs: Caesar now had eight legions, numbered consecutively from VII to XIV, approximately 32,000 legionary soldiers. In addition he had auxiliary cavalry and infantry, on whom, however, he placed little reliance. See Int. 32, 33.

2. initā aestāte, "after the beginning of warm weather." Aestās included more than our summer, and the time here meant is spring.

in ulteriōrem Galliam: i.e. to join the other legions in Vesontio. See map facing p. 162.

3. qui (cūs) dēdūcēret, "to take them."

cum primum: in June. Cum primum usually takes the indicative.


7. manūs cōgi, "that armed bands were gathering."

8. dubitandum (sibi esse) quin pro- fisciscerētur, lit. "that it ought to be hesitated by him that he should set out," = "that he should hesitate to set out." When dubitō means "hesitate" it is usually followed by the infinitive. See App. 299, d: G.-L. 555, 2, R. 3. A. 558, a, n. 2.

of teachers who begin the study of Caesar with Book II. References are given three times for each of the most common principles of syntax, in order that it may be studied and twice reviewed.
nōn existīmāvit quīn ad eōs proficiscerētūr. Rē frūmentāriā
comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quindecim ad finēs
Belgarum pervenit.

3. Eō cum dē imprōviṣō celeriusque omnium opinione
vēnisset, Rēmi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum
lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogiōnum, prīmōs cīvitātēs, miserunt, quī

1. imprōviṣūs, -a, -um, adj. [ιn- +
prōvisus, foreseen; prōvideō], unfore-
seen, unexpected; dē imprōviṣō, un-
expectedly, suddenly. 1.
opiniō, -onis, f. [opinor, think], way
of thinking, "opinion;" impression;
expectation; reputation; opiniō timōris,
impression of cowardice. *

B. 398, b: H.-B. 521, 3, b; 556: H. 505, 1;
607, 1.

10. ad finēs: it was about 145 miles
to the boundary of the Rēmi; but Caes-
ar probably passed the boundary and
nearly reached Durocortorum, their cap-
thal, in the fifteen days. See map facing
p. 163, and Int. 54.

Chap. 3. The Rēmi submit to Caesar.
1. eō: the adverb.

omnia opinione, lit. "than the
opinion of all," "than any one had
expected."

2. Rēmi: a Belgian state, of appar-
ently only moderate strength, which saw
an opportunity to increase its power by
treacherously deserting its fellow states.
In reward for its services Caesar made
it the leader of a confederation, and
it remained constantly faithful to him.

proximi . . . Belgis: "the nearest of
the Belgae to Gaul"; i.e. at the point
where Caesar entered the Belgian fron-
tier.

ex Belgis: the ablative with dē or ex
is often used instead of the partitive
genitive.

3. qui dicerent: purpose. The rest

384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 363, footnote 3, (a):
H. 434, 2.

6. cognōscant: mode? App. 228, a:
G.-L. 546: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3,
a: H. 563, 1; 565.

340: A. 392; 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392: H.
410, 1.

manūs: case? App. 123: G.-L. 313, 2:

8. cōgi: construction? App. 266:
G.-L. 650: A. 580: H. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 1:
H. 642.


362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440,
1.
dictarent se suaque omnia in fidem atque potestatem populi
Rōmānitā permittere; neque se cum reliquis Belgis consentisse, neque contra populum Rōmānum coniurasse, paratōque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidis recipere et frumentō ceterisque rebus iuvāre; reliquis omnēs
Belgās in armīs esse. Germānōisque qui ciss Rhēnōm incolant
sēc cum his coniūnxisse; tantumque esse eōrum omnium furō-
rem ut ne Suessionēs quidem, frātres consanguineōsque suōs, qui
cōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus útāntur, unum imperium unumque
magistratūm cum ipsīs habeant, détērre potuerint quin cum
his consentīrent.

5. permittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], give up or over, surrender; entrust, commit; permit, allow. *
6. consentiō, -sentire, -sēnsi, -sēnsum, intr. [sentīō, feel], think together; agree, combine. 2.
7. imperātūm, -ī, n. [imperō, command], command, order. 2.
8. cēteri, -ae, -a, adj., the rest of.

of the chapter is in indirect discourse. The direct form is given after Book VII.
9. sē is the object of permittere. Another sē must be supplied as its subject:
"that they entrusted themselves and all their possessions," etc.
5. neque...neque...que, "(and) not...and not...and."
4. Cum ab iis quaereret quae civitātēs quantaque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiebat: Plērōsque Belgās esse ortos à Germaniis. Rhēnumque antiquitas trāductōs propter loci fertilitātem ibi consēdisse. Gallōsque qui ea loca incolenter 5 expulisse, sōlōsque esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omni Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fieri uti eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctoritātem magnōsque spiritūs in rē militāri sūmērent. Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmi diebant, 10 propterquā quod propinquitātibus aﬃnitātibus consīdērātibus, quantām quisquō multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum concīlō

2. quid, interrog. adv., why? with posse, how? e.g. quid Germānī posse, how strong were the Germans. * sic, adv., so, thus, in this manner; sic... ut, so... that; so... as. * plērōque Belgās: the remainder of the chapter is in indirect discourse. The direct form is given after Book VII.

The tradition that most of the Belgae were descended from Germans was not strictly true, but the Belgae prided themselves on the supposed fact because of the Germans' renown in war.

ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cognóverint. Plúrimum inter eós Bellovacós et virtúte et auctóritáte et hominum numeró valére; nós posse confícere armáta milia centum; pollicitós ex eo numeró élécta milia sexáginta, tótiusque bellí imperíum sibi postuláre, Suessionés suós esse finítimos; finés látissímos fericissímosque agrós possidére. Apud eós fuisset reégem nostrá etiam memóriá Diviciácum, tótius Galliáe poténtissímus, qui cum magnae partis hárum regiónum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtínuerit; núnc esse régem Galbám; ad hunc propter iústitiam 26 prudéntiamque summam tótius bellí omnium voluntáte déferri; oppida habère numeró xii; pollicéri milia armáta quinquáginta;

13. Bellovací, -órum, m. (Bde), the Bellovací (bé-ló'vá-sí). *
14. arma, i, tr. [arma, arms], arm, equip; pass., arm one's self; armátus, pf. part. as adj., armed; armáti, as noun, armed men. *
15. eligi, -ligere, -légí, -léc tum, tr. [legó, choose], choose or pick out, select; éléctus, pf. part. as adj., picked (men, etc.). 1.
sexáginta (LX), card. num. adj., indecl. [sex, six], sixty.
postuló, 1, tr., request, ask, demand; require, necessitate. *
16. feráx, -ácis, adj. [feró, bear], productive, fertile. 1.
possideó, -sidére, -sédi, -sésum, tr. [sedeó, sit], occupy, hold, possess. 2.
réx, régis, m., king. *
18. Diviciácus, -i, m., Diviciacus, (dív'-tsh-á'kús), a chief of the Suessionés. 1.

18. Diviciácum: of course not the Haeduan mentioned in Book I.
cum . . . tum, "not only . . . but also."
19. partis and Britanniae both depend on imperium.
Britanniae: not the whole of Britain, but only parts lying opposite the Belgian coast. This is the first notice of Britain in Latin literature.
21. summam: the noun; not the superlative adjective.
totidem Nerviōs, qui maximē feri inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; quindecim milia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs decem 25 milia, Morinōs xxv milia, Menapiōs vii milia, Caletōs x milia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Atuatucōs xix milia; Condruōsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, qui úno nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL milia.

23. totidem, indecl. adj. [tot, so many], just as many, the same number. 3. Nervius, -a, -um, adj. (Aet), of the Nervi; m. sing. as noun, one of the Nervi; m. pl. as noun, the Nervi (nēr'vi-i). *
ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, savage, fierce. *
24. Atrebās, -bātis, m. (Ae), an Atrebātian; pl., the Atrebates (āt're-bā'-tēz). *
Ambiānī, -ōrum, m. (ABde), the Ambiāni (ām'bi'-ā'ni). 2.
25. Morinī, -ōrum, m. (Ae), the Morini (mōr'i-nī). *
Menapī, -ōrum, m. (Afg), the Menapii (mē-nā'pi-i). *

23. Nerviōs: with this and the following proper nouns supply pollicērī.
maximē feri: the superlative.
longissimē absint: i.e. from the southern frontier. But the map shows that they were no more distant than the Morini and the Menapii.


24. septem (VII), card. num. adj., indecl., seven. 2.
Caletī, -ōrum (or -ēs, -um), m. (Bd), the Caleti (kāl'é-tī). 1.
26. Veliocassēs, -um, m. (Bd), the Veliocasses (vē'il'-ō-kās'ēz). 1.
Viromandui, -ōrum m. (Be), the Viromandul (vīr'-ō-mān'dū-ī). 3.
Atuatuci, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Atuatucī (āt'u-at'ū-sī). 4.
27. Condruūsī, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Condruūsi (kōn-dru'ī-sī). 2.
Eburōnēs, -um, m. (Afg), the Eburōnes (ēbū'-rō'nēz). 2.
Caerōsī, -ōrum, m. (Ag), the Caerosī (sē-rō'sī). 1.
Caemānī, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Caemānī (sē-mā'nī). 1.
1. **liberaliter**, adv. [liber, free], graciously, generously, kindly. 3.
   **prosequor**, -sequi, -secūtus sum, tr. [sequō, follow], follow, accompany; pursue; with **ōratīōne**, address. 3.
2. **diligenter**, adv. [diligēns, careful], carefully; with exactness, pains, or care. 4.
3. **doceō, doceō, docuī, doctum**, tr., show, teach, instruct; inform. *quantopere, adv. [quantus, how much + opus, work], (1) interrog., how greatly? how much? (2) rel., as much

### bands of the enemy be kept apart.

The clause *manūs ... distinērī* is the subject of the impersonal verb *intersit.*

5. **cōnfligō,-digere, -dixi, -dictum**, intr. [fligō, strike], strike against; contend, fight. 1.
6. **intrōdūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -duc-tum**, tr. [intrō, within + dūcō, lead], lead or bring into. 3.
7. **mandātum, -i, n.** [mandō, command], charge; injunction, order, command; message. *

### Chap. 5-8. The armies approach each other.

Chap. 5. Caesar sends the Haeduī to ravage one state, and himself marches to meet the whole Belgian army.

5. **quantopere**: interrogative. Explain the mode of *interīt.*

**commūnis salūtis**: i.e. of both Haeduī and Romans. Caesar poses as the champion of Gallic as well as Roman interests.

**intersit ... distinērī**, lit. "the bands of the enemy to be kept apart concerned," = "it concerned ... that the

### likely really Germans who had settled in Gaul just as Ariovistus tried to do.

**appellantur**: the indicative shows that this is an explanation by Caesar, not a quotation from the Remi.

**arbitrāri (pollicērī)**, "they (the Remi) thought the Condresi ... promised."

**cooperint** is in indirect discourse, depending on *docet,* l. 5.

### Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque ōratiōne prōse-

---

**\[\text{WAR WITH THE BELGAE, B.C. 57}\]**

| 5. | Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque ōratiōne prōse-
|    | cūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenire principumque liberōs
|    | obsidēs ad sē addūci iussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad
|    | diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācum Haeduum magnopere cohort-
|    | tātus docet quantopere rei publicae communisque salūtis intersit 5
|    | manūs hostium distinērī, ne cum tanta multitūdine ūnō tem-
|    | pore cōnfligendum sit. Id fieri posse, si suās cōpiās Haeduī in
|    | finēs Bellovacōrum introduxerint et eōrum agrōs populāri
|    | cooperint. His dātis mandātis eum sē dīmittit. Postquam
|    |
| 1. | liberaliter, adv. [liber, free], graciously, generously, kindly. 3.
| 2. | prōsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, tr. [sequō, follow], follow, accompany; pursue; with ōratīōne, address. 3.
| 3. | diligenter, adv. [diligēns, careful], carefully; with exactness, pains, or care. 4.
| 4. | doceō, doceō, docuī, doctum, tr., show, teach, instruct; inform. *quantopere, adv. [quantus, how much + opus, work], (1) interrog., how greatly? how much? (2) rel., as much
| 5. | intersit ... distinērī, lit. "the bands of the enemy to be kept apart concerned," = "it concerned ... that the
|    | bands of the enemy be kept apart." The clause manūs ... distinērī is the subject of the impersonal verb *intersit.*
| 6. | nē cōnfligendum sit, lit. "that it might not have to be fought," = "that they might not have to fight." The verb is used impersonally, but English idiom will not allow an impersonal translation.
| 7. | id: i.e. keeping the bands of the enemy apart. The sentence id ... coe-
|    | perint is in indirect discourse, depending on *docet,* l. 5.
| 8. | introduxerint, coeperint: perfect subjunctive in indirect discourse, for future perfect indicative of the direct form.
omnia Belgiarum copias in unum locum coactus ad se venire neque iam longa abesse at bis quos miserat exploratöribus et ab Remis cognovit, flumen Axonam, quod est in extremis Remorum finibus, exerceitum traducere maturavit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae res et latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniebat, et post eum quae erant tutas ab hostibus reddébat, et commeatus ab Remis reliquisque civitatis ut sine periculo ad eum portari possent effieiebat. In eo flume poenis erat. Ibi praesidium posuit et in altera parte fluminis Q. Titum Sabini num legatum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in altitudo-

12. Axona, ae, m. (Bf), the Axona (āk'ı-sō-na), a river, now the Aisne. 2.

15. tatus, a, um, adj. [tucor, protect], protected, safe, secure. *
reddo, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr. [redd-+dō, give], give back, return, restore; give something due; make or cause to be, render. *

16. commeatus, -us, m. [commoē, go back and forth], trip, voyage; supplies, provisions. *

17. efficiē, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, tr. [ex + faciō, make], make or do completely, completely, accomplish, construct; make, cause, bring about, render. *

18. Sabinus, -i, m., Quintus Titurius Sabinus (kwīn'tūs ti-tū'ri-ūs-sa-bī'nūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. *

19. cohoris, -tis, f., cohort. *

10. in unum locum: somewhere to the northwest of the Axona river.
coactus venire, lit. "having been gathered were coming," = "had gathered and were coming."
venire, abesse: indirect discourse, depending on cognōvit.

11. ab eis exploratöribus cognovit, "learned from the scouts."

14. castra: the excavations made by the engineers of Napoleon III have fixed beyond question the site of this camp. It is a hill situated on the north bank of the Aisne, between that stream and a little marshy tributary, the Miette, which formed an excellent defense in front. See plan, p. 177. The hill is eighty feet high.
quaer est, "this position both."
latus unum: the left side, for the camp faced west.

15. post . . . reddēbat, "rendered safe from the enemy all that was behind him"; i.e. that part of the Remi from whom he had just marched, and the road by which supplies were coming.

16. commeatus ut portari possent efficiēbat, lit. "made that provisions could be brought up." = "made it possible for." ut . . . possent is a substantive clause of result, the object of efficiēbat.

17. in, "over."

18. praesidium: a small fortified camp, to defend the northern end of the bridge.
in altera parte, "on the other side;" i.e. at the southern end of the bridge. This guard was posted to protect the bridge in case some of the enemy should cross the river by a ford.

castra: the main camp on the hill. For a plan of this camp and for details of camp fortification, see Int. 49-52.
nem pedum XII vallō fossāque duodēvigintī pedum mūnirī 20 iubet.

6. Ab his castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrāx aberat milia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impēti Belgae oppugnāre coepérunt. Aegrē eo die sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Ubi circumiectā multitudine homīnum tōtīs moenibus undique in mūrīm lapides iaci 5 coeptī sunt mūrusque défensōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā

1. Bibrāx, -ctis, f. (Be), Bibrāx (bī-brāks), a town of the Remi. 1.
2. sustentō, 1, tr. and intr. [freq. of sustīneō, hold up], hold up, sustain, maintain; hold out; endure, withstand.
3. oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f. [oppugnō, storm], a storming, besieging, siege, assault, attack; plan or method of storming.
4. circumiciō, -icere, -icēi, -ictum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw, set, or place around. 1.
5. moenia, -ium, n. pl., defensive out"; but translate personally.
6. eadem atque Belgārum, "(which is) the same as (that) of the Belgae." See atque in the Vocabulary. In such expressions Latin never uses a word for "that."
4. haec, "as follows."
5. circumiectā: this ablative absolute is best translated by a clause; "when a great number has been thrown around ... and stones have begun, etc."
6. coeptī sunt: why not coeperunt?

succeedunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam
cum tanta multitūdō lapides ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō consist-
tendi potestās erat nūlli. Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset,
Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitātē et grātiā inter suōs, qui tum
oppidō praecerat, unus ex iis qui legāti dē pāce ad Caesarem
venerant, nūntiōs ad eum mittit: Nisi subsidiō sibi submittā-
tur, sēsē diūtiūs sustinēre non posse.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar, isdem ducibus úsus quī

---

7. subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, tr. [ruō, fail], cause to fall from beneath, overthrow; dig under, undermine.  
12. subsidiō, -di, n. [subsideō, sit near or in reserve], sitting in re-
serve; reserve force, reserves; help, aid, assistance. *

submittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mis-
sum, tr. [mittō, send], send up, send, send to the assistance of. *

444. unus is here used as a noun in ap-
position with Iccius.

12. submittātur: the subjunctive here stands for a future indicative of the direct form. nūntiōs mittit implies
"saying."

Chap. 7. Failing to take the town, the Belgae march against Caesar.  
1. sē: to Bibrax.  
isdem ducibus úsus, "employing
the same persons as guides."

---

2. milia: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335:

impeītū: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399:


429, 2.

6. coeptī sunt: mode and tense?  
App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1:  
H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

390, 2: A. 401: B. 214, 1, b: H.-B. 408, 2:  
H. 492.

8. conicerent: mode? App. 240; 242,
a: G.-L. 579, II, a, 586: A. 546: B. 288, 1,
b: H.-B. 534: H. 600, II.


---

239: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1:  
H. 532, 3.


posse: construction? App. 266: G.-L.
650: A. 580, a: B. 314, 1, 2: H.-B. 534, 1:  
H. 642, 1.

As explained under II, 1, each of the most common principles of synt x is re-
ferred to three times in the n. tes on Book II. At the end of the chapter in
which the third reference to any con-
struction has been given, attention is
called to the fact; and if the pupil has
not yet mastered the construction he
should do so at once.

Third References:
Subject of infinitive
Ablative of time
Narrative cum clause
Infinitive in indirect discourse
nuntii ab Iició venerant, Numidás et Crétes sagittários et funditóres Balearès subsidió oppidáníis mittit; quórum adventū et Rēmis cum spē défensiónis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundi oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dépopulāti, omnibus vicis aedificiisque quō adire potuerunt incēnsis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cópiis contendērunt et à milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuérunt; quae castra, ut fūmō

2. Numidae, -ārum, m., the Numidae (nū′mi-dē), better the Numidians, a people of North Africa, in modern Algiers. *

Crētes, -um, m., the Cretes (krē′tēz), better, Cretans, natives of the island of Crete. 1.

sagittārius, -ri, m. [sagitta, an arrow], Bowman, archer. 3.

funditor, -ōris, m. [funda, sling], slinger. 4.

Baliāris, -e, adj., Balearic (bāl′e-ā′-rik), (i.e. coming from the islands Majorca and Minorca) 1.

3. mittit: the auxiliaries probably entered the town on the south side, where the slope of the hill was very steep. The Belgae could not attack effectively on that side and would be likely to leave it unguarded.

quórum adventā, “at their arrival”; an ablative of time, but with a suggestion of cause as well. 4. et . . . et, “not only . . . but also.”

cum spē défensiónis, “along with the hope of (making a successful) defense.”

5. hostibus discessit, lit. “went away for the enemy” = “left the enemy.” hostibus is a dative of reference. As the idea here is one of separation, it may be called a dative of separation.


6. morātī, dépopulāti: ams morér and dépopulár are deponent verbs, their perfect participles have active meanings; therefore they agree with the subject of contendērunt. But as incēnsis is passive in meaning, the idea “having burned their villages” must be expressed by the ablative absolute.

7. quō: the adverb.

8. à . . . duōbus, “less than two miles away”; i.e. from Caesar’s camp. ab is here used adverbially; milibus is the ablative of degree of difference, the comparative minus not affecting the construction. See App. 139, b: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, c: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, d: H. 471, 4.

9. ut, “as.”
10 atque ignibus significātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multītūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opinīōnem virtūtis proelīō supersedēre statuit; cotidiē tamen equestribus proellīs, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostri audērent, pericītūbātur. Ubi nostros nōn esse inferiōres intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem instruēndam

10. miliōbus: ablative after the comparative amplius. The references on 1. 8 say only that pilis, minus, amplius, and longius are not necessarily followed by the ablative.

Chap. 8. Caesar fortifies his position and prepares for battle.

1. multitūdinem: if the states sent the quotas promised in chap. 4, the total was 296,000 men; but probably not all were sent.
2. opinīōnem virtūtis, "reputation for valor."


nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex planitiē editus tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat quantum locī acīēs īnstrūctā occupāre poterat, atque

6. opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., fit, opportune, lucky, suitable; favorable, advantageous. *

idōneus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suitable, adapted. *

7. paululum, adv. [paulus, little], a very little. 1.

plānitiēs, -ēi, f. [plānus, level], level ground, plain. 4.

ēditus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of ēdō, give out, raise up], elevated, lofty. 2.

nearly east and west. The camp was at the east end, facing west. The Roman army was drawn up along the ridge, facing north. Therefore the front of the camp was the west side, looking toward the battle line; but the front of the hill was the north side, looking toward the enemy. Caesar calls the north and the south slopes of the hill its latera.

locō opportūnō, "since the place was suitable." The ablative absolute here has a causal meaning.

prō castris: i.e. to the west of the camp.

6. collis is the subject of patēbat, habēbat, and redībat.

7. tantum ... poterat, lit. "extended so much opposite (to the enemy) as of space a line drawn up could fill" = "was as wide on the side facing the enemy as a battle line could extend."

in lātitūdinem: i.e. from the camp to the west end of the hill. Perhaps we should call this the length of the hill.

8. loci: we should expect this partitive genitive to limit tantum rather than quantum.
ex utrâque parte lateris déiectus habēbat et in fronte lēniter
10 fastīgātus paulātim ad plānitiem redībat, ab utrōque latere
eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum CD et
ad extrêmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit,
nē, cum aciem ĩnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine
poterant, ab lateribus pugnantēs suōs circumvenire possent.
15 Hoc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās proxīmē cōnspīrēratur in
castris rēlictis, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūci possent, reli-

9. utrāque, utrāque, utrūmque,
adj. [uter, which of two], each of two, either of two; both. *

déiectus, -ās, m. [déiciō, cast down],
declivity, slope, descent. *

frōns, frontis, f., forehead; front. 3.
lēniter, adv. [lēnis, smooth], softly,
smoothly, gently, gradually. 2.

10. trānsversus, -a, -um, adj.
[trānsvertō, turn across], turned
across, cross. 1.

obdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum,
tr. [dūcō, lead], lead towards; extend,
dig. 1.

12. tormentum, -i, n. [torqueō,
twist], means of twisting; an engine for
hurling missiles, e.g. catapulta and ballis-
ta; windlass, hoist; device for torturing,
hence, torment, torture. 3.

16. quō, adv. [aīd dat. case of qui,
who, which], (1) interroγ., whither? to
what place? (2) rel., to which, to whom;
to where, whither; toward which;
where, wherein; (3) indef., to any
place, anywhere. *

opus, indecl. noun, n. [cf. opus,
work, deed], need, necessity; opus est,
it is necessary, there is need, the thing
needed being expressed either by the nom.
or the abl. (App. 146). *

9. ex . . . lateris, lit. "at each end
of the side" = "at each end"; i.e. the
east and west ends of the hill. utrāque
parte alone might mean either the ends
or the sides. As lатus means one of the
long sides of the hill, utrāque parte lateris
must mean the ends.
in fronte: i.e. the northern slope.

10. ab utrōque latere, "on each
side"; i.e. on the northern and southern
slopes.

11. trānsversam, "at right angles"
to the ridge. The plan shows that one
trough ran from the camp to the Miette,
the other from the camp to the Axona.

12. extrêmās: i.e. the outer ends.
tortenta: see Int. 63.

13. ĭnstrūxisset: implied indirect-
discourse for the future perfect, for Caes-
war's thought was "that I may not be
surrounded when I shall have drawn up
my line."

14. ab lateribus, "on the flanks."
The trenches protected only the right
flank of the army, but the left was sufi-
ciently protected by the Miette.

15. quās . . . ĭnstrūxisserat: cf. 2,
1. These legions were not sufficiently
disciplined to be brought into the battle
unless it were necessary.

16. quō: the adverb; supply dūcē;
"if there should be need of their being
led anywhere."

subsidiō: dative of purpose.
quá̂s sex legiônēs prō castrīs in aici cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās i̇nstrǔxērunt.

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsirent, hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illis initium trānseundī fieret, ut impeditōs aggredentur parāti in armīs erant. Interim proelīō equestri inter duās aiciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium sī faciunt, secundīōre equitum proelīō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxīt. Hostēs prōtīnus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonom contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnāti sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum cui praerēat Q. Titūrius lēgātus expugnārent pontemque intercinderent; sī

1. palūs, -ūdis, f., marsh, morass, swamp. *
3. sī . . . fieret, "if they should begin to cross." The clause depends on ut aggredentur, and the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse; for Caesar's thought was "I will have my men ready to attack if they shall begin." 

impēdītōs: i.e. by crossing the marsh.

6. nātūrā: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397:

7. prōtīnus, adv. [tenus, as far as], continuously; forthwith, immediately. 
8. secundīōre proelīō: ablative absolute.
9. vadīs: the probable location of these fords is shown in the plan by crossed sabres.
10. eō cōnsiliō, ut, etc., "with this design, to storm, if they could, etc." 

possēt: implied indirect discourse for the future indicative; for they thought "we will storm if we shall be able." But praērat is indicative, because it is an explanation added by Caesar, not a part of their thought.


THIRD REFERENCE:
Ablative of means
minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, qui magnō nōbis ūsui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostros prohibērent.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem tradūcīt atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostri in flūmine aggressī magnum eōrum numerum occiderunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum repulērunt; primōs, qui trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expugnando oppidō et dē flūmine trānsundō

13. ego, meī (App. 51), first pers. pron.; I; pl. nōs, we, us, etc. *
-usus, -ūs, m. [ūtōr, use], 'use, experience, practice, skill; service, advantage; need, necessity; ēusus est, there is need; ēusui esse or ex ēusus esse, be of advantage or service; ēusū venire, come by necessity, happen. *

2. levis, -e, adj., light (in weight), slight; light-minded, fickle, inconstant.
armātūra, -ae, f. [armō, arm], armor, equipment; levis armātūrae, light-armed.

12. minus, "not," as is usual after ēi. potuissent stands for a future perfect indicative of the direct form.
populārentur, prohibērent: in the same construction as expugnārent.

Chap. 10. The Belgae are repulsed at the ford and decide to return home.

1. equitātum: the cavalry and light-armed troops were not equal to the legions in fighting power, but they could get to the ford more quickly.
3. in eō locō: i.e. at the fords.
4. nostri is the subject of occiderunt, repulērunt, and interfēcērunt.
8. ubi introduces intelligērunt, vidērunt, and coepit.

11. lēgātus: case? App. 95, b: G.-L.
spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum iniqui-
ōrem prógredi pugnandī causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs 10
frumentāria diēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō consitūērunt
optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in
finēs primum Rōmāni exercitum intrōduīxissent, ad eōs défen-
dendōs undique convenirent, ut potius in suis quam in aliēnīs
finibus décertārent et domesticiōs cōpiās reī frumentāriāe úter-
entur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquis causiō haec quoque
ratio eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciācum atque Haeduōs finibus
Bellovacōrum appropriquē cognōverant. His persuādērī ut

9. fallīō, fallere, fesseliō, falsum, tr.,
deceive, cheat, disappoint. 2.
iniquus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+aequus,
even, just], uneven; unjust, unfair; un-
favorable, disadvantageous. *
10. prógrediō, -rediō, -gressus
sum, intr. [gradior, step], step or go
forward, advance, proceed, go. *
11. dēficiō, -ficere, -feciō, -fectum,
tr. and intr. [fació, make], fail, desert,
fall away, revolt. *
14. potius, adv. [comp. of potis,
able], rather. 2.

9. ubi . . . intellēxērunt, lit. “when
they saw that their hope about the
town to be taken . . . had disappointed them”
= “when they saw that they were dis-
appointed in their hope of taking the
town.”
neque = et nōn.
nostrōs . . . prógrediō: i.e. the le-
gions would not descend the hill to the
Miette.
10. ipsōs: the enemy. It requires
thorough organization to supply so large
an army. Caesar’s superiority to the
Gallic leaders is always evident in this
matter no less than on the battle field.
He sometimes marched into the heart of
a hostile country, where it is hard to
see how he secured supplies; but we hear
only once of a failure to keep his army
well fed.
11. consitūērunt has two objects,
(1) optimum esse, “that it was best” (in-
direct discourse), and (2) (ut) convenirent,
“to assemble” (a substantive volitive
clause).
13. intrōduīxissent: implied indirect
discourse for the future perfect indica-
tive. Their thought was “let us assem-
bles to those into whose territory
the Romans shall have led.”
16. cum, “in addition to.”
17. Diviciācum . . . appropriquēre:
in accordance with Caesar’s directions.
See 5, 7.
finibus: indirect object of the com-
 pound verb appropriquēre.
18. his persuādērī nōn poterat,
lit. “it could not be persuaded to these.”
Turn into English. It will be remem-
bered that the Bellovacōd had reason to
be lukewarm in their allegiance to the
confederation. See note on 5, 7.
diūtius morārentur neque suís auxilium ferrent non poterat.

11. Ea rē cōnstitūtā secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitu ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nullo certō ordine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum pereuter et domum pervenire properāret, fēcerunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō 5 vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculatōrēs cognitā

1. strepitus, -ūs, m. [strepō, make a noise], noise, rattle, uproar. 2. tumultus, -ūs, m. [tumēō, swell], uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult; uprising, insurrection. 2. órdō, -inis, m., row, tier, layer; rank, line of soldiers; arrangement, order; degree, rank; prīmi ōrdinēs, centuriōnēs of the first rank. *

19. neque = ēt nōn.

Chap. 11. The Belgae are pursued with great slaughter.

1. secundā vigiliā; i.e. during the second quarter of the night. As the nights were short, this would be between ten and twelve. 2. castrīs: ablative of separation. 4. fēcerunt ut profectiō vidērētur, "they made their departure seem." fugae: dative.


THIRD REFERENCES:

Predicate adjective Indirect object
Partitive genitive Ablative of agent
Gerund Gerundive
Two objects with compound verbs
Substantive volitive (purpose) clauses
Clauses with ubi, postquam, etc.
Dependent clauses in ind. discours
insidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuīt. Prīmā lūce confirmātā rē ab explōratōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur, praemīsit. His Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit. T. Labiēnūm lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussīt. Hī novissīmōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī magnam multitūdinem cōrum fugientium concīderunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine ad quōs ventum erat cōnsīstent fortiterque impetum nostī rum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrīs, quod abesse ā perīculō vidērentur neque ānullā necessitāte neque imperiō cōntīnērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātīs ōrdīnibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ānullō perīculō tantam eōrum  

6. perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, tr. [speciō, look], look or see through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, realize, learn, find out, ascertain. *  
10. Aurunculēius, -ī, m., Lucius Aurunculēius Cotta (iū'shyūs aw-rūŋ'-kū-lē'yūs cōt'ā), one of Caesar's lieutenants. 3.  
11. subsecuror, -sequī, -secūtus sum, tr. and intr. [sequor, follow], follow closely, follow up or on, follow. *  
13. fugiō, fugere, fugī, fugitūm, tr. and intr. [fuga, flight], intr., flee, run away, escape; tr., shun, avoid. 4.  
14. fortiter, adv. [fortis, brave], bravely, stoutly, courageously. *  
15. prior, prius, adj., comp. (App. 43), former, previous, prior, first; pl. as noun, those in front. 2.  
16. necessitās, -tātis, f. [necesse, necessary], necessity, constraint, need. 2.  
17. exaudīō, 4, tr. [audiō, hear], hear (from a distance). 1.  
clāmor, -ōris, m. [clāmō, cry out], outcry, noise, din, clamor. *  
perturbō, 1, tr. [turbō, disturb], disturb greatly, throw into confusion, embarrass, disturb; alarm, terrify. *  
and pōnerent are imperfects of repeated action: all through the day the cavalry kept overtaking bodies of the enemy, who were killed in the manner described in the text.  
14. ventum erat is impersonal, but, as usual, the translation must be personal.  
15. priōrēs, "(but) those [of the enemy] in advance."  
16. neque . . . neque, "and . . . not . . . nor."
multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēi spatium; 20 sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstītērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

12. Postrīdē eius diēi Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā recipērent, in finēs Suessiōnum, qui proximi Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab défensōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrique altitūdinem paucīs défendentibus expugnāre

2. terror, -ōris, m. terreō, fright-en], fright, alarm, panic, terror. 2.
4. Noviodūnum, -i, n., Noviodunum (nō'veli-o'dūnum) (Be) the capital of the Suessiones, the modern Soissons. 1.

19. quantum . . . spatium, lit. "as was the length of the day" = "as the length of the day permitted."

Chap. 12-15. The Suessiones, the Bellovaci, and the Ambiani surrender to Caesar.

Chap. 12. Caesar takes the chief town of the Suessiones.

1. priusquam recipierent: mode? App. 236, b: G.-L. 577: A. 551, b: B. 292, 1, b: H.-B. 507, 4, b: H. 605, 2. Now that Caesar had broken up the combination of states, it only remained for him to subdue them one by one.

3. magnō itinere: about 28 miles. Caesar recrossed the Axona and marched along its south bank. See map facing p. 162.

4. ex itinere: i.e. before making camp and without letting the soldiers rest, although they were tired after their unusually long march (Int. 54). Caesar wanted to take the town before its garrison could be reënforced. On this method of taking towns see Int. 60.

6. paucīs défendentibus, "although there were but few defenders"; ablative absolute with adversative meaning.


THIRD REFERENCES:
Subjective genitive
Ablative of separation
Ablative of accompaniment
Ablative of manner
Indirect question
nón potuit. Castrís műnitís vineás agere quaeque ad oppug-
nandum úsui erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā
Suessionōn multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit.
Celeriter vineās ad oppidum āctis, aggere iactō turribusque 10
cōstitūtōs, magnitūdine operum, quae neque viderant ante
Galli neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī
légātōs ad Caesarēm dē dēditioņe mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs
ut cōnservārentur, impetrant.

13. Caesar, obsibībus acceptīs primīs cīvitātīs atque ipsīus
Galbae rēgīs duōbus filiīs armīsque omnisbus ex oppidō trāditīs,
in dēditionēm Suessionōs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacoś
dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium
contulisset, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar ēum exercitū circiter 5
milia passuum quīnque abisset, omēs maiōrēs nātū ex oppidō

---

7. vineā, -ae, f. [vinum, wine], vine arbor, hence, a shed for the defense of a besieging party. 4.

10. agger, aggeris, m., material for earthworks, earth; embankment, mound; rampart. *
turris, -is, f., tower. *

11. magnitūdō, -inis, f. [magnus, great], greatness, great size, size, extent; stature (corporum); violence (venti); severity (poenae); magnitū-
dō animi, courage. *

12. celeritās, -tātis, f. [celer, swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. *

14. cōnservō, 1, tr. [servō, save], save, spare, protect; observe, maintain. *


6. nātūs, -ūs, m. [nāscor, be born], birth; maiōrēs nātū, greater by birth, elders. 3.

---

7. vineās agere, "to move up the vineae." See Int. 62, d.
quaeque, "and (those things) which." 8.

ūsū; dative of purpose.

9. in oppidum: they probably entered from the north by crossing the Axona. There may have been a bridge which Caesar had not had time to destroy.

10. aggere turribusque: see Int. 61.
13. petentibus Rēmīs: on the relations between the Remi and the Suessiones see 3, 11.
14. impetrant, "they [the Suessi-
one] obtained their request." The verb is used absolutely.

Chap. 13. Caesar marches against the Bellovaci, who sue for peace.
1. obsidibus, "as hostages"; in apposition with primīs, which is used as a noun, and with filiīs.
2. Galbae: who had been head of the league; see 4, 20.
3. Bellovacoś: the strongest Belgian state. For the direction of his march see map facing p. 162.
6. ex oppidō: is ex needed with this verb? See 11, 2.
égessi manús ad Caesarem tendere et vòce significāre coeūpērunt, sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venire neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, pueri mulieresque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

14. Prō hīs Diviciācus (nam post discēssum Belgārum dimissīs Haeduōrum cópiās ad eum reverterat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fīdē atque amicitīā civitātīs Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suīs prīncipībus, qui dīcerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servītūm redāctōs omnēs indignātēs contumĕliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōnsilī principēs fuissent, quod

| 7. | tendō, tendere, tetendi, tentum or tĕnsum, tr., stretch, stretch out, extend; stretch a tent, pitch; encamp. 1. | 1. | discēssum, -ūs, m. [discēdō, depart], departure, withdrawal, absence. 3. |
| 8. | vōx, vōcis, f., voice, tone; outcry, cry; pl., words, language, variously translated according to context, as entreaties, complaints, tales, etc. * | 4. | impellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, tr. [in + pelliō, drive], drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel. 3. |
| 9. | pandō, pandere, pandi, passum, tr., spread or stretch out, extend; passīs capillīs, with disheveled hair; passīs manibus, with outstretched hands. 2. | 5. | redigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr. [red- + agō, put in motion], bring back, bring under; render, make; reduce. * indignītās, -tātis, f. [indignus, unworthy], unworthiness; outrage, disgrace. 1. |
| 10. | pueri, "children," both boys and girls. ex mūrō, "on the wall." The Romans thought of the entreaties as coming "from the wall." | 3. | omni tempore fuisse, "had always been." Diviciācus claims the Bellovacī as members of the league which was headed by the Haeduī. See Int. 23. |

1. discēssum: i.e. the breaking up of the great army at the Axona.


| 399, n. 1: A. 418, a: B. 229, 3: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475, 3. | THIRD REFERENCES: |
| Ablative of specification | Coordinate relative |
intellegerent quantum calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere non solum Bellovacös sed etiam pró hīs Haeduós ut suā clémentiā ac mãnsuētūdine in eōs 10 ûtātur. Quod si fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum; quàrum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentāre consuērint.

15. Caesar honōris Diviciāci atque Haeduōrum causā sæsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dīxit, et, quod erat civitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hōminum multitudine praestābat, sescentōs obsidēs poposcit. His trāditis omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātīs, ab eō locō in finēs 5 Ambiānorum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdīdē-

9. profugiō, -fugere, -fugiē, -fugī-tum, intr. [fugiō, flee], flee, flee from, run away, escape. 4.
10. clémentia, -ae, f. [clēmens, gentle], gentleness, kindness, mercy, clemency. 2.
mānsuētūdō, -inis, f. [mānsuetus, tame], gentleness, clemency, compassion. 2.
12. amplificō, 1, tr. [amplus, large +faciō, make], extend, enlarge, increase, expand. 1.
13. incidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, intr. [cadō, fall], fall into or upon; fall in with, meet; happen, arise. 2.
4. sescentī, -ae, -a (DC), card. num. adj. [sex, six], six hundred. *
6. mora, -ae, f., delay. 3.
dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr. [dō, give], give up or over, yield, surrender; devote; sē dēdere, submit, surrender. *

when quis is used as an indefinite.

Chap. 15. Caesar accepts the surrender of the Bellovaci and the Ambiani. The character of the Nervii.
1. honōris causā, līt. “for the sake of the honor of” = “in deference to.”
2. eōs, i.e. the Bellovaci, is the object of receptūrum et cōnservātūrum (esse).
3. multitudine: ablative of specification.
6. Ambiānōrum: see map facing p. 162.


THIRD REFERENCES:
Dative with compound verbs
Ablative with ûtōr, etc.
runt. Eōrum finēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīni reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem existimārent; esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdīdissent patriamque virtūtem prōlēcissent; cōnfīrmāre sē sē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque āūlām condicionem pācīs acceptūrōs.

16. Cum per eōrum finēs trīduum iter fēcissent, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabīs flūmen à castris suis nōn amplius mīliā

9. adītus, -ūs, m. [adēō, go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. *
   vinum, -ī, n., wine. 2.
10. lūxuria. -ae, f., luxury, high living. 1.
11. relanguēscō, -languēscere, -langui, —, intr. [re-+languēscō], become weak], become weak or enfeebled. 1.
   remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, tr. [re-+mittō, send], send or despatch back, return, restore, remit; release, relax, give up; remissus, pf. part. as adj., mil. *
7. quōrum, "their." 
8. nūllum . . . mercātōribus, "that traders had no access to them." 
9. patī, "that (they) allowed." 
   vīni, rērum: partitive genitives with nihil.
10. quod existimārent: causal clause in indirect discourse.
13. dēdīdissent, prōlēcissent: may have been subjunctive in the direct form.

12. increpitō, 1. tr. [freg. of increpō, chide], chide, blame; make sport of, taunt. 2.
   incūsō, 1. tr. [causa, cause or case], bring a case or charge against; censure, upbraid, blame. 2.
13. patrius, -a, -um, adj. [pater, father], fatherly; ancestral. 1.
1. inveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -vēntum, tr. [venī, come], come upon, find, meet with; find out, learn. 2.
2. Sabīs, -īs, m. (Af), the river Sabīs (sā/bis). 2.
   amplē, adv. [amplus, large], largely; comp., amplius, more, farther. *
14. cōnfīrmāre sē sē neque missūrōs, "they declared that they would neither send." 

Chap. 16-28. Caesar narrowly escapes defeat by the Nervīi, but secures their submission after almost entirely destroying their army.

Chap. 16. The Nervīi encamp at the Sabīs, prepared for battle.

2. Sabīs: note the accusative in -im.


Third References:
   Descriptive genitive
   Causal clauses with quod, etc.
passuum x abesesse; trans id flumen omnès Nerviōs consédisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, finitimīs suīs (nam his utrisque persuāserant utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur); exspectāri etiam ab īs Atuatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inutilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse quō propter palūdēs exercitū aditus nōn esset.

17. His rōbus cognitis explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit qui locum idoneum castrīs deligant. Cum ex dēdīticiis Belgīs reliquisque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūti ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex īs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cognitum est, eōrum dīrōm consuētūdine itineris nostri exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque īs dēmōnstrārunt inter

---

6. experīor, -perīri, -pertus sum, tr., prove, try, test, experience. *
8. aetās, aetātis, f., period of life, age. 2.

inutilis, -e, adj. [in- + utilis, useful], useless, worthless; disadvantageous. 2.
1. centuriō, -ōnis, m. [centum, a hundred], centurion, the commander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion. *

For the course of the river see map facing p. 162.


trans flumen: i.e. on the southern bank. For the exact location see plan, p. 191.

finitimīs: in apposition with Atrebātibus and Viromanduīs. See map.

abīs: i.e. by the Nervīi.

quiēre, “and (the men) who.”

eum locum quō, “a place to which.”

coniēcissee: as subject supply ēōs, referring to the Nervīi.

---

4. quidam, quaedam, quiddam and quidam, quaedam, quoddam, indef. pron. (App. 62 and b), a certain one, some one; a certain, some, a; a kind of. *

5. consuētūdō, -inis, f. [cōnsuēscō, become accustomed], habit, custom, practice; mode of life. *


Chap. 17. The Nervii plan to surprise Caesar.

2. ex ... Gallīs: equivalent to a partitive genitive.

3. Caesarem ... facerent, “had joined Caesar and were marching along with him.”

5. eōrum ... exercitūs, “our army’s usual order of march during those days.” Both dīrōm and exercitūs depend on itineris. On the order of march see Int. 53.

6. inter singulās legiōnēs, “between every two legions.”

---


Third References:

Indirect object with intransitive verbs

Dative of possessor
singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum magnum numerum intercēdre, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcīnis adorīri; quā pulsā impedimentisque directīs, futūrum ut reliquaēe contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent. Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nervī antiquitus, cum equītūtī nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus ei reī student, sed quicquid possunt pedestribus valent cōpiās), quō facilius fīnītīmōrum equītūtūm, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impediērent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque

10. diripiō, -ripere, -ripul, -rep-tum, tr. [rapīō, seize], rend or tear asunder; plunder, pillage. 1.

11. aidiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvi, -iūtum, tr. [iuvō, aid], aid, help; assist; contribute to, support. 1.

14. quisquīs, quicquid, indef. (or generalizing) rel. pron. (App. 60, a), whoever, whatever. 1.

pedester, -tris, -tre, adj. [pēs, foot], on foot, pedestrian; pedestres cōpiāe, infantry. *

15. praedor, 1, tr. [praeda, booty], make booty, plunder, rob, despoil. *

16. tener, -era, -erum, adj., tender.

arbor, -oris, f., tree. 2.

incidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cisum, tr. [caedō, cut], cut into. 1.

7. impedimentōrum; see Int. 46.

numerus, "amount." Caesar is thinking of the number of pack animals.

8. neque . . . negōtī, "and that it would be [lit. was] no trouble."

castra, "camping-ground."

9. vēnisset, abessent: indirect discourse for the future perfect and the future, respectively. The direct form meant "when . . . shall have come and . . . shall be distant."

spatium: accusative of extent of space.

10. sarcīnis: see Int. 37.

11. futūrum (esse) ut, "the result would be that." This clause is connect- ed with the preceding by a relative, so that it appears to be a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Why is the ininfītive used instead of the subjunctive? App. 269, a: G.-L. 635: A. 583, b: B. 314, 4: H.-B. 535, 1, b: H. 643, 1.

adiuviābat: the subject is the clause quod . . . effecerant; "the fact that the Nerviī had made, etc., assisted." 


14. ei reī: i.e. cavalry.

quicquid . . . cōpiās, "whatever strength they have consists in infan-try."


16. vēnisset: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative. Their thought was "that we may check the cavalry if they shall have come."

teneris . . . interiectis: a row of young trees was planted around a field; their trunks were partly cut through (incīsīs) and their tops bent over (inflex-īs). The tops would then continue growing slowly, and many branches would spring out from the sides of the trunk below the cut (crēbris . . . ēnātīs). In all thin spots bramble bushes were planted (rubīs . . . interiectīs).
Inflexis, crēbrisque in lātītūdinem rāmis ēnātīs, et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs, effēcerant ut ĕn star mūrī hae saepēs mūnimenta praebērent quō nōn modo nōn intrāri, sed nē perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum īter agminis nostri interiectō spatiō, not far away. 1. instar, n., indecl., likeness; with gen., like. 1.

saepēs, -is, f., hedge. 2.
mūnimentum, -i, n. [mūniō, fortify], defense, fortification. 1.

interiectus, pf. part. as adj., lying between, intervening, interspersed; mediocrī

17. rāmus, -ī, m., branch, bough. 1.
énāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum, intr. [nāscor, be born], be born from; spring up. 1.
rubus, -ī, m., bramble. 1.
sentis, -is, m., briar. 1.

18. intericiō, -icerē, -icēi, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], throw or hurl between; put or place between; interiectus, pf. part. as adj., lying between, intervening, interspersed; mediocrī

19. praebēō, 2, tr. [praē + nabeō, hold], hold out, offer, furnish, present.
intrō, 1, tr., go or walk into, enter, penetrate. 1.

Battle on the Sabis

18. effēcerant ut praebērent, "they had made these hedges furnish."
19. quō . . . posset: a clause of characteristic. Translate personally, "into which one not only could not penetrate, but could not even see."
impedirētur, non omnитет sibi cōnsilium Nervii existimā-
ve-runt.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castris
dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequalīter dēclīvis ad flūmen
Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine
parī acclivitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius,
5 passūs circīter ducentōs īnŭmus apertus, ab superiōre parte
silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eōs
silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secun-

21. omitterō, -mittere, -misī, -mis-sum, tr. [ob-mittō, send], let go or
fall, drop; give up, neglect, disregard. 1.
2. aequalīter, adv. [aequalīs, equal;
aequus, equal], equally, evenly. 1.
dēclīvis, -ē, adj. [clīvis, a slope],
sloping downward, declining; n. pl. as
noun, slopes. 2.
3. nōminō, 1, tr. [nōmen, name],
call by name, name, mention. 1.
4. acclivitās, -tātis, f. [acclīvis,
ascenting], ascent, slope. 1.
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, intr., be
born or produced; rise, spring up, be
reared; be found. 3.

Chap. 18. Description of the
battlefield.
1. haec, “as follows.”
locum: omit in translation.
nostri: i.e. the scouts and centurions
who had been sent on ahead; 17, 1.
2. collis: north of the river. See
contrārius, -a, -um, adj. [contrā,
against], lying over against, opposite,
facing; ex contrāriō, on the contrary. 3.
6. silvestris, -ē, adj. [silva, forest],
of a wood, wooded; in a wood or forest.
intrōrsus, adv. [intrō, within-versus,
pf. part. of vertō, turn], within, on
the inside. 1.
7. occultus, -a, -um, adj., covered,
hidden, concealed, secret; n. as noun, a
hidden place, an ambush. 2.
secundum, prep. with acc. [sequor,
follow], along; in the direction of; be-
sides, in addition to. 3.
plan, p. 191.
summitō, “the top”; the ablative sin-
gular of summus, used as a noun.
4. collis: south of the river.
5. passūs . . . apertus, “at the
bottom bare of trees for two hundred
paces.”

2. dēligant: tense? App. 203; 203;
204, b: G.-L. 509, 1, 2, 1, a; 510: A. 482;
483; 485, e: B. 267; 236, 3: H.-B. 476; 491,
1, 2: H. 543; 544; 546.
6. dēmōnstrārunt: form? App. 73:
G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, a: B. 116, 1: H.-B.
163, 1: H. 288.
11. audērent: mode? App. 223, b:
G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B.
521, 3, a: H. 571, 1.
12. quod effecerant: construction?
App. 248: G.-L 524; 535, 3: A. 177: B. 299,
dum flumen paucae stationes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitudo pedum circiter trium.

19. Caesar equitatu praemissi subsequebatur omnibus copiis; sed ratiō órdōque agminis aliter se habēbat ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētuferant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, consuetūdine sua Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē conscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostri cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flumen trānsgressī cum hostium equitatu proelium commiścērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs recipērant ac rūsīs ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostri longēs quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta perti-

8. statió, -ōnis, -a, f. [stā, stand], standing or stationing; a military post or station; sentries, pickets, outposts; in statione esse, be on guard. 4.

2. aliter, adv. [alius, other], otherwise; aliter... ac, otherwise... than.

8. trāngredior, -gregi, -gressus

videbantur, "were seen," not " seemed."

9. pedum trium: descriptive genitive, in the predicate.

Chap. 19. The Romans are attacked while fortifying their camp.


2. aliter... ac, lit. "had itself otherwise than" = "was different from what."

habēbat is singular because ratiō òrdōque is thought of as a single idea, almost "method of arrangement."

4. expeditās, "without baggage"; whereas the Nerviī had been told that each legion would be separated from the next by a long train of baggage.

6. legiōnēs... conscriptae erant: as the enemy was known to be in front, Caesar did not expect these legions to be attacked. The same legions were left in camp at the Axona; 8, 15.

10. recipērant, facerent, "kept retiring, kept making."

11. longius... finem, "than the limit to which." Our idiom would lead


THIRD REFERENCES:
Place to which
Descriptive ablative
Adjectives with partitive meaning
nēbant cēdentēs īnsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae priamē vēnerant opere dimēnsō castra müniēre coeōrent. Ubi prima impeditamenta nostrī exercitīs ab īis quī in silvīs abdīti latēbant visa sunt, quod tempus inter ēōs committēndī proeli convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque consūtītur atque ipsī sēsē confirmāverant, subitō omnibus cópiīs prōvölāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equītes fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdībīlī celeritātē ad flūmen dēcussūrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine hostēs vidērentur. Eādem celeritātē adversō colle ad nostra castra atque ēōs quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vexillum

12. cēdō, cēdere, cessi, cessum, intr., go; go away; give way, yield, retreat. 2.
13. dimētōr,-mētīrī,-mēnsus sum, tr. [mētior, measure], measure out or off. 2.
15. lateō, -ēre, -ui, —, intr., escape notice, lurk, lie concealed or hidden. 2.
17. subitō, adv. [subitus, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. *

us to expect ad finem, ad quem, but the antecedent is attracted into the relative clause.

porrēctā pertinēbant, lit. “extended stretched out” = “extended.” The whole clause quem... pertinēbant means “to the edge of the woods.”

dimēnsō: this is one of a few deponent verbs whose perfect participles have a passive meaning.

14. prima impeditamenta, “the head of the baggage train.”
15. quod tempus, “the time which.”
16. convēnerat, “had been agreed upon.”
ut... ipsi sēsē confirmāverant, “as... they had pledged each other


prōvölō, 1, intr. [volō, fly], fly or rush forth. 1.
prōturbō, 1, tr. [turbō, disturb], drive in confusion; dislodge. 1.
dēcurrō, -curre, -cucurri, -cussum, intr. [currō, run], run down, hurry down. 4.
1. vexillum, -i, n., banner, flag, standard. 1.

(to do).”

20. ut vidērentur: a result clause.
21. adversō colle, lit. “by way of the hill facing them” = “up the hill.”
22. operē: i.e. of fortifying the camp.

The attack was a complete surprise. The Roman scouts had not done their work properly, and Caesar himself appears to have been careless in not keeping a part of his men under arms while the enemy were so near.

Chap. 20. The critical position of the Romans, and the value of their discipline.

1. Caesarī omnia erant agenda,
prōpōnendum, quod erat īnsigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret, signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī militēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendi causā prōcesserant arcessendi, aciēs īnstruenda, militēs cohortandi, signum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidīō, scientiā atque īsus militum, quod, superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī, quid fieri oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sībi praescribere quam ab aliīs docēri poterant; et quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Cæsar discēderi nisi mūnītīs castrīs

2. concurrō, -currere, -currī, -currū, -currum, intr. [currō, run], run or rush together; hurry, run, rush; run to the rescue; come, gather. 2.
3. tuba, -ae, f., trumpet. 1. revocō, 1, tr. [re-+vōcō, call], call back, recall; withdraw. 2.
4. paulō, adv. [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. * prōcēdō, -cessō, -cessi, -cessum, intr. [cēdō, go], go forth or forward, proceed, advance. * arcessō, -ere, -iē, -ītum, summon, send for, invite. *
6. brevitās, -tātis, f. [brevis, short], shortness; brevity. 2. incursus, -ūs, m. [incurrō, rush into or upon], attack. 1.
7. difficultās, -tātis, f. [difficilis, difficult], difficulty, trouble, embarrassment. *
scientiā, -ae, f. [scientiā, science], knowledge, science, skill. 4.
8. exercitātūs, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of exercitō, train or practice well], well trained, skilled, versed. 2.
9. praescribe, -scribere, -scriptum, tr. [scribō, write], write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe, dictate to. 3.

lit. "all things had to be done by Caesar" = "Caesar had to do everything."

vexillum: a red banner which was displayed in front of the general's headquarters.

2. prōpōnendum: supply erat. Similarly supply erat or erant with each of the future passive participles which follow.
3. signum: to form ranks. qui, "(those soldiers) who."
4. paulō longius, "a little too far." aggeris: here the materials for building the rampart, especially timber; for the sod and earth were taken from the trench on the spot. See p. 30, fig. 5.
arcessendi: by messengers.
5. signum: here the signal for the attack.
6. duae rēs: explained by two appositives, first, scientiā atque īsus, "the theoretical and practical knowledge of the soldiers"; second, quōd . . . vetuerat (l. 10), "the fact that Caesar had forbidden, etc."
7. quod poterant: a causal clause. proeliīs, "in battles"; but it is an ablative of means.
9. quid fieri oportēret, "what ought to be done"; an indirect question, object of praescribere.
10. ab singulis . . . discēdere, "each legate to leave a particular legion." It is not quite correct to translate "leave his legion," because the legates did not have permanent commands. See Int. 38.
11. nisi mūnītīs castrīs, lit. "unless the camp having been fortified" = "unless the camp had been fortified."
12. vetēs,-āre,-ui,-itum, tr., forbid. 
14. administrō, 1, tr. [minister, servant], serve, attend, wait upon; manage, guide. *
2. foris, fortis, f., chance; forte, abl. as adv., by chance, perchance. 3. offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātum, tr. [ob + ferō, bear], bring before, present; offer, confer upon, give; with sé, expose one’s self to, charge upon, encounter. 3. decimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [decem, ten], tenth. *

1. ad ... militēs: with dēcucurrit. 2. quam in partem = in eam partem in quam. Cf. note on 19, 11.
3. nōn longiōre orātīōne quam utī, “with a speech no longer than (this:) that they should, etc.”

dēveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, intr. [veniō, come], come down, go, come. 2. longus, -a, -um, adj., long, distant; of long duration; tedious. *
6. adīgō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr. [agō, move], drive or bring by force, move; thrust, plunge, hurl (of weapons); bind (by an oath). *
8. occurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, intr. [ob + currō, run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon; go to, come to; oppose, counteract; occur. *
4. neu: the regular expression for “and not” in substantive volitive (purpose) clauses.
6. quod aberant: a causal clause, explaining signum dedit.
quam ... posset, lit. “than to which a javelin could be thrown.” Omit quō in translating. For the mode of posset see App. 230: G.-L. 631, 3: A. 535, c: B. 283, 1, 2; a: H.-B. 521, 2; c: H. 570, 1.
7. in alteram partem: the right wing. See plan.
8. pugnantis occurrit, “he found (them already) fighting.”


THIRD REFERENCE: 
Substantive quod clause
poris tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus ut nōn modo ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induēndās scūtīsque tegimenta dētrahenda, tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prīma signa cōnspexit, ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quae-rēndis suis pugnāndī tempus dīmitteretur.

22. Instrūctō exercītū magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque col-lis et necessitās temporis quam ut reī militāris ratiō atque ordō postulābat, cum diversae legiōnēs aliae alia in parte hostibus

9. exīguītās, -tātis, f. [exiguus, scant], scantiness, meagerness, short-ness, want. *
dīmīcō, 1. intr. [micō, brandish], fight, struggle, contend. 3.
10. accommodō, 1, tr., adjust or adapt to one's self, fit or put on. 1.
11. gālea, -ae, f., a leather helmet. 1.
indūō, -duere, -dui, -duērum, tr.,
put on; sē induere, be impaled or pierced. 1.
tegimentum, -ī, n. [tegō, cover], a covering. 1.

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trac-tum, tr. [trahō, draw], draw off or away, withdraw, take off, remove. 4.
12. dēsum, desesse, dēfui, —, intr. [sum, be. App. 66], be wanting, be ab-sent from, fail. *
cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, tr. [speciō, look], look at, observe, descry, perceive. *
odversus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of divertō, turn in different directions], diverse, different; separate, remote. 3.
quam in partem, "to whatever place."
13. quaeque ... cōnspexit, "and whatever standards he saw first." On the importance of the standards see Int. 44.
suis: sc. signis.

Chap. 22. Caesar cannot plan the battle as a whole.
1. ut, "as."
2. reī ... ordō, lit. "the theory and arrangement of military matters" = "the theory of military tactics." When he could, Caesar drew up his army in three unbroken lines, the third of which acted as a reserve force to meet emergencies.
3. cum ... resisterent ... impe-

resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, s interiectīs próspectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia collo-
cārī neque quid in quāque parte opus esset prōvidērī neque ab ēnō omnia imperia administrārī potenter. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnæ quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

23. Legionis nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōnstiterant, pilis ēmissīs cursū ac lassītūdine examīnātos vulneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulcrunt, et trānsīre

4. dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., closely set or packed, thick, dense. 3.
5. próspectus, -ūs, m. [prōspiciō, look forth], view, prospect; sight. 1.
6. próvīdeo, -vidēre, -vīdi, -visum, tr. [vīdeo, see], see beforehand, foresee; care for, provide. *
8. inīquitās, -tātis, f. [inīquus, unequal], inequality, unfairness; disadvantage. 2.
ēventus, -ūs, m. [ēveniō, turn out], outcome, issue, result, consequence. 3.
varius, -a, -um, adj., diverse, changing, various. 1.
1. nōnus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj., ninth. 2.

dīrētur gives the reason for the main clause, neque . . . poterant.
diversae, lit. "separated" = "separately."
aliae . . . parte, "some in one place, others in another."
4. ante; see 17, 12-30.
5. interiectīs, "which intervened."
neque: the principal clause begins here.
certa, lit. "sure" = "so that they could be counted on." 6.
quid . . . esset: an indirect question, subject of prōvidērī (poterat).
7. in . . . iniquitāte, "in such a diversity of circumstances."

2. cursus, -ūs, m. [currō, run], running, speed; course, career; passage, voyage. *
lassītūdō, -inis, f. [lassus, weary], weariness, faintness, exhaustion, lassitude. 2.
exānimō, 1, tr. [anima, breath], deprive of breath, render breathless, exhaus; kill. 2.
3. obveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, intr. [veniō, come], come to, happen upon, meet; fall to by lot. 1.
4. compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulium, tr. [pellō, drive], drive together, assemble, collect; force, compel. 1.

8. fortūnae: genitive limiting ēventūs.

Chap. 23. The left wing repulses the Atrebates, the center repulses the Viromandui, and the Nervii attack the right wing.

1. nōnae et decimae: these legions were commanded by Labienus.
pilis: see Int. 36, a.
cursū: the Atrebates had run a mile, much of it uphill.
cursū . . . cōnfectōs: translate after Atrebātēs.
3. ea pars: the left wing of the Romans.

Third Reference: Cum causal
cónantēs insecūtī gladiīs magnam partem eōrum impeditam interfēcērunt. Ipsi trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proelīō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte diversae duae legionēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōfīgātīs Viromandūis, quibus-cum erant congressae, ex locō superiōre in ipsis flūminis ripīs proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte núdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitītītīs, omnēs Nervīii cōnfertissimō agmine ducē Boduognātō, qui summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legionēs īs circumvenēre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

24. Eōdem tempore equītēs nostrī levisque armātūrae

cōnantēs insecūtī gladiīs magnam partem eōrum impeditam interfēcērunt. Ipsi trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proelīō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte diversae duae legionēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōfīgātīs Viromandūis, quibus-cum erant congressae, ex locō superiōre in ipsis flūminis ripīs proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte núdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitītīs, omnēs Nervīii cōnfertissimō agmine ducē Boduognātō, qui summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legionēs īs circumvenēre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.
pedes, qui cum iis ãá fuerant, quós primum hostium impetú pulsós dixeram, cum sé in castra recipierent, adversis hostibus occurrēbant ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et 5 cālōnes, qui ab decumānā portā ac summō iuğō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse conspexerant, praedandi causā ēgressi, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul cōrum qui cum impedimentis venībant clāmor fremitusque orīēbātur, aliique aliam in partem perterriti ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rébus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opiniō est singularīs, qui auxili causā a civitāte missi ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitudine hostium castra complērī, legiōnēs

2. pedes, peditis, m. [pēs, foot], foot soldier; pl., infantry, foot. 3. cālō, -onis, m., a soldier's servant, camp porter or follower. 5. decumānus, -um, adj. [decimus, tenth], of or belonging to the tenth; decuman; decumāna portā, the rear gate (of the camp). 1. portā, -ae, f., gate. * 6. victor, -ōris, m. [vincō, conquer], conqueror, victor; as adj., victorious. * 7. respiciō, -spicer-, -spexi, -spectum, tr. [rē- + speciō, look], look back; look at, take notice of; consider, re-

picture of the panic elsewhere, a panic which seemed to foretell the complete destruction of the Roman army.

tēvis armātūrēs: a descriptive genitive. The reference is to the slingers and archers of 19, 7.

2. iīs: the cavalry.

fuerant: before their repulse.

quōs pulsōs dixeram, lit. "whom I had said to have been routed" = "who, as I said, had been routed." quōs refers to both equītes and pedites. dixi would be more natural and more usual than dixeram.

3. adversis, "face to face." Evidently they had made a circuit and were entering the camp by the east gate just as the Belgae were entering by the west.

gard. 1.

8. praeceps, -cipitis, adj. [caput, head], head foremost, headlong; steep, precipitous. 2. 9. fremitus, -ūs, m., a confused noise, uproar, din. 2. 11. Trēvir, -erī, m., one of the Trevi- eri; pl. Trēverī (Bfgh), the Treveri (trēvē-ri). * 12. singularīs, -e, adj. [singulii, one each], one at a time, one by one; single, alone; singular, remarkable, extraordinary, matchless. 2.

4. occurrēbant: note how the imperfects in the first part of the chapter describe a number of events, all going on at about the same time.

5. ab decumānā portā: the camp was on the slope, so that the rear was higher than the front and gave a better view of the battle. But perhaps the fierce charge of the Belgae had something to do with their choice of position.

6. victōrēs, "as victors."

8. eōrum: the muleteers, not the rear guard of two legions.


11. virtūtis opiniō, "reputation for courage"; an objective genitive.

13. cum: with vīdissent.
premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equītēs, fundi-tōrēs, Numidās diversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere et vidisset, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendeārunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedimentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs civitātī renūntiāvērunt.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signīisque in ūnum locum collātīs duodecimae legiōnis confertōs militēs sībi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedimentō vidit, quartae cohortīs omnibus centuriōnibus occīsis, signiferō interfectō, signō amissō, reliquāsrum cohortīum omnibus fērē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut

---

15. dissipō, dissipātōrum, dissipātōs, dissipātūs, -ēri, -ēris, -ēri, dissipated, dispersed, scattered, scattered.
1. cohortātiō, -onis, f. [cohortor, encourage], encouragement, cheering.
5. signīfer, -eri, m. [signum, standard + ferō, bear], standard-bearer.
16. dēspērātīs, "despairing of."
17. castrīs: what deponent verbs govern the ablative?

Chap. 25. Caesar finds the 7th and 12th legions in desperate straits, and reanimates them by his valor.

1. Caesar: subject of prōcessit (l. 15) and iussit (l. 16). This is an excellent Latin "period," with the subject first, the subordinate clauses in the middle, and the principal verbs toward the end. The sentence is not hard to understand in its Latin order, and is very effective; for the mass of subordinate clauses represents the impression made on Caesar when he saw all at once the many details of the fearful struggle. But it is hard to translate effectively, because such a sentence is intolerable in English. After the pupil thoroughly understands the sentence he should translate it very freely, breaking it up into a number of short sentences. Each of the following groups of words may be turned into a sentence, or two or more may be combined: Caesar . . . profectus; ubi . . . ur-gērī; signīs . . . vidit; quartae . . . amissō; reliquārum . . . occīsis; in his . . . possēt; reliquōs . . . vitāre; hostēs . . . instāre; et . . . possēt; scūtō . . . prōces-sit; centuriōnibus . . . possent. cohortātiōne: cf. 21, 2.
2. ubi, "when"; with vidēl, l. 4, which is repeated in l. 12.

urgērī: this and most of the other infinitives before the end of l. 12 depend on vidēl. Other dependent ideas are expressed by the ablative absolute.

signis collātīs: the position of the standards regulated the position of the cohorts. As the standards were now huddled together, the soldiers naturally crowded together.

3. sībī . . . impedimentō, lit. "were themselves for a hindrance to themselves for fighting" = "hindered one another in fighting."

4. quartae cohortīs: this cohort had suffered especially, because it was stationed at the left end of the front line.

5. signō amissō: regarded as a great disgrace.
occisīs, in hīs prīmipilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque vulneribus conjunctō, ut iam sē sustinēre non posset, reliquōs esse tardiorēs et nōn nūllōs ab novissimīs désertō locō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vitāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere instāre, et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque āllum esse subsidium quod submittitī posset, scūtō ab novissimīs mīlitī dētractō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in primam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātīm appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus mīlitēs signa īnferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ātī possent. Cuius adventū spē illātā mīlitibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quīse in ānō spectū impe-

7. *primipilus*, -ī, m. [prīmus, first + pilus, a century], the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. 1.

Sextius, -tī, m., Publius Sextius Baculus (pub'litī-ūs sēks'tī-ūs bāk'ū-lūs), a centurion in Caesar's army. 2.

vir, vīr, m., man; husband; a man of distinction or honor; cf. homō, a human being as distinguished from the lower animals. ∗

9. tardus, -a, -um, adj., slow, sluggish. 1.

10. déserō, -serere, -serui, -serūm, tr. [serō, entwine, join], disjoin; abandon, desert, forsake; désertus, pf. part. as adj., deserted, solitary. 3.

16. manipulus, -ī, m. [manus, hand + plēō, fill], a handful (esp. of hay, about a pole, anciently used as a standard), a company (of two centuries, the third of a cohort), maniple. 1.

laxō, 1, tr., stretch out, extend, open.

15. imperātor, -ōris, m. [imperō, command], commander-in-chief, general. ∗

7. prīmipilō: see Int. 42.

8. multīs gravibusque, "many severe." When multī and another adjective modify the same noun, the two adjectives are usually connected by et or que.

āē sustinēre, "stand on his feet."

9. ab novissimīs, "in the rear."

10. désertō locō, "deserting their posts."

tēla vitāre, "were getting out of the range of missiles."

neque ... et, "not ... and."

12. rem ... angustō, "and affairs were in a critical condition."

vidit: simply repeats the vīdit of l. 4.

13. quod ... posset: a clause of characteristic.

scūtō dētractō, "snatching a shield." Here begins Caesar's action.

mīlitī: dative of separation.

14. eō: the adverb.

16. signa ... laxāre, "to advance and (by so doing) to open out the ranks."

quō: cf. note on 17, 15.

17. spē ... animō, "hope was inspired in the soldiers, and their courage renewed."

18. prō sē, lit. "in proportion to himself" = "to the best of his ability."
rātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstiterat, item urgeri ab hoste vidisset, tribūnōs militum monuit ut paulatim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum alius alīi subsidium ferret, neque timērent ne āversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coeptērunt. Interim mīlitēs legiōnēm duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidīō impedimentīs fuerant, proelīō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potūtus et ex locō superiōrē quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gerērentur cōnspicātus decimam legiōnem subsidīō nostrīs mīsit. Quī cum ex equītum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versā-

19. opera, -ae, f. [opus, work], work, exertion; service; pains, attention; dare operam, give attention, take pains. 1. nāvō, i, tr., do zealously or well. 1. 20. paulum, adv. [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. * tardō, 1, tr. [tardus, slow], make slow, delay; hinder, check. 1. iūxtā, adv. [iungō, join], next, near. 1. 2. tribūnus, -ī, m. [tribus, tribe], tribune, a magistrate elected by the people, voting in tribes, to defend the interests of the plebs; tribūnus militum or miliāris, a military tribune. *

19. etiam... rēbus, "even in his own extreme danger."

Chap. 26. The 7th and 12th legions fight more successfully, and three other legions come to their rescue.

1. iūxtā: i.e. near the 12th legion, in whose ranks Caesar was fighting. cōnstiterat, "had taken its position." Distinguish carefully between cōnstitō and cōnstitūbō. 2. tribūnōs: see Int. 41. 3. sēsē coniungerent: i.e. to close up the gap between them. conversa signa inferrent, "to face about and attack." Of course only a part of the Romans were to face about. Probably the rear line faced about, and the cohorts at the ends of the line wheeled half around. Thus an oblong would be formed, facing the enemy on every side. 4. cum... ferret, "since they protected one another." 5. timērent: agreeing with mīlitēs, which is implied in alius alii. āversi, "in the rear." 7. quae... fuerant: cf. 19, 5. 8. proelīō... incitātō,"quickening their step on hearing of the battle." colle: at the rear of the Roman camp. 9. Labiēnus: cf. note on 23, 1. 10. quae rēs gerērentur: indirect question. 11. quī cum, "when they"; i.e. the soldiers of the 10th legion. 12. quō in locō, "in what condition."
rētur cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innixī proelium redintegrārent; cālōnēs perterrītōs hostēs cōnspicāti etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent; equītēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locis pugnandō sē legionāriīs militibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salutis tantam virtūtem praestītērunt ut, cum primī ēorum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; hīs dēiecētis et coacervātīs cadāveribus, qui superessent ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrīs conicerent et pilā inter-

praeferō, -ferre, -tuli, -ītum, tr. [fērō, bear, bring. App. 81], place before, esteem above, prefer to with quam; praeferre sē alicui, surpass. 1.

8. iaceō, iacēre, iacui, —, intr., lie; lie slain. 1.

insistō, -sistere, -stītī, —, tr. and intr. [sistō, stand], stand upon; stand firm, take a stand; press on, pursue; with ratiōnem, adopt, use. 4.

9. coacervō, 1, [acervō, heap up; acervus, heap], heap or mass together, pile one upon another. 1.

cadāver, -eris, n. [cadō, fall], a fallen or dead body, corpse. 1.

10. tumulus, -i, m. [tumeō, swell],

4. inermēs . . . occurrerent, "(though) unarmed, attacked the armed (enemy)."

6. etiam . . . salutis, "even at the end of their hope of safety"; i.e. even in their extreme danger.

8. proximī . . . insisterent, "the next stood upon them as they lay prostrate."

9. his: i.e. proximi.

qui superessent: cf. note on qui, l. 2.

10. ut ex tumulō, "as if from a mound."

conicerent: result. The force of ut (l. 7) still continues.

14. nihil . . . fēcērunt, lit. "made nothing of a remainder as regards speed" = "made all possible speed." This legion fell upon the rear of the Nervii.

Chap. 27. The Nervii are slain, fighting desperately.


cepta remitterent: ut nón nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicāri débēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās ripās, subīre iniquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

28. Hoc proeliō factō et prope ad internecionem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dixerāmus, hac pugnā nūntiātā, cum victorībus nihil impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrarentur, omnīn qui supererant cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērant sēque ei dēdidērunt; et, in commembrandā cīvitātis calamitāte, ex sescentīs ad trés senātōrēs, ex hominēm milibus LX vix ad quīngentōs qui arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērant. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs usus misericordiā vidērētur, diligentissimē

swelling; mound, hill. 4.
intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [capiō, take], take or catch between (one point and another); interrupt; intercept, cut off. 1.
11. nēquīquam, adv. [nē+qui(d)-quam, anything], in vain, to no purpose. 1.
1. gēns, gentis, f., race; clan, tribe, people. 3.
3. aestuārium, -rī, n. [aestus, tide],

11. ut . . . débēret, “so that it must be believed that not without prospects of success had men, etc.”; i.e. they were so brave that they had a right to expect success.

13. altissimās: at the point where the Nervii crossed, the bank of the river is higher and steeper than elsewhere.
quae, “deeds which”; i.e. those summed up in the preceding infinitives.

14. ex, “instead of.”

Chap. 28. The survivors submit to Caesar.

2. quōs coniectōs dixerāmus, “who, as I have said, had been, etc.”; cf. note on 24, 2.
4. victorībus . . . tūtum, “that nothing was an obstacle to the victors

low marsh-land, tidal inlet, estuary, marsh. 2.

5. cōnsēnsus, -ūs, m. [cōnsentiō, agree], united opinion, agreement, consent; coalition. 3.
8. senātor, -ōris, m. [senex, old], elder; senator. 1.
10. miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate; poor, worthless. 2.
supplicē, -lecis, m. and f., suppliant. 1.

and nothing safe for the conquered.”

5. quī supererant: compare quī su-peressent, 27, 9. This clause has precisely the same meaning, but does not depend on a subjunctive.

8. vix ad quīngentōs: this has been considered an exaggeration, because the Nervii revolted again three years later, and put 5,000 men in the field two years after that. But in so large a state there must have been thousands of boys too young to fight in the present battle, but old enough to fight a few years later.

qui possent: a clause of characteristic, and therefore subjunctive in the direct discourse.

9. ut . . . vidērētur, “that he might be seen to have shown mercy, etc.”
cōnservāvit suisque finibus atque oppidīs ùti iussit, et finitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

29. Atuatucī, dē quibus suprā scripsimus, cum omnibus cōpiis auxiliō Nervīis venirent, hāc pugnā sūntiatā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūntīs oppidīs castellīsque dōsērīs suā omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nāturā mūnitum contulērunt.

Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquestātur; quem locum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīisque prōgnātī, qui, cum iter in prōvvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, īs impedimentīs quae

**Table:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>misericordia, -ae, f. [misereō, pity + cor, the heart], pity, mercy, compassion.</td>
<td>1. scribō, scribere, scripsi, scripsum, tr., write, record or make mention in writing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cūntus, -a, -um, adj. [for coniunctus, joined together], all together, all.</td>
<td>2. scripsimus, scripsim, scripsimus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēgregiē, adv. [ēgregius, excellent], excellently, admirably, remarkably.</td>
<td>3. scripsi, scripsimus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rūpēs, -is, f., rock, cliff.</td>
<td>4. scripsimus, scripsi, scripsimus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acclīvis, -e, adj. [ad+clivus, a slope], sloping upward, rising, ascending.</td>
<td>5. scripsimus, scripsi, scripsimus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duplex, -plicis, adj. [duo, two+plicō, fold], twofold, double.</td>
<td>6. scripsi, scripsimus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pondus, -eris, n. [cf. pendō, weigh], weight.</td>
<td>7. scripsi, scripsimus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saxum, -ī, n., rock, large stone.</td>
<td>8. scripsi, scripsimus, scripsimus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praeacūtus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of praeacuō, sharpen at the end], sharpen in front or at the end, sharpened, pointed.</td>
<td>9. scripsi, scripsimus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trabs, trabis, f., beam, timber, pile.</td>
<td>10. scripsi, scripsimus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11. iussit, imperāvit: the sentence illustrates well the contrasting constructions with these verbs. iubeō regularly governs an accusative and infinitive; imperō, the dative with ut and the subjunctive.

Chap. 29-33. Caesar subdues the Atuatuci.

Chap. 29. The Atuatuci take refuge in a stronghold. Their origin.

1. suprā: in 16, 7. cum venirent, "while coming," omnibus cōpiis: ablative of manner. Such ablatives are often called "military accompaniment," but it is not logical to say that the Atuatuci came in company with themselves.

4. oppidum: for its probable location see map facing p. 162.

5. quod cum, "although this town." ex ... partibus, "at all (other) points in its circumference," or simply "on all (other) sides."

7. ducentōrum pedum: descriptive genitive, modifying aditus. The comparative minus has no effect on the construction; cf. note on milia, 16, 2.

8. duplici mūrō: see plan, p. 207. tum: at the time of Caesar's approach.

sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs, custōdiam ex suīs ac praesidium sex mīlia hominum

13. custōdiam, -ae, f. [custōs, guard]. custody, guard (state of being guarded); | pl., guards, keepers 2.

THE TOWN OF THE ATUATUCI

12. agere ac portāre, "to drive and to carry"; for impedimenta here means "possessions" rather than "baggage," and includes cattle.

citrā: the west side.

13. custōdiam . . . reliquerant, lit. "had left along (with their possessions) a guard of their (men) and a garrison, six thousand men (in all)."
ünā reliquerant. Hi post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā
finitimis exagitāti, cum aliās bellum īnferrent, aliās īlātum
dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi
domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

30. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō
excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proelīs cum nostrīs con-
tendebant; posteā vāllō pedum XII in circuitū XV milium crē-
brisque castellīs circumsūnnītī oppidō sēsē contīnebant. Ubì
vīneis āctīs aggere exstrūctō turrim procūl cōntuītī vidērunt,
primum irridēre ex mūrō atque incrēpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta

14. obitus, -ūs, m. [obēō, go to 
death], destruction. 1.

15. exagitō, 1, tr. [agitō, freq. of 
agō, drive], drive out or away; disturb,
harass. 2.

aliās, adv. [alius, another], at an-
other place, elsewhere; at another
time; aliās ... aliās, at one time ... 
at another. 4.

17. domicilium, -li, n. [domus, 
house], residence, dwelling, home, 
domicile. 3.

2. excursiō, -ōnis, f. [excurrō, run 
forth], a running out or forth, sally,
sorte. 1.

parvulus, -a, -um, adj. [dim. of par-
vus, little], small, insignificant, slight;
parvula proelia, skirmishes; parvulī,
children. 1.

4. circummūniō, 4, tr. [mūniō, for-
tify], wall around; fortify, protect. 1.

5. exstruō, -strueere, -struxi, 
-struc tum, tr. [struō, build], build or 
plie up, rear, construct, build. 2.

procul, adv., afar off, from afar, in 
the distance, at a distance. 2.

6. irrideō, -ridēre, -risī, -risum, 
intr. [in+rideō, laugh], laugh, jeer. 1.

3. pedum XII: in height.

XV milium: supply pedum as a parti-
tive genitive; “(of) 15,000 feet in cir-
cumference”; i.e. three miles. The plan 
shows that the wall did not cross the 
river, which itself forms a sufficient ob-
stacle.

4. oppidō: ablative of means, but to 
be translated as if an ablative of place.

5. vīneis, aggere, turrim: see Int. 
61; 62, d. The vīneae afforded shelter to 
the soldiers who made the agger. In 
this case the agger was intended only 
as a roadway up which to push the 
tower.

6. irridēre: on this use of the infi-
nitive see App. 281: G.-L. 647: A. 463: B. 
335: H.-B. 595: H. 610.

395, n. 1: A. 403, a, n. 1: B. 215, 2: H.-B. 
413, b: H. 469, 1.

māchinātiō a tantō spatiō instituerētur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus præsertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus Gallīs prae magnitudine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī est) tantī oneris turrim in mūrō 10 sēsse posse collocāre confiderent?

31. Ubī vērō movēri et appropinquāre moenibus vidērunt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē commōti lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pauce misērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūti: Nōn sē existimāre

7. māchinātiō, -onis, f. [māchinor, contrive], a mechanical contrivance, machine, engine, derrick. 3.
8. tantalus, -a, -um, adj. [dim. of tantus, so great], so small or little, so diminutive; trifling. 2.
stātūra, -ae, f. [status; stō, stand], a standing upright; size or height of the body, stature. 1.
9. plērurumque, adv. [plērusque, the greater part], for the most part, mostly, generally; again and again, very often. *
prae, prep. with abl., before, in front

7. a tantō spatiō, "so far away"; lit. "away by so great a distance," d being used as an adverb. Cf. 7, 8.
8. hominēs: in apposition with the subject of confiderent; "especially (as they were) men, etc."
10. contemptuī est, "is an object of contempt."
in mūrō collocāre: the Gauls ignorantly supposed that the Romans would try to set the tower on the wall, for the only towers they knew of were built on walls.

Chap. 31. The Atuatuci propose a conditional surrender.
1. movēri, "that it [the tower] moved."
3. locūti: the rest of the chapter is in indirect discourse. nōn sē . . . possent depends on locūti; everything else, on dixērunt (1. 6), "speaking as follows . . . said." But it makes smoother English to translate locūti as locūti sunt and omit dixērunt, "spoke as follows."


THIRD REFERENCE:
Ablative of degree of difference
Rōmānōs sine ope dīvīnā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent; sē suāque omnia eōrum potestāti permittere dīxerunt. Ūnum petere ac dēprecāri: sī forte prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliis audirent, statuisset Atuatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sībi omnēs fērē fīnitimōs esse ini-micōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē defendere trāditis armīs nōn possent. Sībi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēduce-rentur, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab his per crūciātum interfici inter quōs domināri cōnsuēssent.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam merītō eōrum cīvitātem cōnservātūrum, sī priūsquam

| 4. | divīnus, -a, -um, adj. [divus, divine], of the gods, divine, sacred. 1. |
| 5. | prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mō-tum, tr. [moveō, move], move forward, advance, push forward. 2. |
| 7. | dēprecor, 1, tr. and intr. [precor, pray], pray for deliverance from; beg off; implore, plead for. 2. |
| 9. | dēspoliō, 1, tr. [spoliō, strip], deprive. 1. |
| 10. | invidēo, -vidēre, -vidī, -visum, |

intr. [videō, see], look askance at; envy. 1.

12. quīvis, quaevīs, quidvīs, and quīvis, quaevīs, quodvīs, indef. pron. (App. 62), [qui, who+vis, you wish], whom or what you wish; any one, anything, any whatever, any. 3.

13. crūciātus, -ūs, m. [cruciō, torture; crux, cross], torture, torment. * dominor, 1, intr. [dominus, master], be master, rule. 1.

4. quī possent, “since they could,” may have been subjunctive in the direct form; App. 245: G.-L. 633: A. 535, e: B. 283, 3: H.-B. 523: H. 592.

6. ūnum, “one favor”; i.e. nē... dēspoliāret.

7. si statuisset, “if he should decide.” The direct form used the future perfect indicative; lit. “if you shall have decided.”

prō, “in accordance with.”

quam audirent, “of which they kept hearing.”

9. nē dēspoliāret: the original form was probably nōlī dēspoliāre; App. 219; 267: G.-L. 271, 2; 652: A. 450; 588: B. 276, c; 316: H.-B. 501, 3, a, 2; 534, 2: H. 561, 1; 642.

sibi: with the adjective inimicōs.

10. virtūtī: what verbs, transitive in English, govern the dative? trāditis armīs, “if they should, etc.”

11. sibi praestāre, lit. “it was better for them” = “they preferred.”

cāsum, “extremity.”

Chap. 32. The Atuatuci surrender unconditionally, but treacherously retain a part of their arms.

1. cōnsuētūdine: ablative of accordance.

2. merītō: ablative of cause.


THIRD REFERENCES:

Passive periphrastic conjugation

Dative of reference
mūrum ariēs attigisset sē dēdidissent; sed dēditionis nūllum esse condicionem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id quod in Nervīs fēcisset factūrūm, finitimīsque imperātūrum nē quam dēditiōnīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam inferrent. Rē renūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dīxērunt. Armōrum magnā multi-tūdine dē mūrō in fossām quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut prope summam mūri aggerisque altitudinem acervī armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertīa, ut postea perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs eō die pāce sunt ūsī.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī a mīlitibus iniūriam acciperent. Illī ante initō, ut intellectum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crūdiderant, partim cum iīs quae reti-

3. ariēs, arietis, m., a ram; battering-ram, a long beam for demolishing walls; one end of it was capped with iron in the form of a ram's head; brace, buttress. 2.
9. acervus, -i, m., a heap, mass. 1.
10. adaequō, 1, tr. [aequō, make equal], make level with or equal to, equal; keep up with. 3.

4. nisi armīs trāditīs: cf. 20, 11, note.
   in, "in the case of."
5. factūrūm . . . que imperātūrum, "he would do . . . and would command" means "he would do . . . ; namely, he would command."
6. rē, "answer."
7. facere: we might expect a future infinitive; but the envoys return and say that the people are already executing his commands.

8. ante: i.e. on the side where the Romans were.
9. aggeris: the Roman agger, which had reached the trench.
11. portīs patefactīs, "they opened the gates and."
12. pāce sunt ūsī, "remained quiet."

Chap. 33. The Atuatuci make a night attack and are repulsed. They are sold as slaves.
2. nē quam: cf. references on 32, 5. This care for the safety of the townspeople shows Caesar's intention of acting humanely.
4. praesidia, "the outposts" in the castella (30, 4) which guarded the Roman wall.
5. cum: with both iīs armīs and scūltis.
Caesar's Gallic War, II, 33

The Gauls, parting their assembly, kept their promises together, the Roman wall was rising ground. The desire to keep the wall on high ground accounts for its irregular course as shown on the plan.

Therefore Caesar had foreseen the possibility of treachery.

10. eruption, ōnis, f. [erumpō, break forth], a breaking out, bursting forth, sortie, sally. *

11. significātiō, -onis, f. [significō, make signs], making of signs, signal; indication, intimation. 1.

12. intrōmitto, -mittere, -misī, -mīssum, tr. [intrō, within + mittō, send], send or let in. 1.

13. universus, -a, -um, adj. [ūnus, one-]

ought to have been fought" = "as brave men ought to have fought."

eōs qui iacerent, "men who threw"; a clause of characteristic.

15. in ūnā virtūte consisteret, "depended on valor alone."

ad, "about," used adverbially.

18. sectionem: including the inhabitants as well as their possessions. The action was perfectly justifiable, according to ancient ideas, as a punishment for their treachery. Such methods were probably the only means by which he could have secured the respect of the Gauls.
versam Caesar vêndidit. Ab iis qui émerant capitum numeros ad eum relátus est milium quinquaéntâ trium.

34. Eódem tempore à P. Crassó, quem cum legíone úná miserat ad Venetós, Venellós, Osismós, Coriosolítés, Esuviós, Aulercós, Redonés, quae sunt maritimae civítátés Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnês eás civítátés in dicíönum potestátemque populí Rómání esse redactás.

35. His rébus gestís, omni Galliá pácatá, tanta huius telli ad barbarós opinío perlátâ est uti ab iís nátiónibus quae tráns

19. vêndó, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr. (vénüm, sale + dō, give), put to sale, sell, sell at auction. 3.

1. Crassus, -i, m., Publius Licinius Crassus, one of Caesar's lieutenants. *

2. Veneti, -órum, m. (Cb), the Veneti (vēnē-tī'). *

3. Venelli, -órum, m. (Bc), the Venelli (vē-nē'I'). *

4. Osismi, -órum, m. (Bb), the Osismi (ō-sis'mi), a Gallic people in modern Brittany. 2.

5. Coriosolítés, -um, m. (Bb), the Coriosolítés (kō-ri'-ō-sōl'-ī-tēz). 3.

6. Esuvii, -órum, m. (Bcd), the Esuvii (ē-su-vī-I'). 2.

7. Aulerci, -órum, m., the Aulerci (aw-lēr'si), a Gallic people divided into four branches. (1) Aulerci Ebuvórices (ē'bū-ō-rō-vī'sēz), (Bd); (2) Aulerci Cenomání (sē-nōm'ā-nī), (Bd); (3) Aulerci Brannovices (brān'nō-vī'sēz), location unknown; (4) Aulerci Diablintes (di'ē-blin'tēz), (Bc). 3.

8. Redonés, -um, m. (Bcc), the Redones (rēd'nō-nēz). 1.

9. maritimus, -a, -um, adj. [mare, sea], of the sea, sea; maritime, naval, on the sea; òra, the sea shore. *

10. dicio, -ōnis, f., dominion, authority, rule, sway. 3.

11. barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign (to Greeks and Romans), uncivilized, barbarous; pl. as noun, savages, barbarians. *

12. nātiō, -ōnis, f. [nāscor, be born], race, tribe, people, nation. *

19. iis qui émerant: slave dealers who were with Caesar constantly and who supplied the slave market at Rome. numerus . . . trium, lit. "the number was reported (to be) of 53,000"="was reported as 53,000."

Chap. 34. The northwestern states submit to Crassus.

1. legíone úná: this was the 7th, one of the two which had suffered most severely in the battle with the Nervi. Caesar must have sent Crassus immediately after that battle.

2. quae: agrees in gender with the predicate noun, civítátés.

5. esse redactás: they gave hostages without fighting. One legion could not have conquered these states, for we learn in the next book that it took Caesar himself and most of his army to do it.

Chap. 35. German envoys offer submission. Arrangements for the winter. A thanksgiving in Caesar's honor.

1. omní Galliá: the map facing p. 162 shows that Caesar now controlled everything but Aquitania and two Belgic states.

2. opinió, "impression."

quae incolerent: for mode see note on qui, 27, 2.
Rhēnum incoherent lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgāti-5 ōnēs Caesar, quod in Ítaliam Íllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestātē ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnūtēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaēque cīvitātēs propinqua īīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat legiōnibus in hiberna dēductīs in Ítaliam pro-pectus est. Ob ēāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris dīērum quinde-cim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūlī.

5. Íllyrīcum,-ī, n., Illyricum (i-lir'i-kūm), Illyria, lying northeast of the Adri-atic, forming a part of Caesar's province. 2.
6. Carnūtēs, -um, m. (BCde), the Carnutes (kār'nū-tēz).
   Andēs, -ium, or Andī,-ōrum, m. (Ce), the Andēs (ān'dēz) or Andī (ān'dī). 2.
7. Turonī, -ōrum, m. (Cd), the Tu-

3. qui pollicērentur: a purpose clause.
4. datūrās: feminine, because sē re-
   fers to nūtiōnibus.
5. initā proximā aestātē, "at the
   beginning of the next summer." At
   that time they had so far changed their
   minds that only the Ubīi sent hos-
6. in Carnūtēs: with dēductīs.
7. quaēque cīvitātēs = et ēās cīvitātēs
   quae.
8. in Ítaliam: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul.

He could not legally go outside of his
province, which included Cisalpine Gaul
and Íllyrīcum.

9. ex, "in consequence of."
10. supplicātiō: a public thanksgiv-
   ing, voted by the senate in honor of
   a victory. The number of days was sup-
   posed to be in proportion to the impor-
   tance of the victory. Before this time
   no more than twelve days had ever been
   voted.

quod, "(an honor) which." The ante-
cedent is the preceding clause.
BOOK III. OPERATIONS IN THE ALPS, IN THE NORTHWEST, AND IN AQUITANIA

Since Rome was to possess Gaul, she needed to control the shortest route across the Alps—that which leads over the Great St. Bernard pass. Caesar accordingly sent Galba with one legion, in the autumn of 57, to subdue the mountain tribes which controlled that route. Having apparently accomplished this, Galba went into winter quarters in a little town at the foot of the northern slope of the mountains. Here he was attacked by an overwhelming force of mountaineers, whom, however, he succeeded in driving off after a sharp engagement. He then retreated to a less exposed position. The tribes were not thoroughly conquered, but as we hear of no further operations against them it is evident that they stopped molesting travellers.

In 57 the northwestern states had submitted to Crassus and had sent him hostages; but when he established winter quarters among them and began sending out officers to levy tribute of supplies, they grew weary of the yoke. Ignorant of the Roman resources and power, three states took the fatal step of arresting the officers sent to them. This virtual declaration of war was followed by the formation of a powerful league of the coast tribes between the Loire and the Seine. The Britannii, the Morini, and the Menapii sent men and ships to their aid.

As early as possible in 56 Caesar hastened to Gaul and gave orders for an extensive campaign. In order to prevent any effective co-operation on the part of his enemies, he divided his forces. Titus Labienus, with part of the cavalry, was sent toward the Rhine to check a possible uprising among the Belgae and to prevent the Germans from crossing. Quintus Titurius Sabinus went to the country of the Venelli to cut off communications between the eastern and the western portions of the confederacy. Publius Crassus marched into Aquitania to prevent help reaching the insurgents from that quarter. Caesar himself, with the assistance of a strong fleet under Decimus Brutus, undertook the conquest of the Veneti, the most powerful sea-board state and the forefront of the confederacy.

The Veneti skilfully utilized the advantages of their position. Their country was wild and barren and their strongholds were built on the ends of promontories which the tides cut off from the main land. Hence
supplies for the Roman army were obtained with difficulty and siege operations were greatly hindered. The Veneti, on the other hand, had control of the sea and could supply their towns at will with provisions and defenders, or if necessary could transport the garrisons to other places, leaving the foe only a barren victory. The Roman fleet would have prevented this, but it was kept away by stormy weather during most of the summer. When it finally appeared, the much superior fleet of the Veneti confidently sailed out to meet it; but Roman valor and ingenuity won the day. The destruction of their fleet forced the Veneti to submit. Their prominence in the revolt marked them out for severe punishment, as a warning to other Gallic states. Accordingly the senate was put to the sword and the people were sold as slaves. The legates of Caesar were as successful as himself. Sabinus easily defeated Viridovix, the general in command of the land forces of the confederacy. Labienus overawed the Belgae. Crassus, after much fighting, subdued Aquitania. In all Gaul only the Morini and the Menapii had made no submission. Therefore Caesar marched against them; but after making strenuous efforts to reach the foe, in almost impenetrable forests and swamps, the approach of winter warned him to desist. Quartering his legions upon the conquered tribes, as in the previous winter, he proceeded to Italy.
EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

For the meaning of the colors, see the explanation of the campaign map for I, 1-29, facing page 42.

The same territory is colored red as in the campaign map for Book II, facing page 162. In addition, a narrow strip leading into the Alps, most of the northwestern states, and three states of Aquitania are colored red. In all these cases it is difficult to decide on the coloring.

It seems probable that Galba did not completely subdue the Nantuates, the Veragri, and the Seduni, but that he did secure the route through the Alps.

It seems probable that all the revolting states in the northwest had sent so large a proportion of their ships and men to help the Veneti, that the defeat of the Venetan fleet amounted to a defeat of all the states. Hence they are colored red. The Redones are not mentioned among the revolting states.

It is possible that all of Aquitania should be colored red; but it seems improbable that other states than the Sotiates, the Tarusates, and the Vocates were so largely represented in the armies defeated by Crassus as to make further resistance impossible. They are colored blue on the theory that they submitted only because they were discouraged by the fate of the states which did fight.

Caesar's army had probably been quartered along the Liger (Loire). Therefore the routes on this map begin at the point of the probable winter quarters farthest east, where Orleans now stands. Marching westward, he picked up another part of his army, and then probably collected the whole of it at the point on the map from which four lines diverge, which is now the site of Angers. From that point he sent out Labienus, Crassus, and Sabinus, and himself marched against the Veneti. From the Veneti Caesar marched against the Morini and the Menapii, and was probably joined on the route by Sabinus and Crassus.

217
LIBER TERTIUS.

1. Cum in Italiam proficisci
tur Caesar, Servium Galbam
 cum legione duodecim\ae
e part\ae equit\ae in Nantu\ae
, Ver-agr\o\s, Sed\u
ösque misit, qu\äinibus Allobrogum et lac\u
 lemanno et flu\u
ine Rhodan\ô ad summ\u
 Alp\e\s pertinent. 5
 Causa mittendi fuit quod iter per Alp\e\s, qu\ö
magn\ö cum

1. Servius, -\vi, m., Servius (s\u
\u
us), a Roman praenomen. 1.
 Galba, -ae, m., Servius Sulpi
cius Galba (s\u
\u
us s\u
\u
us g\u
b\u
a), one of Caesar\u
s legates, and said to have
 been one of his assassins. *

Chap. 1-6. Galba is sent to secure
a pass over the Alps. Although he
defeats the mountaineers in battle, he
dares not winter in the mountains.

Chap. 1. Galba is sent to secure a
pass over the Alps. He occupies Oc
todurus.

1. cum . . . proficisci
tur: as stated in II, 35. Therefore the narrative
given in the first six chapters of Book
III belongs chronologically with Book
II.

2. legione duodecim\ä:
this was one of the two legions which had suffered
most severely in the battle with the Nerv\ä; cf. II, 25.

Nantu\ae\tës, etc.: see the map facing
p. 217.

3. misit: the pupil should notice
carefully Caesar\u
s use of the indicative
tenses. The distinction between the im-
perfect and the perfect is difficult for
English speaking people to grasp, but
Caesar was as careful in their use as in
the choice of modes and cases. Study
App. 197, 198. Notice that in this chap-
ter the perfect is used in every principal
clause. Notice, too, that all but one of
these perfects tell something that Ce-
asar or Galba did; i.e. they all narrate
events in the story.

4. pertinent: several of the subordi-
nate verbs in this chapter are in the
present tense, because they state facts
which are still true at the time when
Caesar is writing.

5. fuit: this might have been im-
perfect, for it is not an event in the story.
Very few such perfects will be found in
Caesar.

quod vol\ä
bat, "that he wished": a
substantive quod clause, in apposition
with causa. The imperfect does not nar-
rate an event in the story, but describes
something (Caesar\u
s feelings) as going
on at the time of a main act (Caesar\u
s
decision to send Galba). This is the
most common use of the imperfect, and
is called the descriptive imperfect.

iter per Alp\e\s: the route leading over
the famous Great St. Bernard pass. For
the other route used by Caesar see map
facing p. 42.

qu\ö:
case? App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429,

218
periculō magnīisque cum portŏriis mercātŏres īre cōnsuērant, patefēri volēbat. Huic permīsit, si opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā collocāret. Galba, secundīs aliquot proeliīs factīs castellīsque complūribus eōrum expugnātīs, missīs ad eum undique légātīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōnstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus collocāre et ipse cum reliquis eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, qui appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vicus posītus in valle, nōn magnum adiectā plānitiē, altissīmis montibus undique contīnētur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dividēretur, altem partem eius vīcī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuam ab hīs relictam cohortibus ad hiemandum attribūit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

9. aliquot, indecl. num. adj. [quot, how many], some, a few, several. 3.
13. Octodūrus, -i, m. (Cg), Octodurus (ōk"tō-dū'rus). 1.
14. vallēs, -is, f., vale, valley. 2.
adiciō, -icere, -icēi, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw to, throw up, hurl; add. 1.
19. attribuō, -tribuere, -tribui, -tribūtum, tr. [ad + tribuō, assign], assign, allot. 2.

6. periculō: from the natives.
portōriis, "tolls," levied by the natives on all merchandise carried through their country.
7. arbitrārētur: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said arbitrāberis.
11. cohortēs duās: for the location of these cohorts, see map.
14. nōn . . . plānitiē, "with a little level ground adjacent."
17. vacuam relictam, "left vacant."
19. eum locum: the western half of the village.
2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūris trānsissent frūmen-
tumque eō comportārī iussisset, subītō per explōrātōrēs cer-
tior factus est ex eā parte vīcī quam Gallīs concesserat omnēs
noctū discessisse montēsque qui impendērent ā maximā multi-
tūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. Id aliquot dē causīs
acciderat, ut subītō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque oppri-
mendae cōnsilium caperent: prīnum, quod legiōnem, neque
cam plēnissimam, dētractīs cohortibus duābus et complūris
singillātim, qui commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, propter
paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter iniquitātem
locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrent et tēla con-
icerent, nē prīnum quidem impetum suum posse sustinērī
existimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstractōs
obsidum nōmine dolēbant et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum
causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessionis culmina Alpium occu-

6. renovō, 1, tr. [re-+ novus, new], renew. 2.
opprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, tr. [ob+ premō, press], press
down, oppress; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise. 4.
8. plēnus, -a, -um, adj. [pleō, fill], full, whole, complete. 3.
9. singillātim, adv. [singuli, one

6. ut caperent: a substantive clause of fact (resuńt), in apposition with id.

7. neque eam plēnissimam, "and

10. paucitās, -tātis, f. [paucus, few], fewness, small number. *
13. abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr. [trahō, draw], to drag
away, carry away by force. 1.
15. perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., con-
tinuous, uninterrupted; permanent,

11. cum dēcurrent et conicerent,

14. obsidum nōmine, lit. "under the
name of hostages" = "as hostages."
15. perpetuae possessionis: sc.
causā.
päre cónāri et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi per-

suāsum habēbant.

3. Hīs nūnītīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūnītīōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reli-
quōque commeātū satis esset provīsum, quod dēditiōne factā 
obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum existimāverat, 
cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquirere coēpit. Quō in 5 
cōnsiliō, cum tantum repēntīnī periculī praeter opinīōnem ac-

cidisset ac iam omnia ferō superiōra loca multītūdine armātō-
rum complēta cōnspicerentur neque subsidīō venīri neque com-
meātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam 
dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae eius modī sententiāe dicēbantur, 10 

ut impedimentīs relictīs ēruptīōne factā īsdem itineribus quibus 
eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent. Maiōri tamen partī 

lasti̇ng, continual; whole, entire; n. as 
noun in phrase in perpetuum, for-
ever. 3. 

culmen, -inis, n., top, ridge. 1.

16. adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, 
-iūnectum, tr. [iungō, join], join to, 
attach, unite; add. 1.

16. finitimae: the province bounded 
them on the west. See map.

sibī persuāsūm habēbant: the clause Rōnāmōs . . . adiungere is the object of 
habēbant, and persuāsūm is a predicate 

adjective in the neuter, agreeing with 
the clause; lit. “they had . . . persuaded 
to themselves” = “they were persuaded 
that.”

Chap. 3. The Romans resolve to 
defend their camp.

1. opus hibernōrum: especially the 
making of huts. Although they were 
occupying part of a village, it cannot 
have been large enough to house all the 
soldiers.

2. essent perfectae agrees with the 
nearer subject, mūnītīōnēs.

3. esset provīsum: translate per-

sonally.

2. plēnē, adv. [plēnus, full], fully. 1.

5. exquirō, -quirere, -quisivi, 
-qūsitum, tr. [quaerō, search], seek 
or search out, inquire, investigate. 2.

9. supportō, 1, tr. [sub + portō, 
carry], carry or bring up from beneath; 
bring, convey; supply, furnish. 4.

4. nihil timendum (esse), “that he 
need have no fear.”

5. cōnsiliō: a council of war, com-
posed of the tribunes and the centurions 
of the first rank. See Int. 42.

8. neque . . . venīri (possēt), lit. 
“and it could not be come to their 
assistance.”

10. eius modī, “to this effect.” 
dicēbantur: this narrates a new event 
in the story, so that the perfect might 
have been used; but the imperfect is 
used to express repeated action; App. 
484: H. 531, 3.

12. pervēnissent: implied indirect 
discourse. 

maiōri partī placuit, “the majority 
determined.”
placuit, hoc reservatō ad extremum consiliō, interim rei even-
tum experiri et castra defendere.

4. Brevi spatiō interiectō, vix ut iis rēbus quas consituis-
sent collocandis atque administrandis tempus darētur, hostēs
ex omnibus partibus signō datō decurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in
vāllum conicere. Nostri primō integrīs viribus fortiter prō-
5 pugnāre neque ullum frustrā tēlem ex locō superiore mittere,
et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta defensoribus prēmī
vidēbātur, ēō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hoc superāri,
quod diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs défessi proelīo excēdēbant,
ali integrīs viribus succēdēbant; quārum rērum a nostris
10 propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, ac nōn modo défessō ex

13. placēō, 2. intr. [cf. plācō, app-
pease], please, satisfy; often imperes,
seem good to one, hence, decide, resolve,
determine. 2.
reservō, i, tr. [re-+ servō, save,
keep], keep back, save up, reserve. 2.
1. brevis, -e, adj., short, brief, trans-
itory; brevi, in a short time. *
3. gaesum, -i, n., a heavy iron jav-
4. integer, -gra, -grum, adj., un-
touched, intact, whole, unimpaired;
fresh; rē integrā, before anything was
done. 3.
5. frustrā, adv., without effect, in
vain, to no purpose. 3.
6. quicumque, quaecumque, quod-
cumque, indef. (or generalizing) rel.
pron., whoever, whatever; whosoever,
whatsoever, any . . . whatever; every-
one who, everything that. *
8. diūturnitās, -tātis, f. [diātur-
nus, long], long duration. 2.

Chap. 4. The mountaineers attack
the camp in great numbers.
1. vix: placed before ut for emphasis.
rēbus . . . administrandis: the da-
tive of the gerundive is not common.
quās consituisissent: a determina-
tive clause; App. 231: H.-B. 556. Reason
for the subjunctive? App. 274: G.-L.
3. decurrere: an historical infinitive.
In what case is its subject. hos-
tēs? App. 231: G.-L. 447: A. 463: B. 335:
H.-B. 556: H. 610.
4. integrīs viribus: ablative abso-
lute, "while their strength was fresh."
5. ex locō superiore: the top of the
rampart.
7. hoc superāri, quod, "they were
overmatched in this, that."
8. excēdēbant, succēdēbant, "kept

withdrawing, etc."; imperfects of re-
peatecl action.
9. integrīs viribus: descriptive ab-
iative. Contrast the construction of the
same words in 1. 4.
quārum . . . poterat, "while none
of these things, etc."
10. poterat and dabātur are de-
scriptive imperfects, describing a condi-
tion of things that went on all through
the battle.
nōn modo défessō facultās dabā-
tur, "not only was an opportunity
given to an exhausted man."
H. 656, 3; "Nōn modo (or sōlum) nōn,
sed nē . . . quidem means not only not,
but not even, and nōn modo (sōlum),
sed nē . . . quidem, has the same mean-
ing when the verb standing in the second
clause belongs also to the first."
pugnā excēdēndi, sed nē sauciō quidem eius locī ubi constit·erat relinquentiē ac sui recipiendī facultās dabātur.

5. Cum iam amplius hōris sex centiñenter pugnārētur, ac nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficērent, atque hostēs acrius instārent, languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coeipissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum per·ducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, primī pīli centuriō, quem s Nervīcō proelīo complūribus cōnfectum vulneribus dīximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōnsili magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque unam esse spem salūtis docēnt, sī eruptiōne factā extrēmum auxiliūm experientur. Itaque convocātīs centuriōribus celeriter militēs certiōrēs faciēt 16

11. sauciō,-a,-um, adj., wounded.
locī relinquentiē: gerund or gerundive?


Chap. 5. As a last resort Galba decides on a sortie.

1. cum pugnārētur, "when the battle had lasted." The imperfect subjunctive is to be translated on the same principle as is laid down for the imperfect indicative in App. 191, b: G.-L. 234: A. 471, b: B. 260, 4: H.-B. 485: H. 535, 1.
hōris: ablative after the comparative, amplius; cf. note on mūlibus, II, 7, 10.

3. languidōribus nostrīs, "as our men grew weaker"; ablative absolute.
5. cāsum, "extremity."

8. accurrunt: the principal verbs in this chapter are all historical presents. The historical present narrates a new event in a story just as the perfect does. It may be followed by either the primary or the secondary tenses of the subjunctive. In this chapter the dependent subjunctives are all imperfects, as if the principal verbs were perfects.

unam... sī experientur, lit. "told him that there was one hope of safety, if they should try" = "that their only hope of safety was to try."

9. extrēmum auxiliūm, "their last resource."

experientur: indirect discourse for the future indicative.

10. militēs certiōrēs faciēt, "he directed the soldiers." This phrase is followed by indirect discourse, as usual; but all the verbs are in the subjunctive mode, because they represent imperatives of the direct form.
paulispe intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent, post datō signō ex castris ērumperent atque omnem spēm salūtis in virtūte pōnerint.

6. Quōd iussī sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portīs eruptīōne factā neque cognoscendī quid fieret neque sui colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquent. Ita commūtātā fortūnā eōs quī in spēm potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt, et ex hominum milibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfecā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōnsistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostīum cōpiīs fūsis armīisque exūtīs sē in castra mūniōnēs-

11. tantummodo, adv., only. 1.
12. excipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -cep-tum, tr. and intr. [capio, take]; tr., take up, catch, receive; take up (in turn); meet, withstand; relieve (of soldiers in battle); intr., follow. * labor, -ōris, m., toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship. * reficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, tr. [re- + faciō, make], remake, repair; allow to rest; with sē, refresh one's self, rest. 3.
13. ērumpō, -umpere, -rupi, -rup-tum, intr. [rumpō, break], break forth, sally. 1.
2. colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, tr. [con-+legō, gather], gather together, collect; acquire; sē colligere, collect one's self, rally. 3.
6. cōnstō, -stāre, -stīti, -stātum, intr. [stō, stand], stand firm; depend on; be complete; cost; impersonal, it is agreed, certain, evident, known. *
9. fundō, fundere, fūdi, fūsum, tr., pour, throw; rout, put to flight. 1.
exuō, -uere, -ui, -utum, tr., draw out or off, put or strip off, divest, despoil. 1.

12. exciperent, lit. "catch," on their shields = "shield themselves from."

post: the adverb.

Chap. 6. The Gauls are routed with great loss. Galba retires from the mountains.

1. quod iussī sunt faciunt, "they did as they had commanded." iussī sunt is used instead of a pluperfect, just as faciunt is used instead of a perfect. Notice how regularly the indicative tenses are used in this chapter: all the principal verbs are in the perfect or historical present; all the subordinate verbs except iussī sunt are in the imperfect or pluperfect.
2. sui colligendī: cf. note on 4, 12.
3. commūtātā fortūnā: the dangerous plan succeeded, partly because the Romans, like other men, fought with more spirit on the offensive than on the defensive, partly because the enemy were taken by surprise, and partly because the Gauls always lacked persistence and ability to rally from a reverse.

circumventōs: translate by a coördi-nate clause.

5. ex milibus XXX depends on ter-tiā parte. Galba probably exaggerated the number in his report to Caesar, for those tribes cannot have had 30,000 soldiers.
9. armīs: ablative of separation. The Gauls threw away their arms in their flight.
que suañs recipiunt. Quò proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sé in hiberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliis occurrissē rēbus vīderat, maximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā permōtus, posterō dīc, omnibus eius vīcī aedificiīs incēnsīs, in provinciā revertī contendit ac nūllō hoste prohibentī, ant iter dēmorante incolumnīm legiōnem in 15 Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

7. His rēbus gestīs, cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliām existimāret, superātīs Belgīs, expulsīs Germānīs, victīs in Alpibus Sedūnīs, atque ita initā hieme in Illyricum prefectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adire et regiōnēs cognōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coortum est. Eius bellī 5

12. memini, -isse (App. 86), tr., remember, bear in mind. 1.
15. dēmoror, 1, tr. [moror, delay], hinder, delay. 1.
incolumnīs, -e, adj., unhurt, uninjured, safe and sound, unimpaired. 4.
hiemis, -mis, f., winter time, winter. 
5. subitus, -a, -um, adj. [subeō, come up, come by stealth], unexpected, sudden.
coorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, intr. [co-orior, rise], arise, spring up, break out. 2.

10. quod . . . nōlēbat: Galba felt that it would be foolish to court another attack by remaining in so dangerous a position. The complete victory which he had gained made it possible for him to retire with honor. Since Caesar never fought these tribes again, we may suppose that they were taught by this battle not to molest Roman travelers.

11. aliō cōnsiliō, "with one purpose"; namely, to spend the winter there quietly.

12. aliis . . . rēbus, "that he had met a different state of affairs"; namely, a dangerous battle.

15. in Nantuātēs: there, of course, he picked up the other two cohorts of his legiōn.

Chap. 7-11. The Aremorican states revolt, under the leadership of the Veneti. Caesar prepares a fleet for their subjugation, and takes measures to prevent a wide-spread uprising of Gaul.

The events of the preceding six chap-
ters occurred in the fall of 57. At this point the events of 56 begin.

Chap. 7. The Aremorican states revolt because Crassus demands supplies from them.

1. omnibus dē causīs, "for every reason"; explained by the ablatives absolute superātīs . . . Sedūnīs, which should be translated by causal clauses.
pācātam (esse) Galliām: this belief was premature, for it took Caesar seven more years to subdue Gaul thoroughly.

victīs Sedūnīs: cf. 1-6. The Seduni were the most important of the tribes there mentioned.

4. quod . . . volērat: under Augus-
tus, Caesar's successor, the Romans were obliged to conquer the tribes between the Adriatic and the Danube. No doubt Caesar foresaw this necessity and hoped to do the work himself, but Gaul kept his hands full.
haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōnō septimā
proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in
hīs locīs inopīa frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque militum
complūrēs in finitimās civitātēs frūmentī causā dīmisīt; quō
in numerō est T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius
Gallus in Coriosolitēs, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

8. Huius est civitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis
ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī
plūrīmās, quibus in Britanniam nāvīgāre cōnsuērunt, et scien-
tiā atque ūsū rērūm nautīcārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et in
magnō impētū maris vāstī atque apertī paucīs portībus inter-
iectīs, quōs tenēnt ipsī, omnēs fērē quī eō marī ūtī cōnsuērunt
habent vectīgālēs. — Ab hīs fit initiūm retinēndī Sili atque

6. adulēscēns, -entis, m. [prēs. part. of adulēscō, grow up], youth, young
man. 4.
7. mare, -is, n., sea; mare Ōce-
num, the ocean. *
8. praefectus, -i, m. [praeficiō, place over,] overseer, prefect, com-
mander, officer, captain (usually of
10. Terrasidius, -dī, m., Titus Terr-
asidius (tītūs tēr′ā-sīdī-tūs), a military
tribune in Caesar's army. 2.
Trebius, -bī, m., Marcus Trebius
Gallus (mār'kūs tēbī-ilūs gāl'-ūs), a mili-
tary tribune in Caesar's army. 2.
11. Velānius, -ni, m., Quintus Ve-
lanus (kwīn'tūs vē-lā'-niūs), a military
tribune in Caesar's army. 2.
Silius, -li, m., Titus Silius (tītūs
sillī-itūs), a military tribune in Caesar's
army. 2.
2. ōra, -ae, f., border, margin; coast, shore. 4.
3. nāvīgō, 1, intr. [nāvis, ship], set
sail, sail. *
4. nauticus, -a, -um, adj. [nauta,
sailor], pertaining to sailors; nautical,
naval. 1.
antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum,
tr. and intr. [cēdō, go], go before, pre-
cede, excel, surpass. 3.
vastus, -a, -um, adj., waste;
boundless, vast. 3.
portus, -ūs, m. [cf. porta, gate], har-
bor, haven, port. *
7. vectīgālēs, -e, adj. [vehō, carry],
paying revenue or tribute; tributary. 2.

7. proximus . . . Ōceunum: i.e.
nearer than any other officer. For case
see App. 122, b: G.-L. 359, n. 1: A. 432, a:
9. in finitimās civitātēs: especially
the sea-board states of the northwest,
called Aremoricān states. These had all
submitted to Crassus in the fall; see II,
34.

Chap. 8. Led by the Veneti, the
Aremoricān states arrest Roman en-
voys and form a league.

1. huius civitātis: the Veneti, who
were last mentioned.
2. ōrae: partitive genitive, depend-
ing on amplissima.
regionum: depending on ōrae.
quod: belongs with habent, 1, 2; antecē-
dunt, 1, 4; and habent, 1, 7.
4. in magnō . . . interiectīs, "there
being only a few harbors in that dan-
gerous stretch (lit. great violence) of
vast and open sea."
7. habent vectīgālēs, "they treat
Velani, quod per eös suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, recuperātūrōs existimābant. Hōrum auctōritātē fīnitīmī ad-
ductī, ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentina cōnsilia, ēadem dē 10
causā Trebiōn Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missīs
lēgātīs per suōs principēs inter sē coniūrānt nihil nisi commūnī
cōnsiliō actūrōs eundemque omnēs fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs,
reliquāque civitātēs sollicitānt ut in eā libertātē quam ā ma-
ōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem 15
perferre mālīnt. Omnī ērā marītīmā celeriter ad suam senten-
tiam perductā commūnēm lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt:
Sit velit suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sībī remittat.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod
ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine
Ligerī, quod influīt in Ōceanum, rēmīgēs ex prōvinciā institūi,

9. recuperō, 1. tr., recover, regain.
13. exitus, -ūs, m. [exeō, go out], a
going out, exit, passage; issue, result, end. 2.
15. permaneō, -manere, -mānsi,
-mānsium, intr. [maneō, remain], stay through or to the end, stay, remain;
continue, persist. 3.

as tributaries”; i.e. the ship owners paid
a tax for the privilege of using the harbors.

ab . . . retinendī, lit. “a beginning
is made by these of arresting” = “they
began by arresting.”

9. fīnitīmi: the Esuvii and the Cori-
osolites.

10. ut, “as,” almost “since.”
12. commūnī cōnsiliō, “by common
agreement.”

13. actūrōs (esse), “that they would
do.”
14. ut permanēre quam perferre
mālīnt, “to prefer to remain (rather)
than to endure.”
15. accēperint: implied indirect-dis-
course.
18. si velit, remittat: the direct
form was si vis, remittē.

82), tr. and intr. [magis, more + volō,
wish], wish more or rather, prefer. 1.
2. aedificō, 1. tr. [aedēs, house+ faciō, make], build, construct. 1.
3. Liger, -eris, m. (Cee), the river
Liger (lir’jɛr), better the Loire. 1.
remex, -īgis, m. [cf. remus, oar],
oarsman, rower. 1.

Chap. 9. Caesar equips a fleet. The
Veneti make preparations to resist
him.

2. aberat loṅgius, “was too far off,”
to take command in person.
nāvēs loṅgās: cf. Int. 61.
in flūmine Ligerī: on the map facing
p. 217, notice that there are three towns
along the Liger, connected by a line of
march. These were the winter quarters
of the army, and no doubt ships were
built at all of them.

3. ex prōvinciā: the Gauls were not
competent oarsmen, for their ships were
managed by sails, not oars; otherwise
oarsmen might have been secured from
the friendly maritime states, the An-
des and the Pictones.
institūi, “to be procured.”
nautās gubernātorisque comparāri iubet. His rēbus celeriter
5 administrātīs ipse, cum primum per annī tempus potuit, ad
exercitum contendit. Venētī reliquaeque item civitātēs cog-
nitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod quantum in sē facinus ad-
misissent intellegēbant, légātōs, quod nōmen apud omnēs nā-
tiōnēs sanctionēm inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē et
10 in vincula coniectōs, prō magnitūdine periculī bellum parāre
et maximē ea quae ad usum nāviām pertinent prōvidēre
instituunt, hoc maiōre spē, quod multum nātūrā locī conφidē-
bant. Pedestria esse itinerā concisa aestuāriīs, nāvigationēn
impeditam propter inscientiam locōrum paucitātemque por-
tum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercītūs propter frūmentī ino-
piam diūtiūs apud sē mōrāri posse conφidēbant; ac iam ut
omnia contrā opiniōnem acciderent, tāmen sē plurīmum nāviās
posse, Rōmānōs neque ullam facultātem habēre nāviām neque
eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūri essent vāda, portūs, insulaē

4. nauta, -ae, m. [for nāvita; nāvis, ship], sailor. 1.
gubernātor, -ōris, m. steersman, pilot. 1.
7. facinus, -noris, n. [faciō, do], deed; misdeed; outrage, crime. 2.
9. sanciō, sancire, sānxī, sānctum, tr. [cf. sacer, sacred], make sacred, sanction; bind; sānctus, pf. part. as

ad exercitum contendit: probably he went first to the most eastern
indicated on the Liger (see map facing p. 217), and then marched west, thus con-
centrating his army at Angers, where Crassus had spent the winter.
7. quantum . . . admisissent, "how great a crime they had committed"; an
indirect question.
8. légātōs retentōs (esse), "(namely),
that envoys had been arrested," explains
facinus; syntactically it is indirect dis-
course after intellegēbant.

lēgātōs.
10. prō, "in proportion to."
12. hoc: ablative of cause, explained
by quod . . . conφidēbant.
nātūrā: case? App. 143, a: G.-L. 401,
13. pedestria itinera, "land routes."
14. impeditam (esse), "was difficult."
15. neque posse conφidēbant, "and
they trusted that . . . would not be
able."
16. iam, "even."
ut: translation? App. 347: G.-L. 608:
A. 527, a: H.-B. 532, 2, b: H. 586, II.
17. sē posse, sc. sciēbant.
18. facultātem, "supply."
19. locōrum, depends on vada, etc.
növisse; ac longē aliam esse navigātiōnem in conclūsō mari atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Oceanō perspiciēbant. His initis cōnsiliis oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agris in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiām, ubi Caesarem prīmum bellum gestūrum constābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliatōs, Morinōs, Diablīntēs, Menapiōs asciscunt; auxilia ex Britannia, quae contrā eās regionēs posita est, arcessunt.

10. Erant hae difficultātēs belli gerendi quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multā Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitūm Rōmānōrum, rebellīō factā post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō dātīs obsidibus, tot civitātum consiliāriō, in prīmis nē hac parte neglēctā reliqua nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegēret omnēs fērē Gallōs novīs rébus studēre et ad bellum mōbilīter celerīterque

20. nōscō, nōscre, nōvī, nōtum, tr., learn, become acquainted or familiar with; nōvī, pf., have learned, hence, know; nōtus, pf. part. as adj., known, well known, familiar. 4. conclūdō,-clūdere,-clūsī,-clūsum, tr. [claudō, close], shut up; conclūsum mare, an inland sea. 1.

23. Venetiā, -ae, f., Venetia (vē-nē'-shya), the country of the Veneti. 1.

25. Lexoviī, -ōrum, m. (Bd), the Lexoviī (lek-so'vi-i). 4.

Namnetēs, -um, m. (Cz), the Namnetēs (nām'nē-tēz). 1.

Ambiliati, -ōrum, m., the Ambiliati (ām'-bi-li-a-ti). 1.

26. Diablīntēs, -um, m. (Bc), the Diablīntēs (di'-a-blīntēz). 1.

3. rebellīō, -ōnis, f. [rebellō, renew war], renewal of war, rebellion, revolt. 3.

4. dēfectiō, -ōnis, f. [dēficiō, fail], falling away, desertion, revolt. 1.

5. neglegō,-legere,-lēxi,-lēctum, tr. [neg-lēgō, choose, regard], not heed, disregard, neglect. *

7. mōbilīter, adv. [mōbilis, mov-
excitāri, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et condicionem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plurēs cīvitātēs cōn-
spirārent, partiendo.sībi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum
putāvit.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī
flūmini Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rē-
mōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat, Ger-
mānōsque, quī auxiliō à Belgīs arcessitī dicēbantur, sī per vim
nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum
cohortibus legionāriīs xii et magnō numerō equitātūs in Aquī-
tānīam proficiēsci iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnis auxilia in Gallīam
mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sa-
binum lēgātum cum legionībus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolītēs,

able], readily, easily. 1. 
excitō, 1, tr. [citō, rouse], call forth, excite, animate, arouse; erect, con-
struct ( towers ); kindle ( fires ). 3.
9. cōspirō, 1, intr. [spirō, breathe], combine, conspire. 1.
10. partior, 4, tr. [pars, part], part, share, divide. 1.
distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribu-
tum, tr. [tribuē, assign], assign, divide, distribute. 3.

8. autem, "moreover."
9. cōspirārent: translate this
clause after the principal clause. The
subjunctive was probably used in the
direct form; App. 236, b: G.-L. 577: A.
551, b: B. 292, 1, b: H.-B. 507, 4, b: H. 605, 1.
10. partendum ( esse) sibi, lit.
"must be divided by him" = "he must
divide." Remember that the future
passive participle of deponent verbs is
passive in meaning.
lātius distribuendum: so as to over-
awe several parts of Gaul at the same
time.

Chap. 11. Accordingly he sends di-
visions of his army into various parts
of Gaul, and himself marches against
the Veneti.

2. flūminī: what other case may
proximus govern? See note on 7, 7.
mittit: probably the various expedi-
tions mentioned in this chapter all
started from Angers. See map facing
p. 217.

mandat adeat: note the primary
sequence after the historical present;
cf. note on currunt, 5, 8. Note also
the lack of a conjunction; App. 228, a:
G.-L. 546, R. 2: A. 565, a: B. 295, 8: H.-B.

Rēmōs: this state had earned the
hatred of the other Belgae in the pre-
ceding year, and it may have needed
support.
4. arcessitī: sc. esse.
5. cōnentur is a part of Caesar’s in-
structions to Labienus, and is therefore
implied indirect discourse. But dicē-
bantur is not a part of the instructions,
and is therefore indicative.

6. cohortibus legionāriīs: Roman
soldiers, in contrast to the cavalry,
which was Gaulic.
7. in Galliam: i.e. Celtic Gaul.
Lexoviósque mittit, qui eam manum distinendam cúret. D. 10
Brútum aduléscemt classi Gallicísque návibus quás ex Pic-
tonibus et Santonís reliquisque pácátís régiónibus conveníre
iusserat praeficit, et cum primum possit in Venetós proficíci
iubet. Ipse eó pedestribus cópiás contendit.

12. Erant eius modí férē sitús oppidórum ut posita in ex-
trémís lingulis prömunturíisque neque pedibus adítum habé-
rent cum ex altó sē aestus incitávisset, quod bis accidit semper
hórārum xxxiii spátio, neque návibus, quod rúrsus minuente
aestū návēs in vadís affíctārentur. Ita utrāque ré oppidórum 5
oppugnatió impedíebátur; ac sī quando magnitudine operis
a little tongue; a tongue of land. 1.
prömunturium, -ri, n. [prómineó, project], promontory, headland. 1.
aestus, -ús, m., heat; boiling, surging; tide; minuente aestū, at ebb
tide. *
bis, num. adv. [for duis, from duo, two], twice. 3.
affictó, 1, tr. [freq. of affigó, strike against, damage], damage great-
ly, shatter, injure; harass, distress. 2.
 quando, indef. adv., ever, at any
time. 1.
10. D., abbr. for praenomen Decimus
(dés'i-mús). 1.
11. Brútus, -i, m., Decimus Juníus
Brútus (dés'i-mús jù'ní-ús bru'tús), one
of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war,
and in the war with Pompey. He took
part in the conspiracy against Caesar,
and was killed by order of Antony. 2.
classis, -is, f., fleet. *
Píctonés, -um, m. (Ccd), the Pictones
(pík'tó-néz). 1.
situs, -ús, m. [sinó, put down],
situation, site, position. 1.
lingula, -ae, f. [lingua, tongue].
14. eó: i.e. in Venetós. He probably
moved along the coast, laying siege to
the towns in succession. After the dis-
tribution of troops described in this
chapter, Caesar had left three legions
and eight cohorts. One legion was
probably assigned to the fleet, leaving
Caesar two legions and eight co-
horts with which to attack the Veneti.
cópiás: why may cum be omitted?
App. 140, a: G.-L. 392, R. 1: A. 413, a: B.
Chap. 12-16. Caesar crushes the
Veneti.
Chap. 12. Situation of the towns of the
Veneti.
situs oppidórum: see the small
plan in the lower left hand corner of the
map on p. 232.
extrémis, "the end of."
pedibus, "on foot"; i.e. by land.
At high tide the low ground between
the towns and the mainland was over-
flowed.
se incitávisset, "had rushed in."
návibus, sc. adítum habérent.
in vadís affíctārentur, "were
stranded on the shallows." The sub-
junctive is due to attraction.
si quando... coeperant, ...
derértabant, "whenever they began
furniture superàti, extrúsò mari aggere ac mòlibus atque his oppidi moënibus adaequátis, suis fortùnis déspérare coeperant, magnò numerò návium appulsò, cuìus reì summam facultâtêm habé-

7. extrūdò, -trūdere, -trūsi, -trūsùm, tr. [trūdò, thrust], thrust or shut out. 1. mòlēs, -is, f., mass; dike. 1

9. appellò, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, tr. [ad+pellò, drive], bring to land; bring together. 1.

...they would carry off, etc." déportât is an imperfect of repeated action, for they kept moving from town to town. coegerant is pluperfect because in each case they had begun to despair before they moved. Latin is more exact than English in its use of tenses of repeated action.

operis, "of the works"; explained by the following ablatives absolute.

7. extrúsò ... adaequátis: apparently the Romans ran two parallel dykes from the mainland to the town, completing them at low tide, when the ground was dry. Thus the sea was shut out (extrúsò) from the space between the dykes, and the soldiers could work there continuously. The outer ends of these dykes (or of one of them) were built as high as the wall of the town, so as to serve as aggers.

aggere ac mòlibus: ablatives of means.

8. fortùnis: indirect object. The ablative with ò is more common.

9. cuìus reì: i.e. ships.
bant, sua deportabat omnia seques in proxima oppida recipi-
ebant; ibi se rursus isdem opportunitatibus loci defendebant.
Haec eo facilius magnam partem aestatis faciebant, quod nos-
trae naves tempestatibus detinabantur, summaque erat vasto
atque aperto mari, magnis aestibus, rariss ac prope nullis porti-
bus, difficultas navigandi.

13. Namque ipsorum naves ad hunc modum factae armataeque erant: carinae aliquantol plâniors quam nostrârum navi-
vium, quô facilius vada ac decessum aestus excipere possent;
prôrae admodum erêctae atque item puppes ad magnitudinem
fluctuum tempestatumque accommodatae; navês tôtae factae
ex rôbare ad quâmis vis et contemptìcliam perferandam; trans-

10. deportô, 1, tr. [portô, carry], carry off or away. 1.
11. opportunitâs, -âtis, f. [opportûnus, fit], fitness; fit time, opportuni-
ty; advantage; with loci, favorable situation or position; with temporis,
favorable opportunity. 3.
13. tempestâs, -âtis, f. [tempus, time], time, season; weather, usually
bad weather, storm, tempest. *
detineô, -tineô, -tınul, -tentum, tr. [teneô, hold], hold off or back; hinder,
detain. 1.
14. rârus, -a, -um, adj., scattered, far apart; in small detachments, a few
at a time; few. 1.
1. namque, conj. [nam, for], for. 3.
2. carina, -ae, f., keel. 1.
aliquote, adv. [aliquotus, some], somewhat, a little. 1.

13. partem: duration of time.
13. summa agrees with difficultâs.
vâsto . . . portibus: ablatives absolute with causal meaning.

Chap. 13. Description of the ships of the Veneti.
1. namque introduces the reason for the ability of the enemy's ships to oper-
ate while the Roman ships were helpless.
2. carinae . . . navium, "the bot-
toms (were) flatter than (those) of, etc." In such cases Latin never inserts a

plâns, -a, -um, adj., even, level, flat, plain. 2.
3. decessus, -ûs, m. [décédô, de-
part], departure; ebb, fall (of the tide). 1.
4. prôra, -ae, f., prow. 1.
admodum, adv. [modus, measure],
tulo to the measure; very much, very; with num., fully; with neg., at all. 1.
ôrigô, -rigere, -rêxi, -rectum, tr.
[regô, direct], lift or raise; érectus, pf.
part. as adj., standing upright, high. 1.
puppis, -is, f., stern of a ship. 2.
5. fluctus, -ûs, m. [fluô, flow], flood,
billow, wave. 3.
accommodâtus, -a, -um, adj. [pf.
part. of accommodô, adapt], fit, adapt-
ed, appropriate. 2.
6. rôbur, -oris, n., oak. 1.
trânstrum, -i, n., cross-beam, thwart. 1.

word for "those."
3. quô: when is quô used in purpose clauses?
excipere, "meet," "encounter." They were less likely to strike bottom,
and if stranded they would not heel over.
5. tôtae, "entirely."
quâmis: accusative of quîvis.
trânstra: these heavy timbers, set in
8. digitus, -i, m., finger; as measure of length, a finger’s breadth, the 16th part of a Roman foot; digitus pollex, the thumb. 1.

9. revincid, -ae, i., anchor; in ancoris, at anchor. *

10. funis, -is, m., rope, cable. 3.

catena, -ae, f., chain; fetter. 3.

11. quod: explaining eō.

234 CAESAR’S GALLIC WAR, III, 13

tra ex pedālibus in altitudinem trabibus confixa clāvis ferreis digitī pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō funibus ferreis catēnīs revinctae; pellēs prō vēlis altītuaeque tenuitēr confectae, sīve propter inopiam līni atque eius usūs inscientiam, sīve eō, quod est magis vēri simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Oceanī tantōsque impetūs ventūrōm sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlis nōn satis commodē posse arbitrabantur. Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classēs modē congressus erat ut ānā celeritātē et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret, reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātūm illīs essent aptīōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim

cross the inside of the ship, strengthened the sides and helped them to withstand the Roman rōstra (l. 17). In Roman ships they were rowers’ benches, but the Veneti had no rowers.

7. in altitudinem, “in thickness.”

8. crassitūdine: this descriptive ablative is modified by a genitive instead of the usual adjective.

prō, “instead of.”

9. pellēs . . . confectae, “skins and thinly dressed leather (served) as sails.”

10. tanta onera nāvium, “such heavy ships.”

13. nōn satis commodē, “not very well.”


ūnā celeritātē, “only in speed.”

15. pulsū rēmōrum, “in rowing”; i.e. “in having oars.” In the battle which followed the fact that the Roman ships had oars was an immense advantage.

16. illīs: the ships of the enemy.
iis nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant (tanta in iis erat firmitūdō), neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulis continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tem-pestātem ferreōt faciūs et in vadis cōnsisterent tūtius, et ab aestū relictae nihil saxā et cautes timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erant extimēscendūs.

14. Complūribus expugnātīs oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmi, neque hostium fugam cāptīs oppidīs reprimi neque iīs nocēri posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac prīnum ab hostibus visa est, circiter ccxx nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omnī genēre 5 armōrum ōrnātissimae profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōn-

17. rōstrum, -i. [rōdō, gnaw, consume], beak of a bird; beak or prow of a ship. 2. noceō, nocēre, nocui, nocītum, intr., injure, hurt; nocēns, pres. part. as noun, guilty person. 4. firmītūdō, -inis, f. [firmus, strong], strength, firmness, solidity. 2. cōpula, -ae, f., grappling-hook. 1. 20. saevīō, -ire, -ii, -itum, intr. [saevus, raging], rage; be fierce. 1. 21. tūtō, adv. [tūtus, safe], safely, securely. 2. 22. cautes, -is, f., ref. 1. 23. extīmēscō, -timēscere, -timui, —, tr. [timēscō, incept. of timeō, fear], dread. 1. 3. reprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, tr. [re-+premō, press], press or keep back, check, restrain. 1. 5. genus, -eris, n., descent, origin, race, class, tribe, family; kind, nature. * 6. ōrnō, 1, tr., adorn; furnish, supply; ōrnātus, pf. part. as adj., equipped, furnished, fitted out. 1. Romans ruin the rigging of the hostile ships.

stiterunt; neque satis Brūtō, qui classi praerat, vel tribūnīs militum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae insisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātīs tamen ĕs altitūdō puppium ex barbaris nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex īnferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adīgni possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent. Ĕna erat magnō ūsui rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs praecāctūae īnsertae affixaēque longurīs nōn absimilī fōrmā mūrālium falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs qui antennās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehendēnsi adduc-

14. praeparō, 1, tr. [parō, prepare], prepare beforehand, provide. 1. falx, falcis, f., sickle, pruning-hook; hook (for pulling down walls). 2. inserō, -serere, -serul, -serum, tr., insert, thrust in. 1. affīgō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, tr. [ad +figō, fix], fasten to. 1. 15. longurīus, -rī, m. [longus, long], a long pole. 2. absimilis, -e, adj. [similis, like], unlike. 1. fōrma, -ae, f., form, shape, appearance. 1.

7. Brūtō, tribūnīs, centuriōnibus: indirect objects of cōnstābat. 9. quid . . . insisterent, “what to do or what plan of fighting to adopt.” These are indirect questions, but the subjunctive would be used in corresponding direct questions; App. 210: G.-L. 265: A. 444: B. 277: H.-B. 503: H. 559 4. 10. rōstrō: ablative of means. nocērī: sc. nāvibus hostium; cf. references on neque . . . possē, 1. 2. turribus excitātīs, “even when the towers were erected.” These towers were erected on the fore and after decks. One appears in Fig. 12, Int. 64; but the sculptor represented it in miniature, so as to get it into the available space. 11. ex, “on.” 12. neque . . . et = et (both) nōn . . . et. In translating, omit the first et.

mūrālium, -e, adj. [mūrus, wall], pertaining to a wall, mural; mūrale/pilum, mural javelin, a heavy javelin to be thrown from the top of a wall. 1. 16. antennā, -ae, f., sail-yard. 3. mālīus, -l, m., mast; pole, beam (upright). 1. dēstinā, 1, tr., fasten, secure; catch firmly; appoint, choose. 1. comprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendi, -prehēnsum, tr. [prehendō, (prēndō), seize], grasp or lay hold of, seize, catch, arrest; take, catch (fire). 2.

13. missa, “those thrown.” erat magnō ūsui, “was very useful.” In fact this device saved the day. 15. longurīs: dative with īnsertae and affixaēae. nōn . . . falcium, “of a form not unlike (that) of mural hooks.” his . . . concidēbant: the ships of the Veneti had each a single square sail, supported by a sail-yard. The sail was hoisted and held up by means of a rope (halyard) which ran from this sail-yard through a pulley at the top of the mast down to one side (gunwale) of the ship, where it was made fast. The Romans caught the halyard just above the gunwale and broke it, whereupon the sail fell. his: i.e. hooks. Ablative of means. cum . . . comprehēnsi erant: mode? App. 241, b: G.-L. 584: A. 542: B. 288, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 601, 4. For the
tique erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus absēsīs antennae necessāriō concidēbant, ut, cum omnis Gallicis nāvibus spēs in vōlis armāmentisque cōnsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis īsus nāvium ānō tempore ēriperētūr. Reliquum 20 erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quà nostrī militēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare ab exercitū tenēbantur.

15. Déiectīs, ut dīximus, antennīs, cum singulās bīnēs ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vī trānscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum ei rei nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petēre contendērunt. 5

17. nāvigium, -gi, n. [nāvigō, sail], a sailing vessel, ship, craft. 2. praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, tr. [rumpō, break], break off, tear away; praeruptus, pf. part. as adj., steep, precipitous. 1.

18. abscidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, tr. [caedō, cut], cut or lop off, tear off or away. 1. concidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, intr. [caedō, fall], fall down, fall. 1.

19. armāmenta, -ōrum, n. [armō, arm], implements, gear; tackle or rigging of a ship. 2.

21. certāmen, -inis, n. [certō, strive], strife, struggle, contest, combat. 1.

22. in cōnspectū, etc.: Caesar and his army were on the heights of St. Gildas; see the map on p. 232.

23. paulō fortius, "a little braver than usual."

23. factum, -i, n. [pf. part. of faciō, half noun, half participle], act, exploit, deed. 1.

25. dēspectus, -ūs, m. [dēspiciō, look down upon], a looking down, view. 1.

1. bīnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [bis, twice], two each, two apiece, by twos. 3.

2. ternī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [ter, thrice], three each, three apiece. 1. circumstītō, -sistere, -stītī, —, tr. [sistō, stand], flock or rally around, surround, hem in. * trānscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnum, tr. and intr. [scandō, climb], climb over; board. 1.

Chap. 15. Almost all the ships of the Veneti are destroyed.

1. cum circumsteterant: for mode see note on cum comprehēnsā erant, 14, 15.

singulās . . . ternae, "two or three . . . each." Only the disabled Gallic ships were thus surrounded, for probably there were more Gallic ships than Roman.

3. quod, ei rei: both refer to the statement in the first sentence, cum . . . contendēbant.
Ac iam conversis in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus fērēbat, tanta subītō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō movere nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negotium conficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostri consecutātī expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numero noctis interventū ad terram pervenīrent, cum ab hōrā fērē quàrātā usque ad sōlis occāsūm pugnārētur.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum totūsque ērae maritimae confectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis in quibus alicquid consili aut dignitātis fuit, eō convenerant, tum nāvium quōd ubique fuerat in ūnum locum coegerant; quibus āmissīs, reliquī neque quō sē recipērent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesari dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesār vindicandum statuit, quō diligentius in reiium tempus ā

7. malacia, -ae, f., a calm at sea. 1. tranquillitās, -tātis, f., calmness, stillness; a calm. 1. existō, -sistere, -stitī, —, intr. [sistō, stand], stand or come forth, appear; arise; ensue. 1.

9. cōsector, 1, tr. [sector, freq. of sequor, follow], follow eagerly, pursue, chase. 4.

10. interventus, -ūs, m. [interveniō, come between], coming; aid. 1.

11. terra, -ae, f., earth, land, soil, ground; region, district; terrae (pl.) and orbis terrārum, the world. 3.

6. in . . . fērēbat, "in that direction toward which the wind was blowing."

9. singulās, "one by one."

11. cum pugnārētur, "when the battle had been going on." For this translation of the imperfect see note on cum pugnārētur, 5, 1.

hōrā quàrātā: between about 8:30 and 9:30 A.M., at that season.

Chap. 16. The Veneti surrender. Caesar slays their senate and sells the rest into slavery.

2. cum . . . tum, "not only . . . but also."

usque, adv. (1) of place, all the way to, even to, as far as; (2) of time, up to, till; with ad, until. 3.

2. iuventūs, -ūtis, f. [iuvenis, young], period of youth, from seventeen to forty-five years; the youth, the young men. 1.

3. dignitās, -tātis, f. [dignus, worthy], worthiness, dignity, merit, rank. 3.

4. ubique, adv. [ubi, where], anywhere, everywhere. 1.

8. vindicō, 1, tr., assert authority, assert, claim; set free, deliver; inflict punishment. 1.

3. in quibus . . . fuit, "who had any ability to advise or any rank."

ēō: to the seat of war.

4. nāvium . . . fuerat, "whatever [of] ships they had had anywhere."

5. quibus, refers to both men and ships.

neque . . . habēbant, "did not know where to take refuge, etc." For construction see note on quid . . . insisterent, 14, 9.

7. eō gravius, quō, lit. "more severely on this account, in order that" = "the more severely, etc."
barbariis iūs lēgātōrum cōnservāretur. Itaque omni senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

17. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabinus cum iis cōpiis quās à Caesare accēperat in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit. Hīs praerat Viridovix ac summam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum quae défēcerant, ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucīs dīebus Aulercī Eburovicēs Lexoviciōne senātū suō interfēctō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovice coniūnxērunt; magnāque praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agricultūrā et cotidiānō labore revocābat. Sabinus idōnēo omnibus rēbus locō castris sēsē

10. necō, 1, tr. [nex, death], put to death, kill, murder. 2. corōnā, -ae, f., wreath, chaplet; ring, circle; sub corōnā vēndere, sell at auction. 1.

3. Viridovix, -īcis, m., Viridovix vi-rīd'o-viks), a chief of the Venelli. 4.

6. Eburovicēs, -um, m. (Bd), the Aulercī Eburovicēs (aw-lēr'sī ēb"ū-rō-vī'sēz). 1.

auctor, -ōris, m. [augeō, increase], one who produces, creates, or originates;

10 reliquōs: i.e. all who fell into his hands; certainly not all the state, since it remained in existence.

sub corōnā: the phrase came down from early times, when it was the custom to put chaplets of leaves on the heads of captives who were to be sold.

The punishment of the Veneti, like that of the Atuatuci (II. 33, 18) seems barbarous to us. It is nevertheless true that on the whole Caesar was merciful to the Gauls, judging him by the standards of his own times, and that these severe punishments were necessary for the accomplishment of his purposes.

Chap. 17-19. Sabinus defeats the land forces of the allies.

Chap. 17. Sabinus encamps among the Venelli and refuses battle.

promoter, instigator, adviser, author: auctor esse, advise. 1.

8. praetereā, adv. [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. *

9. perdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr. [dō, give], give over, ruin; perditus, pf. part. as adj., desperate, ruined. 1. latrō, -ōnis, m., freebooter, bandit, robber. 1.

10. agricultūra, -ae, f. [ager, land + colō, cultivate], cultivation of the land, agriculture. 3.


Sabinus: see 11, 8.

5. his paucīs dīebus, "a few days before"; i.e. before the arrival of Sabinus.

7. nōlēbant: the senators.

8. undique ex Galliā, "from all parts of Gaul"; not simply from the Aremorician states. This was the Romans' third year in Gaul, and the long-continued war had unsettled everything.

11. idōnēo . . . tenēbat, "shut himself up in camp in a place suitable in all respects." Notice the three ablatives: rēbus is an ablative of specification: locō is an ablative of place, App.
tenēbat, cum Viridovix contra eum duōrum milium spatiiō con-
sēdisset cotidieōque prōductīs cōpiis pugnāndī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn sōlum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sābinōs venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum militum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opiniōnem timōris praebuit ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitudīnī hostium, præsertim eō absente qui summam imperi tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportunītāte aliāquā datā lēgātō dīmicandum nōn existimābat.

18. Hāc confirmātā opiniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlegit, Gallum, ex iis quōs auxili causā sēcum habēbat. Huic magnīs prae.miīs pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet utī ad hostēs trānseat, et quīd fierī velīt ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, qui-bus angustiis ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur docet neque longius abesse quīn proximā nocte Sābinōs clam ex castrīs exercitum

13. prōducō, -ducēre, -duxi, -ductum. tr. [ducō, lead], lead out or forth, bring forth; prolong, protract; produce; with cōpiās, arrange, draw up. *
14. contemptiō, -onis, f. [contem- nō, despire], disdain, contempt. 1.
15. carpō, carpere, carpēi, carpum, tr., pluck: censure, jeer at. 1.
16. absēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of absum be absent], absent, at a distance. 2.
17. aequus, -a, -um, adj. even.
18. castrīs appears to be an ablative of place, but is an ablative of means, App. 151. c.
spatiō: ablative of degree of difference; lit "opposite by a distance, etc."
20. lēgātō: dative of the agent with dīmicandum (esse); "that a legate ought to fight."
édūcat et ad Caesarem auxili ferendī causā proficiscātur. Quod ubi auditum est, conclāmant omnēs occasiōnem negōtī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse, ad castra īrī oportēre. Multae rēs ad hoc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabinī cunctātiō, perfugae cōnfirmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui rei parum diligenter ab īis erat prōvisum, spēs Veneticī belli, et quod fere libenter hominēs iūd quod volunt crēdunt. His rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōisque ducēs ex conciilo dimittunt quam ab īis sit concessum arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laeti, ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentis virgultīisque collectīs quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergingunt.

19. Locus erat castrōrum editus et paulātim ab imō acclīvis circiter passūs mille. Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt, ut

9. conclāmō, 1, intr. [clāmō, cry out], shout or cry out. call aloud. 2. occasiō, -ōnis, f. [occidō, fall, happen], occasion, opportunity. 1. bene, adv. [bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully. Comp., meius; sup., optime. 2.

12. cunctātiō, -ōnis, f. [cunctor, delay], delaying, delay, hesitatio, reluctance. 2. cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis, f. [cōnfīrmo, assert], assurance. 1.

13. parum, adv. [parvus, little], little, too little, not sufficiently. 1. Veneticus, -a, -um, adj., of the Veneti, Venetian. 2.

14. libenter, adv. [libēns, willing], willingly, gladly, with pleasure. 2.

17. laetus, -a, -um, adj., joyful. 1. explōrātus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of explōrō, search out], ascertained; sure, certain. 1.

18. sarmentum, -ī, n., brushwood, fagots. 1. virgultum, -ī, n., thicket, brush, brushwood. 1.

19. pergō, pergere, perrēxi, perrectum, intr. [per + regō, keep straight], go on, proceed. 1.

9. negōtī ... gerendī, "of winning a victory."

10. īrī oportēre, "(but) that they must go."

11. superiōrum diērum, "during the preceding days."

13. spēs ... belli, "the hope of (a fortunate outcome) of, etc." The genitive is objective. They had not yet learned the result of the war.

14. quod ... crēdunt: this substantive clause, like the preceding nominatives, is in apposition with rēs, 1. 11.

15. prius quam ... concessum, "until they had granted them permission." The fate of the senate, 17, 6, no doubt helped the council to yield. Mode? App. 236. b: G.-L. 577, 2, n. 2: A. 551, b, n. 2: B. 292: H.-B. 507, 4, c: H. 605, 1.

17. ut ... victōriā, "as if victory were assured."

18. quibus ... compleant: a purpose clause.

Chap. 19. The enemy are routed and the states are forced to surrender.

1. ab imō, "from the bottom."
quam minimum spatì ad sè colligendós armandósque Römānīs darētur, examinātique pervēnērunt. Sābīnus suōs hortātus
cupientibus signum dat. Impeditīs hostibus propter ea quae
ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iūbet.
Factum est opportūnitāte locī, hostium īnscientiā ac dēfatigā-
tōne, virtūte militum et superiorum pugnārum exerciōtēne,
ut nē ūnum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga
verterent. Quōs integrīs viribus militēs nostrī consecūtī mag-
num numerus eōrum occīdērunt; reliquōs equitēs consiectātī
paucoq qui ex fugā ēvāserant reliquērunt. Sic ūnō tempore et
dē nāvāli pugnā Sābīnus et dē Sābīnī victōriā Caesar certior
factus est, cīvitātēsque omnēs sē statīm Titūriō dēdidērunt.
Nam ut ad bella suscipiērunt Gallōrum alacrer ac prōmptus est
animus, sic mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs per-
endās mēns eōrum est.

20. Eōdem fērō tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquītānīam per-

---

3. quam . . . spatī, "the least possible time."
5. cupientibus, lit. "to them desiring," = "as they eagerly awaited it."
6. onera: the bundles of brush; 18, 18.
7. factum est opportūnitāte, "it resulted from the advantage, etc." The
subject of factum est is ut . . . verterent.
8. militum: the Romans.
9. ac, "but." Latin usually says "and," when such an affirmative clause
follows a negative one; English usually says "but."

---

7. dēfatigātiō, -ōnis, f. [dēfatigō, weary], fatigue, weariness. 1.
8. exercitātiō, -ōnis, f. [exercitō, freq. of exercēō, exercise], exercise,
training; practice, experience. *
9. tergum, -i, n., the back; terga
vertere, to flee; post tergum or ab
tergō, in the rear. *
10. vertō, vertere, verti, versum,
tr., turn, turn around; terga vertere,
flee. *
12. ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum,
intr.[vādō, go], escape. 1.

---

11. equitēs: nominative.
15. ut . . . sic, "while . . . yet."
16. animus, "impulse."
17. mēns, "will-power."

Chap. 20-27. Crassus forces the Aquitiēs to submit.

Chap. 20. Crassus is attacked on the
march by the Sōtiaēs.
1. Crassus: read 11, 5-8, and see map
facing p. 217.
vēnisset, quae, ut ante dictum est, est tertia pars Galliae, cum intellegeret in iis locis sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucis ante annis L. Valerius Praecōninus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfactus esset, atque unde L. Manlius prōcōnsul impedimentīs āmissīs 5 profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvīsā, auxiliis equitātūque comparātō, multīs praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt civitātēs Galliae prōvinciae fīnitimae hīs regiōnibus, nōminātīm ēvocātīs, in Sotītium finēs exercitūm intrōdūxit. Cuius adventū cognītō Sotītēs magnīs cōpiis coāctīs equitātūque, quō plūrimum vālēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adōrti prīmum equestre proelium commīsērunt, deinde equitātū suō pulsō atque insequentibus nostrīs subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās in convallē in īnsidiīs collocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adōrti proelium renovārunt.

2. ante: see I, 1, 2.
3. paucīs annōs: twenty-two or twenty-three years before, in 78 or 79, B.C. Our knowledge of these events is very vague. Manlius, governor of the Gallic province, marched against Sertorius, who was in Spain, and was defeated by a lieutenant of Sertorius. The Aquitanī seem to have stripped him of his baggage as he retreated. Nothing whatever is known of Praecōninus.
6. nōn mediocrem, "unusual."
8. virīs: ablative absolute with ēvōcātīs. These were retired veterans who were induced to serve again by high pay and special privileges.
9. civitātēs, "cities." fīnitimae agrees with it.
10. ēvōcō, 1, tr. [vocō, call], call forth or out, summon; ēvōcātus, pf. part. as noun, reēnlisted veteran. 3. Sotītēs, -um, m. (DEcd), the Sotiates (sōًb-shi±ā'tez). 4. 15. convallīs, -is, f. [vallis, valley], enclosed valley, defile.

4. Praecōninus, -ī, m., Lucius Valerius Praecōninus (lū'shyūs va-liē'ri-ūs prēk'ō-nī'nūs), a Roman lieutenant in Gaul, before Caesar's time. 1.

5. Manlius, -īl, m., Lucius Manlius (lū'shyūs mān'tī-ūs), proconsul in 78 B.C. 1. prōcōnsul, -is, m., a proconsul, one who at the close of his consulsīship in Rome became governor of a province. 1.

6. mediocres, -cre, adj. [medius, the middle of], middling, ordinary, moderate. 2.

diligentia, -ae, f. [diligēns, careful], carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking,
21. Pugnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sotiātēs superiōribus victōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtīus Aquitāniae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquis legiōnibus adulēsceneturō duce efficere possent perspicī cuperent; tandem cōnfecī vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numeralō interfecτō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiātium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortīter resistentibus vineās turrēsque ēgit. Illī aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cuniculīs ad aggerem vineāsque āctīs (cuius rei sunt longē perītissimi Aquitānī, propterā quod multitūs locīs apud eōs aerāriāe sectūraeque sunt), ubi diligentiā nostrōrum nihil ēs rebus prōfici posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt sēque in deditionem ut recipiāt petunt. Qua re impetratā arma trādere iussi faciunt.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentīs animīs,
245

2. Adiatunnus, -I, m., Adiatunnus (a’di-a-tun’us), the leader of the Sotiates. 2.

3. dévoveó, -vovére,-vóvi,-vótum, tr. [vovoé, vow], vow away, consecrate, devote; dévótus, pf. part. as noun, a sworn follower. 2.

soldurius, -rí, m., vassal. 1.

4. commodus, -I, n. [commodus, convenient], convenience, interest, advantage. 2.

fruor, fruí, frúcctus sum, intr., en-

3. quorum...condicio, ut fruantur, "whose position is this, that they enjoy."

4. ut...fruantur...ferant...cónsciscant: substantive clauses of fact (result).

commodis: what deponent verbs govern the ablative?

únā: the adverb.


sí...accidat: the mode is due to the same reason as that of dédiderint. Otherwise such a condition would be expressed by the indicative; App. 258: G.-L. 505: A. 515: 518, b: B. 302, 1, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

7. memoria: ablative of time within which.

joy. 1.

7. adhúc, adv. [huc, hither], hither-to, as yet. 1.

8. recúsō, 1, tr. and intr., refuse, reject; object to, make objections, complain; with periculum, shrink from.

* 10. vehementer, adv. [vehémens, violent], violently, severely, strongly, very much, greatly. 4.

1. Vocatés, -um, m. (Dcd), the Vocates (vō-kā’tēz). 2.


8. devōvisset: cf. note on quorum...dédiderint, 1. 5.

recüsāret: subjunctive in a clause of characteristic.

cum his: this simply repeats cum DC dévōtis, 1. 3, after the long parenthesis.

11. tamen, "nevertheless": i.e. in spite of his attempt to escape after surrender. The offense was the same as that of the Atuatuc, II, 33, and might have been punished as severely.

12. éadem: i.e. the same as those who had not attempted to escape.

Chap. 23. The Aquitani assemble a large force. Crassus decides to give battle.

1. in finés, etc.: see map facing p. 217.
et Tarusātium prefectus est. Tum vērō barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnitum paucis diēbus quibus eō ventum erat expugnātum cognōverant, lēgātōs quōqueversus dīmittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sō dare, cōpiās parāre coēpērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās civitātēs lēgātī quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae finītīmae Aquitāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque accessuntur. Quōrum adventū magnā cum auctōritāte et magnā cum hominum multītūdine bellum gerere cōnāntur. Ducēs vērō īi dēliguntur qui unā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam reī militāris habēre existimābantur. Hi cōnsuētūdine popūlī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūniōre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdēre inṣtituunt. Quōd ubi Crassus animadvertit suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile didūci, hostem et vagāri et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidī relinquare, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportāri, in diēs hostium numerum augēri, nōn cūntandum existimāvit quīn

2. Tarusātēs, -ium, m. (DEc), the Tarusates (tār′ū-sā′tēz). 2. 4. quōqueversus, adv., in every direction, all around. 1. 10. Sertōrius, -rī, m., Quintus Sertōrius (kwīn′tūs sēr-tō′rī-ūs) a partisan of Marius; after the death of the latter, he continued the war in Spain against the senatorial party, until murdered in 72 B.C. 1. 15. didūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ducērum, tr. [dūcō, lead], lead or draw apart; separate, divide. 1. obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sēsuum, tr. [sēdēō, sit], sit in the way of, obstruct, besiege, blockade. 2. 18. cūntor, 1, intr., delay, hesitate, be reluctant. 2.

3. oppidum: subject of expugnātum (esse).

paucīs ... erat, lit. "within the few days within which it had been come there," = "within a few days after his arrival."

7. citeriōris Hispāniae: Spain between the Pyrenees and the Ebro.

finītīmae agrees with quae and governor Aquitāniae.

8. auctōritāte, "assurance."

10. ducēs, "as commanders."

Sertōriō: as Sertorius was a Roman general of great ability and had organized his Spanish army after the Roman fashion, those who had served under him understood Roman tactics. But the result shows that it took more than Roman tactics to make a Roman general or army.

12. cōnsuētūdīne: ablative of accordance.

loca capere, "to choose suitable positions."

14. quod, "therefore"; conjunction, not pronoun.

15. nōn facile didūci, "could not easily be divided." This and the following infinitives, through augēri, depend on animadvertīt.

18. nōn ... dēcertāret, "he thought he must not delay to fight a de
pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentiēre intellēxit, posterum diem pugnae cōnstituit. 20

24. Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiēs, duplicī aciē īnstitūtā, auxiliīs in medium aciem coniectīs, quīd hostēs cōnsilī caperent exspectābat. Illī, etsi propter multitūdinem et veterem bellī gloriām paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs exīstimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur obsessīs vīīs commeātūs interclusō sine īllō vulnere victōriā potīrī et, sī propter inopiam reī frumentāriāe Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcīnīs adorīrī cōgitābant. Hōc cōnsilīo probātō ab ducibus, prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiēs sēsē castīs tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cūnctātiōne atque ēpīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs militēs alacriōrēs ad pugnandum effēcissent, atque omnīm vocēs audiēntūs exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre quīn ad castra īrētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientībīs ad hostīum castra contendit. 25

Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlīs cons-

3. etsi, conj. [et + sī, if], even if, although. *
8. cōgitō, i, tr. and intr. [co + agitō, consider], consider thoroughly or carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. 3.

5. tūtius esse, “that it was still safer.”
obsessīs . . . interclusō, “by blocking . . . and cutting off.”
7. coepissent: indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative.
8. impeditōs: both by their heavy baggage (impedimenta) and by the difficulty of fighting in marching order.
10. suā refers to the subject, hostēs.
11. ēpīniōne, lit. “impression” which they gave, = “appearance.”
13. exspectārī . . . oportēre, “that they ought not to delay longer.”
quin . . . īrētur: cf. 23, 18, note.
14. omnibus cupientībīs, “to the delight of all.”

Chap. 25. The camp is vigorously defended, but Crassus learns that the rear is weak.
1. coniectīs, “by throwing.”
iectis défěnsōrés vállō mũnitiónibusque dépellerent, auxiliārēs-
que, quibus ad pugnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfidēbat, lapidibus tēlisque subministrandis et ad aggerem caespitis
comportandis speciem atque opīniōnem pugnantium praebērent, cum ītem ab hostibus cōnstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frustrā acciderent, equītēs circumitīs hostium castris Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem esse diligentīā ab decumānā portā castra mūnita facilemque
adītum habēre.

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut magnīs praemīiēs pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitarent, quid fierī vellet ostendit. Illī, ut erat imperātum, ēductīs īs cohortibus quae praesidiō castris relicta īntrītōs ab labore erant et longiōre itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostibus castrīs conspicī possent, omnium oculīs mentibusque ad pugnam intentīs, celeriēr ad eās quās dīximus mūnitōnēs pervēnērunt atque hīs prōrutīs

2. dépellō, -pellere, -puli, -pul- 
sum, tr. [pellō, drive], drive from or
away, ward off. 1.
auxiliāris, -e, adj. [auxilium, aid],
auxiliary; m. pl. as noun, auxiliary
troops. 1.
4. subministrō, 1, tr. [ministrō, 
wait upon], furnish, supply, give. 3.
caespes, -itis, m., a sod, turf. 1.
timidē, adv. [timidus, fearful],
fearfully, cowardly, timidly. 1.

3. quibus: the dative, since with cōn-
fidō the dative (App. 115) is regularly
used of persons, the ablative (App. 143, a) of things.
4. subministrandis: to the legion-
ary soldiers.
ad aggerem, “for an agger.” The
Romans were compelled to build a slop-
ing embankment in order to surmount
the high wall of the Gallic camp.
7. īxlocō superiōre: the top of the
rampart.
8. circumtēs castrīs, “having rid-
den around the camp.”

8. circumeō, -ire, -ii, -itum, tr. 
[eō, go. App. 84], go or march around, 
traverse, visit. 1.
4. intritus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+
titus, worn], unwearied. 1.
5. circumduōcō, -duere, -duī,
-ductum, tr. [duōcō, lead], lead or draw
around. 2.
7. prōruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, tr. 
[ruō, fall], overthrow. 1.
9. ab, “at.”
Chap. 26. The Romans capture the
camp and cut down the fleeing
enemy.
1. cohortātus ut excitārent, “urg-
ing... to stimulate.”
4. intrītēs ab labōre, “not worn
out by fighting.” ab labōre is strictly
an ablative of separation, as if Caesar
had said “free from”; hence the pre-
position.
longiōre, “roundabout.”
prius in hostium castris cōnstitērunt quam plānē ab his vidērī aut quid reī gererētur cognōscī posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte auditō nostrī redintegrātīs viribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriāe accidere cōnsevīt, āciōs impugnāre coepe runt. Hostēs undique circumventī dēsperātīs omnibus rēbus sē per mūnitiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātūs apertissimīs campīs cōnsectātūs ex milium L numerō, quae ex Aquitāniā Cantabrisquē cōvenīssē cōnstābat, vīx 15 quartā parte relictā multā nocte sē in castra recēpīt.

27. Hāc audītā pugnā maxima pars Aquitāniāe sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsit, quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerrionēs, Ptianī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs anni tempore cōnsīfāse, quod hiems sūberat, id facere 5 neglēxerunt.

8. plānē, ade. [plānus, even, plain], plainly, clearly, distinctly. 1.
11. impugnō, 1. tr. [in + pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assail. 2.
14. campus, -i, m., plain, open space or country. 1.
15. Cantabri, -ōrum, m. (Eab), the Cantabri (kān’ta-brī). 1.
2. ultrō, ade., to or on the farther side, beyond; of one’s own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without occasion; besides, moreover; ultrō citroque, back and forth. *
Tarbellī, -ōrum, m. (Ec), the Tarbellī (tār-běl’ī). 1.
3. Bigerriōnēs, -um, m. (Ecd), the Bigerriones (bī-jēr’ī-ō’nēz or bī’jē-rī-ō’nēz). 1.
Ptianī, -ōrum, m. (Ec), the Ptianī (tī’ā-nī’ī). 1.
Elusātēs, -um, m. (Ed), the Elusates (ēl’ū-sā’tēz). 1.
Gatēs, -um, m. (DEd), the Gates (ga’tēz). 1.
4. Auscī, -ōrum, m. (Ed), the Ausci (aw’si). 1.
Garumnī, -ōrum, m. (Ed), the Garumnī (ga-rūm’nī). 1.
Sibusātēs, -um, m. (Ec), the Sibusates (sib’ū-sā’tēz). 1.
Cocosātēs, -um, m. (Dc), the Coco sates (kōk’ū-sā’tēz). 1.

ex . . . numerō depends on quārtā parte.
15. quae (mīlia) cōvenīssē is the subject of the impersonal cōnstābat, "who were known to have gathered."
16. multā nocte, "late at night."
Chap. 27. Nearly the whole of Aquitania submits.
4. paucae ultimae nātiōnēs, "only a few tribes, the most remote"; probably those living among the Pyrenees.
5. tempore: cf. note on quībus, 25, 3.
28. Eōdem fere tempore Caesar, etsi prope exācta iam aëstās erat, tamen, quod omni Galliā pācātā Morini Menapi-īque supererant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōn- fīci posse, eō exercitum dūxit; qui longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepercunt. Nam quod intellegēbant max- imās nātiōnēs quae proelīo contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque munire iristituisset, neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostrīs, subītō ex omnibus partī- bus silvāe ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās repulērunt et com- plūribus interfectis longius impeditīōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suīs déperdidērunt.

ultimus, -a, -um, adj., sup. [ultrā, beyond. App. 43], farthest, most distānt or remote; as noun, those in the rear. 2.
1. exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr. [ago, drive], finish, pass. 1.
3. umquam, adv., at any time, ever; neque ... umquam, and never, never. 2.
8. continēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of continēō, hold together], holding together; continuous, unbroken; neighboring; as noun, mainland, continent.

* 11. dispersō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersum, tr. [spargō, scatter], scatter, disperse. 3.
12. ēvolō, 1. intr. [volō, fly], fly or rush forth. 1.
15. déperdō, -perdere, -perdīū, -perditum, tr. [perdō, destroy], destroy utterly; forfeit, lose. 2.

Chap. 28-29. Caesar makes an unsuccessful attempt to subdue the Morini and the Menapī.

Chap. 28. The Morini take refuge in forests and swamps.
1. exācta, “past”; the participle used as an adjective.
2. omni Galliā: Gaul in general, including Aquitania and Belgium, though the same words in II, 1, 6, refer only to Celtic Gaul.
3. quī essent, misissent: a clause of characteristic.
5. eō, “against them.”
exercitum: on his march from the Veneti he doubtless picked up Sabinus and his legions. See map facing p. 217.
qui, “but they.”
ac, “than” or “from”; cf. aliam atque, 9, 21.
7. contendissent: the mode is due only to indirect discourse.
9. initium, “edge.”
11. dispersis nostrīs: just as they had been surprised at the Sabis, II, 19 and 20.
13. complūribus: of the enemy.
14. longius, “too far.”
impeditīōribus, “very difficult.”
29. Reliquiis deinceps diebus Caesar silväs caedere instituit et, nē quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam mäteriam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem collocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus extruēbat. Incrēdibīli celeritāte magnō spatiō paucīs 5 diebus cōnfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrōma impedimenta a nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peteorent, eius modī sunt tempestatēs consecūtae uti opus necessāriō intermitterētur et continuātiōne imbrīum diūtiōs sub pellibus mīlitēs continērī nōn possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicīs aedificiīisque incēnsī Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviīisque, reliquis item cīvitātibus quae proxīmē bellum fēcerant, in hībernīs collocāvit.

1. deinceps, adv., one after the other, in turn, successively. 1. caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesum, tr., cut; kill, slay. 2. imprūdēns, -entis, adj. [in- + prūdēns, prudent], imprudent, off one’s guard, unwary. 1. 3. māteria, -ae, f., material; wood, timber. 4. 6. pecus, -oris, n., cattle, a herd; usually small cattle, sheep; meat; flesh. 2. 9. continuātiō, -onis, f. [continu- us, continuous], continuance, succession. 1. imber, -bris, m., a rainstorm, rain. 1.

Chap. 29. Caesar ravages the country and withdraws to winter quarters.

2. nē quis impetus, "that no attack." inermibus . . . militibus: ablative absolute.

4. conversam ad hostem, "with their tops turned toward the enemy." prō vāllō, "to serve as a rampart." Caesar cut a way through the forest, with this rampart on each side.

6. cōnfectō, lit. "finished," = "cleared."

7. ipsī: the Morini themselves, in contrast with their animals and baggage.

9. sub pellibus: in winter the soldiers lived in huts.
BOOK IV. WAR WITH THE GERMANS. FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

The campaign of 55 B.C. is memorable in history as the occasion when the Roman arms were first carried beyond the Rhine and across the Channel. The map facing page 217 shows how completely Gaul had come under Caesar's control, either by conquest or by peaceful submission. But Caesar knew that his task was not yet finished. If the Rhine was to be the Roman frontier (Int. 3), the Germans must be taught to respect that frontier. And the unknown Britain, lying so near Gaul, tempted him. It might be worth conquering. If not, at any rate both Gauls and Britons must be shown that Britain nor the Channel could stop a Roman army, might he expect Gaul to rest quietly under the Roman yoke.

Two German tribes, the Usipetes and the Tencteri, had been driven out of their homes, far in the interior of Germany, by the Suebi. After wandering homeless for three years, they crossed the Rhine into the Gallic possessions of the Menapii and there spent the early months of 55. Nothing shows more clearly the lack of unity among the states of Gaul than the indifference with which the neighbors of the Menapii regarded this incursion of their hereditary foes. Some states even tried to repeat the mistake of the Sequani (I, 31), and invited the Germans to settle in their territory and make common cause with them against Caesar or the rest of Gaul. But Caesar interfered at once by marching against the Germans. Using as a pretext a treacherous attack by a small body of German cavalry, he made himself guilty of the most treacherous and indefensible act in his whole career. He arrested all their leaders, who had come to apologize for the attack and then surprised and slew almost the whole German host, men, women, and children. If the deed has an excuse it lies in the absolute necessity of teaching the other Germans never to invade Gaul.

Caesar decided to reënforce this terrible lesson by making the Germans fear for their own territory. The Sugambri, who had given refuge to the remnants of the Usipetes and the Tencteri, refused to give them up at Caesar's command. Moreover the Ubii begged Caesar's aid against
the Suebi. In the marvellously brief space of ten days he constructed a great bridge across the Rhine, over which he led his entire army. At the first news of his approach the Sugambri and the Suebi had retired into the safe depths of their vast forests. Since it was no part of Caesar's purpose to subjugate these peoples, he contented himself with ravaging the nearer possessions of the Sugambri. Satisfied with this demonstration of Roman power, he recrossed the Rhine and destroyed his bridge, after a stay of only eighteen days on German soil.

Caesar had neither time nor ships enough to attempt a real invasion of Britain this summer, nor could he learn by inquiry anything about the country and the amount of force needed for accomplishing his purpose there. Therefore he determined to devote the remainder of the summer to a preliminary expedition which would at least show him what preparations he must make for the next year. Taking only two legions he sailed to Deal from the nearest point in Gaul. A landing was effected only after a sharp struggle with the Britons. A few nearby tribes surrendered, but Caesar waited for the arrival of his cavalry before penetrating the interior. Just as the cavalry transports were approaching the island, a storm not only drove them back to Gaul but shattered the main fleet, which lay in an exposed roadstead. Caesar beat off an attack of the natives, repaired his ships, and sailed back to Gaul.

Before leaving for Britain, Caesar had received the submission of a part of the Morini. During his absence the remainder of his army harried the Menapii and the rest of the Morini. On the return voyage two ships were driven out of their course, and the men carried by them were attacked by the Morini. A vigorous raid at last caused the final submission of the Morini; but the Menapii still remained unconquered in their forests and swamps.
EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

For the meaning of the colors, see the explanation of the campaign map for I, 1-29, facing page 42.

The coloring in this map is the same as in the campaign map for Book III, facing page 217, except that the Morini and a part of the Menapii are colored red.

Every important geographical point in this year’s campaigning is open to discussion. Holmes agrees with some other authorities in locating the battle with the Usipetes and the Tencteri near the junction of the Mosella and the Rhine, but his discussion is less fair than usual. His own arguments, carefully sifted, seem decisive for the location near the junction of the Mosa and the Rhine. If the battle is rightly located, there is no valid argument for locating the bridge elsewhere than at Bonn. Holmes seems to have proved that Wissant, not Boulogne, was the sailing point for Britain. The landing point in Britain must have been either near Deal or a considerable distance west of Deal, near Hythe; it is almost certain that it was near Deal. The map on page 294 gives in more detail the parts of Gaul and Britain which are involved in discussions as to the sailing and landing points.
1. Eā quae secūta est hieme, qui fuit annus Cn. Pompeiiō M. Crasso cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tēnterī magnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā mari quō Rhēnus īnfluit. Causa trānsiērūndi fuit quod ab Suēbis complūrēs annōs exagītātī bellō premēbantur et agricultūrā prohibēbantur. Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxīma et bellicosissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula milia armatorum bellandi causa ex finibus ēducunt. Reliquī, qui domī mānsē-

1. Cn., abbr. for Gnaeus (nē'ūs), a Roman praenomen. 1.

Pompēius, -i, m. Gnaeus Pompeius (nē'ūs pōm-pē'yūs), better, Pompey, triumvir with Caesar and Crassus in 60 B.C., defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, and murdered in Egypt by Ptolemy, 48 B.C. 1.

2. Usipetēs, -um, m., the Usipetes (ū-sip'ē-tēz). 4.

Tēnterī, -ōrum, m., the Tenceri (tēngk'tē-ri). 4.

Chap. 1-4. Two German tribes cross the Rhine. Description of the German tribes who are concerned in the following narrative.

Chap. 1. Two German tribes, expelled by the Suebi, cross into Gaul. The warlike character and training of the Suebi.

1. qui agrees with annus, though its antecedent is hieme; cf. quod, I, 38, 3, note.

qui . . . cōnsulibus, “in the year when, etc.”

Cn. Pompeiiō, etc.: Pompey and Crassus were Caesar’s associates in the First Triumvirate; Int. 11. Their election as consuls for the year 55 had been planned at a meeting with Caesar in the preceding spring. Caesar had been given his province for only five years, and he needed more time. These consuls secured another five years for him, and an important province for each of themselves.

4. nōn longē ā mari: probably near Emmerich, a few miles above the point at which the Rhine divides to flow around the island of the Batavi. See map.

quō: the adverb.

3. singula: i.e. a thousand from each canton.
runt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sic neque agricultūra nec ratiō atque úsus bellī intermittitur. Sed privātī ac sēparātī agri apō eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō sed maximam partem lacte atque pœcore vivunt multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cēbī genere et cotidiānā exercitātiōne et libertāte vítae, quod ā puēris nūllo officīo aut disciplīnā assuēfactī nihil omnīōnō contra voluntātem faciunt, et virēs alīt et immānī corporum magnītūdine homīnēs efficit. Atque in eam sé consuētūdinem addūxērunt, ut locīs frigidissimīs neque vestītūs

10. vicīs, gen. (no nom.), change; only in the adv. phrase in vicem, alternately, in turn. 1.
11. remaneō, -manère, -mānsi, -mānsum, intr. [re- + maneō, remain], stay or remain behind, remain. *
12. sēparō, 1, tr. [sē- + parō, prepare], prepare apart; separate; sēparātus, pf. part. as adj., separate. 1.
14. colō, colere, colui, cultum, tr., cultivate, dwell in; honor, worship. 1.
15. lāc, lactis, n., milk. 1.
vivō, vivere, vīxi, victum, intr., live; subsist on. 2.

16. vēnātiō, -ōnis, f. [vēnor, hunt], hunting, the chase. 1.
cibus, -i, m., food. 1.
17. disciplīna, -ae, f. [discō, learn], learning; discipline; instruction, system. 2.
assuēfacciō, -facere, -fēci, -factum, tr., accustom, train. 2.
19. immānis, -e, adj., huge, immense. 1.
20. frigidus, -a, -um, adj., cold. 1.
vestītus, -ūs, m. [vestīō, clothe] clothing. 1.

10. illōs: i.e. those who are fighting.
annō post, lit. "afterwards by a year," = "the following year."
12. ratiō atque úsus, "the [theoretical] training and practice in."
privātī... est: i.e. all the land belonged to the state, none to individuals. This is generally true of barbarous peoples.
14. frūmentō, "on grain"; ablative of means with vivunt.
15. multumque... vēnātiōnibus, "are devoted to hunting."
16. quae res, "a practice which"; subject of alīt and efficiēt.
17. quod... faciunt explains libertāte.
ā puēris, "from boyhood."
nūllo officīo assuēfactī, "trained by no service"; ablative of means.
19. homīnēs: predicate accusative; "makes (them) men of, etc."
in eam... addūxērunt, lit. "have brought themselves into this custom," = "have trained themselves to such hardiness."
20. locīs frigidissimīs, "though their climate is extremely cold"; ablative absolute.
praeter pellès habèrent quicquam, quàrum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavărentur in flūminibus.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vēndant habeant, quam quō ūllum rem ad sē importāri désiderent. Quīn ētiam iūmentīs, quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur, quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātīs nōn utuntur; sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dē-formīa, haec cotidiānā exercitātiōne summī ut sīnt labōris efficiunt. Equestrībus proelīs saepe ex equīs désiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstigiō assuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celererunt, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiīs

22. lavō, lavāre, lāvi, lautum, tr., wash; in pass., bathe. 1.
3. désiderō, 1. tr., feel the lack of, miss, lose; desire, wish, wish for. 1.
dēlectō, 1. tr., delight; pass., delight in, take pleasure in. 1.
4. impēnsumus, -a, -um, adj., expensive; with pretium, great. 1.
5. dēformīs, -e, adj. [fōrma, form], misshapen, deformed, unsightly. 1.
7. désiliō, -silire, -sīluī, -sultum, intr. [saliō, leap], leap from or down, alight, dismount. *
8. vēstigium, -gi, n. [vēstīgō, trace out], trace, track, footprint; spot, place; moment, instant. 2.
10. turpis, -e, adj., ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable. 2.
iners, -ertis, adj. [in- + ars, skill], without skill; unmanly, cowardly. 1.
ephippium, -pi, n., horse-cloth, riding-pad, saddle. 1.

21. habērent, lavārentur: translate by the presents. The use of the imperfect illustrates the fact that the Romans usually regarded the perfect indicative (here addŭxerunt) as a secondary tense, even when it seems to us to refer to present time.

Chap. 2. Their freedom from luxury, and their cavalry tactics.
1. mercātōribus: dative of possessor.
eō, ut habeant, "on this account, that they may have." cēperint: subjunctive in implied indirect discourse.
2. quibus vēndant: a purpose clause. Supply some word like "persons" as the antecedent of quibus and the object of habeant.
quam quō désiderent, "than because they desire." Nōn quō with the subjunctive is used to reject a reason. In this sentence magis quam takes the place of nōn. The meaning is "not because they want anything, but because they wish to sell."
3. iūmentīs importātīs nōn utuntur: the important word is the participle importātīs, as if he had said "they do not import the horses which they need."
4. quaeque = et quae.
7. pedibus, "on foot."
9. eōrum mōribus, "according to their standards."
10. habētur, "is considered."
ephippiīs: the ancient saddles were of little real use, since they had no stirrups.
11. ephippiátus, -a, -um, adj. [ephippium, saddle], using a saddle. 1.
12. quamvis, adv. [quam, as+vis, you wish], as you wish, however, very. 1.
13. remolléscō, -molléscere, —, —, intr., become weak, become energized. 1.
1. laus, laudis, f., praise, commendation; renown, popularity, glory. 3.
5. Ubii, -órum, m. (Abgh), the Ubii (ū'bī-i), *
6. flórens, -entis, adj. [flórei, flower], flourishing, prosperous, influential. 2.
12. quamvis pauci, "however few (they may be)." Caesar does not exaggerate the strength of the German cavalry. In his seventh year in Gaul, when he had to face a revolt of the whole country, he hired a body of German cavalry. In three decisive battles they saved the day for him.

vinum: but we know from Tacitus that they drank great quantities of a kind of beer.

Chap. 3. Their treatment of the Ubii.
1. públicé, "for the state."
2. vacäre agrōs: subject of esse.
3. únā ex parte: i.e. on the east of the Suebi.
4. sescenta: this must be a great exaggeration. Caesar had no personal knowledge of the interior of Germany.
5. ad alteram partem: i.e. the northwest. See map.

fuit, "was (once)"; i.e. before their feat by the Suebi.
6. paulō: with hūmāniōrēs.
10. cum, "although."
multis . . . experti, "in spite of many attempts in numerous wars."
potuissent, tamen vectigalès sibi fecerunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmiōrēsque redēgerunt.

4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tēncteri, quōs supra diximus, qui complūrēs annōs Suēborōrum vim sustinuērunt, ad extremum tamen agrīs expulsi et multis locīs Germāniae triennium vāgāti ad Rhēnum pervēnerunt; quās regionēs Menapii incolēbant. Hī ad utramque ripam flūminis agrōs, aedificiā, vicōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitūdinis adventū perterriti ex iis aedificiis quae trāns flūmen habuerant démigrāvērunt, et cis Rhēnum dispositis praesidiis Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant. Illī omnia expertī, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsire propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regionēsque simulāvērunt, et tridūi vīam progressī rūrsus revertērunt atque omnī hoc itinere ūna nocte equitātū cōnfectō inscitōs inopinantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātorēs certiōres factī sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs

12. humilis, -e, adj. [humus, the ground], on the ground; low, humble, abject, weak. 1.
13. infirmus, -a, -um, adj. [in+fīrmus, strong], not strong, weak, feeble. 2.
3. Germānia, -ae, f., Germania (fēr-mā'ni-a), better, Germany, the countr y east of the Rhine. 1.
4. triennium, -ni, n. [tēs, three+ anno, year], three years. 1.
7. démigrō, 1, intr. [migrō, move, migrate], move from or away, emigrate, remove. 2.
11. sedēs, -is, f. [sedeō, sit], seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. 4.
15. metus, -ūs, m. [metuō, fear], fear, dread, anxiety, apprehension; metū territāre, terrify; hoc metū = metū huius rei, from fear of this. 2.

Chap. 4. The stratagem by which the Germans crossed the Rhine.
1. in eādem causā, “in the same condition”; i.e. of oppression by the Suebi. It is probable that the Usipetes and the Tēncteri lived in or near the kingdom of Saxonī, to the northeast of the Suebi.
2. supra: in 1, 2.
6. multitūdinis: 430,000 persons, according to a later chapter.
7. trāns: on the German side.
9. vī contendere, “force a passage.”
10. inopiam nāvium: the Menapii had, of course, taken all the boats with them.
13. equitātū: although cavalry are persons, they are thought of here as the means employed by the Germans.
vicös remigräverant. His interfectis nāvibusque eorum occupātis, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsīerunt atque omnibus eorum aedificiis occupātīs reliquam partem hiemis sē eorum cópiīs aluērunt.

5. His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in consiliis capiendīs móbilēs et novis plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum existimāvit. Est enim hoc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinīs, uti et viātōrēs etiam in vitōs cōnsistere cōgant, et quid quīisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit quae rānt, et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat quibusque ex regiōnibus veniānt quāisque ibi rēs cognōverint prōnūntiāre cōgat. His rēbus atque auditiōnibus permotī dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia nēcunt, quōrum eōs in vestigio paenitēre necesse est, cum incertis rūmōribus serviant et plēriquē ad voluntātem eōrum fīcta respondeant.

16. remigrō, 1, intr. [re- + migrō, move], move back, return. 2. infirmitās, -tātis, f. [infirmus, not strong], weakness; fickleness, inconstancy. 2. mōbilēs, -e, adj. [moveō, move], changeable. 1. viātōr, -ōris, m. [via, road], traveler. 1. prōnūntiō, 1, tr. [nūntiō, announce], announce, give out publicly, tell, relate, report, say; give orders; with sententia, pronounce. 1. auditīō, -ōnis, f. [audiō, hear], hearing, hearsay, report. 10. paenitēt, paenitēre, paenituit, —, tr., impers., it causes regret; makes one repent; when translated as pers. verb, repent (App. 109). 1. necesse, indecl. adj., necessary, unavoidable, indispensable. 2. incertus, -a, -um, adj. [in- + certus, decided], undecided, uncertain, untrustworthy; indefinite, vague; disorder. 2. servīō, 4, intr. [servus, slave], be a slave to, be subservient to; pay attention to, devote one's self to, follow. 1. fingō, fingere, finxi, fictum, tr., form, imagine, devise, invent. 2. uti: with cōgant, quaerant, circumsistat, and cōgat. 7. quāsque = et quās. 8. rēbus, "stories." 9. quōrum eōs paenitēre necesse est, lit. "of which it must repent them"; App. 109: G.-L. 377: A. 354, b: B. 309, 1: H.-B. 352, 1: H. 457. 11. plēriquē . . . respondeant, "give answers shaped to their wishes"; i.e. the wishes of the questioners.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equītibusque dēlēctīs iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat.

2. mātūrē, adv. [mātūrus, ripe], early, speedily, soon. 3
3. suspicor, 1, tr. [suspiciō, suspect], suspect, distrust; surmise. *
4. invitō, 1, tr., invite, summon; allure, persuade. 2

Chap. 6. Caesar joins his army and learns that some Gallic states are welcoming the Germans.

2. ad exercitum: where was it? See III, 29, 11, and the map facing p. 254. Caesar himself, as usual, had spent the winter in Cisalpine Gaul.

3. ea facta (esse), “that those things had happened”; explained by the following clauses.

5. ab Rhēnō discēderent: i.e. to advance further into Gaul. The purpose of the Gauls was to get help against Caesar.

postulāssent: for the future perfect indicative of the direct form.

6. fore parāta, lit. “would be in a prepared condition.” This is one of the ways of avoiding the rare future infinitive given in the grammars, parātum irī. The infinitive depends on a verb of saying implied in invitātōs.

lātius vagābantur, etc.: this only means that small bodies were sent out in various directions to see where they could best settle, and that some of them had got as far as the Condūsōri (see the map facing p. 254). The main body remained among the Menapī, between the Mosa and the Rhine.

7. qui refers only to Condūsōrōrum.

10. permulsīs et confirmātīs: Caesar pretended to believe that they were loyal to him and afraid of the Germans.

equitātū: it appears later that he secured 5,000.

11. cōnstituit, “announced his decision.” He had decided the matter long before.

Chap. 7-10. Being met by envoys, Caesar proposes that the Germans settle among the Ubī; he then marches on into a locality whose geographical features he describes.

Chap. 7. Caesar is met on his march by German envoys, who demand land.

1. dēlēctīs, “having levied.”

iter coepit: for his route see the map facing p. 254. The envoys must have met him near the point where the route crosses the Mosa.
À quibus cum paucorum dieum iter abesset, légātī ab iīs vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit orātiō: Germānōs neque priōres 5 populō Rōmānō bellum īnferre neque tamen recūsāre, si laces- santur, quīn armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum consuētūdō sit ā maiōribus tradīta, quicumque bellum īnferant, resistere neque dēprecāri. Haec tamen dīcere: vēnisse invītōs, eīctōs domō; si suam grātīam Rōmānī velīnt, posse iīs utīlēs esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuānt vel patiāntur eōs tenēre quōs armīs possēderint; sēsē unus Suēbīs concedēre, quibus nē diī quidem immorṭālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terris esse nēminem quem nōn superāre possint.

8. Ad hāc quae visum est Caesar respondit; sed exitus fuit orātiōnis: Sibi nūllum cum iīs amīcitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērum esse, quī suōs finōs tuēri nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre, neque ǔlōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs 5 qui dāri tantae praesertim multitūdīnī sine iniūriā possint; sed licēre, sī velīnt, in Ubīōrum finibus consīdere, quōrum sint légātī apud sē et dē Suēborum iniūriis querantur et a sē auxilīum petant; hoc sē Ubīis imperātūrum.

8. ściō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, tr. [iāciō, throw. App. 7], cast or drive out, expel; cast up: sē ściere, rush out, sally. 2.
9. ǔtēlis, -e, adj. [ǔtor, use], useful,
10. attribuēnt: the subjunctive represents an imperative of the direct form.
11. ūnis, "alone."

8. a quibus: the Germans.
4. haec, "as follows." The haughty tone of the speech recalls the speeches of Divico, I, 13, and of Ariovistus, I, 36. priōres, "first"; i.e. they were not the aggressors.
7. quicumque = omnibus (dative with resistere) quī.
8. haec tamen dicere, "this, however, they would say."
10. attribuēnt: the subjunctive represents an imperative of the direct form.
11. ūnis, "alone."

12. reliquum nēminem, "no one else."

Chap. 8. Caesar refuses Gallic land, but offers to let them settle among the Ubii.
1. quae visum est, "what seemed best." quae is the object of respondēre, to be supplied from respondit. exitus, "the conclusion."
3. vērum, "right," "just." qui: supply eōs as the antecedent.
7. Suēborum iniūris, "the wrongs done them by the Suebi."
8. hoc: i.e. that they allow the Usipetes and the Tencteri to settle among
9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē dēlibērātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; interēā nē propius sē castra movēret petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrāri posse dīxit. Cognōverat enim magnam partem equitātūs ab iīs aliquot dīēbus ante praedandī frūmentandīque causā ad Ambīvarītōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs expectārī equītēs atque eius reī causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, qui ēst in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādām ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batāvōrum neque longius inde milibus passuum lxxx in Ōceanum īnfluit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex

3. propius, adv. and prep. with acc. (App. 122, b) [comp. of prope, near], nearer. *
5. frūmentor, 1, intr. [frūmentum, grain], get grain, forage. 4.
6. Ambīvarītī, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Ambīvarītī (ām’bi-vār’ī-tī). 1.
Mosa, -ae, m. (ABf), the river Mosa (mō’sa), now the Meuse or Maas. *
7. interpōnē, -pōnere, -posul, -positum, tr. [pōnē, place], place be-

The arrangement would have been advantageous to both parties; for, as the Ubii were nearly a match for the Suebi, the combined Ubii, Usipetes, and Tencteri should have more than held their own.

Chap. 9. The envoys ask for time to consider, but Caesar marches on.

2. post diem tertium, "on the third day"; i.e. the next day but one, since the present day was counted in.
5. dīēbus: ablative of degree of difference.
6. trāns: to the west.
exspectārī equītēs: The German cavalry was far superior to Caesar’s, and he could afford to take no risk. However, it is quite possible that the envoys were honest in asking time to consider, for they can have had no power to bind their people to accept Caesar’s proposition.

Chap. 10. Description of the Rhine, the Mosa, and their confluence.

1. ex monte Vosegō: more correctly from the plateau lying between the Vosges and the Cevennes.
2. parte quādām, etc.: the Rhine divides at the eastern end of the island of the Batavi. The southern stream, called Vacalus, flows west till it joins the Mosa. The combined Mosa and Vacalus flow on into the sea, making the southern boundary of the island. The confluence of the Mosa and the Vacalus was probably eighty miles from the sea, as Caesar says; but it is now nearer the sea, owing to a change in the river beds.
3. inde: from the confluence.
5 Lepontiis, qui Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum, citātus fertur; et, ubi Oceānō appropinquavit, in plūrēs diffuit partēs multīs ingentibusque insulis effectīs, quārum pars magna ā fēris barbarīisque nātiōnībus incolitur, ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvis avium vivere existimantur, multīsque capitisbus in Oceānum influit.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum xii mīlibus abesset, ut erat constitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; qui in itinere congressi magnopere nē longōs prōgressērētur orābant. Cum id nōn impetrassent, petēbant ut ād eos equītēs quī agmen antecessissent praemitteret eōsque pugnā prohibērēt, sibique ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum si principēs ac senātus sibi iūrē iūrāndō fīdem fēcisset, eā condiciōne quae ā Caesare fērrētur sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōnficiendās sibi tridui spatium daret. Haec omnia

5. Lepontīi, -ōrum, m. (Ch), the Lepontiī (lē-pōn′shyi). 1.
6. Mediomātrici, -ōrum, m. (Bfg), the Mediomātrici (mē′dī-ō-māt′rī-sī). 1.
Triboči, -ōrum, m. (Bgh), the Triboci (trīb′ō-sī). 2.
7. citātus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of citō, put in motion], swift. 1.
8. diffūō, -fluerē, -flūxi, —, intr. [flūō, flow], flow in different directions, divide. 1.
ingēns, -entīs, adj., enormous, huge, vast, large. 2.
10. piscis, -is, m., fish. 1.
ovum, -ī, n., egg. 1.
avis, -is, f., bird. 1.
5. longō spatiō, “in a long course.”
Nantuātium: either there is some mistake, or we know nothing of this tribe of Nantuates.
8. insulis effectīs, “making islands.”
10. sunt quī, “there are some who,” is usually followed by the subjunctive of characteristic.

Chap. 11-15. Caesar slaughters the German host in revenge for a treacherous attack.

Chap. 11. Envoys beg for time to consult the Ubii. Caesar grants a short truce.

2. ut erat constitūtum: translate after ad . . . revertuntur. See 9, 2.
5. antecessissent: implied indirect discourse.
6. quōrum si, “and if their.”
7. fēcisset: for the future perfect of the direct form.
8. eā condiciōne sē ūsūrōs, “that they would accept the terms”; i.e. the offer to let them settle among the Ubii.
9. tridui spatium: this seems a short time for the purpose, since the Ubii were some seventy miles away; but there are well authenticated instances of longer rides in less time. The envoys of the Ubii, who were with Caesar, could tell them where to find the authorities, so that no time would be lost in looking them up.
daret: for the imperative of the direct form.
Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābatur, ut trīdūi morā inter-
positā equitēs eōrum quī abessent reverterentur; tamen sēsē 
nōn longius mīlibus passuum quattuor aquātiōnis causā prō-
cessūrum eō diē dīxit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī 
convenirent, ut dē eōrum postulātis cognōsceret. Interim ad 
praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit quī 15 
nūntiārent nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, si ipsī lacesserentur, 
sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

12. At hostēs ubi prīnum nostrōs equitēs cōnspexērunt, 
quōrum erat quinquē milīnum numerus, cum īpsi nōn amplius 
octingentōs equitēs habērent, quod īī qui frūmentandi causā 
ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, 
quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesarem discesserant atque īs 5 
diēs indūtīis erat ab īīs petitus, impetū factō celerīter nostrōs 
perturbāvērunt; rūrsus īs resistentibus cōnsuētūdine suā ād 
pedēs désiluerunt, suffossis equis complūribusque nostrīs dé-

10. illō, adv. [old dat. of ille], thither, to that place, there (= thither).
12. aquātiō, -ōnis, f. [aqua, water], getting water. 1.
13. frequēns, -entis, adj., in great numbers, in crowds. 2.
14. postulātum, -ī, n. [postulō, demand], demand, claim, request. 4.

10. eōdem illō pertinēre, "tended to that same object." See 9, 6, and 
note. It is quite likely that Caesar was mistaken. At any rate their request 
for time to consult the Ubii was perfectly natural, for they could not 
know whether the Ubii would respect Caesar's command (8, 9).
13. hūc: i.e. to the camping ground. 14.
14. conveniērent: see daret, 1.9. note.
15. qui nūntiārent, "men to give orders."
17. sustinērent: i.e. they were 
simply to defend themselves.
accessisset: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect.

Chap. 12. The German cavalry 
treacherously attack and rout Cae-
sar's cavalry.

1. ubi prīnum, "as soon as."
3. equitēs: why not the ablative after 
the comparative amplius? App. 139, b.
For this attack of 800 cavalry on 5,000, 
compare 2, 11.

qui ierant: cf. 9, 5.
6. impetū factō: this attack cannot 
have been authorized by the German 
leaders. They certainly wanted a truce, 
whatever their motives may have been, 
and the defeat of Caesar's cavalry was 
not important enough to tempt them to 
brake it. Either the German cavalry 
had failed to receive orders, or it could 
not resist the delight of attacking a 
despised foe.

iectis reliquis in fugam coniécérunt atque ita perterrítos ègérunt ut nón prius fugá désisterent quam in cónspectrum agminis nostrí vénissent. In eó proelió ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur quattuor et septuángintá, in his vir fortissimus, Písó Aquitánus, amplissímó genere nátus, cuius avus in civitáte suá rēgnum obtinuerat amicus á senátu nostró appellátus. Híc cum frátrí interclúsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculó ēripuit, ipse équò vulnerató déiectus quo ad fortissimé restítit; cum circumventus multitís vulneribus accep-tís cecidisset, atque id fráter, qui iam proelió excederat, procul animadvertisset, incitató équó sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

13. Höc factō proelió Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātós au-diendós neque condicionés accipiendás arbitrábatur ab iis qui per dolum atque insidiás pácé ultró bellum intulissent; exspectáre vērō dum hostium cópiae augērentur equitátusque reverterētur summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat; et cognítā Gallórūm inífrmitáte quantum iam apud eós hostēs únō proelió auctóritātís essent cōnsecūti sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capaciendas nihil spati dandum existimābat. Hís cōnstitutís rébus et cōnsilió cum lēgātīs et quaestōrē communícātō, né who have come to apologize.

9. quaestor, -ōris, m. [quaerō, seek], a quaestor (kwēs'tōr), one of a class of officials in charge of the public revenues or the finances of the army. 3. communícō, 1, tr. [commúnis, common], make common, communicate, impart, share. 1.

9. ita . . . ègérunt, “drove them back in such a panic.”

10. prius quam vénissent: the subjunctive is probably due to attraction, but may be explained by App. 236, b.


15. interclúsō: translate by a relative clause.

Chap. 13. Caesar decides on vengeance and detains the German leaders, nē . . . praetermitteret, “not to let any opportunity for battle go by.”
quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, 10 quod postrīdiē eius dieī māne eādem et perfidiā et simulātiōne ēsī Germānī frequentēs, omnibus principibus maiōribusque nātū adhībitīs, ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul, ut dicēbātur, suī purgandī causā, quod, contrā atque esset dictum et ipsis petīssent, proelium prīdiē commīsissent, simul ut, si quid posseī, dē inductorīs fallēndō imperērant. Quōs sībi Caesar oblātōs ġāvīsus illsōs retinērī iussit, ipsis omnēs cópiās castrīs ēdūxīt equitātumque, quod recentī 4 proeliō perterritum esse existīmābat, agmen subsequī iussit.

14. Acīē triplicī institūtā et celeriter VIII milium itinere 1 conōctō prius ad hostium castra pervēnīt quam quid agerētur. Germānī sentīre possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterritī,

10. praetermittō, -mittere, -miscī, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send by; let pass, overlook. 1. 
11. māne, adv., in the morning, early. 1. 
perfidia, -ae,f. [perfidus, faithless], treachery, perfidy; falsehood, dis-

11. quod, "(namely) that." 
13. ad eum . . . vēnērunt: this action seems to disprove Caesar's charge of perfidy. 
contra atque, "contrary to what." 
15. ut . . . impeetrārent, "to obtain whatever [lit. 'if anything'] they could in the way of a truce by deceiving him." 
16. quōs oblātōs (esse), "that they had come into his power." 
17. retinērī: this, with what follows, was a shocking violation of the law of nations. Compare what Caesar says of the action of the Veneti, III, 9, 8. Cato, Caesar's enemy, proposed in the Roman senate that Caesar be handed over to the Germans for punishment. Caesar's motives may be summed up as honesty. 2. 
simulātiō, -ōnis, f. [simulō, make like], simulation, pretense, deceit, disguise. 2.

17. gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum (App. 74), intr., rejoice. 1.

follows: 1, a determination to teach the Germans, once for all, never to invade Gaul; 2, a determination to counteract at once the bad effect which the cavalry defeat must have had on the already disaffected Gauls; 3, irritation at the treacherous attack, although everything shows that it was not authorized by the leaders; 4, a real doubt as to whether the Germans were not trying to gain time for the return of their formidable cavalry; 5, the certainty that a pitched battle with the entire force of Germans would cost him the lives of many soldiers.

Chap. 14. Caesar surprises the German camp.
1. acīē . . . institūtā: usually an army has to march in column along a road. Here the country was open and level, so that the army could march in battle formation.

2. prius quam possent: App. 236, b.
et celeritāte adventūs nostri et discessū suōrum, neque cōnsili
5 habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō, perturbantur cōpi
āne adversus hostem dūcére, an castra defendere, an fugā
salūtum petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et
concursū significātur, militēs nostri pristīnī dieī perfidiā
incitātī in castra irrūperunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma
10 capere potuērunt paulisper nostris restītērunt atque inter
caarrōs impedimenta quoque proelium commiśerunt; at reliqua
multitudō puerōrum mulierumque (nām cum omnibus suis
domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānserant) passim fugē
coepit; ad quōs cōnsectāndōs Caesar equitātum misit.

15. Germānī post tergum clāmōre audītō cum suōs inter-
faci vidērent, armīs abiectīs signisque militāribus relictī sē ex
castrīs cēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī per-
vēnissent, reliquā fugā desperātā magnō numerō interfectō
5 reliqui sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitu-

d

6. -ne, interroga. enclitic: in direct ques-
tions, simply sign of a question (App. 213,
a); in indirect questions, whether; -ne
... -ne, -ne ... an, utrum ... -ne,
whether ... or. 2.

adversus, prep. w. acc. [adversus,
turned against], opposite to, against.

an, conj., used to introduce the second
member of alternative questions, or, or
rather. *

9. irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -rup-
tum, tr. [in-rumpō, break], break in-
to, rush into; force a way into, storm.

13. passim, adv., in all directions.

1. abiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, tr.
[iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw away or
down; hurl. 2.

3. cōnfluentēs, -entis, f. [cōnflō,
flow together], a flowing together, con-
fluence. 1.

5. praecipitō, 1, tr. [praeceps, head-
long], throw or hurl headlong, precipi-
tate. 1.

4. et ... et, "both ... and."

suōrum: i.e. their leaders, who had
been detained by Caesar.

5. perturbantur -ne praestāret,
"were in great confusion, (not know-
ing) whether it was better." On the
kind of question see App. 214; 264, c.

9. quī: sc. ilīs as antecedent.

14. cōnsectandōs: the beginning of
the next chapter shows that the object
was massacre, not the taking of prison-
ers.

Chap. 15. The Germans are routed and slaughtered.

3. Rhēnī: I.e. the Vacalus; see parte
quādam, 10, 2, note.

4. reliquā, "further."

5. reliquī periērunt: some must
have escaped. At any rate in later
years there were Usipetes and Tencteri
living east of the Rhine, not far from
this battlefield. But they may be ac-
counted for by the escape of the cav-
alry.
INVASION OF GERMANY, B.C. 55

269

dine, vi ìòominis oppressi perierunt. Nostrì ad únum omnès
incolumès perpaucis vulneratìis ex tantì bellì timore, cum
hostium numerus capitum ccccxxx milium fuisset, sè in castra
recéperunt. Caesar iìs quòs in castris retinuerat discédèndì
motstátìem fécit. Illì supplicationem Gallorum veritì, io
quòrum agròs vexáverant, remanere sè apud eum velle dixè-
runt. His Caesar libertàtem concessit.

16. Germànicò bellò confectò multís dé causís Caesar
statuit sìbi Rhènum esse trànseundum; quàrum illa fuit iùstis-
sìma, quod, cum videret Germànicos tam facile impelli ut in
Galliam venirent, suís quoque rébus eòs timère voluit, cum
intellegerent et posse et audìerent populi Ròmání exercìtum 5
Rhènum tránsire. Accessìt etiam quod illa pars equitátiús
Usi̇petum et Tèncteròrum quam supra commemorávi pra-
dandì frumentandique causā Mosam tránsisse neque proeliò
interfuìsse post fugam suòrum sé tráns Rhènum in finès
Sugambròrum recéperat seque cum his coniùnxerat. Ad quòs 10

6. perseò, -îre, -ìi, -ìtum, intr. [eò, go. App. 84], be destroyed or killed, perish. 2.
1. Germànicus, -a, -um, adj. [Germánus, German], of or pertaining to the Germans. 1.

6. oppressì, "overwhelmed."
ad únum, "to a man."
7. ex, "after," "relieved of."
9. discédendi . . . fécìt: if Caesar had believed the leaders guilty of treachery, they above all others should have been punished.
12. libertátem, "permission" to re-
main.

However unjust and brutal Caesar’s treatment of the Germans may have
been, it served his purpose. More than a year later, when Caesar had lost a
legion and a half and all Gaul seemed ripe for revolt, the Treveri tried to get
German help. But the Germans replied (V, 55) that the thing had been tried
twice, by Ariovistus and by the Tencteri; they would tempt fortune no more.

2. iústus, -a, -um, adj. [iús, right],
in accordance with law or right, lawful, valid, just, fair; proper, regular; with
fùnera, appropriate. 4.
10. Sugambrì, -òrum, m. (Ag), the Sugambri (sù-gam’brì). 4.

Chap. 16-19. Caesar crosses the Rhine, as a warning to the Germans.

Chap. 16. Caesar’s reasons for de-
ciding to cross the Rhine.
2. iùstissiìma, "most valid," "strongest."
3. quod . . . volût: in apposition with illa.
4. suís . . . rébus, "for their own possessions too." The possessive usually
follows its noun; why does it here precede?

cum intellegerent, "(as they would) when they should see"; implied indirect
discourse for the future indicative.

6. accessìt etiam quod, lit. "there
was added also the fact that," = "more-
over," "and besides."

7. supra: see 9, 5.
cum Caesar nuntiös misisset qui postularent eös qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi déderent, respondérunt: Populi Rómani imperium Rhénum finire; si sé invitó Germanós in Galliam tránsire non aequum existimáret, eur sui quíquam esse imperi aut potestátes tráns Rhénum postuláret? Ubii autem, qui únī ex Tránsrhenánis ad Caesarem lēgátös mise-rant, amicitiam fécerant, obsídes déderant, magnopere órābant ut sibi auxílium ferret, quod graviter ab Suébis premer-tur; vel, si id facere occupátió nibus rei públicae prohibé-retur, exercitum modo Rhénum tránsportáret: id sibi ad auxílium spemque reliqui temporis satis futúrum. Tantum esse nómen atque opíniómem eius exercitús, Ariovístó pulsó et hoc novissimó proelió factó, etiam ad ultímás Germánórum nátiónés, uti opíionié et amiciá populi Rómani tútī esse possent. Návium magnam cópiam ad tránsportandum exerci-tum pollicébantur.

17. Caesar his dé causis quás commemorávi Rhénum tránsire décrèverat; sed návibus tránsire neque satis tútum

19. occupátió nibus rei públicae, "affairs of state."
20. tránsportáret: in the same con-struction as ferret, 1. 18.
21. reliqui temporis, "for the future."

futúrum: this and the following fin-itives depend on a verb of saying im-piled in órābant.

Chap. 17. Description of Caesar’s bridge across the Rhine.
2. tútum: an enemy could more eas-il y prevent a landing from boats, and in case of defeat boats would offer a dan-gerous means of retreat.
esse arbitrabatur, neque suae neque populi Rōmānī dignitātīs esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficilīs faciendi pontis propōnēbatur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem, altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sī contendendum aut aliter nōn trāduērum exercitum existimābat. Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bīna sesquipedālia paulum ab ĩmō praeacūta dimēnsa ad, altitūdinem flūminis intervāllo pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen defixerat fistūcisque adēgerat, nōn sublciae modo dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastīgātē ut secundum nātūram

5. rapiditās, -ātis, f. [rapīdus, swift], swiftness. 1.
8. tīgnum, -ī, n., log, timber, beam, pile. 2.
sesquipedālis, -e, adj. [sēsqui, one and a half + pēs, foot], a foot and a half thick. 1.
10. immittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missum, tr. [in+mittō, send], send or let into, insert; send against, direct towards or against; trābibus immissis, beams being let in. 2.
11. dēfīgō, -figere, -fixī, -fīxum, tr.

3. neque suae . . . statuēbat, “he considered it inconsistent with his own dignity, etc.” dignitātīs is a predicative possessive genitive. The construction of the bridge would impress the barbarians with a high sense of the power and skill of the Romans.

4. summa prōpōnēbatur, “presented itself as very great.”
5. lātitūdinem: the bridge was probably built near Bonn, where the river is a little more than a quarter of a mile wide.
6. id contendendum, “that he ought to make the effort.”
8. bīna, “two.” The distributive is used because there were many such timbers and they were handled two at a time. See plan, a, a.
dimēnsa ad, “measured according to”; i.e. they were made shorter or longer according to the depth of the river where they were driven into its bed.
9. intervāllo . . . iungēbat, “he joined together [by spiking wooden cross-pieces on them] with a space of two feet [between them].” See plan and the pile-driver, p. 273. Intervallō is an ablative of attendant circumstance.
10. haec . . . defixerat, “when he had let them down into the river by machines and had secured them there.” They were probably floated out to the raft on which the pile-driver (p. 273) stood, and were then handled by aerrick or some such simple machine. defixerat: mode? App. 241, b: G.-L. 584: A. 548: B. 288, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 601, 4.
11. nōn . . . perpendiculum, “not vertically, like a pile”; i.e. as piles are usually driven.
12. ut . . . prōcumberent: i.e. sloping down-stream.
CAESAR'S BRIDGE

a, a, tigna bina, l. 8.
b, b, iis contrária duo (tigna), l. 13.
c, bipedālis trabs, l. 16.
d, d, d, d, fibulae, l. 17.
e, dērēcta māteria, l. 21.
f, longurī crātēsque, l. 22.
g, sublica oblique ācta, l. 23.
h, aliae (sublicae) supra pontem, l. 25.
13. **his ... statuēbat**: i.e. a similar pair of piles was driven into the river bed opposite to these, forty feet downstream (ab inferiore parte), but sloping against the current. See plan, b. b. duo: we should expect *bina*, as in l. 8.

14. **quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [quadrāgintā, forty], forty each. 1. 16. **insuper, adv. [super, above], above, on the top, from above. 1. bipedālis, -e, adj. [bis, twice + pēs, foot], of two feet, two feet thick. 1.**

17. **iūntūra, -ae, f. [iungō, join], joining. 1. distō, -stāre, —, —, intr. [stō, stand], stand apart; be apart, removed or separated. 1. utrimque, adv. [uterque, each of**

The distance must have been measured on the surface of the water: the roadway was therefore a little less than forty feet.

16. **haec utraque, "these two pairs," is the subject of distinebantur. A two-foot beam, exactly filling the space between the piles of each pair (quantum ... distābat), was laid across from one pair of piles to the pair which faced it (plan, c). These pairs sloped toward each other, and although they were driven into the bottom they would sway with the current and would tend to fall together when the cross-beam had to carry a weight. Therefore they were held at the proper distance apart (distinēbantur) by a pair of fastenings (*fibulae*) at each end of the two-foot cross beam.

**quantum ... distābat**, lit. "as much as the joining of the timbers stood apart." *quantum* is an accusative of extent of space and has *bipedālibus* as its antecedent.

17. **fibulis: it is not certain what these "fastenings" were. Those shown in the plan (d, d) are simple and effective, and are occasionally used in modern engineering. The two-foot cross-beam rests on a cross-bar, which is spiked firmly to the outer sides of the piles. Another cross-bar is laid loosely in the opposite angle, and the outer ends of the two cross-bars are lashed firmly together. These two cross-bars are the *fibulae*. Any ingenious pupil can make a model which will show the effectiveness of this arrangement.**

**PILE-DRIVER**
extrêmâ parte distinebantur; quibus disclusis atque in contrâriam partem revinctis tanta erat operis firmitudo atque ea 20 rérum nátura ut quó maior vis aquae se incitávisset hoc artius illigáta tenérentur. Haec dérécēm máteriâ iniectâ contextebantur ac longuriis crátibusque cónsternēbantur; ac nihilò sétius subicae et ad inferiorém partem flúminis obliquē agebantur, quae prò ariete subjunctae et cum omní opere coniunctae vim 25 flúminis exciperent, et aliae item supra pontem mediocri spatiō, ut, sì arborum truncī sive návēs déiciendi operis causā

18. quibus refers to fibulis. It is in the ablative absolute with disclusis and revinctis.

disclusis: by the cross-beam and the piles.

in ... revinctis, "bound together in the opposite direction"; i.e. opposite to the direction of their separation.

19. ea rērum nātura, "such was the nature of the structure."

20. incitāvisset is subjunctive by attraction.

hóc ... tenērentur, "the more firmly the parts of the structure were bound together."

21. haec refers to the part of the structure already described, for which Caesar has no name. In modern engineering it is called a trestle-bent. There were probably between fifty and sixty such trestle-bents. They were connected by timbers laid from one cross-beam to the next, lengthwise of the bridge (dérecta māteriā). Plan, e.

22. nihilō sétius: i.e. although the bridge was already very strong.

23. et is correlative with ēt in l. 25. obliquē: i.e. they were driven in with a greater slant than the double piles had. See plan, g.

24. quae prò ariete subjectae exciperent, "which, set below as a buttress, were to withstand, etc."

25. aliae: sc. subicae agēbantur. There is nothing in the text to show the number of these piles, but the plan (h) suggests an effective defense.

spatiō: ablative of measure of difference with suprā.
essent ab barbaris missae, his défensóribus eárum rérum vis minueréntur, neu ponti nocérent.

18. Diébus decem quibus máteria coepta erat comportári omni opere effectó exercitus trádúcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmó praesidió relictó in finés Sugambrórum contendit. Interim á complúribus civítátis ad eum légáti veniunt; quibus pácem atque amicitiam petentibus liberáliter respondet obsidésque ad sé addúcí iubet. At Sugambrí ex ó tempore quó póns instituí coeptus est fugá comparató, hortantibus iis quós ex Téncteris atque Usipetibus apud sé habébant, finibus suis exesserant suaque omnia exportáverant séque in sólitúdinem ac silvás abdiderant.

19. Caesar paucós diēs in eórüm finibus morátus, omnibus vicís aedificiisque incénsis frumentisque succísis, sē in finés Ubiórüm recepit atque hís auxilium suum polliciátus, si á Suébis prémerentur, haec ab iis cognóvit: Suébós, posteáquam per explóratóres pontem fieri comperissent, móre suō concilió 5 habitó núntios án omnés partés dimísisse uti dé oppidis démi-grárent, liberós, uxórés, suaque omnia in silvis dépônerent, atque omnés quí arma ferre possent únum in locum conveni- rent; hunc esse déléc tum medium féré regiónum eárüm quás

9. exportó, 1. tr. [portó, carry], carry out or away. 1.
10. sólitúdó, -inis, f. [sólus, alone], loneliness, solitude; a lonely place. 1.

27. essent missae is subjunctive by implied indirect discourse, for a future perfect indicative.
28. neu: why not neque?

Chap. 18. Caesar crosses the river and marches into the country of the Sugambri.
1. diébus decem quibus, lit. "within ten days within which."="within ten days after"; cf. paucis diébus quibus, III, 23, 3.
2. succídó, -cidere, -cidi, -cisma, tr. [sub+caedó, cut], cut from beneath, cut down, fell. 2.
3. posteáquam, adv. [posteá, afterwards+quam, than], after. 4.
4. hortantibus iis, lit. "those urging,"="on the advice of those."
5. quós . . . habébant: i.e. the cavalry. 16, 6, and probably other survivors of the massacre, 15, 5, note.

Chap. 19. Caesar ravages their country. As the Suebi have withdrawn, he returns to Gaul.
6. núntios dimísisse uti, "had sent messengers (urging) that."
7. hunc . . . féré, "that this place had been chosen almost in the middle."
10 Suēbī obtinērunt: hic Rōmānōrum adventum expectārē atque ibi decertāre constituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus iis rēbus confectis quārum rērum causā tradūcere exercitationem constituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambros ulūcisceretur, ut Ubios obsidione liberāret, diēbus omnīnō XVIII trans Rhēnum consūmptīs, satis et ad laudēm et ad utīlitātem praefectum arbitrātus sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

20. Exiguā parte aestātīs reliquā Caesar, etsi in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hīmēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod omnibus fere Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrātā auxilia intellegēbat et, si tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sībi ūsūi fore arbitrābātur, si modo īnsulam adīsset, genus hominum perspexisset, locā, portūs, adītūs cognōvisset; quae omnia fere Gallīs erant incognīta. Neque enim temperē

10. hic, adv., here, in this place; (of a place just mentioned) there, in that place; (of an incident just mentioned) then, at this time. 1.
14. obsidiō, -onis, f. [obsideō, blockade], siege, investment, blockade; peril, oppression. 1.
liberō, 1, tr. [liber, free], make or set free, release, deliver. 2.
15. prōfectum: notice the ō; from what present?

Chap. 20-22. Caesar makes preparations for an expedition to Britain.

Chap. 20. Caesar decides on the expedition. He can get no information from the Gauls.

1. exiguā ... reliquā: the ablative absolute is adversative: “although only a small part ... (and) in spite of the fact that the winters are early.”

16. utīlitās, -tātis, f. [ūtilis, useful], usefulness, advantage, service. 1.
1. exiguus, -a, -um, adj., scanty, short, small, meager, limited. 1.
8. incognītus, -a, -um, adj. [in- cognitus, known; cognōscō, learn], unknown. 2.
temērē, adv., rashly, blindly, without good reason. 2.

4. hostibīs nostrīs: indirect object of subministrātā.

subministrātā auxilia: for an instance see III, 9, 26. In II, 14, 8, we learn that Britain had afforded refuge to some of Caesar’s enemies.

6. magnō ... fore, “it would be of great advantage to him.”
si adīsset, etc.: for the future perfect of the direct form. These clauses give the real object of the expedition, which was only preparatory to that of the following year.

8. quae ... incognīta: the Gauls may have deceived Caesar; at any rate there are indications that some Gauls knew a good deal about Britain: in II, 4, 19, we learn that a king of the Suessi-
praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque his ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regionēs quae sunt contrā Galliam nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōri-
bus neque quanta esset īnsulae magnitudō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quam ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs āterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrum nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs reperīre poterat.

21. Ad haec cognōscenda, prīiusquam perīculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā prae-
mittīt. Huic mandat ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus ad sē quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiec-
tus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs regionībus et quam superiōre aestātē ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat classem iubet convenīre. Interim, cōnsiliō eius cognītō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae civitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt qui pollicēantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō 10 populi Rōmānī obtēmpērēre. Quibus audītīs liberālīter polli-
citus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent eōs domum

5. trāiectus, -ūs, m. [trāiciō, hurl across], a hurling across; crossing, passage. 1.
9. Britannus, -a, -um, adj., of Brit-
tain, British; pl. as noun, the Britanni

ones had been king of a part of Britain besides, and in VI, 13, we learn that Gal-
lic Druids went to Britain to study.
9. illō: the adverb.
his ipsīs: the traders; dative with nōtum.
11. vocātīs mercātōribus, “al-
though he summoned, etc.”
12. neque, etc.: a series of indirect questions, depending on reperīre.

Chap. 21. Caesar sends men in ad-
vance to gain information and to 
advise submission.
2. Volusēnum: either the subject of 
esse or the object of praeceptītū; supply eum in one place or the other. See what 
Caesar says of Volusenus in III, 5, 7;

he is the only tribune whom Caesar men-
tions with honor.

nāvī longā: see Int. 64.
6. hūc: at a harbor among the Mor-
ini. This was probably Wissant, the 
point of France which is nearest to Brit-
tain: see map facing p. 254. The harbor 
is now filled with sand, but was in use 
during the middle ages.
10. quī pollicēantur: a purpose 
clause, but best translated by a present 
participle.

dare, obtēmpērēre: verbs of promis-
ing are more often followed by the fu-
ture infinitive with subject accusative, 
ē datūrōs esse.
remittit et cum iis ûnã Commium, quem ipse Atrebatibus superâtis rëgem ibi constituerat, cuius et virtûtèm et cònsilium probâbat et quem sibi fidèlem esse arbitràbâtur, cuiusque auctòritàs in hìs regiònibus magní habèbâtur, mittít. Huic imperat quàs possit adeat civítàtés, hortêturque ut populì Ròmâni fidem sequuntur, sèque celeriter eò ventùrum nùntiét. Volusènus perspectìs regiònibus, quantum èi facultátis darì potuit quài nàvi ègredi àc sè barbarìs committère nôn audèret, quintó diè ad Caesarem revertitúrit quaeque ibi perspexisset renùntiát.

22. Dum in hìs locís Caesar nàvium parandàrum causà morâtur, ex magnà parte Morinòrum àeum àegàti vènérunt quài sè dé superiòris temporis cònsilió excùsàrent, quod hòminès barbarì et nostrae cònsuètùdinìs imperîtì bellum populò Ròmâni fècissent, sèque ea quae imperàssset factùròs pollicè- rentur. Hóc sibi Caesar satis opportùnè acçìdisse arbitrâtus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquare volèbat neque bellaí geréndi propter annì tempus facultàtem habèbât ne-

| 13. Commiùs, -mi, m., Commiùs (kóm’i-ûs), a chief of the Atrebatìes. 3. |
| 15. fìdêlis, -e, adj. [fîdês, faith], faithful, trustworthy, reliable. 1. |
| 3. excûsó, 1. tr. [causa, reason], give reason for; excuse. 1. |
| 4. imperitus, -a, -um, adj. [in- peritus, experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. 4. |
| 6. opportûnè, adv. [opportûnus, fit], opportunely, seasonably. 1 |

14. ibì: i.e. among the Atrebatìes.
15. sibi fidêlem: but Commiùs became a leader in the general revolt against him three years later. This is why Caesar says arbitrâtur.
16. in hìs regiònibus: i.e. in Belgìum.
magní: genitive of value.
18. fidem sequuntur, lit. “follow the protection (of),”= “surrender (to).”
sè: i.e. Caesar.
19. quantum . . . potuit, lit. “(as much) as of opportunity could be given to a man,”= “as much as a man could.”
20. qui . . . audèret: a clause of characteristic. Caesar cannot mean to blame Volusènus. Both the difficulty which Caesar himself experienced in landing with his army and the impris- onment of Commiùs will show that Volusènus could not possibly have landed and returned.

Chap. 22. Caesar accepts the sur- render of the Morini, and completes his preparations for sailing.
3. cònsilió, “behavior”; see III, 28.
28 hominès: in apposition with the omitted subject; “being barbarians.”
4. cònsuètùdinìs: of sparing those who voluntarily surrendered.
5. fècissent, imperàssset: implied indirect discourse for the perfect indica- tive and the future perfect, respective- ly.
que hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, magnum iīs numerum obsidum im-perat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recipit. Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerārii consōctīs contractīsque, quot satis esse ad duās transportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praeterea nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōri, lēgātīs, praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriās nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā mili-bus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur quōminus in eundem portum venire possent; hās equītibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit; Sulpicium Rūfum lēgā-tum cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.

23. His constitūtīs rebus nactus idōnēam ad navigandum tempestātem tertīā ferē vigiliā solvit equitāisque in ulteriōrem

9. antepōnē, -pōnere, -posuí, -positum, tr. [pōnē, place], place before; prefer. 1.
12. onerārius, -a, -um, adj. [onūs, burden], fitted for burdens; with nāvis, transport, freight ship. *

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr. [trahō, draw], draw or bring together, assemble, collect; draw into smaller compass, contract. 2.
16. quōminus, conj. [quō, so that+] minus, not], so that not, that not; from 2.

20. Sulpicius, -ō, m., Publius Sul-picius Rufus (pūb'li-ūs sūl-pīsh'yūs ru'fūs), one of Caesar’s lieutenants. 1.
1. nancisco, nancisci, nactus sum, tr., get, obtain possession of; meet with, find. *

2. solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum, tr., loosen, untie; with or without nāvēs, weigh anchor, set sail, put to sea. 3.


Chap. 23-27. After a sharp contest Caesar effects a landing and accepts the surrender of the Britons.

Chap. 23. Caesar crosses to Britain and makes preparations for landing.
1. idōneam tempestātem: a gentle southerly wind and clear weather, with the moon nearly full.
2. tertīā vigiliā: just after midnight, the morning of August 27th. The first part of the night was spent in launching the ships, which had been
portum prōgrediēt et nāvēs cōnsendere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quārtā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigīt atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cópiās armatās cōnspexit. Cuius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur utī ex locīs superīoribus in lītus tēlum adigi posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs expectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīisque militum convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fierī velēt ostentīt, monūitque, ut reī militāris ratiō, maximē ut maritimae rēs postulāretn, ut quae celeram atque instabilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab iis administrārentur. Hīs dimissis et ventum et aestum ūnō

3. cōnsendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsum, tr. [scandō, climb], climb, mount; go on board, embark. 1.
4. tardē, adv. [tardus, slow], slowly; comp. tardius, too slowly. 1.
6. expōnō, -pōnerē, -posul, -posītum, tr. [pōnō, place], put or set out; set on shore, disembark; draw up; set forth, explain. 2.
7. angustē, adv. [angustus, narrow], narrowly; in close quarters. 1.
8. litus, -oris, n., seashore, beach, shore. 3.
9. nēquāquam, adv. [nē+quāquam, in any way], in no way, by no means, not at all. 1.
14. celer, -eris, -ere, adj., swift, quick; precipitate. 1.
15. mōtus, -ūs, m. [moveō, move], movement, motion; political movement, uprising, disturbance. 3.
13. ut . . . postulārent, "as military science, and especially as seamen-ship requires"; the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.
16. ventum et aestum secundum: on other grounds it is supposed that Caesar sailed northeast, to Deal; but it has been proved that at this time the tide was running southwest. Possibly
tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancoris, circiter mīlia passuum septem ab eo locō proelīsus apertō ac planō litore nāvēs cōnstituit.

24. At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proelīs utī cōnsuērunt, reliquis cōpiis subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ōb hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitudinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn po-te-rant, militibus autem ignōtīs locīs, impeditīs manibus, magnō et gravi onere armōrum oppressī simul et dē nāvibus désili-endum et in flūctibus cōnsistentūm et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī omnipus membris expeditīs nōtissimīs locīs audacter tēla conci- cerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterrītī atque huius omnīnō generis pugnae imperītī nōn ēadem alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestalibus uti proelīs cōn-suērunt ētēbantur.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsūtātōr et mōtus ad ēsum expeditiōr,

Caesar means that the tide was decreasing and the wind was so favorable that he could sail against the slackening cur- rent.

Chap. 24. The Britons try to pre- vent the landing.

2. quō generē, "a kind of troops which."

5. nisi . . . pōterant, "could be sta-tioned only in deep water."

6. militibus: dative of the agent with désiliendum, etc., erat.

ignōtīs . . . manibus: ablatives abso-lute.

7. oppressīs, "weighed down as they were"; in agreement with militibus.

8. cōnsistentūm, "keep their foot-ing."

9. cum illī, "while the enemy."

12. nōn ūtēbantur, "did not dis-play."

13. quō agrees with the nearer ante-cedent.

Chap. 25. Caesar brings his war-ships into action. A Roman standard bearer sets an example of bravery.

2. inūsūtātor, "less familiar" than that of the transports. The latter were
paulum removēri ab onerāriis nāvibus et rēmis incitāri et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstitūi atque īnde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac submovere iussīt; quae rēs magnō usuī nostri fuit. Nam et nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mortūtē inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permotī barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostri militibus cūnctantibus, maximē propter altitūdinem maris, qui decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēliciter ēveniēret, ‘Dēsilīte,’ inquit, ‘commilitōnēs, nisi vultīs aquilam hostibus prōderē; ego certē meum rēi publicae atque imperātorī officium praestīterō.’ Hoc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiectī atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri, cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, universalī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspexissent, subsecūti hostibus appropinquāverunt.

26. Pugnātum est ab utrisque ēcritē. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īnscītere neque signa sub-

---

4. funda, -ae, f., sling. 1. sagitta, -ae, f., arrow. 1.
6. figura, -ae, f. [fīngō, form], form, shape, figure. 1.
10. aquila, -ae, f., an eagle; a standard (as the aquila was the chief standard of the legion). 3.
obtestor, 1. tr. [testor, witness], call to witness; beseech, entreat. 1.
fēliciter, adv. [fēlīx, happy], happily, fortunately. 1.
11. ēvenīō, -venīre, -vēnī, -venītum, intr. [venīō, come], turn out, result. 1.

more like the trading vessels, with which the Britons were acquainted.

mōtus . . . expeditior, lit. “whose motion was freer for use,” = “which were more easily managed.”

4. latus apertum, “the right flank,” which was unprotected by shields.
9. qui, “the man who.”
10. aquilam: see Int. 43, and Plate I, 6, facing p. 27.
13. praestīterō: note the force of

inquam, -is, -it, def. verb, tr., used only with direct quotations and following one or more words of the quotation, say. 1.
commilitō, -ōnis, m. [miles, soldier], fellow soldier, comrade. 1.
certē, adv. [certus, certain], certainly; at least, at all events. 1.
meus, -a, -um, poss. adj. pron. [cf. oblique cases of ego], my, mine, my own. 1.
dēdecus, -oris, n. [decus, honor], dishonor, disgrace. 1.
firmiter, adv. [firmus, strong], firmly. 1.

the tense. “(whatever the result shall be) I at least shall have done my duty.”
15. inter sē, “one another.”
16. ex proximīs nāvibus, “those who were in the nearest ships.”

Chap. 26. After a fierce contest the Britons are put to flight.
2. firmiter insīstere, “get a firm footing.”

signa subsequi: i.e. keep their formation by cohorts.
sequi poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque signīs occurrerat sē aggregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtis omnibus vādis, ubi ex litore aliquōs singulārēs ex 5 nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspexerant, incitātīs equis impeditōs adoriēbant, plurēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvīgia militibus complēri iussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōnspexerat, hīs subsidīa submittēbat. Nōstri, simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus consecutīs in hostēs impetum fecerunt atque eos in fugam dēdērunt, neque longius prosequī potuerunt, quod ēquites cursum tenēre atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc ānum ad prīstīnam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce misērunt; obsidēs dātrōs, quaeque imperāsset factūrōs sēsē pollicitī sunt. Ğū cum ēs lēgātīs Commiūs Atrebās vēnit, quem superā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesarīs mandāta

---

4. aggregō, 1, tr. [ad-grex, flock], unite in a flock; assemble; join, attach. 1. 9. scapha, -ae, f., skiff, boat. 1. specularius, -a, -um, adj. [speculātor, spy], of a spy, spying, scouting. 1. 3. alius ... nāvi, "men from different ships." quibuscumque ... aggregābat, "gathered about whatever standards they chanced upon"; as in the battle with the Nervii, II, 21, 13. 5. ubi cōnspexerant: the pluperfect instead of the usual perfect with ubi, expressing repeated action, just as the following imperfects do. 7. plurēs, "several" of the enemy. in ūniversōs, "upon the main body." 9. scaphās, specularōria nāvīgia: these boats could be rowed into shallow water. 11. simul = simul atque.

---

10. labōrō, 1, intr. [labor, toil], toil, work hard; be anxious, troubled, or perplexed; labor, suffer, be hard pressed. 3. 13. neque, "but ... not." longius, "very far." 14. capere, "reach." See note on tardius, 23, 4. hoc ānum: the pursuit by the cavalry was an important part of every regular engagement.

Chap. 27. The Britons sue for peace.

3. dātrōs, factūrōs sēsē: the regular construction after verbs of promising; see note on dare, 21, 10. 4. supra: see 21, 13. 6. cum, "although." modō, "in the capacity of," "as."
déferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniécéntat; tum proelió factó remísérrunt, et in petendá pace eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulérunt et propter imprudéntiam ut ignós-
cerétur petivérunt. Caesar questus quod, cum ultró in contin-
mentem légátis missis pácem ab sé petíssent, bellum sine causá
intulíssent, ignóscere imprudéntiáe dixit obsidéscque imperávit;
quórum illi partem statim dedérunt, partem ex longinquióribus
locis accessitam paucis diébus sésé datúros dixérunt. Interéa
suós remigráre in agrós iussérunt, principésque undique con-
veniérunt et sé civítatésque suás Caesári commendáre coepérunt.

28. His rébus pace confirmáta, post diem quárturn quam
est in Britanniam ventum náves xviii, de quibus suprá démón-
strátum est, quae equités sustulerant, ex superióre portú léní
ventó solvérunt. Quae cum approxinquáre Britanniae et ex
castris vidérentur, tanta tempestás subító coorta est ut núlla
eárum cursum ténère posset, sed aliae éodem unde erant pro-
fectae referrentur, aliae ad inferiórem partem insulae, quae est
có], forgive, pardon. 3.
1. post . . . quam = dií quárto post-
quam. When postquam is divided, post
is usually an adverb, "afterwards . . .
than." Here it is a preposition. The
day was August 30th, the third day after
his arrival, according to our reckon-
ing.
2. suprá, see 22, 15 and 23, 4.
6. aliae, aliae: the wind must have
come from the north or northeast. The
ships that were farthest out at sea were
driven back at once; the others got some
shelter west of Dover, but as the storm
proved too severe they preferred to re-
turn to Gaul rather than land on the
hostile shore of Britain, miles from Cae-
sar's camp.
propius sólis occásum, magnó suó cum perículó déicerentur; quae tamen anchóres iactis, cum flúctibus complérentur, necessárió adversá nocte in altum próvectae continentem petiérunt. 10

29. Eádem nocte accidit ut esset lúna pléna, quí diés marítimós aestús maximós in Oceanó efficere cônsuēvit; nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita únó tempore et longás návés, quás in áridum subdúxerat, aestus complébat, et oneráriás, quae ad anchóras erant déligatæ, tempestás afflictábat, neque úlla nostris facultás aut administrándi aut auxiliándi dabâtur. Complúribus návibus frácticis, reliqua cum essent fúnibus, anchóres, reliquísque armámentís ámissís ad návigandum inútilés, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, tótiús exercitús perturbátio facta est. Neque enim návés erant aliae quibus reportári possent, et omnia deerrant quae ad reficiendás návés erant usuí, et, quod

10. próvehó, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, tr. [vehó, carry], carry forward; pass., be carried forward, sail. 1. lúna, -ae, f., the moon. 2. délígó, 1, tr. [ligó, bind], bind or tie down, fasten, moor. 2. auxílior, 1, intr. [auxilium, aid], give aid, help, assist, render assistance. 1.

8. occásum: for construction see note on propius sè, 9, 3.
9. cum complérentur, "since they began to fill."
10. adversá nocte, "in the face of the night.”

Chap. 29. The storm and the tide wreck Caesar’s fleet. 1. lúna pléna: there was a full moon on the night of August 30th. This is what enables us to calculate the day of Caesar’s arrival in Britain. 2. aestús maximós: the “spring” tide. The average rise and fall of the tide at Deal is said to be 16 feet. This tide, helped by the wind, rose much higher.

nostris . . . incognitum: the Romans were best acquainted with the Mediterranean, where the tides rise only a few inches. Yet they had had some experience with the tides in the war with the Veneti.

4. quae . . . déligatæ, "which were riding at anchor.” The transports were heavier than the war-ships and Caesar had not thought it worth the effort to beach them.
6. administrándi, “of managing them.”
9. id quod or quae rès is commonly used instead of quod when the antecedent is a clause.
10. quibus possent: a clause of characteristic.
11. omnia quae erant usuí, “all the things which were needed”; a determining clause. App. 231.
omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum in his locis in hiemem prōvisum non erat.

30. Quibus rebus cognitis principēs Britanniae, qui post proelium ad Caesarem convenerant, inter se collocūti, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frumentum Rōmānis deesse intellexerent et paucitātem militum ex castrōrum exiguītāte cognōscerent, quae hoc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat, optimum factū esse dūxērunt rebelliōne factā frumentō commeatūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prodūcere, quod hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs nēminem posteā bellī inferendī causā in Britanniam transtūrum confidēbant. Itaque rūrus coniūrātiōne factā paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs deducere coepere.

31. At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermitterat, fore id quod accidit suspicābatur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsīs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frumentum ex agrīs cotidiē in castra conferebat et quae gravissimē afflictē erant nāvēs, eārum materiā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās utēbātur et quae ad eās rēs erant ūsui ex continentī comparāri iūbe-
bat. Itaque cum summō studiō a militibus administrārētur, duodecim nāvibus āmissis, reliquīs ut navigāri commodē possēt effecit.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex consuētūdine ūnā frumentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque āūlā ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, ĭī qui prō portīs castrōrum in statione erant Caesari nūntiāvērunt pulverem maiōrem quam consuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, ali-quid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsili, cohortēs quae in stationibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficiscī, ex reliquis duās in stationem succēdere, reliquās armāri et consēstum sēscē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs processisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnsertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conici animadvertīt. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquis partibus démessō frumentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūros noctū ā silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendo occupātōs subitō adortī paucīs interfecit reliquōs incertīs ordinibus perturbāvērunt, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumcederant.

5. pulvis, -eris, m., dust. 1.
10. confessim, adv., hastily, at once, immediately. 1.
14. dē metō, -meterе, -messui, -messum, tr. [metō, reap.], mow, reap. 1.
15. dēlitescō, -litescere, -litolī, —, intr. [latesco, incept. of lateō, lie hidden], hide one's self, lurk. 1.
16. metō, metere, messui, messum, tr., mow, reap. 1.
18. essedum, -i, n., a two-wheeled war chariot of the Britons. 2.

8. summō studiō: the soldiers were as anxious to get away as Caesar was.
9. reliquis . . . effecit, lit. "made that it could be sailed by the rest," = "made the others fit to sail in."

Chap. 32-36. After repelling the Britons, who attack first one legion, then the camp, Caesar returns to Gaul.

Chap. 32. The Britons attack one legion while it is engaged in foraging.

1. frumentātum: App. 295.
3. interpositā, "having arisen."

In agrīs remanēret: ostensibly en-gaged in labor on the farms near the camp.

6. quam . . . ferret, "than usual."
7. id quod erat, "what was really the case"; explained by the clause ali-quid . . . consili, "that some new plan had been entered upon."
8. cohortēs: probably four, one at each gate.

10. succēdere, "to take their places."
11. armāri, "to arm themselves."
14. āna, "only one."
17. incertīs ordinibus: owing to
33. Genus hoc est ex essedís pugnae. Prímō per omnés partēs perequitant et têla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum órdinēs pērōrumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex ‑essedīs désiuint et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō ex­cēdunt atque ita currūs collocant ut, si illī à multītūdine hos­tium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilītātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praec­stant, ac tantum ūsū cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in dēclīvī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevi moderārī ac flectere et per tēmōnem percurre et in iugō īnsis­tere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērīnt.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs novitāte pugnae tem­

the surprise the usual line of battle could not be formed.

Chap. 33. How the Britons use their war-chariots in battle.

2. e quō rūm, "caused by the horses."

4. equītum turmās: the cavalry of the enemy, whom they thus attacked. Caesar had no cavalry this year, but this is a general description; in the next expedition his cavalry were thus defeated.

6. I I I I: the warriors, who had alighted.

7. expeditum receptum, "a ready retreat."

8. praestant, "display."
pore opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventu hostes constiterunt, nostri se ex timore recéperunt. Quo facto ad laessendum hostem et ad committendum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratus suò se locó continuí et breví 5 tempore intermissó in castra légionés redúxit. Dum hoc geruntur, nostris omnibus occupáti, qui erant in agrís reliqui discessérunt. Secútæae sunt continuóss complurés diès tempes-
tatés quae et nostrós in castris continérent et hostem á pugná prohibérent. Interim barbarí núntiós in omnes partés dimís-
run: paucitátemque nostrórüm militum suí praedicávérunt et quaenta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suí liberandí facultás darétur, sí Rómanós castris expulissent, démonstrá-
vérunt. Hís rēbus celeriter magná multitúdine peditátus equi-
tátusque coáctā, ad castra vénérunt.

35. Caesar etsi idem quod superióribus diebus acciderat fore vidébat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritáte periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equités circiter xxx, quós Commius Atrebás, de quo ante dictum est, stecum tránsportáverat, legi-
donés in ácì prò castris constítuit. Commissó proelió diútius 5 nostrórüm militum impetum hostes fere non potuérunt ac terga vertérent. Quós tantó spatió secúti quantum cursú et

8. continuo, -a, -um, adj. [con-
tinuó, hold together], holding together, unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. 2.
11. praedícō, 1, tr. [dicó, proclaim], proclaim publicly or before others; de-
clare, report, tell of. 3.
5. a liénum, lit. "belonging to another," = "unfavorable." suū, "his own," almost illustrates the correspond-
ing meaning, "favorable."
6. dum haec geruntur, "in the meantime."
7. qui . . . reliqui: mentioned in 32, 3.
9. quae continérent: App. 230, a, examples.
12. praedae faciendae: they would have been disappointed, for the Romans

12. praeda, -ae, f., booty, plunder, spoli. 2.
14. peditátus, -ús, m. [pedes, foot soldier], foot soldiers, infantry. 1.
3. effugió, -fugere, -fugi, —, tr. and intr. [ex+fugió, flee], flee from or away, escape. 1.

had left their baggage in Gaul; 30, 5.
suí liberandi: see note on sui púr-
gandi, 13, 14.

Chap. 35. The Britons are put to flight.
1. idem fore, ut, "that the same thing would occur . . . namely, that."
4. ante: in 21, 14 and 27, 4.
5. diútius, "very long."
6. ac, "but"; for this translation see note on III, 19, 9.
7. tantó spatió quantum . . . po-
viribus efficere potuérunt, complúrēs ex iis occídérunt, deinde omnibus longē látēque aedificiīs incénsīs sē in castra recépérunt.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dé pāce vēnērunt. His Caesar numerum obsidium quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod propinquā diē aequinoctī īnfirmī nāvibus hiemī nāvigationēnem subiciendam non existimābat. Ipse idōneam tempéstātem nāctus paulō post medium noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs in-columēs ad continentem pervēnérunt; sed ex iīs onerāriāe duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae cāpere nōn potuérunt et paulō īnfrā délātae sunt.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī mīlitēs circiter trecentī atque in castra contenderent, Morīnī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedae adductī primō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, si sēsē interfici nōlent, arma pōnere iussérunt. Cum illī orbe

3. duplicō, 1, tr. [duplex, double], double, increase. 1.
4. aequinoctium, -ī, n. [aequus, equal + nōx, night], the equinox. 1.
9. infrā, adv. [inferus, below], below; prep. with acc., below, smaller than. 1.
2. trecentī,-ae,-a (CCC), card. num. adj. [trēs, three + centum, hundred], three hundred. 1.
5. orbis, -is, m., orb, ring, circle; orbis terrārum, the world. 1.

tuērunt, "over as great a distance as their speed and strength permitted." spatiō is an ablative of the way (App. 144), where an accusative of extent of space would seem more natural; see H.-B. 425, c.

Chap. 36. Caesar returns to Gaul.
2. his: dative of reference.
3. eōs . . . iussit: it is not surprising to learn later that most of the tribes failed to do this.
4. propinquā diē: ablative absolute. As Caesar reached Britain August 27th, and the equinox then fell on Sept. 24th, he must have remained in Britain about three weeks.
hiemī . . . subiciendam, "that his voyage should be exposed to wintry weather."

8. quōs reliquae, "as the rest." capere, "reach," "make." et, "but."
9. infrā: to the south. They may have landed at Ambleteuse.

Chap. 37-38. The Morini revolt and are conquered.

Chap. 37. The Morini attack the troops from the two transports, but are repulsed.
1. quibus ex nāvibus: i.e. the two transports.
2. in castra: at Wissant.
3. pācātōs: see 22, 1-11.
4. primō: the adverb.
itā, "so very," "very."
5. pōnere, "to lay down.” orbe: a formation like the modern hollow square, used when troops were attacked on all sides.
factō sēsē défenderent, celeriter ad clamōrem hominum circiter milia sex convēnérunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castris equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostri mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōris quattuor fortissimē pugnāvērunt et paucīs vulneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occidērunt. Posteā vērō quam equitātus noster in conspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt magnu¬que eōrum numerus est occīsus.


3. siccītās, -tātis, f. [siccus, dry], drought, dryness. 1.

4. perfugium, -glī, n. [perfugio, flee for refuge], place of refuge, refuge. 1.

6. hominum: with milia.

Chap. 38. Labienus conquers the Morini. The army is quartered for the winter among the Belgae. A thanksgiving in Caesar's honor.

3. siccitātēs: translate by the singular.

quō ... habērent, lit. "had not where they could retreat," = "had no¬where to retreat"; App. 230, c.

4. quō perfugiō erant āsī, lit. "which refuge they had used," = "the refuge [i.e. the swamps] which they had used." For the fact see III, 28, 8.

6. qui ... dūxerant: see 22, 18.

9. in Belgīs: in readiness for the next year's expedition to Britain.

12. diērum vīgiuntī supplicātiō: see note on II, 35, 10, and notice the in¬creased number of days. Caesar's two expeditions into lands where no Roman general had ever before set foot had made a wonderful impression at Rome.
BOOK V. SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN. REVOLT OF THE EBURONES, NERVII, AND TREVERI

If Caesar accomplished nothing else by his first expedition to Britain, he at least learned that a large force would be needed for its subjugation. Therefore he quartered his army for the winter at suitable places for ship-building and gave orders for the construction of a large fleet. On returning from Cisalpine Gaul, early in June, 54 B.C., he found so many new ships constructed that his total fleet amounted to 800 vessels. Giving orders for the concentration of his forces at Port Itius, he hastened off to quiet the Treveri, who threatened to make trouble during his absence. This done, all was in readiness for the voyage; but a northwest wind delayed him twenty-five days.

At last, about July 20, with five legions and 2,000 cavalry, he set sail at sunset. About noon the next day he reached Deal, and landed without opposition. That same night, leaving a guard for the ships, he led his army twelve miles inland to a little stream, on whose farther bank the Britons were drawn up. Quickly driven from this position, the natives took refuge in a well-fortified stronghold near by, only to be routed once more. Here Caesar fortified a camp and spent the night. In the morning the troops had begun the pursuit of the enemy, when Caesar was recalled by the news of the partial destruction of the fleet by a storm during the night. Though time was precious, he decided to have the fleet drawn up on the shore and surrounded by a fortification, which was done in ten days. He then returned to the camp from which he had been recalled.

The Britons had made good use of the time. The several tribes had postponed their differences with one another, had united their forces and had given the command to the able and energetic Cassivellaunus. One attempt convinced this leader that no British army could stand against the Romans in regular battle. Henceforth he determined to fight no pitched battle, but to harass Caesar's march, to prevent his foraging, and thus to wear him out. Caesar, on the other hand, determined to put an end to the contest, and marched farther inland. At the Thames the enemy once more tried to make a stand, having obstructed the only ford with stakes; but the Romans would not be stopped. The principal tribes now submitted, and Caesar captured the stronghold of Cassivellaunus. The British leader made one more effort: he instigated an attack on the fleet, which resulted disastrously to the Britons. Then he made a nominal submission and Caesar returned to Gaul.

292
In the fall of this year a blow was struck by the Eburones which inflicted upon Caesar's army the most serious loss of its entire Gallic experience, and which so encouraged the other Gauls that it led to the great general revolt a year and a half later. Because of scanty harvests in Gaul, Caesar distributed his army for the winter more widely than usual, being careful, however, to keep the several detachments within what he thought easy reach of one another. One legion and a half were quartered among the Eburones, under Sabinus and Cotta. Fifty miles west of them, among the Nervii, Quintus Cicero commanded one legion. At a little greater distance, near the Treveri, lay another legion, commanded by Labienus. Other legions were in or near Samarobriva, two hundred miles to the west. In Samarobriva was Caesar, postponing his visit to Italy until he should hear that all the winter quarters were well established.

At the instigation of Indutiomarus, a chief of the Treveri whom Caesar had humbled before sailing to Britain, the Eburones made a sudden attack on Sabinus and Cotta. When they were repulsed, one of their leaders, Ambiorix, asked for an interview, and under pretense of friendship persuaded the Romans to abandon their camp and join either Cicero or Labienus. He promised under oath not to hinder their march. Scarcely had they gone two miles when they were attacked in a narrow defile. After a desperate conflict, prolonged from sunrise until the middle of the afternoon, the legion and a half were destroyed almost to a man.

Before this great disaster became known to the Romans, Ambiorix joined the Nervii and persuaded them to attack Cicero. As before, the Gauls were repulsed and Ambiorix advised the Romans to abandon their camp; but Cicero refused, and defended his post with the greatest heroism. Day after day messengers were sent to Caesar, only to be caught and tortured to death. At last one got through. Moving at once to the rescue Caesar raised the siege and defeated the Gauls. This success checked for a time the general revolt which had seemed imminent; but Gaul was so restless and ready for revolt that Caesar for once gave up his usual visit to Italy and remained with his army.

The chief inspirer of rebellion during the winter was Indutiomarus. At last he raised an army, with the intention of joining other states with whose chiefs he had been in correspondence. First, however, he wished to storm the camp of Labienus. By pretending fear the Romans lured him right under the walls of their camp, then charged out on him. In the panic-stricken flight that followed, Indutiomarus was killed. Then Caesar, as he remarks, "had a quieter Gaul."
THE SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN

The sailing and landing points are assumed to be the same as in the previous expedition (p. 254), although Caesar says only that he used the points which he had found most suitable in the previous summer. The sailing point of the previous expedition had been entirely satisfactory; and he had found no opportunity of exploring the coast of Britain for a better landing point, so that he must have landed at any rate very near his first landing point.

Caesar set sail with a wind blowing from the southwest (chap. 8), which was not the most suitable wind for a voyage to Deal with flat-bottomed ships; but the tide was running toward the southwest and served to keep his ships from drifting down the wind to the northeast. A gentle breeze which died out at midnight could not have carried him more than half way across. Then the tide changed and carried him to the northeast for five hours, probably from twelve to fifteen miles; and in the morning he saw that he had got farther away from Britain, which now lay at his left. The Goodwin Sands prevented his making directly for Deal, so that he had nearly twenty-five miles to row. The tide, which again changed to the southwest, helped him at first, but not in the latter part of his voyage, so that it was nearly midday before he reached Deal.

The route in Britain is that of Napoleon and Rüstow, but too few data are given by Caesar to make any part of it certain.
LIBER QUINTUS.


Chap. 1-5. Caesar makes all preparations for a second invasion of Britain.

Chap. 1. Caesar gives orders for the construction of a fleet. He goes to Illyricum.

1. L. Domitiō . . . cōnsulibus: in the year 54 B.C. The consuls took office on Jan. 1, and Caesar seems to have remained with the army till after that day, no doubt visiting the various winter quarters and seeing the work of ship-building well started.

4. aedificāndās cūrārent: see App. 285, II, 6. The ships were probably constructed at several points on the rivers of Belgium.

5. subductiōnis: the Romans regularly beached their ships for the winter. See also IV, 29, 4.

6. humiliōrēs: probably both less deep in the water and less high out of the water. They must have been nearly flat-bottomed.

quam quibus, "than those which."

nostro mari: the Mediterranean.

7. atque id: "and [he did] that."

propter . . . aestuum: an incorrect reason.

10. lātiōrēs; like humiliōrēs, a predicate adjective with facit.

reliquīs maribus: the various parts of the Mediterranean.

11. āctuāriās: i.e. they had both oars and sails. The transports used in the preceding expedition had no oars, though the galleys did have them.

imperat fierī: note the unusual infinitive with imperō, which usually takes ut or nē with the subjunctive. The passive infinitive only is thus used.

humilitās: if the sides had been high it would have been necessary to cut portholes for the oars.

12. ex Hispāniā: the Romans got their best ropes and much of their metal from Spain.
Illyricum proficiscitur, quod à Pīrūstīs fīnitimam partem prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstāri audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, civitātibus mīlitēs imperat certumque in locum convenire iubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pīrūstae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt quī doceant nihil eārum rērum públicō factum cōnsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrēnt omnibus ratiōnibus dē iniūriis satisfacere. Perceptā oūatiōne eōrum Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūcī iubet; nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō civitātem persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat. Iīs ad diem adductīs ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter civitātēs dat quī lītem aestimēnt poenamque cōnstituunt.

2. Hīs cōnfectīs rēbus conventibusque perāctīs in citeriōrem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circumītīs omnibus hībernīs singulārī militum studiō in summā omnium rērum inopīa circiter sescentās eīus generis cuius supra dēmōnstrāvimus nāvēs et longās xxviii invenit īnstrūctās, neque multum abesse ab eō, quin paucīs dīēbus dēdūcī possint. Collaudātīs militibus atque iīs quī negotiō praefuerant, quid fierī velīt ostendit atque omnēs ad portum Itium convenire iubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam trāiectum esse cognōverat, circiter milium passuum XXX ā continentī; huic reī quod satis esse visum est mīlitum relin-

14. Illyricum: this was his second visit; see III, 7, 3.
18. eārum rērum: i.e. the raids.
23. dat, "he appointed."
poenam, "compensation."

Chap. 2. Caesar inspects the fleet and leads a force against the Treveri.

1. conventibus: in Illyricum: he had already held court in Cisalpine Gaul; 1, 13. Notice Caesar’s unresting energy in the only vacation he had: between Jan. 1 and early summer he traveled from Belgium to northern Italy, held court there, went to Illyricum, cowed the Pīrūstae, held court in Illyricum, and traveled back to Belgium.

4. in, "in spite of."
5. cuius: attracted from the accusative into the case of its antecedent.
6. neque...possint, lit. "and that it was not far from this, that they could, etc." Make English of this.
8. portum Itium: see map, p. 294. This was Wissant, the harbor which he had used in the preceding year, and which he had found most suitable for his purpose (quō...cognōverat).
10. milium passuum XXX: a descriptive genitive, depending on trāiectum. This is about the length of a direct voyage to his landing point, Deal.
11. huic rei: for completing and launching the ships, and for taking them to Wissant.
quit. Ipse cum legiônibus expeditis IIII et equitibus DCCC in finés Trèverorum proficiscitur, quod hi neque ad concilia veni-
èbant neque imperió parèbant Germanòsque Trânsrhènànòs sollicitàre dicèbantur.

3. Haec civitâtis longé plurimum tòtiús Galliae equitàtù
valet magnàsque habet còpiàs peditum, Rhênumque, ut supra
démonstràvimus, tangit. In eà civitâtè duo ãe pròincipátù
inter sè contendèbant, Indutiomàrus et Cingetòriñ; ex quibus
alter, simul atque dè Caesaris legiônnumque adventù cognitum est, ad eum vènit, sè suòsque omnès in offició futùròs neque
ab amìcitìà populi Ròmâñi défèctùròs cònfìrmàvit, quaeque in
Trèveris gerentur ostendit. At Indutiomàrus equitàtum
peditàtumque cògère, ìisque qui per aetàtem in armis esse non
poterant in silvam Arduennam abditìs, quae ingenti magnità-
ìne per mediòs finès Trèverorum à flùmine Rhêñò ad initium
Rèmòrum pertinet, bellum paràre instituit. Sed posteàquam
nòn nûlli pròincipès ex eà civitâtè et auctòritátè Cingetòriñis
adductì et adventù nostrì exercitùs perterritì ad Caesarem vè-
nèrunt et dè suìs privátìs rébus ab eò petere coepèrunt, quoniam
civitâtì consulère nòn possent, veritus nè ab omnibus désèrè-
tur, lègàtòs ad Caesarem mittit: Sèsè ìdcircò ab suìs discèdere
atque ad eum venìre nòluisse, quò facilius civitâtèm in offició

12. expeditis: i.e. without the heavy baggage.
13. concilia: Caesar had now begun to call regular meetings of representa-
tives from the Gallic states. Attendance on them was a test of loyalty to
Rome.

Chap. 3. Two rival chiefs of the Treveri seek Caesar’s support.
1. haec civitâtis: the Treveri.
plurimum equitàtù valet: cf. II, 24, 11.
2. suprà: in III, 11, 1. Their proximity to the Germans made them more
restless and dangerous.
3. pròincipátù, “leadership.”
4. Indutiomàrus was the father-in-
law of Cingetòriñ.
5. alter, “the latter.”
6. suòs, “his party.”
9. cògère: with instituit.
10. ingenti magnitàdine: descript-
tive ablative with quae.
11. initium: i.e. their northeastern frontier.
13. nòn nûlli pròincipès: who be-
longed to the faction of Indutiomarus.
15. privatìs rébus, “individual in-
teres òs.”

quoniam ... possent: implied in-
direct discourse. They said, in effect, that they were not strong enough to
settle the dispute between Indutiomarus
and Cingetòriñ, and could only look out
for themselves.
18. quò: see App. 225, a, 2.
continēret, nē omnis nōbilitātis discessū plēbs propter imprūdēntiam lāberētur; itaque cīvitātem in suā potestāte esse, sēque, sī Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, et suās cīvitātīisque fortūnās eius fideī permittērum.

4. Caesar, etsī intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dicerentur quaeque eum rēs ab institūtō cōnsiliō deterrēret, tamen, nē aestātem in Trēverīs cōnsūmēre cōgerētur, omnibus rēbus ad Britannicum bellum comparātīs, Indutiomārum ad sē cum ducentīs obsidībus venīre insit. His adductīs, in īs filīo properpinquísque eius omnibus, quōs nōminātīm ēvocāverat, cōnsolātus Indutiomārum hortātusque est utī in officiō manēret; nihilō tamen sētius principibus Trēverōrum ad sē convocātīs hōs singillātīm Cingetorīgī conciliāvit, quod cum merītō eius ab sē fieri intellegēbat, tum magnī interesse arbitrābur eius auctōritātem inter suōs quam plurimum valēre, cuius tam ēgregiam in sē voluntātem perspexisset. Id factum graviter tuli Indutiomārus, suam grātiam inter suōs minuī, et quī iam ante instīmicō in nōs animō fuisset, multō gravius hōc dolōre exārsit.

5. His rēbus cōnsīlītīs Caesar ad portum Itium cum legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cognōscit LX navēs, quae in Meldis factae

19. nē, "for fear that."
20. itaque . . . esse, "therefore [because he had not come to Caesar] the whole state was in his power"; implying that he, and not Cingetorix, had the right to treat with Caesar.

Chap. 4. Caesar decides in favor of Cingetorix.

2. quae rēs: namely, the fear that all his followers would desert him.
cōnsiliō: of making war on Caesar.
3. aestātem: it was already June.
omnibus . . . comparātīs, "after all preparations had been made, etc."
8. principibus: especially those belonging to the faction of Indutiomarus.
hōs . . . conciliāvit: thus using his influence to make Cingetorix supreme in the state.
9. quod: subject of fieri; lit. "which he knew was done in accordance with, etc." Supplying "because" will help the translation; "because he knew that this was, etc."
cum . . . tum, "not only . . . but also."
10. magnī: genitive of value; "that it was of great importance."
11. cuius . . . perspexisset: a causal clause; "since, etc."
12. id factum: explained by its appositive, suam . . . minuī.
14. hōc dolōre, "this grievance, indignation at this treatment."
erant, tempestâte réiectâs cursum tenère non potuisse atque eódem unde erant profectae revertisse; reliquâs parâtâs ad návigandum atque omnibus rēbus instrûctâs invenit. Eódem 5 equitâtus tôtius Galliae convenit numerô mília quattuor princi-pêsque ex omnibus civitâtibus; ex quibus perpaucòs, quorum in sé fídem perspexerat, reliquere in Galliâ, reliquós obsidum locō sēcum dúcere dêcréverat, quod cum ipse abesset mótum Galliae verēbâtur.

6. Erat ūnâ cum cētēris Dumnorix Haeduus, dē quō ante à nóbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habĕre in prīmis cōnstitu-erat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārums, cupidum imperī, magnī animī, magnae inter Gallōs auctōritātīs cognōverat. Accéedēbat húc quod in conciliō Haeduōrum Dumnorix dīxerat 5 sibi ā Caesare rēgnum civitātīs déferri; quod dictum Haeduī graviter ferēbant, neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī causā légātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Íd factum ex suīs hospitibus Caesar cognōverat. Ille omnibus primō precibus petere contendit ut in Galliâ relinquerētur, partim quod insūtēs nāvi-gandī mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impedīrī sēsē

Chap. 5. The fleet, the legions, and the cavalry assemble at port Itiūs.
3. tempestâte réiectâs: probably while sailing from the mouth of the Sequana to Wissant.
4. eódem unde, etc.: i.e. to the mouth of the Sequana.
5. mília: in apposition with equi-tātus.
9. locō, "as."
10. cum abesset, "while he should be absent"; implied indirect discourse.

Chap. 6-7. The treachery and death of Dumnorix.

Chap. 6. Dumnorix treacherously advises the Gallic Chiefs not to accompany Caesar.
1. ante: see especially I, 3, 13, and I, 18-20, where Dumnorix is fully de-scribed.
4. animī: descriptive genitive.
5. accédēbat hūo quod, "and besides."
7. graviter ferēbant: because they had no king, and wanted none. They were prepared to believe the statement, because Caesar had set up kings in a few other states; see, for example, IV, 21, 13. neque audēbant, "and yet did not dare"; probably because they feared Dumnorix.
9. petere contendit, "earnestly begged."
10. quod timēret: a quoted reason; "because, as he said, etc."
11. quod diceret: we should expect either the indicative, dīcēbat, since the verb of saying is not quoted, or simply impediērētur, with no verb of saying. But a subjunctive verb of saying is often used in quoting a reason.
reliōnibus, "religious scruples." Perhaps he claimed to have religious duties which required his presence in Gaul, or that he had vowed never to leave the country.
diceret. Posteaquam id obstinatè sibi negari vidit, omni spē
impetrandī adēmptā principēs Galliae sollicitāre, sævocāre sin-
gulōs hortārique coepit uti in continentī remanērent, metū
territāre: Nōn sine causā fieri ut Gallia omni nōbiltāte spoliā-
rētur; id esse cōnsiliūm Caesaris, ut quōs in cōnspectū Galliae
interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam tràductōs necā-
ret: fidem reliquīs interpōnere, iūs iūrandum poscere ut quod
esse ex üsū Galliae interīxicissent commūnī cōnsiliō administrā-
rent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

7. Quā re cognītā Caesar, quod tantum civitātī Haeduae
dignitātīs tribuebat, coercendum atque deterrendum quibus-
cumque rebus posset Dumnorigem statutebat; quod longius
eius àmentiām prōgredi vidēbat, prōspiciendum nē quid sibi ac
reī pūblicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō
commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvīgātiōnem impediēbat, quī
magnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs flāre consuēvit,
dabat operam ut in officiō Dumnorīgēm continēret, nihilō tamēn
sētius omnia eius cōnsilia cognōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus
tempestātem militēs equitēisque consendere nāvēs iubet. At
omnium impeditīs animīs Dumnorīx cum equībus Haeduŏrum
ā castrīs inscīente Caesare domūs discēdere coepit. Quā re
nūntiātā Caesar intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus
postpositīs magnam partem equitātūs ad eum īnsequendum
mittit retrahiēque imperat; sī vim faciēt neque pareat, interfici
iubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō factūrum arbitrātūs, quī

---

15. fierī, esse: indirect discourse, depending on a verb of saying implied in territāre.
18. fidem interpōnere, "he pledged his word." interpōnere and poscere are in the same construction as territāre, depending on coepit.
19. interīxicissent: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect.

Chap. 7. Dumnorīx fēes, but is pursued and killed.
1. quod ... tribuebat: Caesar had found the Haeduī at the head of a powerful league and had increased their influence. It was a serious matter to have so strong a state discontented.
4. prōspiciendum (esse), " that he must see to it"; depending on statutebat. sibi: i.e. Caesar.
13. omnibus rebus, "everything else."
15. retrahi imperat: cf. note on imperat fierī, 1, 11.
16. prō sānō, "like a sane man." qui, "since he."
praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resi-
tere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coept
saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse cīvitātis. Illī, ut
erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at
equītēs Haeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

8. His rēbus gestīs, Labiēnō in continentī cum tribus legi-
ōnibus et equitum mīlibus duōbus relictō ut portūs tuērētur
et rem frūmentāriam prōvidēret quaeque in Galliā gererentur
cognōsceret cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse,
cum quīnque legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum quem in con-
tinentī relinquēbat, ad sōlis occāsūm nāvēs solvit, et lēnī Āfricō
prōvectus mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō cursum nōn
tenuit, et longius dēlātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britan-
niam relictam cōnspexit. Tum rūrsus aestūs commūtātiōnem
secūtus rēmīs contendit ut eam partem īnsulae caperet quā
optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cognōverat. Quā in
rē admodum fuit mīlitum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravi-
busque nāvigiīs nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre longārum
nāvium cursum adaequārunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam
omnibus nāvibus merīdiānō ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hos-

18. manū: i.e. with the weapons in
his hands.

20. interficiunt: this deed must
have made a deep impression upon the
Gallic nobles, who saw one of their
order struck down for asserting his
liberty of action. Without doubt it
helped to bring on the great revolt
described in Book VII.

Chap. 8-11. Though successful in
landing and in routing the enemy,
Caesar is so delayed by a disaster to
his fleet that the enemy have time to
unite against him.

Chap. 8. Caesar sails to Britain
and lands without opposition.

1. Labiēnō: Caesar was leaving only
half as many legions in Gaul as he had
left there the year before; therefore he
left his best lieutenant.

3. quaeque ... gererentur: he
may have feared the effect of the death
of Dumnorix.

4. prō ... rē, "according to the oc-
casion and circumstances."

5. parī quem, "equal (to that)
which", "the same as."

6. ad sōlis occāsūm: about 8
P.M.

It is supposed that the day was July
29. For the course of the voyage and
an explanation of the details which fol-
low in the text, see the map and ex-
planation on p. 294.

8. et, "but."

sub ... relictam: i.e. he had got
farther away from Britain, and it lay
on his left.

12. virtūs, "spirit."

vectōriīs ... nāvigiīs, lit. "with
ships built for carrying and heavy," =
"though in heavily laden transports."
tis est visus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivīs cognōvit, cum
magnae manūs eō convĕnissent, multītūdine nāvium perterri-
tae, quae cum annōtinīs privātīsque, quās suī quīque commodī
causā fēcerat, amplius octingentae ūnō erant visae tempore, ā
lītore discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

9. Caesar expositō exercītū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ubi
ex captivīs cognōvit quō in locō hostium cōpiāe cōnsēdissent,
cohortibus x ad mare relīctīs et equītibus cccc qui praeсидīo
nāvibus essent, dē tertīā vigīliā ad hostēs contendit, eō minus
veritus nāvibus, quod in lītore mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad
ancorās relinquēbat. Eī praeсидīo nāvibusque Q. Ātrium prae-
fēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus mīlia passuum circiter xii hos-
tium cōpiās cōnspicātus est. Illī equītātū atque essedīs ad
flūmen prōgressī ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proe-
lium committere coepērunt. Repulsi ab equītātū sē in silvās
abdidērunt, locum nactī ēgregiēt et nātūrā et operē mūnītum,
quem domestici bellī, ut vidēbātur, causā iam ante praeparā-
verant; nam crēbris arboribus succīsīs omnēs introitūs erant
praecūsī. Ipsī ex silvīs rārī prōpugnābant nostrōsque intrā
mūniōnēs ingredī prohibēbant. At mīlītēs legiōnis septīmae
testūdine factā et aggere ad mūniōnēs adiectō locum cēpērunt

18. quīisque fēcerat, "individuals had made." Some of his officers were
wealthy, and no doubt some of the men who were "following Caesar for friend-
ship's sake" (I, 39, 10, note) were weil-
to-do. And probably the slave dealers
had ships of their own.

20. superiōra loca: the higher
ground some twelve miles inland, just
across the Little Stour; see map.

Chap. 9. Caesar at once marches
inland and scatters the enemy.

1. locō: near the sea-shore.

3. cohortibus X: two from each
legion.

5. nāvibus: indirect object of ver-
tus.

lītore . . . apertō: i.e. the bot-
tom was gravelly and there were no
rocky cliffs along the shore. Caesar
seems to have thought that the ships
might be blown on shore without much
harm. It is strange that he did not
take warning from his previous experi-
ence.

8. ad flūmen: the Little Stour.

11. opere, "by art."

13. arboribus succīsīs: they had
probably felled the trees so that their
tops lay outward. If piled thickly
enough, with their branches shortened
and sharpened, they would make an ef-
fective defense.

14. rārī, "in small bodies."

15. legiōnis septīmae: this legion
had met with a reverse on the preceding
expedition (IV, 32), and was eager for
revenge.

16. aggere . . . adiectō: they piled
eōsque ex silvis expulērunt paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequī vetuit, et quod locī nātūram ignorābat et quod magnā parte diēi cōnsūmpťa mūnītiōnī castrōrum tempus relinquī volebat.

10. Postrīdē eius diēi māne tripertītō militēs equitēisque in expeditiōnem mīsit, ut eōs qui fūgerant persequerentur. His alīquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātrīō ad Caesarem vēnērunt qui nūn-tiārent superiōre nocte maximā coortā tempestāte prope omnēs nāvēs affliētās atque in litus cīectās esse, quod neque ancōræ fūnēsque subsisterent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis patī possent; itaque ex eō concursū nāvium magnum esse incommōdum acceptūm.

11. Hīs rēbus cognītīs Caesar legionēs equitātūmque revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem fērē quae ex nūntiīs cognōverat cōram perspicet, sic ut āmissīs circiter XL nāvibus reliqua tamen ūlesc possīt posse magnō negotiō vidērentur. Itaque ex legionibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs acressi iubet; Labiēnō scribit ut quam plurīmās possit iīs legionibus quae sint apud eum nāvēs instītūt. Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuīt omnēs nāvēs subdūcī et cum castrīs ūnā mū-

**Chap. 10.** Caesar is recalled by the news that his fleet is wrecked.

1. tripertītō: the enemy were scattered, so that it only remained to pursue small bodies and ravage the country.

3. extrēmī: only the rear guard of the Romans was now in sight of the camp.

4. Ātrīō: he had been left in charge of the camp by the sea.

7. neque subsisterent, "did not hold."

8. concursū, "dashing together."

**Chap. 11.** The fleet is repaired and beached. In the meantime the Britons unite under Cassivellaunus.

3. cōram, "with his own eyes."

sīc ut, "to such an extent that," i.e. the report was true to this extent.

5. ex ... dēligit: we must understand that Caesar sent for the legions from the camp at the Little Stour. The skilled workmen among the soldiers were detailed to repair the ships, while the rest beached them and built a wall around them.

8. multae ... labōris: the 800 ships, even if drawn up in four lines, would occupy about a mile of the seafront. Merely building a wall around so great a space was no light task.
nūtīone coniungī. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs x cōnsūmit nē nocturnīs quīdem temporibus ad labōrem mīlitum intermissīs. Subductīs nāvibus castrīsque ēgregiē mūnītīs eāsdem cōpiās quās ante praesidiō nāvibus relinquit, ipse eōdem unde redierat proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, maiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiāe Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperī bellīque administrandī communī communēs permissā Cassivellaunō; cuīs fīnēs a maritimīs civitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tamesis, a mari circiter mīlia passuum lxxx. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquis civitātibus continentia bella intercesse-

10 15 20
rant; sed nostrō adventū permótī Britanni hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefecerant.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab īs incolitur quōs nātōs in īnsula īpsā memoriā prōditum dīcunt, maritīma pars ab īs quī praedae ac bellī īnferendī causā ex Belgīō trānsīerunt (quī om-nēs fere īisdem nōminibus civitātūm appellantur quibus ortī ex civitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō illātō ībi permānsērunt atque agrōs colere coeptūrunt. Hominum est īnfīnīta multītūdō crēberrimaque aedīficā cōnsimilia, pecoris magnus numerus. Ûtuntur aut nummō aureō aut tāleis ferreis ad certum pondus exāminātīs prō nummō. Nāscitur ībi plum-

13. quās ante: supply reliquerat. eōdem: to the camp across the Little Stour. summā... administrandī, “the chief command and the direction of the war.”

18. milia... LXXX: Caesar naturally gives the distance by the route which he followed from his landing place to the ford by, which he crossed the Thames. huic... intercesserant, “he had carried on incessant wars, etc.”


1. quōs nātōs (esse): subject of prō-dītum (esse); “whose origin upon the island itself is handed down, they say, by tradition.” The meaning is that they were descended from ancestors who sprang from the soil of Britain. A similar belief about themselves was held by other ancient races. 2. quī... trānsīerunt: this was true. The Celtic invaders had passed over to Britain and partly dispossessed the earlier inhabitants, just as they had in Gaul; see Int. 25.

4. quibus... pervēnērunt, “from which they have descended and migra-ted hither.” The antecedent is repeated, as often, and must be omitted in translation.

7. crēberrima: supply sunt. 9. plumbum album: the mines are in Cornwall, the extreme southwestern part of the island, so that Caesar is mistaken as to their location. Centuries
SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN, B.C. 54

... before this time the Phoenicians had obtained tin which came from these mines.

11. **exigua cōpia**: this accounts for its use as money. It is now found in abundance.

12. **praeter abietem**: a mistake. Both trees are native to Britain.

14. **animi...causā**, "for amusement"; i.e. as pets.

Chap. 13. The form and size of Britain.

As no Roman had ever sailed around the island or traveled in it, it is not surprising that Caesar's description of it is inaccurate. He comes much nearer the truth than might have been expected.

2. **quō**: the adverb.

3. **inferior**: supply *angulus*.

5. **alterum**: supply *latus*.

**vergit ad Hispāniam**: this is a surprising mistake, but one that prevailed long after Caesar's time. The error was much worse than appears on the map, for Caesar thought that Spain extended farther north and nearer Britain. More than a hundred years later Tacitus says that Ireland lies between Britain and Spain.

6. **dimidiō minor**, "smaller by half", "half as large."

7. **parī...atque**, lit. "but with an equal length of passage across as." *spatiō* is a descriptive ablative.

8. **in...cursū**, "halfway across."
insula, quae appellatur Mona; complurès praeterēā minórēs 10 obiectae insulae existimantur; dē quibus insulis nón nullī scripsērunt diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontatōniōnibus reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūris breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Huius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opinīō, DCC mīlium. 15 Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs; cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus alter maximō ad Germāniam spectat. Hoc mīlium passuum DCCC in longitūdīnem esse existimātur. Ita omnisinsula est in circuitū väciēs centum mīlium passuum.

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī qui Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt consuetūdine. Interiōrēs plērique frūmentā nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestīti. 5 Omēs vēro sē Britannī vitrö inficiunt, quod caerueum efficit colōrem, atque hoc horribiliōrēs sunt in pugnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praetēr caput et labrum superius.

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriūque ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, ita tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās col-

10. insula: probably the Hebrides and Orkney Islands.
12. nisi, "except that."
13. certīs ... mēnsūris, "by exact measurements by the water-clock." The Romans used instruments on the principle of the hour-glass, using water instead of sand; i.e. time was measured by the amount of water that dropped through a small hole in the bottom of a vessel.
15. cui ... terra: Caesar knows nothing of Scandinavia.
16. angulus alter: this is at Kent, the one first mentioned.
18. väciēs ... passuum: this is too great, as Caesar has over-estimated the length of each side.

1. hīs: the tribes of Britain.
3. interiōrēs, "the inhabitants of the interior."
6. aspectū: ablative of specification.
capillō, parte: descriptive ablatives.

Chap. 15-17. After several skirmishes the Britons are decisively defeated, and they avoid further pitched battles.
Chap. 15. Skirmishes between the Britons and the Romans.
2. in itinere: i.e. on the march from the sea to the camp across the Little Stour. This chapter resumes the narrative which was broken off at the end of chap. 11.
3. fuerint: notice the exception to sequence; App. 204, a.
lœsque compulerint; sed complûribus interfectîs cupidius insecûti nôn nûllûs ex suîs âmîsûrunt. At illî intermissû spatiô, 5 imprûdentibus nostrîs atque occupâtûs in mûnîtione castrûrum, subîtô sê ex silvis êïecêrunt impetûque in eûs factû qui erant in stâtione prô castris collocâtû àcriter pugnâvérunt; duûbusque missûs subsûdîo cohorîbus à Caesare, atque hîs prûmis légionûm duûrûm, cum eae perexiguô intermissô locî spatiô inter sê côn- stîtisset, novô genere pugnau perterritûs nostrûs, per mediôs audácissîmê perrûpûrunt sêque inde incolûmûs recêpûrunt. Eô diê Q. Laberius Dûrus, tribûnûs milîtûm, interfûcitur. Illî plûribus submissûs cohorîbus repelluntur.

16. Tôtô hûc in genere pugnau, cum sub oculûs omnûm ac prô castrûs dîmicârêtûr, intellêctûm est nostrûs propter gravi-tâtêm armûrum, quod neque insequi cêdentês possent neque ab signûs discêdêre audêrent, minus aptûs esse ad huius generis hostem; equîtûs autem magnô cum periculu proelîo dîmicâre, 5 propterêa quod illî etiam cûnsûltû plêrumque cêderent et, cum paulûm ab légionûbus nostrûs remvêssissent, ex essedîs désilîrent et pedûbus disparî proelîo contênderent. Accêdêbat hûc ut numquam cûnfêrti, sed rârî magnîsque intervallûs proelîären-

---

6. imprûdentibus ... occupâtûs, "while our men were off their guard and engaged."
7. qui ... collocâtûi: probably a single cohort, stationed just outside the praetorian gate; see the plan of a camp, Int. 51.
9. atque hîs prûmis, "and these the first (cohorts)"; which contained the best officers and men.
10. perexiguô ... sê, "with a very little space between them." Apparently the two cohorts left the camp by the two side gates and got around in the rear of the enemy who were attacking in front of the camp, intending to cut off their retreat. But as the two cohorts did not quite meet, the enemy escaped between them.
11. novô genere: evidently these cohorts had not taken part in the first invasion of Britain.

13. illî ... repelluntur: when the enemy escaped from the position in which they were attacked both front and rear, they turned again and attacked the three cohorts. It then required several more cohorts to put them to flight.

Chap. 16. The tactics of the Britons put the Romans at a disadvantage.
2. nostrûs: the infantry.
4. ab signûs discêdêre, "to break ranks"; because they had been trained to fight only in regular formation.
6. illî: the Britons.
7. nostrûs: the cavalry.
ex essedîs, etc.: on the tactics of the charioteers, see IV, 33, and especially the note on l. 4.
tur stationésque dispositás habérent, atque aliós alií deinceps exciperent integrique et recentés défatigátis succéderent.

17. Posterò die procul à castris hostés in collibus cónstitérunt rárique sè ostendere et lènius quam pridiè nostrós equités proeliió lacesseré coepérunt. Sed meridiè cum Caesar pábulandí causá trés legionés atque omnem equitátem cum C. Trebóñió légáto mísisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pábulatórēs advolávérunt, sic utí ab signís legiónibusque nón absisterent. Nostrí ácriter in eos impetū factō repulléruant neque finem sequéndi fécérunt quoad subsidió cónfisi equités, cum post sè legiónés vidérent, præcipités hostés égérunt, magnóque eorum numeró interfécto neque suí colligendi neque cónsistenti aut ex essédis désiliéndi facultátis dedérent. Ex hác fugá prótinus quae undique convénérunt auxilia discésserunt, neque post id tempus umquam summís nóbiscum cópiás hostés contendérint.

18. Caesar cogníti cónsilió eōrum ad flúmen Tamesim in finés Cassivellauni exercitum dúsit; quod flúmen únō omnínō locó pedibus, atque hóc aegrè, tránsirí potest. Eò cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flúminis ripam magnás esse cópiás hostium ōnúncius. Ripa autem erat acútis sudibus

10. stationés, “reserves.”
aliós alií, “one another.”

Chap. 17. The Britons attack three legions while foraging. After a decisive defeat they refuse any further pitched battle.
1. á castris: Caesar is still in camp just west of the Little Stour.
4. trés . . . equitátem: an unusually large foraging party. The novel tactics of the enemy inspired respect.
5. repente . . . advolávérunt: just as they had done in the preceding year; IV, 32.
6. sic utí, “so fiercely that”; i.e. they even attacked the troops which had been kept under arms to protect the foragers.
8. sequéndi: the enemy were not yet routed, but were retreating slowly.
12. ex, “after.”
quae . . . auxilia: cf. 11, 15.
14. summís cópiás, “in full force.”

Chap. 18-21. Caesar marches inland, receives the submission of several tribes, and takes the stronghold of Cassivellaunus.

Chap. 18. Caesar marches to the Thames and forces a passage in the face of the enemy.
1. cónsilió: i.e. not to fight pitched battles but to prolong the war and wear out the Romans.
2. dúsit: see map, p. 394.
únō locō: at present there are several fords, and it is uncertain which Caesar used.
3. atque hóc (locō) aegrè, “and even there with difficulty.”
praefixis mūnita, eiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. His rēbus cognitis ā captīvis perfugisque Caesar praemissō equitātū cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impētū mīlitēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstarent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre non possent rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, omnī dēpositā spē contentiōnis, dimissīs ampliōribus cōpiis, milibus circiter quattuor essedāriōrum relictīs, itinerā nostra servābat paulumque ex via excēdēbat locīisque impeditābāt, atque iīs regiōnibus quibus nōs iter factūrōs cognōverat pecora atque agrīs in silvās compellēbat et, cum equitātus noster liberius praedandi vastandique causā sē in agrōs cīcerat, omnibus viis sēmitīisque essedāriōs ex silvis emittebat et magnō cum periculō nostrōrum equitum cum his cōnfīgēbat, atque hoc metu, vagari prohibebat. Relinquēbātur ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, et tantum agrīs vāstantīs incendiisque faciendīs hostibus nocērētur quantum in lābōre atque itinere legiōnāriī mīlitēs efficere poterant.

6. praefīxis: i.e. projecting forward from the northern bank.

8. praemissō equitātū: they probably swam the stream above or below the ford and attacked the enemy’s flank.

9. iērunt: how they passed the stakes is not said; but such obstacles could only delay, not stop, a charge. The Romans could not use hatchets under water, as has been supposed; but they could climb over the stakes or perhaps pull them up.

11. dīmitterent, “abandoned.”

Chap. 19. Cassivellaunus adopts a plan of systematically harassing the Romans.

1. suprā: in 17, 13.

2. contentiōnis, “of winning pitched battles.”

3. itinerā servābat, “kept watching our movements.”

4. locīs... silvestribus: the chariots must have been narrow, to pass among the trees; and their wheels must have been high, to pass over rough ground.

7. cum elīcerat: for mode, see App. 241, b.

10. hoc metū, “by fear of this”; cf. hoc dolōre, 4, 14. relinquēbātur, “the result was.”

11. discēdī (ab equitibus): impersonal; “the cavalry to diverge from.”

12. tantum hostibus nocērētur, “that only so much damage was inflicted on the enemy.”

13. in... itinere, lit. “in hard work and marching,” = “in their toil-some marches.” The whole sentence
20. Interim Trinovantes, prope firmissima eorum regionum civitates, ex quae Mandubracius adulescens Caesaris fidem secutus ad eum in continentem venerat, cuius pater in ea civitate regnum obtinuerat interfactusque erat a Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vitāverat, légātōs ad Caesaremmittuntpolicenturque sēse eī dēditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt ut Mandubracium ab iniuriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat atque in civitātem mittat quī praeśit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsidēs quadrāgintā frūmentumque exercitui, Mandubraciumque ad eos mittit. Illī imperāta celeriter fecerunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque miserunt.

21. Trinovantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omni militum iniuriā prohibitīs, Cēnimagnī, Segontiācī, Ancalītēs, Bibrocī, Cassī lēgātitōnibus missīs sēse Čaesarī dēdunt. Ab hīs cognōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellaunī abesse silvīs paludibusque mūnītum, quō satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convenerit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant cum silvās impeditās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vitandae causā convenire cōnsuērunt. Eō proficisci tur cum legiōnibus; locum reperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum, tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppugnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī militum nostrōrum impetum

means that the army could devastate only the narrow strip through which the infantry could march, whereas the cavalry ought to have laid waste the country for miles on each side of the way.

Chap. 20. The Trinovantes voluntarily offer submission.

1. Trinovantēs: in Essex; see map.
3. ad eum . . . vēnerat: probably among those mentioned in IV. 21, 10.
4. ipse, "(while) he himself"; i.e. Mandubracius.
8. mittat: the object is Mandubraceutum.
praesit: supply eī, referring to civitātem.

Chap. 21. Other tribes submit.

Caesar takes the stronghold of Cassivellaunus.

1. dēfēnsīs: from Cassivellaunus.
militum (nostōrum) iniūriā: this does not imply that Caesar had marched into their country. The other states saw that Caesar did not march against those who submitted.
4. eō locō: where the envoys had come to him apparently on the northern bank of the Thames.
oppidum Cassivellaunī: supposed to be St. Albans.
6. oppidum . . . vocant cum, "the Britons call it a town when." The oppidum was a place of refuge, not a town in our sense of the word.
nōn tūlērunt sēsēque aīā ex parte oppīdī ēiēcērunt. Magnus
ībi numerus pecoris repertus multitūque in fugā sunt compro-
hēnsī atque interficit.

22. Dum haec in his locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad
Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus
regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius,
Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat utī
cōāctīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia dē imprōvisō adoriantur at
taque oppugnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostri ērup-
tiōne factā, multitūs eōrum interfecit, captō etiam nōbili duce
Lugotorīge, suōs incolūmēs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hoc
proeliō nūntiātō, tot dēstrīmentīs acceptīs, vāstātīs finibus,
maxīmē etiam permōtūs dēfectiōne civitātum, lēgātōs per
Atrebatīm Commium dē dēditione ad Caesarem mittit.

23. Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum redūcīt ad mare, nāvēs
invenit refectas. His deductīs, quod et captīvōrum magnūm
numerum habēbat et nōn nūllae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs,
duōbus commeatibus exercitum reportāre instītuit. Ac sic acci-

Chap. 22-23. Cassivellaunus at last gives hostages, and Caesar returns to Gaul.

Chap. 22. Cassivellaunus instigates an attack on the Roman fleet. When
this fails he offers hostages.

2. suprā: in 14, 2.
5. castra nāvālia: the camp by the
sea, which enclosed the fleet.
10. dēfectiōne: cf. 21, 2.
12. proerit . . . mōtūs: there were
none as yet, but he feared there would
be if he kept so large a part of his army
in Britain.
13. superesest: it was now late in

August or early in September.

id . . . posse, "that this time could
easily be wasted"; i.e. if he tried to
capture or thoroughly subdue Cassivela-
unus.
14. quid . . . vectīgālis, "how
much tribute each year"; an empty
form, since no troops were left to en-
force payment. None was paid; nor
did any Roman army return to Britain
till 43 A.D., nearly a century later.

Chap. 23. Caesar returns to Gaul.

4. commeatibus, "voyages,"
"trips"; the original meaning of the
word.
dit uti ex tantō nāvium numerō tot nāvigātiōnibus neque hoc neque superiōre annō ālla omnīnō nāvis quae militēs portāret désiderāretur; at ex īs quae inānēs ex continenti ad eum remitterentur priōris commeātūs expositīs militibus et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat, numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae ferē omnēs réicerentur. Quās cum aliquam-diū Caesar frūstrā exspectāset, nē annī tempore ἀ nāvigātiōne excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, neque neque superiōre anno ultima omnīnī navis quae militēs portaret desiderāverat; at ex īs inānēs ex continenti, reliquae ferē omnēs réicerentur. Quās cum aliquam-

24. Subductīs nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samarobriviae perāctō, quod eō annō frumentum in Galliā propter siccitātēs angustiōs prōvēnerat, coāctus est aliter ac superiōribus annīs exercitum in hibernis collocāre legiōnēsque in plurēs civitātēs distribuere. Ex quibus ūnam in Morinōs dūcendam C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nerviōs Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esu-
vīōs L. Rōsciō; quārtem in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō in cōnfiniō Trēverōrum hiemāre iussit; trēs in Bellovacici collocāvit; hīs M. Crassum et L. Munātium Plancum et C. Trebōnium lēgā-
tōs praefēcit. Űnam legiōnem, quam proxīmē trāns Padum cōnscripserat, et cohortēs quīnque in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī sub imperiō Ambi-
orīgis et Catuvolci erant, mīsit. Hīs militibus Q. Titūrium Sabīnum et L. Aurunculēiūm Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit.

Ad hunc modum distribūtīs legiōnibus faccīllīm inopiae reī frumentāriāe sēsē medērī posse existimāverat. Atque hārum

5. tot nāvigātiōnibus: ablative absolute.
8. priōris . . . militibus: "having landed the soldiers from the first trip."
et quās: coordinate with quae; the antecedent is ex īs.
9. faciendās cūrāverat: for construction, see App. 285, II, b; for the fact, see 11, 6.
locum, "destination."
10. caperent, réicerentur: in the same construction as désiderārerunt.
12. quod . . . suberat: it was, therefore, somewhere near Sept. 20, and Caesar had been in Britain two months; see note on ad sólis occāsum, 8, 6.
angustius . . . collocāvit, "crowd-
ed the soldiers rather closely."
13. secundā vigiliā, primā lūce: the voyage, therefore, occupied about nine hours.
tamen omnium legiōnum hīberna, praeter eam quam L. Rōsciō in pācātissimam et quiētissimam partem dūcendam dederat, mīlibus passuum centum continēbantur. Ipsa interea, quoad legiōnes collocatās mūnītaque hīberna cognōvisset, in Galliā 20 morāri cōnstituit.


26. Diēbus circiter xv quibus in hīberna ventum est, initium repentīnī tumultūs ac défectionis ortum est ab Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō, quī, cum ad finēs rēgni suī Sabinō Cottaequ praestō fuissent frūmentumque in hīberna comportāvissent, Indutiōmāri Trēverī nūntiis impulsi suōs concitāvĕrunt subitoque oppressīs lignātōribus magnā manū ad castra oppugnanda venērunt. Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vallumque ascendissent atque, ūnā ex parte Hispānīs equitūs ēmissīs, equestri proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppugnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvĕrunt uti aliquī ex nostrīs ad colloquium prōdíret: Habēre sēsē quae dē rē commūnī dicere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minuī posse spērārent.

27. Mittitur ad eōs colloquendī causā C. Arpīnēius, eques Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Titurī, et Q. Iūnius ex Hispāniā qui dam, qui iam ante missū Caesari ad Ambiorīgem ventitāre consuērat; apud quōs Ambiorīx ad hunc modum locūtus est:
Sese pro Caesaris in se beneficiis plurimum ei confiteri debere, quod eius operae stipendiio liberatus esset quod Atuatucis, finitimis suis, pendere consuisset, quodque ei et filius et fratris filius a Caesare remissi essent, quos Atuatuci obsidum numerō missōs apud se in servitūte et catēnis tenuissent; neque id quod fécerit dē oppugnatiōne castrorum aut iūdiciō aut voluntate suā fēcisse, sed caelestis civitātis; suaque eis modi imperia ut non minus habēret iūris in se multitudō quam ipse in multitūdinem. Civitātī porro hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod repentinae Gallōrum consiūratiōnīi resistere non potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod non adeō sit imperitus rērum ut suīs cōpiis populum Rōmānum superāri posse confidant. Sed esse Galliae commūne cōnsilium; omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandōs hunc esse dictum diem, ne qua legiō alteri legiōni subsidii veniēre posset. Non facile Gallōs Gallis negāre potuisse, præsertim cum dē recuperandā commūni libertāte cōnsilium initum vidērētur. Quibus quo-niam prō pietāte satiśfēcerit, habēre nunc sē rationēm offici prō beneficiis Caesaris; monēre, orāre Titurium prō hospitio ut suae ac militum salūti cōnsulat. Magnam manum Germā-nōrum conductam Rhēnum tranśisse; hanc affere biduō. Ip-sōrum esse cōnsilium velintne, prīnsquam finitimī sentiēnt, ēductōs ex hibernis militēs aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnūm dēducere, quōrum alter milia passuum circiter quīnquāgintā, alter paulō amplius ab īs absit. Illud sē pollicēri et iūre iū-strō condīmiōrē, tūtum sē iter per suōs finēs datūrum. Quod cum faciat, et civitāti sēsē cōnsulere, quod hibernis levētur, et Caesarī prō eius meritiās grātiam referre. Hāc oratiōne habēta discēdēt Ambiorīx.

28. Arpincius et Iūnius quae audierant ad lēgātōs dēfē runt. Illī repentiinā ré perturbātī, etsī ab hoste ea dicēban-tur, tamen non neglegendā existimābant, maximēque hāc ré permovēbantur, quod civitātem ignōbilem atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populo Rōmānō bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum. Itaque ad cōnsilium rem dēferunt,
magnaque inter eōs existit contrōversia. L. Aurunculēius complūresque tribūnī mīlitum et prīmōrum ordinum centuri-ōnēs nihil temerē agendum neque ex hibernīs iniusṣū Caesaris discēdendum existimābant; quantāsvīs cōpiās Germānōrum 10 sustīnērī posse mūnītis hibernīs docēbant; rem esse testimōniō, quod prīmum hostium impetum multīs ultrō vulneribus illātīs fortissīmē sustinuerint; rē frūmentāriā nōn premī; interē et ex proximīs hibernīs et ā Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrēmō quid esse levius aut turpius quam auctōre hoste dē sum-15 mīs rēbus capere cōnsilium?

29. Contrā ea Titūrius sērō factūrōs clāmitābat, cum maiōrēs manūs hostium adiēntēs Germānīs convēnissent, aut cum a liquid calamitātīs in proximīs hibernīs esset acceptūm. Brevem cōnsulēndi esse occāsiōnem. Caesarem sē arbitrārī profectum ē Italiam; neque aliter Carnūtēs interficiēndi Tas-5 getī cōnsilium fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs. Sēsē nōn hostem auctōrem, sed rem spectāre; subesse Rhēnum; magnō esse Ger- mānīs dolōri Ariovistī mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victoriās; ārdēre Galliam tot contumēliās acceptīs sub populī Rōmānī imperium redāctum, superiōre gloriā reī militāris exstinctā; ā utramque partem esse tūtam: sī nihil esset dūrius, nūllō cum periculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; sī Gallia omnis cum Germānīs cōnsentīret, ānām esse in celeritāte positam salūtem. Cottae quidem atque eōrum quī dissentirent cōnsilium quem habēre exitum? in quō sī nōn praesēns periculum, at certē longinquā obsiōdiōne famēs esset timenda.

30. Hāc in utramque partem disputātiōne habitā, cum ā Cottā prīmīsque ordinibus ācriter resisterētur, 'Vincite,' inquit, 'sī ita vultis,' Sabīnus, et id clāriōre vōce, ut magna pars mīlitum exaudīret; 'neque is sum,' inquit, 'quī gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis periculō terrear; hī sapient; sī gravīus quid acciderit, abs tē rationēm reposcent, quī, sī per tē liceat,
perendinō diē cum proximīs hībernīs coniūnctī commūnem cum reliquis bellī cāsum sustineant, nōn rēiectī et relēgāti longē a cēterīs aut ferrō aut famē intereant.'


32. At hostēs, posteāquam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliīsque dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, collocātīīs īnsidiīs bipertītō in silvis opportunō atque occultō locō ā milibus passuum circiter duōbus, Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant, et, cum sē maiō pars agminis in magnam convallem dēmīsisset, ex utrāque parte eius vallis subītō sē ostendērunt novissimōque premere et prīmōs prohibēre ascēnsū atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō proficiērum committere coēpērunt.

33. Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvidissent, trepidāre et concursāre cohortēsque dispōnere, haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia déficere vidērentur; quod plērumque iīs accidere cōnsuevit quī in ipsō negotiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, quī cōgıtāisset haec posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nūllā in ré commūnī salūtī deerat; et in appellantīs cohortandīisque militibus imperātōris et in pugnā militis officia praestābat. Cum propter longītūdinem agminis nōn facile omnia per
REBELLION OF THE EBURONES, B.C. 54

sē obīre et quid quōque locō faciendum esset prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiārī ut impedimenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōnsisterent. Quod cōnsilium etsī in eius modī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē accidit; nam et nostrīs mīlitibus spem minuit et hostēs ad pugnam alacriōrēs effecit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut vulgō mīlitēs ab signis discēderent, quaeque quīseque eōrum cārissima habēret ab impedimentis petere atque arripere properāret, clāmōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

34. At barbarīs cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā acīcē prōnūntiārī iussērunt nē quis ab locō discēderet: Illōrum esse praedam atque illīs reservāri quaecumque Rōmānī reliquisserint; proinde omnia in victōriā posita existimārent. Nostrī tametsī ab duce et ā fortūnā désērēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotīēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorīx prōnūntiārī iubet ut procul tēla coniciant neu propius accēdant et quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint cēdant (levitāte armōrum et cotīdānā exercitātiōne nihil iīs nocērī posse), rūrsus sē ad signa recipīentēs insequantur.

35. Quō praecceptō ab iīs diligentissimē observātō, cum quaequam cohors ex orbe exesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam partem nūdāri necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipere. Rūrsus, cum in eum locum unde erant ōgressī revertī coeperant, et ab iīs qui cesserant et ab iīs qui proxīmī steterant circumveniēbantur; sin autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus relinquēbātur neque ab tantā multitūdine coniecta tēla cōnfertī vitāre pote- rant. Tamen tot incommodis cōnflictāti, multīs vulneribus acceptīs resistēbant et magnā parte diēī cōnsūmpτā, cum ā primā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnārētur, nihil quod ipsīs esset indignum committēbant. Tum T. Balventiō, qui superi-ōre annō prīmum pilum dūxerat, virō fortī et magnae auctōri-
tātis, utrumque femur trāgulā trācītur; Q. Lūcānius, eiusdem ārīnis, fortissimē pugnāns, dum circumventō filiō subvenit, interficītur; L. Cotta lēgātus omnēs cohortēs ārīnisque ad- hortāns in adversum ōs fundā vulnerātur.

36. Hīs rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procūl Ambiorī- gem suōs cohortantem cōnspexisset, interpretēm suum, Cn. Pompeiūm, ad eum mittīt rogātum ut sībi mīlitibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondet: Si velīt sēcum colloqui, licēre;

spērāre ā multītūdine impetrāri posse quod ad mīlitum salūtem pertinēat; īpsi vērō nihil nocitum īri, inque eam rem sē suam fīdem interpōnere. Ille cum Cottā sauciō communicāt, sī videātur, pugnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorīgē ānā colloquāntur: spērāre sē ab eō dē suā ac mīlitum salūte impetrāri posse. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat atque in eō persevērat.


38. Hāc victorīā substātus Ambiorīx statim cum equitātū in Atuatucōs, qui erant eius rōgnō finitimī, proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditātumque sē subsequī
REVOLT OF THE NERVII, B.C. 54

319

iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Atuatucesque concitātīs, posterō diē
in Nervīōs pervenit hortāturque nē suī in perpetuum liberandi 5
atque ulciscendī Rōmānōs prō iīs quās accēperint iniūriīs
occāsiōnem dīmittant; interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs magnam-
que partem exercitūs interīsse dēmōnstrat: Nihil esse negoti
subītō oppressam legiōnem quae cum Cicērōne hiemet interīcī;
sē ad eam rem profitētur adiūtōrem. Facile hāc orātiōne 10
Nervīs persuādet.

39. Itaque cōnfestim dīmissī nūntiīs ad Ceutronēs,
Grudiōs, Levācōs, Pleumoxīōs, Geidumnōs, qui omnēs sub
eōrum imperiō sunt, quam maximās manūs possunt cōgunt et
dē imprōvisō ad Cicērōnis hiberna advolant, nōndum ad eum
fāmā dē Titūrī morte perlātā. Huic quoque accidit, quod 5
fuit necesse, ut nōn nūlli militēs, qui lignātiōnis mūniōniōnisque
causā in sūvās discussissent, repertīnō equitūs adventū inter-
cipendurunt. His circumventīs magnā manū Eburōnēs, Nervīī,
Atuatucī atque hōrum omnium sociī et clientēs legiōnem oppu-
gnāre incipiant. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, 10
vāllum cōnscondunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem
spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc adeptōs victōriam
in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōnfidēbant.

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ā Cicērōne litterae
magnīs prōpositīs praemiīs, si pertulissent; obsessīs omnibus
viīs missī intercipiuntur. Noctū ex eā māteriā quam mūniō-
onis causā comportāverant turrēs admodum cxx excitantur
incrēdībīlī celeritāte, quae deesse operī vidēbantur perficiuntur. 5
Hostēs posterō diē multō maiōribus coāctis cōpiis castra
oppugnant, fossam complent. Ā nostrīs cādem ratiōne quā
prīdiē resistitur. Hoc idem reliquis deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla
pars nocturnī temporīs ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs,
nōn vulnerātīs facultās quiētīs datur. Quaecumque ad proximī 10
diē oppugnātiōnem opus sunt noctū comparantur; multae
praestae sudēs, magnīs murālium pilōrum numerus institu-
tur; turrēs contabulantur, pinnae lōricaque ex crātibus
attexuntur. Ipse Cicērō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē
nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō militum concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

41. Tum ducēs principēsque Nerviōrum, qui aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte, eadem quae Ambiorīx cum Titūriō ēgerat commemorant: Omnem esse in armīs Galliām; Germānōs Rhēnum trānsīsse; Caesaris reliquōrumque hiberna oppugnārī. Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant fidei faciendae causā. Errāre eōs dīcunt, si quicquam ab īis praesidī spērent quī suīs rēbus diffidant; sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō, ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsent atque hanc inveterāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illīs incolumibus per sē ex hibernīs discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velint sine metu proficīscī. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondet: Nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condicionem; si ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre sē prō eius iūstitiā quae petierint impetrātūrōs.

42. Ab hāc spē repulsi Nervī vāllō pedum x et fossā pedum xv hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōnsuētūdine ā nōbīs cognōverant et, quōsdam dē exercitū nactī captīvōs, ab īs docēbantur; sed, nūllā ferrāmentōrum cópiā quae essent ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiis caespitēs circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitudō cognōsci potuit; nam minus hōris tribus mīlium pedum xv in circuitū mūnitionem perfecērunt. Reliquīs dēbus turrēs ad altitudīnem vāllī, falcēs testūdinēsque, quās īdem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac facere coepercīrunt.

43. Septimō oppugnātiōnis dīc maximō coortō ventō ferventēs fūsīli ex argillā glandēs fundīs et fervēfacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepercīrunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt et ventī magnīstūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Hostēs
maximō clamōre, sicuti partā iam atque explorātā victoriā, turrēs testūdinēsque agere et scālis vāllum ascendere coepe-runt. At tanta militum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammas terrērentur maximaque tēlōrum multitūdie premērentur suaque omnia impedinmenta atque omnēs fortūnās cōnflagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo dē vāllo dēcēderent nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnēs ācerrimē forteissimēque pugnārent. Hīc diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit eventum, ut eō dīcimus maximum numerus hostium vulnerāretur atque inter- ficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllo cōnstipāverant recessumque prūmis ultimī non dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammas et quōdam locō terrī adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae co-hortis centurionēs ex eō quō stābant locō recessūrunt suōsque omnēs remōvērunt, nūtū vocibusque hostēs, si introīre vellent, vocāre coepe-runt; quōrum prōgrediāus ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus coniectīs dēturbātī, turrīisque succēnsa est.


47. Hōrā circiter tertīā ab antecursōribus ēī Crassī ad-ventū certior factus ēō diē milia passuum xx prōcēdit. Crassum
Samarobrivae praeficit legiōnemque ei attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitus, obsidēs cīvitātum, litterās públicas, frumentumque omne quod eō tolerandae hiēmis causā dēvexerat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multitūd morātus in itinere cum legiōne occurrīt. Labiēnus interītū Sabīnī et caedē cohortītum cognitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverorum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus nē, si ex hibernēs fugae similem profectionēm fēcisset, hostiōn impētem sustinēre nōn possēt, praesertīm quōs recentī victōriā efferrī scīret, litterās Caesari remittit quantō cum periculō legiōnem ex hibernēs ēductūrus esset; rem gestām in Ebūrōnibus perscribit; docet omnēs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpias Trēverōrum tria mīlia passuum longē ab suis castrīs cōnsēdisse.


49. Gallī rē cognitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relinquent, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. Haec erant armāta circiter mīlia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum ab
eodem Verticône quem supra dêmonstrâvimus repetit qui litterâs ad Caesarem dêferat; hunc admonet iter cautâ diligent-terque faciat; perscribit in litteris hostës ab sé discussisse omnemque ad eum multitûdinem convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter mediâ nocte Caesar allâtis suös facit certiòrës eòsque ad dîmicândum animò cônfirmat. Posterò diè lûce prímâ movet castra et circiter milìa passuum quattuor progressus tranüs vallem et rïvum multitûdinem hostium cûnspicâtur. Erat magnî periculi rés cum tantis cópiis iniquò locò dûmicâre; tum, quoniam obsiòdônë liberâtum Cicerônem sciëbat, aequò animò remittendum de celerûtate cûsmimâbat. Cônsìdit et quam aequissimò locò potest castra commune atque haec, etì erant exigua per sè, vix hominum milium septem, praesertim nûllis cum impedîmentis, tamen angustìs viàrùm quàm maximê potest contraùbit, eò cônsiliò, ut in summam contemp- tionem hostibùs veniât. Interim speculatòribus in omnès partès dimissis explórât quò commodissimë itinere vallem trânsïre possìt.

50. Eò diè parvulis equestrìbus proelìis ad aquam factìs utriquè sèse suös locò continent: Gallî, quod ampliòrës cópias, quae nòndum convènerant, exspectàbant; Caesar, si forte timórìs simulâtìone hostës in suum locum élicere posset, ut citrà vallem prò castrìs proelìiò contendêrì; si id efficere nòn posset, ut explórâtìs itinerìbus minòre cum periculò vallem rìvumque trânsìret. Prímâ lûce hostium equitàtus ad castra accëdit proellìumque cum nostrìs equìtìbus committît. Caesar cônsultò equìtês cèdere sèque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partìbus castra altiòre vâllò mûnìri portàsque obstruí atque in his administràndìs rëbus quàm maximë concursâri et cum simulâtìone agì timórìs iubet.

51. Quibus omnibus rëbus hostës invìtâtì cópias trâdûcunt aciemque iniquò locò cônstituunt, nostrìs vërò etiam dè vâllò dëductìs propius accëdent et tëla intrâ mùnitìönem ex omni- bus partìbus coniciunt praecönìbusque circummissìss prônûn- tiàrì iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rûmànus velit ante hôram
tertiam ad sé tränśire, sine periculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Ac sic nostrōs contempsērunt, ut, obstrēctīs in speciem portīs singulīs ὀrdinibus caespitum, quod eā nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portīs èruptīōne factā equītātūque ēmissō celeriter hostēs in fugam dat, sīc utī omnīnō pugnandī causā resisteret nēmō, magnum-que ex iīs numerum occidit atque omnēs armīs exuīt.

52. Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant, omnīs suīs incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerō-nem pervenīt. Instītūtās turrēs, testūdinēs mūnītiōnēsque hostium admirātur; legiōne prōductā cognōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum mīlitēm sine vulnere; ex hīs omnibus sī iūdicat rēbus quantō periculō et quantā cum virtūte rēs sint administrātēae. Cicerōnem prō eiīs merītō legiōnemque collaudat; centūriōnēs singillātim tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisso virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cognōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certiūs ex captīvīs cognōscit. Posterō diē cōntiōne habiitā rem gestam prōpōnīt, mīlitēs cōnsōlātur et cōnfirmat; quod dētrimentum culpā et temeritātē lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequōre animō ferendum docet, quod benefi-ciō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodos neque hostibus diūtīna laetitia neque ipsīs longīor dolor relinquitūr.

53. Interim ad Labiēnūm per Rēmōs incrēdibīli celeritātē dē victoriā Caesāris fāma perfertur, ut, cum ab hibernīs Cicerōnis mīlia passuum abesset circiter LX eōque post hōram nōnam diēi Caesar pervēnisset, ante medium noctem ad portās castrōrum clāmor orerētur, quō clāmōre significātiō victoriāe grātulātiōque ab Rēmīs Labiēnō fieret. Hāc fāmā ad Trēverōs perlāta Indutiamārus, qui posterō diē castra Labiēnī oppugnāre dēcrēverat, noctū prōfugit cōpiāsque omnēs in Trēverōs redūcit. Caesar Fabium cum suā legiōne remittit in hiberna, ipse cum tribus legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvam trīnīs hibernīs hiemāre cōnstituit et, quod tantī mōtūs Galliae exstiterant,
totam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manere decrēvit. Nam illō incommodō de Sabini morte perlāto omnēs fērē Galliae civitātēs dē bellō consultābant, nūntiōs legātiōnēsque in omnēs partēs dīmittēbant, et quid reliquī cōnsili caperent atque unde initium bellī fīret explōrābant, nocturnaque in locīs désertīs concilia habēbant. Neque īllum fērē tōtīus hiemēs tempus sine sollicitūdine Caesaris intercessit, quīn aliqūum dē cōnsiliōs ac mōtū Gallōrum nūntium acciperet. In hīs ab L. Rōscīo, quam legiōnī tertiae decimae praefecerat, certior factus est magnās cōpiās eārum civitātūm quae Aremoricāe appellantur oppugnandī suī causā convēnisse neque longius mīlia passuum octō ab hibernīs suīs āfuisse, sed nūntiō allātō dē victōriā Caesaris discēssisse, adeō ut fugae similis discēssus vidērētur.

54. At Caesar principibus cuiusque civitātis ad sē evōcātīs aliās territandō, cum sē seīre quae fīrent dēnūntiāret, aliās cohordandō magnam partem Galliae in officiō tenuit. Tamen Senōnēs, quae est civitās in prīmīs firma et magnae inter Gallōs auctōritātīs, Cavařūnīm, quem Caesar apud eōs rēgem cōnstituerat, cuius frāter Moritasgus adventū in Galliam Caesaris cuiusque maiōrēs rēgnum obtinuerant, interficere pūblicō cōnsiliō cōnātī, cum ille praeśēnsisset ac profūgisset, usque ad finēs īnsecūtī rēgnō domōque expulērunt, et, missī ad Caesarem satisfaciēndī causā lēgātīs, cum is omnēm ad sē senātum venīre iussisset, dictō audīentēs nōn fuērunt. Ac tantum apud hominēs barbarōs valuit esse aliqūōs repertōs principēs bellī īnferendi, tantamque omnibus voluntātūm commūtātiōnem attulit, ut praeter Haeduōs et Rēmōs, quōs praecipuō semper honōre Caesar habuit, alterōs prō vetere ac perpetuā ergā populum Rōmānūm fidē, alterōs prō recentibus Gallicī bellī officiīs, nūlla fērē civitās fuerit nōn suspēcta nōbīs. Idque adeō haud sciō mirandumne sit, cum complūribus aliīs dē causīs, tum maximē quod ī qui virtūte bellī omnibus gentiībus praefērbantur, tantum sē eius opiniōnīs dēperdidisse ut populi Rōmānī imperia perferrent, gravissimē dolēbant.

55. Trēverī vērō atque Indutiomārus tōtīus hiemīs nūllum
tempus intermišerunt quīn trāns Rhēnum lēgātōs mitterent, civitātēs sollicitārent, pecūniās pollicērentur, magnā parte exercitūs nostri interfecē multō minōrem superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen ūlli civitātī Germānōrum persuāēri potuit ut Rhēnum trānsīret, cum sē bis expertōs dicerent, Ariovistī bellō et Tēnecterōrum trānsītū; nōn esse amplius fortūnam temptātūrōs. Hāc spē lapsus Indutiomārus nihilō minus cópiās cógere, exercēre, ā fīnītīmīs equōs parāre, exsulēs damnātōsque tōtā Galliā magnīs praemiīs ad sē allicere coepit. 10 Ac tantam sibi iam hīs rēbus in Galliā auctōritātem comparāve-rat ut undique ad eum lēgātiōnēs concurrerent, grātiam atque amīcitiam públicē privātimque peterent.


57. Labiēnus, cum et locī nātūrā et manū mūnītissimīs castris sēsē tenēret, dē suō ac legiōnis periculō nihil timēbat; né quam occasiōnem reī bene gerendaē dīmitteret cōgitābat. Itaque, ā Cīngetorige atque eius propinquis ēratiōne Īndutio-mārī cognitā quam in consiliō habuerat, nūntiōs mittit ad 5 fīnītīmīs civitātēs equitāsque undique ēvocat; ĕis certam diem conveniēndī dicit. Interim prope cotidiē cum omnī equitātū
Indutiomarūs sub castrīs eius vagābātur, aliās ut situm castrōrum cognōsceret, aliās colloquēndi aut territandī causā; equītēs plērumque omnēs tēla intrā vāllum coniciēbant. Labiēnus suōs intrā mūnitionem continēbat timōrisque opiniōnem quibuscumque poterat rēbus augēbat.

58. Cum maiōre in diēs contemptiōne Indutiomarūs ad castra accēderet, nocte ūnā intrōmissis equītibus omnium finitūmārum civitātum, quōs arcessendōs cūrāverat, tantā diligentiā omnēs suōs custōdiis intrā castra continuīt ut nūlā ratione ea rēs ēnūntiāri aut ad Trēverōs perferri posset. Interim ex cōnsuetūdine cotidiānā Indutiomarūs ad castra accēdit atque ibi magnam partem diēī cōnsūmit; equītēs tēla coniciunt et magnā cum contumeliā verbōrum nostrōs ad pugnam ēvocant. Nūlō ab nostrīs datō responsō, ubi visum est, sub vesperum dispersī ac dissipāti discēdunt. Subitō Labiēnus duābus portīs omnem equitātūm ēmittit; praecipīt atque interdīcit, perterritīs hostibus atque in fugam coniectīs (quod fore, sīcūt accidit, vidēbat), ūnum omnēs petant Indutiomarūm, neu quis quem prius vulneret quam illum interfecerat, quod morā reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugere nōlēbat; magna prōpōnit īs quī occīderint praemia; submittit cohortēs equitibus subsidīō. Comprobat hominis cōnsilium fortūna, et, cum ūnum omnēs peterent, in ipsō flūminis vadō dēprehēnsus Indutiomarūs interficerit caputque eius refertur in castra; redeuntēs equītēs quōs possunt cōnsectantur atque occīdunt. Hāc rē cognitā omnēs Eburōnum et Nerviōrum quae convēnerant cōpiāe discēdunt, paulōque habuit post id factum Caesar quietiōrem Galliām.
BOOK VI. PUNISHMENT OF REBEL STATES. DESCRIPTION OF GAULS AND GERMANS

The enforced leisure of the winter was improved by Caesar in making preparations for the coming struggle with the insurgents. Two legions were levied in Cisalpine Gaul, and a third was borrowed from Pompey, making ten legions now under Caesar's command. Before the arrival of spring he surprised the Nervii with four legions and ravaged their country with fire and sword. Returning to winter quarters he called an assembly of the Gauls, to which all sent representatives except the Senones, the Carnutes, and the Treveri. He overawed the first two of these tribes by a prompt advance against them, and received hostages from them.

Caesar's chief purpose for the year was the punishment of Ambiorix and the Eburones for the slaughter of Sabinus and Cotta with their men. He set about the task methodically, first stripping them of allies and possible places of refuge. To their north lay the Menapii, the only state which had never submitted to Caesar. Hastening thither he burned villages, carried off cattle and men, and received the submission of the state. Then he marched south to the support of Labienus, who was in pursuit of the Treveri; but before his arrival Labienus had drawn them into an engagement in which they were defeated with great loss. In order to overawe the Suebi, who had intended to join the Treveri on this occasion, and who might help Ambiorix, Caesar built another bridge across the Rhine, some distance above the place where he had made the first, and crossed in force. He fought no battle there, because the Suebi withdrew far into the interior and it was no part of his plan to subjugate Germany. Having accomplished his purpose of intimidating the Germans, he withdrew, leaving enough of the bridge standing to suggest to them that he might return.

Caesar had now thoroughly cowed the states all about the Eburones, and was ready to take his vengeance. He marched through the Ardennes into their country, sending cavalry ahead to surprise Ambiorix if possible; but the wily chief eluded his pursuers and disbanded his army. The rest was a man-hunt. Caesar divided his army into three bodies, in order to cover the territory more thoroughly. Even so he could not destroy everything, and he sent out a general invitation to the neighbor-
ing Gauls to come and share in the plunder of the wretched Eburones. A body of German horsemen who had heard of this invitation came over to share in the pillaging. Hearing, however, that Caesar had left all his baggage in charge of Cicero with a weak garrison, they surprised and nearly captured the camp. In spite of all Caesar's efforts, Ambiorix never was caught; but such of his people as escaped death were left without houses or cattle or crops.

Caesar then returned to the Senones and Carnutes and instituted an investigation of their revolt, which resulted in the condemnation to death of Acco, a chief of the Senones. Making such a disposition of his forces for the winter as gave them control of the area of the revolt, Caesar went to Italy, where matters of great moment awaited his attention.

Caesar was a keen observer of manners and customs and wished, in some part of his work, to describe those of the Gauls and the Germans. This description might equally well have been given in any other book, since it was necessarily a digression from his narrative. But as there was only a short story to tell in the sixth book, he took the opportunity offered by the uneventful expedition to Germany, and there inserted his interesting and valuable account of the peoples with whom he was fighting.
1. Multis de causis Caesar maiorem Galliae motum exspectans per M. Silänum, C. Antistium Rëginum, T. Sextium légátos diléctum habère instituit; simul ab Cn. Pompéió pró-consule petiit, quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperió reí publicae causâ remanéret, quós ex Cisalpinâ Galliâ cónsul sacramentò rogávisset ad signa convenire et ad sè proficícísi iuísset, magni interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opíniómem Galliae exístímãns tantás vidéri Ítaliae facultátès ut, si quid esset in bellò dètrimentì acceptum, nón modo id brevì tempore sancírì, sed etiam maióribus augéri cópiís possent. Quod cum Pompéius et reí publicae et amícitiae tribuisset, celeriter cónfectò per suós diléctû, tribus ante exáctam hiemem et cónstitútis et adductis légionibus duplicátöque eãrum cohortium numeró quãs cum Q. Titûrió amísérat, et celeritáte et cópiís docuí quid populi Rômání disciplína atque opè possent.

2. Interfectó Indutiomârō, ut docuimus, ad eius propinquós à Trèverís imperium défertur. Illí fìnítimòs Germânòs sollicitàre et pecúniam pollicèrí nón désistunt. Cum à proxi-mís impetràre nón possent, ulteriòrës temptant. Inventís nòn nûllis civitâtibus iûre iûrandò inter sè cònfirmand observitusque dè pecûnià cavent; Ambiòrigem sibi socíetáte et foedere adiun-gunt. Quibus rébus cognítís Caesar, cum undique bellum parâri vidéret, Nerviós, Atuatucós, Menapiós, adiúncús Êis-rhènânis omnibus Germâniís, esse in armís, Senônès ad imperátum nón veníre et cum Carnutibus fìnítimísque civitâtibus cònsilia communícàre, à Trèverís Germâniós crébris légatiònibus sollicitàri, mâtûrius sibi dè bellò cógitandum putávit.

3. Itaque nûndum hieme cònfectâ proximi quattuor coàctis legiònibus dè impròvisò in finès Nerviòrum contendit et, prius-


5. Hāc partē Galliae pācātā, tōtus et mente et animō in bellum Trēverōrum et Ambiorīgis īnsiṣtīt. Cavarīnum cum equitātū Senonum scēcum proficiēci iūbet, nē quīs aut ex huīus īrācundīā aut ex ēō quod meruerat odio civitātīs mōtus exiṣtāt. 5 Hīs rébus cōnṣtitūīs, quod prō explōrātō habēbat Ambiorīgēm proeliō nōn esse contentūrūm, reliqua eīus cōnsilia animō circu- spiciēbat. Erant Menapīi propinqui Eburōnum finibus, perpetuīs palūdibus silvīisque mūnītī, qui ūnī ex Galliā dē pāce ad Caesarem lēgātōs numquam mīserant. Cum hīs esse hos- 10 pitiōm Ambiorīgī sciēbat; item per Trēverōs vēnisse Germānīs
PUNISHMENT OF REBEL STATES, B.C. 53

in amicitiam cognoverat. Haec prius illi detrahenda auxilia existimabat quam ipsum bellō laceraret, nē despērātā salūte aut sē in Menapiōs abderet aut cum Trānsrhēnānis congrēdi cōgerētur. Hoc initō cōnsiliō totius exercitūs impedimenta ad Labiēnum in Trēverōs mittit duāsque legiōnēs ad eum proficiscī iubet; ipse cum legiōnibus expedītīs quīnque in Menapiōs proficiscitur. Illī nūllā coāctā manū locī praevidiō frētī in silvās palūdēsque cōnfugiunt suaque eosēm cōnferunt.


favère nātūra cōgēbat. Labiēnus, nocte tribūnīs militum prī- 
misque ordinibus convocātīs, quīd sū sit cōnsilī prōpōnit et, 
quō facilius hostibus timōris det suspiciōnem, maiōre strepitū 
et tumultū quam populī Rōmānī fert cōnsuētūdō castra movērī 
iubet. Hīs rēbus fugae similem profectionēm efficīt. Haec 
quoque per explōrātōrēs ante lūcem in tantā propinquitāte cas- 
trōrum ad hostēs déferuntur.  

8. Vīx agmen novissīmum extrā mūniτiōnēs prōcesserat, 
cum Gallī cohōrtātī inter sē nē spērātam praedam ex manibus 
dīmitterent: Longum esse, perterritīs Rōmānīs, Germanōrum 
auxiliūm exspectārē, neque suam pātī dignitātem ut tantīs 
cōpiis tam exiguam manum, praesertim fugientem atque impe- 
ditam, adoriri nōn audeant, flūmen trānsīre et inīquō locō 
committere proelium nōn dubitant. Quae fore suspiciātus Labi- 
ēnus, ut omnēs citrā flūmen elicēret, ēādem īus simulātiōne 
itineris placide progrediebatur. Tum praemissīs paulum im- 
pedimentīs atque in tumulō quōdām collocātīs, ‘Habētīs,’ 
inquit, ‘mīlitēs, quam petītīs facultātēm; hostem impeditō 
atque inīquō locō tenētis; praestāte eāndem nōbis ducibus vir- 
tūtem quam saepe numerō imperātōrī praestitistis, atque illum 
adesse et haec cōrām cernere existimātē.’ Simul signa ad hos- 
tem convertī aciemque dērīgi iubet et, paucīs turmīs praeśiđiō 
ad impedimenta dīmissīs, reliquōs equēs ad latera dispōnit. 
Celeriter nostri clāmōre sublātō pīla in hostēs immittunt. Illī, 
ubi praeter spem quōs fugere crēdēbant īnfestīs signīs ad sē 
īre vidērunt, impetum ferre nōn potuērunt ac prīmō concursū 
in fugam coniectī proximās silvās petiērunt. Quōs Labiēnus 
equātū cōnsectātus, magnō numerō interfectō, complūribus 
captīs paucīs post diēbus civitātēm recēpīt. Nam Germanī 
quī auxiliō veniēbant perceptā Trēverōrum fugā sēsē domum 
recēpērunt. Cum his propinquī Indutiȯmarī, quī défectionis 
auxorēs fuerant, comitātē eōs ex civitāte excessērunt. Cin- 
getorīgī, quem ab initiō permānsisse in officiō dēmōnstrāvimus, 
principātus atque imperium est trāditum.  

9. Caesar, postquam ex Menapiīs in Trēverōs vēnīt, duābus
SECOND INVASION OF GERMANY, B.C. 53

de causis Rhenum trānsīre cōnstituit; quārum ūna erat quod
Germanī auxilia contrā sē Trēverīs miserant, altera, nē ad eōs
Ambiorīx receptum habēret. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, paulō
suprā eum locum quō ante exercitum trādūxerat facere pontem s
instituit. Nōtā atque institūtā ratione magnō mīlitūm studiō
paucīs diēbus opus efficitur. Firmō in Trēverīs ad pontem
praesidiō relictō, nē quis ab hīs subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquiās
cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit. Ubiī, quī ante obsidēs dederant
atque in dēditionem vēnerant, purgandī sūi causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt qui doceant neque auxilia ex suā cīvitātē in
Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem laesam; petunt atque ōrant
ut sibi parcat, nē communī odiō Germanōrum innocentēs prō
nocentibus poenas pendant; sī amplius obsidum velit darī, pol-
licitur. Cognitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suēbīs auxilia missa esse; Ubiōrum satisfactionēm accepit, aditūs viāsque in Suēbōs
perquīrit.

10. Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior Suēbōs
omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere atque īs nātiōnibus quae
sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut auxilia peditātūs equitā-
tūsque mittant. Hīs cognītīs rēbus rem frūmentāriām prōvī-
det, castrīs idōneum locum dēligīt; Ubiīs imperat ut pecora dēdūcant suaque omnia ex agrīs in oppida cōnferant, spērāns
barbarōs atque imperītōs hominēs inopia cībāriōrum adductōs
ad iniquam pugnandi condiciōnem posse dēdūcī; mandat ut
crebrōs explōrātōrēs in Suēbōs mittant quaeque apud eōs ge-
rantur cognōscant. Illī imperāta faciunt et paucīs diēbus inter-
missīs referunt: Suēbōs omnēs, posteāquam certiorōs nūntīi
dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint, cum omnibus suis sociōrum-
que cōpiās quās coēgissent, penitus ad extrēmōs finēs sē
recēpisse. Silvam esse ibi īnfinītā magnitūdine, quae app-
pellētur Bacēnis; hanc longē intrōrsus pertinēre et prō nātīvō mūrō obiectam Chēruscōs ab Suēbōrum Suēbōsque
ab Chēruscōrum iniūriās incursionibusque prohibēre; ad eōs
silvae initium Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōn-
stituisse.
11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, non alienum esse videtur de Galliae Germaniaceque moribus et quod differant hae nationes inter se sepreponere. In Gallia non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pagis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factioaes sunt, eorumque factioanes principes sunt qui summam auctoritatem eorum iudicii habere existimantur, quorum ad arbitrium iudiciumque summam omnium rerum consiliorumque redeat. Idque eius rei causae antiquitus institutum videtur, nec quis ex plèbe contra potentiores auxili egret; suos enim quisque opprimi et circumveniri non patitur, neque, alter si faciat, ullam inter suos habeat auctoritatem. Haec eadem ratio est in summa totius Galliae; namque omnès civitates divisae sunt in duas partes.

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factioonis principes erant Haedui, alterius Sequani. 


Chap. 11-20. The customs and manners of the Gauls.

Chap. 11. Party spirit and party leaders in Gaul.

1. locum, "point," in the narrative. Caesar has been describing his second invasion of Germany.

2. quò, "in what (respects);" an ablative of specification.

3. partibus, "districts."

5. singulis domibus: an example has been seen in the case of the brothers, Dumnorix and Diviciacus, Book I. It is evident that these factioones are not unlike our political parties.

4. eàrum . . . redeat, "of these factions, those who are thought to have . . . are chiefs to whose decision, etc."

6. qui: supply ëi as the antecedent, and as the subject of sunt.

eorum: i.e. the members of the party.

7. quorum . . . redeat: i.e. these principes are not state magistrates, but "chiefs of such sort that to their decision all their partisans' private affairs and plans are referred."

8. eius rei: explained by the clause ne . . . egret.

10. auxili: verbs meaning to be without usually govern the ablative, but egero governs either the genitive or the ablative.

quisque: i.e. each chief. The whole description of these chiefs applies fairly well to some of our political bosses.

12. haec . . . Galliae, "this same system is followed in general by Gaul as a whole."

Galliae is a predicate genitive with ratio est.

13. duas partes: i.e. those described in the following chapter.

Chap. 12. The states which play the same part among other states as the chiefs among their fellow citizens.


2. alterius Sequani: but in 1, 31, 10, Diviciacus tells Caesar that the Arverni are the head of this faction. The Arverni had long been the head, and nominally may have been still in that

position; but in fact the Sequani, helped by Ariovistus, had displaced them.  
hi, "the latter."  
4. Germānōs, etc.: in the next few lines Caesar repeats in brief what Diviciacus told him in I, 31.  
10. iūrāre: supply prīncipēsas subject.  
14. infectā rē, "without accomplishing anything."  
commūtātiōne: resulting from Caes-ār's defeat of Ariovistus. The ablative absolute may be translated by either principal or causal clauses.  
16. quod . . . vidēbant gives the reason for novīs . . . comparātīs.  
17. eōrum = Haeduōrum.  
18. sē utī, "that they enjoyed."  
reliquis rēbus, "by all other means."  
20. Rēmī: Caesar favored them be-cause of their assistance in his first campaign against the Belgae; see es-pecially II, 3 and 4.  
quōs . . . intellegēbātur, "because it was understood that they [the Remi] were equal to the Haedu in Caesar's favor."  
23. dicābant: not dicēbant.  
24. collectam, "acquired."
13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum qui aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre genera sunt duo; nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērique, cum aut aere aliēnō aut magnitudine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilitibus; quibus in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs in servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Ili rebus divinis intersunt, sacrificia publica ac privāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur; ad eos magnus adulēscēntium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrīt, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs publicīs privātīisque cōnstituunt, et, sī quod est admissum facinus, sī caedes facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē finibus contrōversia est, īdem dēcernunt, praemia pōenasque cōnstituunt; sī quī prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiis interdīcunt. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō īmpliōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, adītum eōrum sērvōrum que défugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque īs potentibus īūs redditur neque honōs īllus communica tur. Ĥīs autem omnibus druidibus praēst īnūs, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō aut, sī quī ex reliquis excellit dignitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrés parēs, surprising that they did not do more to unify Gaul.

8. intersunt, "have charge of."
10. eōs: the rest of the people.
11. cōnstituunt, "render decisions."
12. est admissum, "has been committed."
13. dēcrētō nōn stetit, "does not abide by the decision."
14. sacrificiis interdīcunt: i.e. they excommunicate the offender.
15. hīs dēcēdunt, "avoid them."
16. neque . . . redditur: i.e. they cannot appeal to courts of justice if any wrong is done them.

Chap. 13. The two higher classes. The position of the common people. The power of the Druids.
1. aliquō numerō, "of any account."
4. cum premuntur: for mode see App. 240.
6. quae . . . servōs, "as masters have over their slaves."
7. est druidum, "is that of the Druids." Very little is known of Druidism beyond what Caesar tells us here, though much has been guessed and written about it. Caesar may have got his information from Diviciacus, who was a Druid. If the Druids had the strength which Caesar describes, it is
THE CUSTOMS OF GAUL

339

suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam armīs dē principātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae 25 regiō tōtius Galliae media habētur, cōnsīdent in locō cōnse-
crātō. Hūc omnēs undique qui contrōversiās habent con-
veniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciisque parent. Disciplīna in
Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslātā esse existimā-
tur, et nunc qui diligentius eam rem cognōscere volunt plē-
rumque illō discendī causā proficiscuntur.

14. Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā
cum reliquis pendunt. Tantīs excitāti praemiīs et suā sponte
mulī in disciplīnām conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquīisque
mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versusum ēdiscere dicuntur.
Itaque annōs nōn nūlli vicēnōs in disciplīnā īnstant. 30
Neque fās esse existimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum īn
reliquīs fere rēbus, publicīs privātīisque ratiōnibus, Graecīs litterīs
ūtantur. Id mihi duābus de causīs instiituisse videntur,
quod neque īn vulgus disciplīnā efferī velint, neque ēos qui
dcant litterīs cōnfīsōs minus memoriae studēre; quod fērē plē-
risque accidit, ut praesidiō litterārum diligentiam īn perdiscendō
ac memoriam remittant. In prīmis hoc volunt persuādēre,

28. dēcrētīs: for case see App. 115.
Disciplīna, "the system."
In Britannīā reperta: it is more
likely that it originally passed from
Gaul to Britain, outgrew some of its
barbarism in Gaul, but retained its
original features in the less civilized
Britain.

Chap. 14. The doctrines of the
Druids.
1. ā bellō: the fact that the Druid
Diviciacus once commanded some of
Caesar's auxiliaries (II, 5, 4-9) shows
that they might be warriors if they
liked.
4. versuum: primitive laws, max-
ims, and religious formulas are usually
found to be in verse, because verse is
more easily committed to memory than
prose.
6. ea: i.e. their teachings.

Cum, "although."
7. ratiōnibus, "accounts," "rec-
ords."

Graecīs litterīs: i.e. the Gallic lan-
guage written in Greek characters.
8. id: i.e. neque . . . mandāre.
9. disciplīnām: including the
sacred chants and formulas by which
men could approach and communicate
with the gods. So long as the Druids
kept this knowledge to themselves, they
could control the people.

10. minus studēre, "to pay less at-
tention to."
Quod: subject of accidit, and explained
by the appositive, ut . . . remittant.
11. praesidiō, ltt. "because of the
protection of " = "depending on."

12. hoc persuādēre, "to convince
men of this"; hoc is explained by the
infinitive clauses in apposition.
nón interire animás, sed ab aliís post mortem tránsire ad aliós; atque hoc maximé ad virtútem excitári putant, metù mortís neglectó. Multa praetereá dē sideribus atque eórum mótı, dē mundí ac terrárum magnítūdine, dē rérum náttūrā, dē deórum immórtálium ví ac potestáte disputant et iuventúti trádunt.


16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dedita religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam qui sunt affectī gravioribus morbis quique in proelīs periculīsque versantur aut prō victimīs homīnēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs voent, administrīsque ad ea sacrificia dridibus ūtuntur, quod, prō vitā homīnis nisi hominis vita reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortāliōm nūmēn plācārī arbitrantur; públicēque eiusdem generis habent īnstitūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī magnítūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vívīs homīnibus compleunt; quibus succēnsīs circumventī flammā examinantur homīnēs.

13. ab aliís . . . ad aliós: the doctrine of the transmigration of souls, which was held by many of the ancients, and which still exists in some eastern nations.

14. excitārī, “that men are incited.”

Chap. 15. The Knights.
1. alterum genus: cf. 13, 7.
2. quod: subject of sōlēbat, and explained by uti . . . prōpulsārent.
4. ut quisque est amplissimus, ita plúrimōs, “the more distinguished one of them is, the more, etc.” The most striking example is that of Orgetorix, 1, 4, 5.
6. hanc unam . . . nōverunt, “this is the only . . . which they know.”

Chap. 16. Human sacrifices.
3. homīnēs: object of both immolant and immolātūrōs. Although Caesār does not say that he saw an instance of human sacrifice, there is no good reason to doubt the truth of his statement.

7. públicē, “on behalf of the state.”

habet īnstitūta, lit. “they have . . . established,” = “they regularly perform.”

8. simulācra: colossal statues in form of men.

9. contexta vīminibus, “made of woven osiers,” “wickerwork.”
Supplicia eōrum qui in fūrtō aut in latrōcinio aut in aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsī grātiōra dis immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.


18. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedīcant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatia

12. sint comprehēnsī: the mode is due to indirect discourse.
14. dēscendunt, "they resort."
Chap. 17. The Gallic gods and their powers.
1. Mercurium: the Gallic gods were not the same as the Roman. From what Caesar could learn of the Gallic gods he thought that they corresponded to certain Roman gods, and he gives the Roman names. In the same way the Romans identified their gods with those of the Greeks, though they were not really the same.
2. ferunt, "they call."
hunc ... ducem: i.e. he points out the way (viārum) and accompanies them on their journeys (itinerum).

7. trādere, "teaches."
9. cēperint: perfect subjunctive by implied indirect discourse, for the future perfect.
14. capta ... occultāre: compare the crime of Achan and its punishment, Josh. 7.
posita, "what has been deposited" in the sacred spots.

1. ab Dīte prōgnātōs: apparently meaning that they sprang from the soil. See note on V, 12, 1.
patre, "as their father."
2. ob eam causam: i.e. being children of the god who ruled in darkness.
omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum, sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sic observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In reliquīs vitāe īnstitūtīs hōc ferē ab reli- quīs differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adulēvērunt ut mū- nus militiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur, filiumque puerīlī aetāte in públicō in ānspectū patris assistere turpe dūcunt.

19. Vīri, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtīs nōmine ac- cēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs āestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus commūnicant. Huius omnis pecūniāe coniūnctīm ratiō habētur frūctūisque servantur; uter eōrum vitā superāvit, ad eum pars utrīusque cum frūctibus superiōrūm temporum pervenit. Vīri in uxōrēs, sīcūtī in liberōs, vítae necisque habent potestātēm; et cum pater familiae īlūstriōre locō nātus décessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et, dé morte sī rēs in suspiciōnem vēnit, dé uxōribus in servīlem modum quiāstīōnem habent et, si compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciātās in- terficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnificā et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vivīs cordī fuisse arbitrantur in ignem īnferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō sūprā hanc memo- riam servī et clientēs quōs ab iīs dilēctōs esse cūnstābat, iūstīs fūnebrisō cūnfectīs, ūnā cremābantur.

3. nōn numerō . . . finiunt: so we speak of a fortnight (fourteen nights).

diēs . . . subsequātur: i.e. each day began at sunset and lasted till the following sunset. So each month began with the night when the new moon was first visible.

5. fere ab reliquis, "from almost all other peoples."

7. palam . . . adire, "to approach them in public."

Chap. 19. The relations of husband and wife. Funeral customs.

1. vīri, quantās pecūniās accēpē- runt, tantās cum dōtibus commūni- cant, "husbands add to the dowry as much property as they have received."

3. ratiō habētur, "an account is kept."

4. frūctūs, "the profits."

8. dé morte . . . vēnit: i.e. if his wives are suspected of murdering him.

9. uxōribus: evidently the Gallic nobles practiced polygamy.

in servīlem modum: i.e. by torture, which was the Roman method of exam- ining slaves.

si compertum est, "if proof is found."

12. vivīs cordī fuisse, "were dear to them when alive." The burning of the dead was not the only method used by the Gauls. Tombs have been opened which contained vases, rings, armor, and the bones of horses and dogs.

13. sūprā hanc memoriam, "before our time."
20. Quae civitātēs commodius suam rem publicam admi-
nistrāre existimantur habent légibus sānctum, si quis quid dē 
rē publicā ā finitimīs rūmōre ac fāmā accēperit, utī ad magis-
trātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō communīcet, quod saepe 
hominēs temerāriōs atque imperitōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et 
ad facinīs impelli et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium caperītum est. 
Magistrātūs quae visa sunt occultant, quae esse ex 
ūsū iudicāverunt multitūdīnī prōdunt. Dē rē publicā nisi per 
concilium loqui nōn concēditur.

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuetūdine differunt. Nam 
neque druidēs habent quī rēbus dīvīnīs praeing, neque sacri-
ficiēs student. Deōrum numerō ēōs sōlōs dūcant quōs cernunt 
et quōrum aptē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lū-
nam; reliquōs ne fāmā quidem accēperunt. Vita omnis in 
vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī militāris cōnsistit; a parvīs 
labōrī ac dūritiāe student.

22. Agricultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum vīctūs 
in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum 
certum aut finēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac principēs

Chap. 20. How the magistrates control mischievous rumors.

1. quae civitātēs, "the states which."
commodius, "best."
2. habent... sānctum utī, "have it established by law that."
3. nēve: the regular word for "and not" in substantive volitive clauses.
quō: the proper indefinite after nēve, just as after nē.
4. cōgnitum est, "it has been found." In IV, 5, Caesar has told us 
how eager the Gauls were for gossip, and how ready to act hastily on un-
founded rumors.
5. quae visa sunt, "what seems best."
6. per concilium: i.e. in a formal 
meeting of the tribe.


Chap. 21. The Germans differ from 
the Gauls in religion and in mode of life.

2. druidēs: they had priests, but not organized as the Druids were.
3. student, "pay much attention to"; but they did offer sacrifices at times.
5. reliquōs... accēperunt: but 
Tacitus, though he spent very little time in Germany. Perhaps the 
worship of these gods was introduced after Caesar's time.
6. cōnsistit, "is spent."

Chap. 22. There is no private ownership of land.
1. nōn student: yet they did prac-
tice agriculture. Tacitus says that the 
cultivation of the soil was left to women 
and old men; but compare IV, 1, 9-12.
3. propriōs, "of his own"; cf. IV, 1, 12.
in annos singulös gentibus cognatiōnibusque hominum, quīque
5 unā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō visum est agrī attribuunt
atque annō post aliō trānsire cōgunt. Eius reī multās afferunt
causās: nē assiduā consuetūdine captī studium bellī gerendī
growth agrīculturā commūtēnt; nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant poten-
tiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accurātiōs
ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandōs aedificēnt; nē qua oriātur
pecūniae cupidītās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nās-
cuntur; ut animī aequitātē plēbem continant, cum suās quis-
que opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

23. Civitātībus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē
vāstātīs finibus sōlitūdīnēs habēre. Hoc proprium virtūtis ex-
istimant, expulsōs agrīs fīnitimōs cēdēre, neque quemquam
prope sē audēre cōnsistēre; simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbi-
trāntur, repentīnae incursiōnēs timōre sublātō. Cum bellum
śivitās aut illātum défendēt aut īnferēt, magistrātūs qui eī bellō
praesint et vitae necisque habeant potestātem délīguntur. In
pāce nūllus est communēs magistrātus, sed principēs regiōnēm
atque pagōrum inter suōs īus dicunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.

Latrōcinīa nūllam habent infāmiam quae extrā finēs cuiusque
civitātīs fiunt, atque ea iuventūtīs exercendae ac désidiae minu-
endae causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quīs ex principibus
in conciliō dīxit sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint profiteantur,

4. in annōs singulōs, "every year." gentibus ... coiērunt, "to families
or groups of kinsmen, or to men who
have banded together."
5. quantum ... agrī, "as much
land as they see fit, and in whatever
locality they see fit."
6. aliō: the adverb.
multās causās: given in the follow-
ing nē and ut clauses.
8. agricultūrā, "for agriculture";
App. 147.
12. animī aequitātē, "in a con-
tented frame of mind."
Chap. 23. The relations existing
between states. The form of govern-
ment. Hospitality.

1. maxima laus: cf. IV, 3, 1.
2. finibus, "their border lands."
hōc: explained by the infinitive
clauses.
proprium virtūtis, "a mark of
valor."
4. hōc: explained by timōre sublātō.
6. qui ... habeant: a purpose
clause.
9. minuunt, "settle."
10. latrōcinia ... fiunt: a general
opinion among primitive peoples.
13. sē ducem fore: of some pillaging
expedition.
qui ... profiteantur, "let any who
wish to follow volunteer"; an indirect
quotation of the leader's invitation.
consurgunt ii qui et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque a multitūdine collaudantur; qui ex his secūtī nōn sunt in désertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcntur, omniumque hīs rērum posteā fīdēs dērogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; qui quācumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt ab iniūriā probiōn habent, hisque omnium domūs patent victusque commūnicātur.


25. Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae supra dēmōnstrāta est, lātitūdō novem diērūm āt tempus iter expeditō patet; nōn enim aliter

15. ex his: i.e. of those who have volunteered.
17. omnium rērum fīdēs, "all confidence."

Chap. 24. The Gauls, once superior to the Germans in war, are now inferior.
3. trāns . . . mitterent: Caesar did not understand the facts. The Gauls originally came from east of the Rhine. The Gallic tribes in Germany were not colonies sent from Gaul, but people who had been left behind.
5. quibusdam, "some other."
6. illī: the Greeks.
Volcae Tectosagēs: the map shows these people in the Province. That means that the majority of them had long ago crossed into Gaul. The remnant, of whom Caesar is speaking, cannot be located exactly.
10. quā ante, "as before."
11. prōvinciārum: Transalpine and Cisalpine Gaul.
12. trānsmarinārum rērum: imported goods came into Gaul very large-ly by way of Massilia (Marseilles).
multa . . . largītur, "supply many things for their possession and use."
illis: the Germans.

Chap. 25. Description of the Hercynian forest.
2. lātitūdō: from north to south.
finiri potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum finibus rēctāque flū-
minis Dānūvī regiōne pertinet ad finēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus dīversīs ā flūmine regiōnibus multā-
rumque gentium finēs propter magnitūdinem attingit; neque quisquam est huius Germānīae qui sē aut adīsse ad initium eius silvae dīcat, cum dīcrum iter LX prōcesserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit; multaque in eā genera ferārum nāscī
cōnstat quae reliquis in locīs visa nōn sint; ex quibus quae maximē different ā cēterīs et memoriae prōdenda videantur
haec sunt.

26. Est bōs cervī figurā, cuius a mediā fronte inter aurēs ūnum cornū existit, excelsius magisque dérēctum hīs quae nōbis nōta sunt cornibus; ab eius summō sicut palmae rāmīque
lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, ead-
dem fōrma magnitūdōque cornuum.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōn-
similis caprīs figurā et varietās pellīum, sed magnitūdīne paulō
antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdis arti-

3. mēnsūrās itinerum: such as paces or miles; therefore they could not
tell how far such a traveler could walk
in a day.

4. rēctā ... regiōne, "in a course parallel with the river Danube."

5. Dācōrum et Anartium: these peoples lived beyond the great south-
ward bend of the Danube, too far east to be shown on the maps in this book.

6. dīversīs ... regiōnibus, lit. "in a direction turned from the river" =
"leaving the river."

8. huius Germānīae, "of this part of Germany"; i.e. the western part
near Gaul.

initium: the eastern end.

9. cum, "although."

12. memoriae prōdenda, "worth mentioning."

13. haec, "the following."

Chap. 26. The reindeer.
1. bōs: the Romans gave this name
to any large horned animal with which
they were not familiar. Here Caesar
seems to mean the reindeer. But the
Germans seem to have amused them-
selves by trying to find out how much
they could make Caesar believe about
the animals "which are seen nowhere
else." Of course the reindeer has a pair
of horns.

3. sicut, "as it were," "a kind of."

palmae: i.e. antlers like the palm of
the hand, flat and with projecting
points.

4. eadem, etc.: the female reindeer
has smaller horns than those of the
male; but female deer of other kinds
have no horns at all.

Chap. 27. Description of the elk.
2. caprīs, "(that of) goats."

varietās, "varied color."

3. mutilae ... cornibus, "they
PUNISHMENT OF THE EBURONES, B.C. 53

PUNISHMENT

OF

THE

EBURONES,

B.C. 53

culisque habent, neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt neque, si quō afflictae causā concidērunt, ērigere sēsē ac sublevāre pos-
sunt. His sunt arborēs prō cubilibus; ad eās sē applicant atque
ita paulum modo reclinātēs quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex vēs-
tīgiis cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus quō sē recipere
cōnsuērunt, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subruunt aut accid-
dunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relin-
quātūr. Hūc cum sē cōnsuētūdine reclināvērunt, īnfirmās
arborēs pondere affigunt atque unā ipsae concidunt.

28. Tertium est genus eōrum quī ľūri appellantur. Hi sunt
magnitūdine paulō infra elepliautos, speciē et colore et
figūrā taurī. Magna vis eōrum est et magna vēlōcitās, neque
hominī neque ferae quam cōnspexērunt parcunt. Hōs studiōsē
foveōs captōs interficiunt; hoc sē labōre durant adulescentēs at
que genere vēnātōniōnis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex his
interfēcērunt, relatīs in pūblicum cornibus quae sint testimō-
niō, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuēscere ad hominēs et
mansuefieri nē parvuli quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō
cornuum et figura et speciēs multitūm ā nostrōrum boum corni-
bus differt. Haec studiōsē conquestīta ab labris argentō circum-
cūlūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulis procurō cornibus circu-

29. Caesar, postquam per Ubiōs explōrātōrēs comperit
Suēbōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frumenti veritus, quod,
ut supra dēmōnstrāvimus, minimē hominēs Germānī agricul-
tūrae student, cōnstituit nōn prōgressī longius; sed nē omnīnō
metum rēditūs suī barbarīs tollēret atque ut eōrum auxilia tar-
dāret, reductō exercītū, partem ultimam pontīs quae rīpās Ubi-

have mutilated horns”; i.e. their horns are short and irregular, appearing to be
mutilated.

5. afflictæ, “thrown down.”

9. ab, “at.”

10. tantum . . . reliquātur, lit. “so far that the complete appearance of
them standing is left” = “but only so far that a complete resemblance to
standing trees is left.”

11. hūc, “against them.”

Chap. 28. Description of the wild ox.

1. est eōrum, “consists of those.”

2. speciē, etc.: descriptive ablative
modificēd by the genitive, taurī, instead
of the more usual adjective.

7. quae sint: a purpose clause; “to
serve as proof.”

9. nē . . . exceptī, “not even if
cought while very young.”

11. ab labris, “at the rim.”
orum contingēbat in longitudīdinem pedum ducentōrum recsidevit, atque in extrēmō ponte turrim tabulātōrum quattuor cōnstituit praesidiumque cohortium duodecim pontis tuendi causā pōnit magnāisque eum locum mūniōnibus firmat. Eī locō praesidioque C. Volcāciō Tullum adulēsentem praeficit. Ipse, cum mātūrēscere frūmenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorigis profectus per Arduennam silvam, quae est tōtius Galliāe maxima atque ab rīpis Rhēnī finibusque Trēverōrum ad Nervīōs pertinet mīlibusque amplius quīngentīs in longitudīdinem patet, L. Minucium Basilum cum omnī equitātū praemittit, sī quid celeritātē itineris atque opportūnātē temporis prōficere possit; monet ut ignēs in castris fierī prohibeat, nē qua eius adventūs procūl significātiō fiat; sēsē cōnfestim subsequi dicit.

30. Basīlus ut imperātum est facit. Celerēter contrāque omnium opīniōnem cōnfectō itinere multōs in agrīs inopīnāntēs dēprehendīt; eōrum indiciō ad ipsum Ambiorigem contendīt, quō in locō cum paucīs equītibus esse dīcēbatūr. Multum cum in omnibus rēbus, tum in rē militāri potest fortūna. Nam ut magnō accidit cāsū ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imperātum incideret, priusque eius adventus ab hominibus vidērētur quam fāma ac nūntius afferrētur, sīc magnae fuit fortūnae, omnī militāri īnstrumēntō quod cūrūm sē habēbat ēreptō, raedīs equīisque comprehēnsīs, ipsum effugere mortēm. Sed hoc factum est, quod aedificiō circumdatō silvā, ut sunt fere domicilia Gallōrum, qui vitandi aestūs causā plērumque silvārum ac ēlūminum petunt propinquitātēs, comitēs familēārēsque eius angustō in locō paulisper ēquītum nostrōrum vim sustinuerunt. His pugnantibus illum in equō quidam ex suīs intulit; fugientem silvae tēxērunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum et ad vitandum multum fortūna valuit.

31. Ambiorīx cópiās suās iūdiciōne nōn condūxerit, quod proelī dīmicandum nōn existimāret, an tempore exclūsus et repentīnō ēquītum adventū prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequi crēderet, dubium est; sed certē dīmissīs per agrīs nūntīis sībi quemque cōnsulere iussit. Quōrum pars in Ardu-
PUNISHMENT OF THE EBURONES, B.C. 53

annam silvam, pars in continentēs palūdēs profūgit; quī proximi Ōceanō fuērunt, hi īnsulis sēsē occultāvērunt quās aestūs efficere consuērunt; multī ex suīs fīnibus ēgressī sē suaque omnia aliēnissimīs crēdīdērunt. Catuvolcus, rēx dimidiae partis Eburōnum, quī ūnā cum Ambiorīge cōnsilium inierat, aetāte iam consēctus, cum labōrem bellī aut fugae ferre nōn possent, omnibus precibus dētestātus Ambiorīgem, quī eius consili auctor fuisset, taxō, cuius magna in Galliā Germāniāque cóπia est, sē examināvit.


33. Partītō exercītū T. Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus ad Ōceanum versus in eās partēs quae Menapīōs attingunt proficiscī iubet; C. Trebōnium cum pari legiōnum numerō ad eam regiōnem quae Atuatucīs adiacet dépopulandam mittit; ipse cum reliquis tribus ad flūmen Sabim, quod influit in Mosam, extrēmāsque Arduennae partēs īre constitūt, quō cum paucīs equitibus profectum Ambiorīgem audiēbat. Discēdēns post diem septimum sēsē reversūrum cōnfīrmat, quam ad diem ei
Caesar's Gallic War, VI, 35

350

35. Haec in omnibus Eburōnum partibus gerēbantur, diēsque appetēbat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedimenta legiōnemque revertī constituerat. Hic quantum in bellō fortūna possit et quantōs afferat cāsūs cognōscī potuit. Dissipātīs legiōnī quae in praeсидīō relinquēbātur dēbērī frūmentum sciēbat. Labiēnum Trebōniumque hortātur, si reī pūblicae commodō facere possint, ad eam diem revertantur, ut rūrsus communicātō cōnsiliō explōrātīisque hostīum ratiōnibus aliud initium bellī capere possint.

34. Erat, ut supra dēmōnstrāvimus, manus certa nūlla, nōn oppidum, nōn praesidium quod sē armīs dēfenderet, sed in omnēs partēs dispersa multītūdō. Ubi cuique aut vallis ab-dita aut locus silvestris aut palīs impeditā spēm praesium aliūn salūtis aliquam offerēbat cōnsēderat. Haec loca vicīnātībus erant nōta, magnamque rēs diligentiam requīrēbat, nōn in summā exercitūs tuendā (nūllum enim poterat universīsā per-territīs ac dispersīs periculum acciderē), sed in singulis mili-tibus cōnservandīs; quae tamen ex parte rēs ad salūtem exercitūs pertinēbat. Nam et praedae cupiditās multōs longius sēvocā-bat, et silvae incertīs occultīisque itineribus cōnfertōs adire prohibēbant. Si negōtium cōnfici stirpemque hominum scelerā-tōrum interficī vellet, dimittendaē plūrēs manūs didūcendique erant miliēs; sī continērē ad signa manipulōs vellet, ut insti-tūta ratiō et cōnsuētūdō exercitūs Rōmānī postulābat, locus ipse erat praesidīō barbarīs, neque ex occultō insidiāndī et dis-persōs circumveniēndi singulīs deērāt audācia. Ut in eius modī difficultātībus, quantum diligentīā prōvidērī poterat, prōvidēbātur ut potius in nocendō aliūquid praetermitterētur, etsi omnīm animī ad ulcīscendum ārdēbant, quam cum aliūquī miliūm dētrimentō nocērētur. Dīmittit ad finitīmūs civitātēs nūntiōs Caesar; omnēs ēvocat spē praedae ad diripiēndōs Ebu-rōnēs, ut potius in silvis Gallōrum vita quam legiōnārius miles perīclītētur, simul ut magnā multītūdīne circumfūsā prō tāli facinore stirps ac nōmen civitātīs tollātur. Magnus undique numerus celerīter convenit.
ac perterritis hostibus, ut dēmōnstrāvimus, manus erat nūlla quae parvam modo causam timōris afferret. Trāns Rhēnum ad Germānōs pervenit fāma dīripī Eburōnēs atque ultrō omnēs ad praedām ēvocārī. Cōgunt equitum duo mīlia Sugambri, qui sunt proximi Rhēnō, à quibus receptōs eī fugā Tēncterōs atque Usipetēs suprā docuimus. Trānseunt Rhēnum nāvibus rati-busque trīgintā mīlibus passuum īnfrā eum locum ubi pōns erat perfectus praesidiumque ā Caesare relictum; prīmó Ebu-rōnum finēs adeunt; multōs eī fugā dispersōs excipiunt, magnō pecorīs numerō, cuius sunt cupidissimī barbarī, potiuntur. Invītātī praedā longius prōcéudent. Nōn hōs palūdēs bellō lātrociniīisque nātōs, nōn silvae morantur. Quibus in locīs sit Caesar ex captīvis quaerunt; profectum longius repe- riunt omne quaerit exercitum discīssē cognōscunt. Atque ūnus ex captīvis, 'Quid vōs,' inquit, 'hanc miseram ac tenuum sectāminī praedam, quibus licet iam esse fortūnāttissimōs? Tribus hōris Ātuatucam venīre potestis; hūc omnēs suās for-tūnās exercitus Rōmānōrum contulit; praesidī tantum est ut nē mūrus quidem cingī possit neque quisquam ēgredi extrā mūnītiōnēs audeat.' Hāc oblātā spē Germānī quam nactī erant praedam in occultō reliquant; ipsis Ātuatucam contendunt āūsī eōdēm duce cuius haec indicīo cognōverant.

36. Cicerō, quī omnēs superiōrēs diēs praecceptīs Caesaris summā diligentīā militēs in castrīs continuisset ac nē càlōnem quidem quemquam extrā mūnītiōnēm ēgredi passus esset, septimō diē diffidēns dē numerō diērum Caesarem fīdem servātū-rum, quod longius prōgressum audiēbat neque āūlla dē reditū eius fāma afferēbātur, simul eōrum permōtus vōcibus quī illius patientiam paene obsessiōnem appellābant, si quidem ex castrīs ēgredi nōn licēret, nūllum eius modī cāsum exspectāns quō, novem opposītīs legiōnibus maximōquo equitātū, dispersīs ac paene délētīs hostibus, in mīlibus passuum tribus offendi pos- set, quinque cohortēs frumentātum in proximās segetēs mittit, quās inter et castra ūnus omnīnō collis intererat. Complūrēs erant in castrīs ex legiōnibus aegri relictī; ex quibus quī hōc
spatio diērum convaluerant, circiter ccc, sub vexillō ūnā mit-
tuntur; magna praetereā multitūdō cālōnum, magna vis iūmen-
tōrum, quae in castrīs subsēderat, factā potestāte sequitur.

37. Hoc ipsō tempore cāsū Germanī equītēs interveniunt
prōtīnusque eōdem illō quō vēnerant cursū ab decumānā portā
in castra irrumpere cōnantur, nec prius sunt visī, obiectīs ab
eā parte silvīs, quam castrīs appropinquārent, usque eō ut quī
sub vāllō tenderent mercātōrēs recipiēndī suī facultātem nōn
habērent. Inopīnantēs nostrī rē novā perturbantur, ac vix
prīnum impetum cohors in statióne sustinet. Circumfundun-
tur hostēs ex reliquis partibus, si quem aditum reperīre possi-
t. Aegrē portās nostrī tuentur, reliquōs aditūs locus ipse per sæ
mūniōque dēfendit. Tōtīs trepidātur castrīs, atque alius ex
aliō causam tumultūs quaerit; neque quō signa ferantur neque
quam in partem quisque conveniēt prōvident. Alius castra
iam capta prōnuntiat, alius dēlētō exercītū atque imperātōre
victōrēs barbarōs vēnisse contendit; plērique novās sībī ex locō
religionēs fingunt Cottaeque et Titūrī calamitātem, qui in
eōdem occiderint castellō, ante oculōs pōnunt. Tālī timōre
omnibus perterrītīs cōnfīrmātur opīnīō barbarīs, ut ex captīvō
audierant, nūllum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere nītun-
tur sēque ipsī adhortantur nē tantam fortūnam ex manibus
dīmittant.

38. Erat aeger in praesidiō relictus P. Sextius Baculus,
quī prīnum pilum apud Caesarem dūxerat, cuius mentiōnem
superiōribus proeliīs fēcimus, ac diem iam quintum cibō caru-
erat. Hīc diffīsus suae atque omnīs salūtī inermis ex taber-
nāculō prōdit; videt inminēre hostēs atque in summō esse rem
discrimine; capit arma à proximīs atque in portā cōnstitit.
Consequuntur hunc centuriōnēs eius cohortīs quae in stātione
erat; paulisper ūnā proelium sustinent. Relinquit animus
Sextium gravibus acceptīs vulneribus; aegrē per manūs trāditus
sērvātur. Hōc spatiō interpositō reliquī sēsē cōnfīrmant tan-
tum ut in mūniōnibus cōnstitere audeant speciemque dēfēn-
sōrum praebent. 
39. Interim confecta frumentatione milités nostri clamó-rem exaudiunt; praecurrunt equitês, quantō rés sit in periculō cognōscunt. Hic vérō nulla münitiō est quae perterrítōs recipiat; modo cónscriptī atque úsus militáris imperítī ad tribúnum militum centuriónesque óra convertunt; quid ab hīs praecipiátur exspectant. Nēmō est tam fortis quīn reī novitāte perturbātur. Barbarī signa procul cónspicātī oppugnātiōne désistunt; redisse prīmō legiōnēs créudent, quās longiūs discississe ex captīvīs cognōverant; postea déspectā paucitāte ex omnibus partibus impetus faciunt.


41. Germānī désperātā expugnātiōne castrōrum, quod nostros iam cōnsitisse in münitiōnibus vidēbant, cum ēa praedā quam in silvis déposuerat trāns Rhēnum sēsē recēpérunt. Ac
tactus fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror ut eā nocte, cum C. Volusius missus cum equitātū in castra vēnisset, fidem non faceret adesse cum incolumī Caesarem exercitū. Sic om- nium animōs timor praecoccupāverat ut, paene aliēnātā mente, délētīs omnibus cōpiīs equitātūm sē ex fugā recēpisse dicerent neque incolumī exercitū Germānōs castra oppugnātūrōs fuisse contenderit. Quem timōrem Caesaris adventus sustulit.

42. Reversus ille, ēventūs bellī nōn ignōrāns, ūnum, quod cohortēs ex statione et praesidiō essent ēmissae, questus—nē minimum quidem cāsiō locum relinquī debuisse—multum for-tūnām in repentinō hostium adventū potuisse iūdicāvit, multō etiam amplius, quod paene ab ipsō vāllum portīisque castrōrum barbarōs āvertisset. Quārum omnium rērum maxīmē admi-randum vidēbatur quod Germānī, quī eō cōnsiliō Rhēnum trānsierant, ut Ambiorīgis finēs dēpopulārentur, ad castra Rōmānōrum dēlātī optātissimum Ambiorīgī beneficium obtu- lērant.

43. Caesar rūrsus ad vexandōs hostēs profectus, magnō equitūm coāctō numerō ex finitimīs cīvitātibus, in omnēs partēs dimittit. Omnēs vicī atque omnia aedificia quae quisque cōnsperexerat incendēbantur; praeda ex omnibus locīs agē-bātur; frūmenta nōn sōlum ā tantā multitūdine iūmentōrum atque hominum consūmēbantur, sed etiam anni tempore atque imbribus prōcubuerant, ut, si quis etiam in praesentīā sē oc-cultāssent, tamen his dēductō exercitū rērum omnium inopiā pereundum vidērētur. Ac saepe in eum locum ventum est, tantō in omnēs partēs dimissō equitātū, ut modo visum ab sē Ambiorīgem in fugā circumspicerent captīvī nec plānē etiam abisse ex cōnspectū contenderent, ut spē consequendi illātā atque infinitō labōre susceptō, quī sē summam ā Caesare grā-tiam initūrōs putērent, paene nātūram studiō vincērent, sem-perque paulum ad summam fēlicitātem dēfuisset vidērētur, atque ille latebrīs aut saltibus sē ēripēret et noctū occultātūs aliās regiōnēs partēsque peteret nōn maiōre equitūm praesidiō quam quattuor, quibus sōlis vītam suam committere audēbat.
44. Tālī modō vāstātīs regiōnibus exercitum Caesar duārum cohortium damnō Dūrocortorum Rēmōrum dēdūcit, conciliō-que in eum locum Galliae indicō dē coniūrātiōne Senonum et Carnutum quaestīōnem habēre īnstituit; et dē Accōne, quī princeps eius cōnsili fuerat, graviōre sententiā prōnūntiātā 5 móre maiōrum supplicium sūmpsit. Nōn nūlli īūdicium veritī profūgērunt. Quibus cum aquā atque ignī interdīxissent, duās legiōnēs ad finēs Trēverōrum, duās in Lingonibus, sex reliquās in Senonum finibus Agedincī in hībernīs collocāvit, frumentō-que exercitui prōvisō, ut īnstituerat, in Italiam ad conventūs 10 agendōs prōfectus est.
BOOK VII. VERCINGETORIX AND THE GENERAL REVOLT OF GAUL

For more than a year Gaul had been ready for revolt: it lacked only an opportunity and a leader. Early in 52 B.C. the opportunity came, and with it the leader appeared. For the first time Caesar had to meet a man who could unite all Gaul against him. In the previous book Caesar has been the hero of the story; in the seventh he shares the honor with Vercingetorix.

In the fall Caesar had quartered his army in the northern half of Gaul, chiefly at Agedincum, and had gone to upper Italy. In the winter the Gauls learned of serious disturbances in Rome, which seemed sure to keep Caesar in Italy. This was their opportunity, for they believed they could cope with the legions if Caesar were absent. The Carnutes struck the first blow by killing some Romans who were at Cenabum. The news reached Vercingetorix at his home in Gergovia, among the Arverni. Since his state would not rise at once, he collected troops, made himself king of the Arverni, and began stirring up revolt in other states. In a short time he was the recognized head of a confederacy which included almost every state north, west, and southwest of the Haedui.

It was still winter when Caesar, summoned by this news, returned to the Province. His army was 200 miles away; the Haedui, who lay between, were suspected; Vercingetorix was in a position which threatened Caesar if he tried to join the army. By skillful maneuvering he drew Vercingetorix out of the way, then with a few horsemen rode night and day to join his legions at Agedincum. Vercingetorix at once attacked a town of the Boii. Although it was too early to move an army comfortably, Caesar had either to relieve the Boii or let his other allies see that he could not protect them. As usual, Caesar chose to act. Marching by a circuit he had taken two towns and was laying siege to a third before Vercingetorix would raise the siege and march to meet him. The Gallic leader arrived just in time to be defeated in a cavalry battle and to witness the surrender of the town. Caesar then marched to Avaricum.

Vercingetorix now showed his mastery over his followers by persuading them to adopt a desperate plan. Caesar had been getting his
supplies from the houses and towns along his line of march. The Gauls decided to burn every house and every town, except those which seemed impregnable, along Caesar's route. Vercingetorix wished to burn Avaricum, but the Bituriges believed that it could not be taken, and he allowed it to stand. Caesar laid siege to it, while Vercingetorix confined himself to cutting off Caesar's supplies. For twenty-five days the defense was stubborn, but at last the town was taken and nearly 40,000 men, women, and children were slaughtered.

Judging by his past experience with the Gauls Caesar believed that this disaster would break up the coalition against him and that he would now have to deal only with single states. Accordingly he divided his army, sending Labienus with four legions north, against the Senones and the Parisii, while he himself marched south with the remaining six, against the Arverni. But Caesar had made a mistake. Vercingetorix reminded his followers that he had never wished Avaricum to be defended, promised to extend the revolt, and demanded better discipline in the future. He held the states he already had and won over new ones, so that Caesar with his six legions had to face a more formidable enemy than before, when he had ten.

But Caesar marched to Gergovia, as he had planned, and camped before it in perplexity. The town was situated on a high hill. Vercingetorix had arrived before him and was encamped on the upper part of the hill, under the walls of the town. Against such a position aggers and towers were useless. With so small an army the town could not be invested and starved into submission. Caesar saw that he must withdraw, but he felt certain that if he did not first win some success the Haedui would rise against him. One day he learned that the Gauls had left their camp in order to fortify a weak spot in their lines. Determining to sack the camp, he sent a part of his legions up the hill, under orders not to attempt to take the town. But the soldiers pushed on. Already a few had mounted the walls of the town, when the Gauls hastened up and drove them down the hill with heavy loss. The necessary retreat followed defeat instead of success.

Instantly the Haedui rose: they plundered one of their own towns, in which Caesar had great stores of provisions; there they got possession of Caesar's hostages, his one means of holding the states which had not yet revolted; and they posted guards along the Liger, which they believed unfordable. Nevertheless, with the speed which so often disconcerted his enemies, Caesar marched to the river, found a ford, got supplies from the Haeduan fields, and marched on among the Senones. There he was joined by Labienus, who had extricated himself from a most perilous position by winning a great victory at Lutetia (Paris).
The revolt of the Haedui and their capture of Caesar's hostages was the signal for the revolt of almost all Gaul. Only the Remi and the Lingones remained faithful to Caesar. By the unanimous vote of a council Vercingetorix was made commander-in-chief of the whole country. With 80,000 infantry and 15,000 cavalry he renewed his wise policy of cutting off Caesar's supplies and refusing battle. At the same time he sent an army to invade the Province. So serious was the situation that Caesar decided to march to the Province, partly to defend it, partly to get reinforcements.

Then Vercingetorix made his first mistake. He decided to attack the retreating Romans, hoping either to cut them off or at least to strip them of their baggage. But his own army was defeated and fled for refuge to Alesia, closely pursued by the Romans. There Caesar determined to end the war. The town lay on a hill, as impregnable as Gergovia; but Caesar now had his entire army, and he began a ring of fortifications, within which the Gauls were to be starved into surrender. Before the investment was complete, Vercingetorix sent out all his cavalry with orders to bring every fighting man in Gaul to the rescue. He himself chose to stay with his 80,000 infantry, to hold the town till relief should come. The result shows that this was his second and last mistake, since his leadership was more needed outside than within. Caesar had now to prepare for a double attack, from without and from within. The inner line of works was made eleven miles in circumference, the outer fourteen. These lines were strengthened by every cunning device his ingenuity could suggest.

At last, when the supplies of the besieged were almost exhausted, the great relieving army came into view, 250,000 infantry and 8,000 cavalry. But this great host was crippled by the lack of a capable leader. The supreme command lay in a council of delegates from the several states, under which four generals acted. On the day after their arrival the Gallic cavalry attacked the Romans, while the besieged sallied out to attack the inner line. The cavalry was defeated, and the besieged returned to the town. Then a night attack was directed, both from within and from without, against the works in the plain west of the town. This too proved fruitless.

The third and last attack was almost successful. Sixty thousand picked men attacked the weakest point in the outer line of defense, and the besieged displayed desperate courage at several points in the inner line. If the rest of the relieving army had attacked several parts of the outer line at the same time, the Gauls would surely have won the victory; for the soldiers posted at the points of attack were not sufficient to defend them. But, lacking unity of purpose, the great Gallic army did
nothing, and Caesar was able to send to the rescue troops from other parts of the line. The 60,000 were almost all killed, and the rest of the relieving army dispersed to their homes that night.

The end had come. The besieged were starving and hopeless. Vercingetorix told them that all was lost and they might hand him over, living or dead, to Caesar. They accepted the offer and sent word to Caesar. Vercingetorix rode out from the town alone and bowed himself at Caesar's feet. We are told, though not by Caesar, that six years later he appeared in Caesar's triumphal procession and was then executed.

Caesar's narrative concludes with the submission of the Haedui and the Arverni, which immediately followed the fall of Alesia. In his winter quarters at Bibracte he wrote the seven books of his Commentaries, in which the breaking of the great rebellion forms a fitting climax for his story. But his work was not yet complete. Though concerted resistance was at an end, he spent two years more in quelling smaller revolts here and there, and in conciliating the states which had been conquered. The events of these years are contained in an eighth book, written by Hirtius, one of his officers. Then came the civil war with Pompey, and Caesar left his work so well done that Gaul never revolted, even during the years when Caesar could have spared neither time nor men to subdue her.
LIBER SEPTIMUS.

1. Quiētā Galliā Caesar, ut constiuerat, in Italiam ad conventūs agendōs proficiscitur. Ibi cognōscit dē P. Clōdī caede, dē senātūsque consūltō certior factus, ut omnēs iūniōres Italiae coniūrarent, dilēctum tōtā provinciā habēre instituit. Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpīnam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et affingunt rūmōribus Gallī, quod rēs poscere vidēbātur, retinērī urbānō mōtū Caesarem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum venīre posse. Hac impulsī occasiōne, qui iam ante sē populī Römānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent, liberius atque audācius dē bellō cōnsilia inīre incipiant. Indictīs inter sē principēs Galliae conciliis silvestribus ac remotīs locīs queruntur dē Accōnis morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere dēmōnstrant; miserantur communem Galliāe fortūnam; omnibus pollicitātiōnibus ac praemiīs dēposcunt qui bellī initium faciant et sūi capitis periculō Galliam in libertātem vindicent. In prīmis ratiōnem esse habendam dīcunt, prīnquam eōrum clandestīna cōnsilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdātur. Id esse facile, quod neque legionēs audeant absente imperātōre ex hibernīs ēgredī, neque imperātor sine praesidiō ad legionēs pervenīre possit. Postrēmō, in acīe praestāre interfici quam nōn veterem bellī gloriām libertātemque quam ā maiōribus accēperint recuperāre.

2. His rēbus agitātīs profitentur Carnutēs sē nullum perīculum communīs salūtis causā recūsāre, principēsque ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur, et, quoniam in praesentīā obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, ut iūre iūrandō ac fidē sanctiatūr petunt, collātīs militāriībus signīs, quō môre eōrum gravissimā caerimōnia continētur, nē factō initiō bellī ab reliquis déserrantur. Tum collaudātīs
THE GREAT REBELLION, B.C. 52

Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrandō ab omnibus qui aderant, tempore eius rei cōnstitūtō ā conciliō discēditur.

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutēs Cotuātō et Conconneto-dumnō ducibus, dēspērātis hominibus, Cēnabum signō datō concurrunt civēsque Rōmānōs, qui negotiandī causā ibi cōn-
stiterant, in hīs C. Fūsium Citam, honestum equītem Rōmā-
um, qui rei frūmentāriae iussū Caesaris praerat, interficiunt 5 bonaque eōrum diripiunt. Celeriter ad omnēs Galliae civitātēs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae maiōr atque illūstrior incidit rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regiōnēsque significant; hunc aliī dein-
ceps excipiunt et proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnābī oriente sōle gesta essent ante primam cōnfectam 10 vigiliam in finibus Arvernōrum audīta sunt, quod spatium est milium passuum circiter CLX.

4. Similī ratīōne ibi Vercingetorīx, Celtīlī filius, Arver-
nus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, cuius pater principātum tōtiūs Galliae obtinuerat et ob eam causam, quod rēgnum ap-
petēbat, a civitātē erat interfectus, convocātīs suīs clientibus facile incendit. Cognitō eius consiliō ad arma concurritur. 5 Prohibētur ab Gobannitiōne, patruō suō, reliquisque principi-
bus, qui hanc temptandam fortūnam nōn existimābant; expel-
litur ex oppidō Gergovia; nōn dēsistit tamen atque in agris habet dīlēctum egentium ac perdītōrum. Hac coāctā manū, quōscumque adit ex civitāte ad suam sententiam perducit; 10 hortātur ut commūnis libertātis causā arma capiant, magnīs-
que coāctīs cōpiis adversāriōs suōs, à quibus paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit ex civitāte. Rēx ab suīs appellātur. Dīmittīt quōqueversus lēgātiōnēs; obtestātur ut in fidē maneant. Ce-
leriter sibi Senonēs, Parisiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turonōs, 15 Aulercōs, Lemovıcēs, Andōs reliquōsque omnēs quī Ōceanum attingunt adiungit; omnium cōnsēnsū ad eum dēfertur imperi-
rium. Quā oblātā potestāte omnibus hīs civitātibus obsīdēs imperat, certum numerum militum ad sē celeriter addūcī iu-
bet, armōrum quantum quaeque civitās domī quodque ante 20 tempus efficiat cōnstituit; in prīmis equitātūī studet. Sum-
mae diligentiae summam imperi severitatem addit; magnitudine supplicii dubitantès cògit. Nam maiòre commissò délictò igni atque omnibus tormentis necat, leviore dé causā auribus désèctis aut singulīs effossis oculis domum remittit, ut sint reliquis documentō et magnitudine poenae perterreant aliōs.

5. Hīs suppliciis celeriter coàctō exercitū, Lucterium Cadúrcum, summæ hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpiārum in Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturīgēs proficiscitur. Eius adventū Biturīgēs ad Haeduōs, quōrum erant in fidē, lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogatūm, quō facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre possint. Haeduī dē cōnsiliō lēgātōrum quōs Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidīō Biturīgibus mittunt. Quī cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturīgēs ab Haeduīs dīvidit, paucōs dīēs ibi morātī neque flūmen trānsīre ausī, domum revertuntur lēgātīsque nostrīs renuntiant sē Biturīgum perfidiām veritūs revertisse, quibus id cōnsiliō fuisse cognōverint, ut, si flūmen trānsissent, unā ex parte ipsī, alterā Arvernī sē circumsisterent. Id eāne dē causā quam lēgātīs prōnūntiāverint, an perfidiā adductī fēcerint, quod nihil nōbis cōnstat, nōn vidētur prō certō esse pōnendum. Biturīgēs eōrum discessū statim sē cum Arvernīs coniungunt.


7. Interim Lucterius Cadūrcus in Rutēnōs missus eam civitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitiobrogēs et Gabalōs ab utrisque obsidēs accipit et magnā coāctā manū in prōvinciam Narbōnem versus irruptionem facere contendit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnibus cōnsiliīs antevertendum existi-
mávit ut Narbónem proficisceretur. Eó cum vénisset, timentés confirmat, praesidia in Rutēnīs prōvinciālibus, Volcīs Are-comīcis, Tolōsātibus circumque Narbónem, quae loca hostibus erant finitima, cōnstituit; partem cōpiārum ex prōvinciā sup- plēmentumque quod ex Ætīliā addūxerat in Helviōs, quī finēs 10 Arvernōrum contingunt, convenire iubet.

8. His rēbus comparātīs, repressō iam Lucterīō et re- mōtō, quod intrāre intrā praesidia periculōsum putābat, in Helviōs proficiscitur. Eō cum venisset, timentes confirmat, praesidia in Rutenis provincialibus, Volcis Are-comīcis, Tolosatibus circumque Narbónem, quae loca hostibus erant finitima, constituit; partem copiarum ex provincia supplementumque quod ex Italia adduxerat in Helviōs, qui fines Arvernorum contingunt, convenire iubet.

9. At Caesar bīduum in his locīs morātus, quod haec de Vercingetorige ēsum ventūra opiniōne praecēperat, per causam supplēmentī equitātūsque cōgendī ab exercitū discēdit, Brū-tum adulēscentem ās cōpiīs praeficit; hunc monet ut in omnēs partēs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur: Datūrum sē operam nē longius trīduō a castrīs absit. His cōnstitūtīs rēbus, suīs inopīnāntibus, quam maximīs potest itineribus Viennam pervēnīt. Ibi nactus recentem equitātum, quem multīs ante diēbus eō praemīserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per finēs Haeduōrum in Lingonēs contendit, ubi duae legīōnēs hiemābant, ut, sī quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Haeduīs inīrētur consili, celeritāte praecurreret. Eō cum per- vēnīsset, ad reliquās legīōnēs mittit prīusque omnēs in ūnum
364 CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, VII, 11

locum cógit quam dē eius adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī possēt. 15 Hāc rē cognitā Vercingetorīx rūrsus in Biturīgēs exercītum redūcit atque inde prefectūs Gorgobīnam, Bōiōrum oppidum, quōs ibi Helvēticō proelīō victōs Caesar collocāverat Haeduīsque attribuerat, oppugnāre instituit.


11. Alterō dīe cum ad oppidum Senonum Vellaunōdūnum vēnisset, nē quem post sē hostem relinqueret, et quō expeditīōre rē frūmentāriā ēuterētur, oppugnāre instituit eōque bīduō circumvēllāvit; tertīo dīe missīs ex oppidō lēgātīs dē dēditiōne, arma cōnferrī, iūmenta prōdūcī, sescentōs obsidēs dāri iubet. Ea quī cōnficeret, C. Trebōnium lēgātum relinquīt; ipse, ut quam prīnum iter cōnficeret, Cēnabum Carnutum proficiscitur; quī tum prīnum allātō nūntiō dē oppugnātiōne Vellaunōdūnī, cum longius eam rem ductum īrī existimārent, praesidium Cēnabī tuendī causā, quod eō mitterent, comparābant. Hūc bīduō pervenit. Castrīs ante oppidum positīs diēī tempore exclūsus in posterum oppugnātiōnem differt quaeque ad eam rem ūsuī sint militibus imperat et, quod oppidum Cēnabum pōns flūminis Ligeris contingēbat, veritus nē noctū ex oppidō profugerent, duās legiōnēs in armīs excubāre iubet. Cēnabēnsēs paulō ante medium noctem silentiō ex oppidō ēgressī flūmen trānsīre coepērunt. Quā rē per explōratōrēs nūntiātā Caesar
legiónēs quās expeditās esse iussērat, portīs incēnsīs, intrō-mittit atque oppidō potītūr, perpaucīs ex hostīum numerō dē-siderātīs quīn cūncī caperentūr, quod pontīs atque itinerum angustiae multītūdīnī fugam interclūserant. Oppidum dīripit atque incendit, praeda[m militibus dōnat, exercitum Ligerīm tradūcit atque in Biturīgum finēs pervenit.


13. Caesar ex castrīs equitātum ēdūcī iuβet proeliumque equestre committit; labōrantibus iam suīs Germanōs equitēs circiter cccc submittit, quōs ab initiō sēcum habēre īstītuerat. Eōrum impetum Gallī sustinēre non potuērunt atque in fugam coniectī multīs āmissīs sē ad agmen recēpērunt. Quibus prō-fligātīs rūrsus oppidānī perterritū comprehēnšōs eōs quōrum operā plēbem concitātam existimābant ad Caesarem perdēx-ērunt sēsēque eī dēdidērunt. Quibus rēbus cōnfectīs Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat maximum mūnītissīmumque in finībus Biturīgum atque agrī fertillissimā regiōne, prōfectus est, quod eō oppidō receptō civitātem Biturīgum sē in potestā-tem redēctūrum cōnfidēbat.

14. Vercingetorīx, tot continuīs incōmodīs Vellaunodūnī,
Cēnābī, Noviodūnī acceptīs, suōs ad concilium convocat. Docet longē alīa ratione esse bellum gerendum atque anteā gestum sit. Omnibus modīs huic reī studendum, ut pābulātiōne et commeātū Rōmānī prohibeantur. Id esse facile, quod equītātū ipsī abundant et quod annī tempore subleventur. Pābulum secāri nōn posse; necessāriō dispersōs hostēs ex aedificiis petere; hōs omnēs cotīdiē ab equītibus dēlēri posse. Praeterea communēs salūtis causā reī familiāris commoda ne-legendae; vicīs atque aedificia incendi oportēre hoc spatiō quō-queversus quō pābulandī causā adīre posse videantur. Hārum ipsīs rērum cōpiam suppeterē, quod, quōrum in fīnibus bellum gerātur, eōrum opibus subleventur; Rōmānōs aut inopiam nōn lātūrōs aut magnō cum periculō longius ā castrīs processūrōs; neque interesse ipsōsne interficiant an impedimentīs exuante, quibus āmissīs bellum gerī nōn possit. Praeterea oppida incendi oportēre quae nōn mūnītiōne et locī nātūrā ab omni sīnt periculō tūta, nē suīs sint ad dētrectandam militiam receptācula neū Rōmānīs prōposita ad cōpiam commeātūs prae-damque tollendam. Haec sī gravia aut acerba videantur, multitō illa gravius aestimāri dēbere, liberōs, coniugēs in servitūtem abstrahī, ipsōs interficī; quae sī necessē accidere victīs.

THE GREAT REBELLION, B.C. 52

concédente et precibus ipsórum et misericordiá vulgī. Défensörēs oppidō idōneī déliguntur.


17. Castrīs ad eam partem opposītīs Caesar quae intermissa flūmine et palūde adītum, ut supra dīximus, angustum habēbat, aggerem appārāre, vineās agere, turrēs duās constitv-
ere coepit; nam circumvāllārē locī nātūra prohibēbat. Dē rē frumentāriā Bōiōs atque Haeduōs adhortāri nōn dēstitit: quō-
rum alterī, quod nūllo studiō agēbant, nōn multum adivā-
bat; alterī nōn magnīs facultātibus, quod civitās erat exigua et infirma, celeriter quod habuērunt cônsūmpserunt. Summā difficultātē reī frumentāriāe affectō exercitū tenuitātē Bōiō-
rum, indiligentiā Haeduōrum, incendiis aedificiōrum, usque eō ut complūrēs diēs frumentō militēs caruerint et pecore ex lon-
ginquiōribus vīcis adāctō extrēmam famem sustentārīnt, nūlla tamen vox est ab iis auditā populi Rōmānī maiāstēs et superi-
ōribus victōriās indigna. Quīn etiam Caesar cum in opera sin-
gulās legiōnēs appellāret et, si acerbīs inopiam ferrent, sē dimissūrum oppugnātiōnem dicēret, universī ab eō nē id facetēr petēbant: Sic sē complūrēs annōs illō imperante meruiisse ut nūlīm ignōminiam acciperent, numquam infectā rē discēde-
rent; hoc sē ignōminiae lātūrōs locō, si inceptam oppugnāti-
ōnem reliquisserunt; praestāre omnēs perferre acerbītātēs quam nōn civibus Rōmānīs qui Čenābī perfidiā Gallōrum interissent parentārent. Haec eadem centuriōnibus tribūnīisque militūm mandābant, ut per eōs ad Caesarem déferrentur.

18. Cum iam mūrō turrēs appropinquāssent, ex captīvis
308

CAESAR’S GALLIC WAR, VII, 20

Caesar cognövit Vercingetorijem cönsümptö pábulö castra mövisse propius Avaricum, atque ipsum cum equitätiü expeditis—

que qui inter equités proeliäri cönsuëssent insidiandi causä eö profectum quö noströs posterö diö păbulätüm ventürös arbitr ärë tur. Quibus rébus cognitäis, média noctë silentiö profectus aë hostium castra mänë pervënit. Illi celeriter per explöratörös adventü Caesaris cognitö carrös Impedimentaëque sua in artiöürës silväs abdidërun, cópiä omnës in locö éditö atque aperto instruxërun. Quä rë nüntiätä Caesar celeriter sarcinä§ä cöfërrä, arma expediüri iussit.

19. Collis erat lëñiter ab íñimö acclivis. Hunc ex omnibus fërë partibus palüs difficultis atque impedita cingëbat nöë nätior pedibus quinquägintä. Hoc sé colle interruptis pontibus Galli fidüciä loci continëbant generätimque distribüti ominia vada eius palüdis obtinëbant, sic animö parätö ut, si éam palüdem Römanëi perrumpere cönärentur, haesitantës premerent ex locö superiore; ut quë propinquitätem loci vidëret parätös prope æquö Märtë ad dimicandum existimäret, qui iniquitätém conditionis perspiceret inäni simulätionë sensë os tentäre cögnöscred. Indignerës mìlitës Caesar, quod cönspectum suum hostës ferre possent tantulö spatiö interiectö, et signum proeli exposcentës édocet quantö détrimentö et quot virörum fortium morte necesse sit cönstäre victöriam: Quös cum sic animö parätös videat ut nàllum prö suä laude periculum recüsënt, summae sé iniquitätes condemnäri debëre, nisi eörum vitam laude suä habeat cäsirërem. Síc mìlitës cönsölatä—

5
tus eödem diö redücit in castra reliquaëque quae ad oppugnätionem oppidë pertinëbant administräre instituit.

20. Vercingetörix, cum aë suös redisset, pröditionis insimulatä, quod castra propius Römanös mövisset, quod cum omnë equitätü discessisset, quod sine imperiö tantäs cópiäs reliquisset, quod eius discessë Römanëi tantä opportunitätë et celeritätë vënnisset: Nön haec omnia fortuitö aut sine cäsiliö accidere potuisse; régnüm illum Galliae mälle Caesaris concessë quäm ipsörum habëre beneficiö—täli modö accüsätus ad haec respon—
dit: Quod castra mòvisset, factum inopià pàbuli etiam ipsis hortantibus; quod propius Ròmanòs accessisset, persuàsum locì opportùnitâtè, qui sè ipse sine munìtiòne défenderet; equitum vèrò operam neque in locò palùstrì désideràri débuisse et illic fuisse útilem quò sint profectì. Summam imperì sè cònsultò nùllì discédentem tràdiddisse, nè is multìtùdinis studìò ad dimi-
candum impellerètur, cui reì propter animì mollitièm studère omnès vidèret, quod diùtius labòrem ferre nòn possent. Rò-
mànì sì căsù intervénèrìnt, fortùnàe, sì alicuius indiciò vocàtì, huic habendam gràtiàm, quod et paucitàtem eòrum ex locò superiòre cognòscere et virtùtem dèspicere potuerint, qui di-
micàre nòn ausì turbìter sè in castra recéperìnt. Imperium sè à Caesare per pròditiòinem nullòm désìderàre, quod habère vòctòrià possèt, quae iam esset sibi atque omnìbus Gallìs ex-
plòràta; quìn etiam ipsis remittere, sì sìbi magìs honòrem 
trìbùre quam ab sè salùtem accipere videantur. 'Haec ut intellegàtis,' inquit, 'à mè sincerè prònùntiàriì, audìte Ròmà-
nòs militès.' Pròdùcìt servòs, quòs in pàbùlìtiòne paucìs ante dìebus excòperat et fame vinculisque excruciàverat. Hì, iam antè òdoctì quae interrogaìtì prònùntiàrent, militès sè esse le-
giònàriòs dicunt; fame et inopià adductòs clam ex castrìs 
exísse, sì quid frùmentì àut pecoris in agrìs reperìre possent; simìli omnem exercìtum inopià premì, nec iam vîrès suffìcere ciusquam nec ferre óperis labòrem posse; itaque statuìsse im-
perátorìm, sì nihil in oppugnàtiòne oppídì pròfècìsset, trìduò exercìtum dèdùcerè. 'Haec,' inquit, 'à mè benefìcia habètis, quem pròditiònis ìnsìmulâtìs; cuius operà sine vestrò sanguìne tantum exercìtum victòrem fame paene cònùmptum vidètis; àt quem turbìter sè ex hàc fugà recipièntem nè qua cívítàs suis 
fìnìbus recipiàt à mè pròvìsum est.'

21. Conclàmàt omnis multitàtùdò et suò mòre armìs con-
crepat, quod facere in èò cònsuèrunt cuius òràtiònenm appro-
bant: Summum esse Vercingetòrigem ducem nec dé eìus fidè 
dubitandum, nec màiòre ratìòne bellum administràriì possè. Statuunt ut decem mìlia homìnùm délècta ex omnìbus còpiìs
in oppidum submittantur, nec sōlis Biturīgibus communēm salūtem committendam cēnsent, quod paene in eō, si id oppidum retinuissent, summam victōriae cōnstāre intellegēbant.


23. Mūri autem omnēs Gallicī hāc fere fōrmā sunt. Traēs dērectae, perpetuae in longitudīnem paribus intervāllīs, distantēs inter sē bīnōs pedēs, in solō collocantur. Hae revi- ciuntur intrōrsus et multō aggere vestiuntur; ea autem quae dīximus intervālla grandibus in fronte saxis efficiuntur. Hīs collocātīs et coaumentātīs alius insuper ārdō additur, ut idem illud intervallum servētur neque inter sē contingant trabēs, sed paribus intermissīs spatiis singulae singulīs saxis interiectīs artē contineantur. Sic deinceps omne opus contextūr, dum iūsta mūri altitūdō expleātur. Hoc cum in speciēm varietātemque opus dēforme nōn est, alternīs trabibus ac saxisī, quae rectēs lineīs suōs ordinēs servant, tum ad utīlītātem et défensiōnem urbium summam habet opportūnitātem, quod et ab incendīō lapis et ab ariete māteriā défendit, quae perpetuīs trabibus pedum quadrāgēnum plērumque intrōrsus revincla neque perrumpī neque distrāhī potest.
24. His tot rebus impeditā oppugnātione, militēs, cum tōtō tempore frigore et assiduis imbribus tardārentur, tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt et diēbus x xv aggerem lātum pedēs cccxxx, altum pedēs lxxx extrūxērunt. Cum is mūrum hostium paene contingeret, et Caesar ad opus cōnsuētudine excubāret militēsque hortāretur nē quod omnīnō tempus ab opere intermitterētur, paulō ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum fūmāre aggerem, quem cuniculō hostēs succenderant, eōdemque tempore tōtō mūro clāmōre sublātō, duābus portīs ab utrōque latere turrium ēruptiō fīēbat; aliī facēs atque āridam māteriam dē mūro in aggerem ēminus iaciēbant, picem reliquāsse rēs quibus ignis excitāri potest fundēbant, ut quō prīmum occurrērētur aut cui reī ferrētūr auxilium vix ratiō inīrī posset. Tamen, quod īnstitūtō Caesaris semper duae legiōnēs prō castris excubābant plurēsque partītis temporibus erant in opere, celeriōr factum est ut aliī ēruptiōnibus resisterent, aliī tūrres reducērent aggeremque interscinderent, omnis vērō ex castris multitūdō ad restinguendum concurreret.

25. Cum in omnibus locīs, cōnsūmptā iam reliquā parte noctis, pugnārētur semperque hostibus spēs victōriae redintegrētur, eō magis, quod deustōs pluteōs turrium vidēbant nec facile adīre apertōs ad auxiliandum animadvertēbant, semperque ipsī recentēs dēfessī succēderent omnemque Galliae salūtem in illō vēstigiō temporis posītam arbitrārentur, accidit īnspectantibus nōbīs quod dignum memoriā visum praetereundum nōn existimāvīmus. Quīdam ante portam oppidi Gallus per manūs sēbī ac picis trāditās glēbās in ignem ē regiōne turris prōiciēbat; scorpionē ab latere dextrō trāiectus exanimātusque concidit. Hunc ex proximīs ūnus iacentem trānsgressus eōdem illō mūnere fungēbātur; eādem ratione ictū scorpionīs examinātō alterī successit tertius et tertīo quārtus, nec prius ille est à prōpugnātōribus vacuus relictus locus quam restīncētō aggere atque omni parte submōtīs hostibus finīs est pug- nandī factus.
26. Omnia experti Galli, quod re s nulla successerat, postero die consilium ceperrunt ex oppidio profugere, hortante et inbente Vercingetorige. Id silentio noctis conatii non magna iactura suorum sese effecturos sperebant, propterea quod neque longe ab oppidio castra Vercingetorigis aberant, et palus perpetua, quae intercedebat, Romanos ad insequendum tardabant. 

Iamque hic facere noctu apparabant, cum matres familiae repente in publicum procurrerunt flentesque proiectae ad pedes suorum omnibus precibus petierunt ne se et communes liberos hostibus ad supplicium dederant, quos ad capiendum fugam naturae et virium infirmitatis impediret. Ubi eos in sententia perstare viderrunt, quod plerumque in summó periculó timor misericordiam non recipit, conclamare et significare de fuga Románis coeperrunt. Quó timóre perterrít Galli, né ab equitátu Románorum viae praesoccuparent, cónsilio dèstítérunt.

27. Posteró die Caesar, prémota turri dérecsisque operibus quae facere instituerat, magnó coortó imbrí, nón inútilem hanc ad capiendum consilium tempéstatem arbitrátus, quod pauló incauti custodiás in muro dispositás vidébat, suós quoque languidius in opere versári iussit et quid fieri vellet ostendit; legiônibusque in occulto expéditis, cohortátus ut ali- quandó pró tantís laboribus fructum victóriæa perciperent, iis qui primi mulum ascendissent praemia pròposuit militibusque signum dedit. Illi subitó ex omnibus partibus évoláverunt múrumque celeriter compléverunt.

28. Hostes ré nová perterrít, múro turribusque déiecti, in foró ac locís patentióribus cuneáítim cónstitérunt, hóc animó, ut, si quæ ex parte obviam veníretur, aciē instructā depugnátent. Ubi nèminem in aequum locum sese démittere, sed tótó undique múro circumfundí vidérrunt, verití nè omninò spès fugae tollerétur, abiectís armís ultímas oppidi partés continentí impetú petivérunt, parsque íbi, cum angusto exitū portárum sè ipsi premerent, a militibus, pars iam ègressa portís ab equitibus est interfecta. Nec fuit quisquam qui praedae studérret. Sic et Cénabési caede et labóre operis incitátí nón
aetátė cónfectis, nón mulieribus, nón ínfantibus pepercérunt. Dénique ex omní numeró, qui fuit circiter milium xl, vix dccc, qui prímō clámōre auditó sé ex oppidó élíecerant, ínco-lumès ad Vercingetorígem pervénérunt. Quós ille multá íam nocte silentió ex fugá excépit, et veritus nē qua in castrís ex eórum concursú et misericordiá vulgí séditió orerétur, procúl in viá dispositís famíliáribus suís príncipibusque cívítátum dis-parandós dědúcendósque ad suós cúrávit, quae cuíque cívítātì pars castrórum ab initió obvēnerat.

29. Posteró dié concílió convocáto cónsólátus cohortátus-que est nē sé admodum animó démitterent nēve perturbáren-tur íncommódó. Nón virtùte neque in acié väcissë Rōmānōs, sed artificio quódam et scientiá oppugnātiónis, cuíus reí fuerint ipsí imperiti. Errāre, sī qui in belló omnēs secundōs rērüm prōventūs exspectent. Sībī numquam placuisse Avaricum dé-fendi, cuíus reí testēs ipsōs habēret; sed factum imprūdentiā Biturígum et nímīa obsequentiā reliquōrum uti hoc íncommo-dum acciperétur. Id tamen sé celeriter maiōribus commodīs sānátūrum. Nam quae ab reliquis Gallīs cívítātēs dissenti- rent, hās suā diligentiā adiūnctūrum atque ūnum cōnsilium tōtius Galliae effectūrum, cuíus cōnsēnsuī nē orbis quidem terrārum possit obsistere; idque sé prope iam effectum habēre. Intereā aequum esse ab iīs commūnīs salūtis causā impetrārī ut castra mūnīre īnstituerent, quō facilius repentinōs hostium ímpetūs sustinēre possent.

30. Fuit haec ōrātiō nōn ingrāta Gallīs, et maximē quod ipse animó nōn défēcerat tantō acceptō íncommódó neque sē in occultum abdiderat et cōnspectum multitūdinis fügerat; plús-que animó prōvidēre et praesentīre existimābātur, quod ré integrā prímō incendendum Avaricum, post dēserendum cē- suera. Itaque ut reliquōrum imperātōrum rēs adversae auctōritātem minuunt, sīc huius ex contrāriō dignitās íncommódó acceptō in diēs augēbātur. Simul in spem veniēbant eius affirmātiōne dé reliquis adiungendīs cívítātibus; prīmum-que eō tempore Gallī castra mūnīre īnstituērunt; et sic erant
animō confirmați hominês insuélī labōris, ut omnia quae imperārentur sibi patienda existimārent.

31. Nec minus quam est pollicitus Vercingetorix animō laborābat ut reliquās civitātēs adiungeret, atque eārum princi-pēs dōnīs polllicitātiōnibusque alliciēbat. Huic reī idōneōs hominēs déligēbat, quōrum quisque aut őrātiōne subdolā aut amicitiā facillīmē capere posset. Quī Avaricō expugnātō refūgerant armandōs vestiēndōsque cūrāt; simul, ut dēminūtāe cōpiāe redintegrārentur, imperat certum numerum miliitum civitātibus, quem et quam ante diem in castra addūcē velit, sagittāriōsque omnēs, quōrum erat permagnus numerus in Galliā, conquīri et ad sē mittī iubet. Hās rēbus celeriter id quod Avaricī déperierat expletur. Interim Teutomatus, Olloviconis filius, rēx Nitiobrogum, quīs pater ab senātu nostrō amīcus erat appellātus, cum magnō numerō equitūm et quōs ex Aquītāniā condūxerat ad eum pervenīt.

32. Caesar Avaricī complūrēs diēs commorātūs summamque ibi cōpiām frūmentī et reliquī commeātūs nactus exercītum ex labōre atque inopiā reficit. Iam prope hieme confectā, cum ipsō annī tempore ad gerendum bellum vocārētur et ad hostem proficiscī constituisset, sīve eum ex palūdibus silvisque ēlicere sīve obsidiōne premere posset, lēgātī ad eum principēs Haeduōrum veniunt ōrātum ut maximē necessāriō tempore civitātī subveniat: Summō esse in periculō rem, quod, cum singulī magistrātūs antiquītūs creāri atque régiam potestātem annum obtīnēre cōnsuēssent, duo magistrātūm gerant et sē uterque eōrum légibus creatūm esse dīcat. Hōrum esse alterum Convictolitāvem, flōrentem et illūstrem adulēscēntem, alterum Cotum, antiquissimā familiā nātum atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae et magnae cognātiōnis, cuius frāter Valetiācus proximō anno eundem magistrātūm gesserit. Civitātem esse omnem in armīs; divīsūm senātum, divīsūm populum, suās cuīsuque eōrum clientēlās. Quōd sī diūtiōs alātūr contrōversiā, fore utī pars cum parte civitātis cōnfiūgat. Id nē accidat positum in eius diligentiā atque auctōritātē.
33. Caesar, etsi a bellō atque hoste discèdere détrîmentō-sum esse existimābat, tamen nōn ignōrāns quanta ex dissēnsiōnibus incommoda orīrī cōnsuēssent, né tanta et tam coniūncta populō Rōmānō cīvitās, quam ipse semper aluisset omnibusque rēbus ornāsset, ad vim atque arma dēscenderet, atque ea pars 5 quae minus sībi cōnfideret auxilia a Vercingetorīge arcesseret, huic reī praevertendum existimāvit, et, quod légibus Haedu-ōrum iīs quī summmum magistrātum obtinērent excèdere ex finibus nōn licēret, nē quīd dē iūre aut dē légibus eōrum déminuisse vidērētur, ipse in Haeduōs proficīscī statuit senā-tumque omnem et quōs inter contrōversia esset ad sē Decetiam évocāvit. Cum prope omnis cīvitās eō convēnisset docērēturque, paucīs clam convocātīs aliō locō, aliō tempore atque oportuerit, frātem à frātre renūntiātum, cum légēs duo ex ūnā familiā vīvō utrōque nōn sōlum magistrātūs creārī vetārent, sed etiam 10 in senātū esse prohibērent, Cotum imperium dēpōnere coēgit, Convictolīvem, qui per sacerdōtēs mōre cīvitātīs intermissīs magistrātibus esset creātus, potestātem obtinēre iussit.

34. Hoc dēcrētō interpositō, cohortātus Haeduōs ut contrōversiārum ac dissēnsiōnis obliviscérentur atque omnibus omissīs rēbus huic bellō servīrent eaque quae meruiissent prae-mia ab sē, dēvictā Galliā, exspectārent equitātumque omnem et peditum mīlia decem sībi celeriter mitterent quae in praesidiis 5 reī frumentāriāe causā dispensērent, exercitum in duās partēs divisīt: quattuor legiōnēs in Senōnēs Parisiōsque Labiēnō dūcendās dedit, sex ipse in Arvernōs ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flūmen Elaver dūxit; equitātūs partem illī attribuit, partem sībi reliquit. Quā rē cognitā Vercingetorīx, omnibus 10 interruptīs eius flūminis pontibus, ab alterā flūminis parte iter facere coepit.

35. Cum uterque utrimque exīsset exercitus, in cōnspectū ferēque ē regiōne Caesaris castra pōnēbat, dispositīs explōrā-tōribus, nēcubi effectō ponte Rōmānī cópiās trādūcerent. Erat in magnīs Caesarī difficītātibus rēs, nē maiōrem aestātīs par-tem flūmine impedīrētur, quod nōn ferē ante autumnum 5
Elaver vadó trānsīrī sólet. Itaque, nē id accideret, silvestrī locō castrīs positīs ē regione ūnīus eōrum pontium quōs Vercingetorīx rescindendōs ērāverat, posterō diē cum duābus legionibus in occultō resītīt; reliquās cōpiās cum omnibus im- pedimentīs, ut cōnsuērāt, mīsit, distractīs quibusdam cohōrtibus, ut numerus legiōnum cōnstāre vidērētūr. Hīs quam longissimē possent prōgredi iussīs, cum iam ex diēī tempore coniectūram caperēt in castra perwentūm, īsdem sublicīs, quārum pars inferior integra remanēbat, pontem reficere coepit. Celeriter effectō opere legiōnibus traductīs et locō castrīs idōneō dēlēctō reliquās cōpiās revocāvit. Vercingetorīx rē cognitā, nē contra suam voluntātem dīmicāre cōgerētur, magnīs itineribus antecessīt.

36. Caesar ex eō locō quintīs castrīs Gergoviam pervēnīt equestriē quō profecto levī factō, perspectō urbīs sitū, quae posita in altissimō monte omnēs adītūs diffīciles habēbat, dē oppugnātiōne dēspērāvit, dē obsessiōne nōn prius agendum cōnstituit quam rem frumentāriām expedīsset. At Vercingetorīx, castrīs prope oppidum in monte positīs, mediocribus circum sē intervāllīs sēparātīm singulārūm cīvitātūm cōpiās collocāverat, atque, omnībus eius iugī collibus occupātīs quā dēspiciē poterat, horribīle speciem praebebat, principēsque ēārum cīvitātūm quōs sibi ad cōnsiliūm capiendum dēlēgerat primā īūce cotidiē ad sē convenīre iubēbat, seu quid commūnicandum seu quid administrandum vidērētur, neque īllum ferē diem intermittēbat quīn equestriē proeliō, interiectīs sagittāriīs, quīd īn quōque esset animī ac virtūtis suōrum perīcitārētur. Erat ē regione oppidī collis sub īpsīs rāċicibus montis ēgregiē mūnītus atque ex omnī parte circumcīsus; quem si tenērent nostri, et aquā magnam partem et pābulātiōne īberā prohibitūri hostēs vidēbantur. Sed is locus praesiōdiō ab īsī nōn īnfirmō tenēbātur. Tamen silentiō noctīs Caesar ex castrīs ēgressus, priusquam subsidiō ex oppidō venīrī posse, dēiectō praesiōdiō, potitus locō, duās ibi legiōnēs collocāvit fossamque duplicem duodēnum pedum ā maiōribus castrīs ad minōra perduxīt, ut
tūtō ab repentīnō hostium incursū etiam singulī commeāre possent.


38. Litaviccus acceptō exercitū, cum mīlia passuum circiter xxx a Gergoviā abesset, convocātīs subitō mīlitibus lacrimānōs, ‘Quō proficiēscimur,’ inquit, ‘mīlitēs? Omnīs noster equitātus, omnīs nōbilitās interiērit; principēs civitātis, Eporēdorĭx et Viridomārūs, insimulāti prōditōnīs ab Rōmānīs ēndictā causā interfectī sunt. Haec ab hīs cognōscite, quī ex ipsā caede effūgērunt; nam ego, frātribus atque omnibus mēīs propinquis interfectīs, dolōre prohibeōr quae gesta sunt prōnūn-tiāre.’ Proūcuntur ii quōs ille ēdocuerat quae dicē vellet, atque eadem quae Litaviccus prōnūnțiāverat multitūdīnī expō-nunt: Omnēs equitēs Haeduōrum interfectōs, quod collocūtī cum Arvernīs dicerentur; ipsōs sē inter multitūdinem militum
occultasse atque ex mediā caede effūgisse. Conclāmant Haeduī et Litaviccum obsecran t ut sibi cōnsulat. 'Quasi vērō,' inquit ille, 'cōnsili sit rēs, ac nōn recessė sit nōbis Gergoviam con-
tendere et cum Arvernīs nōsmet coniungere. An dubitāmus quīn nefāriō facinore admissō Rōmānī iam ad nōs interficien-
dōs concurrant? Proinde, sī quid in nōbīs animī est, perse-
quāmur eōrum mortem quī indignissimē interiērunt, atque hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus.' Ostendīt cīvēs Rōmānōs, quī ei prae-
sidī fidūciā ūnā erant; continuō magnum numerum fru-
mentī commeātūsque dīripit, ipsōs crūdēlīter excruciātōs in-
terficit. Nūntio sētā cīvitāte Haeduōrum dīmittit, eōdem
mendāciō dē caede equitum et principum permovet; hortā-
tur ut similī ratiōne atque ipse fēcerit suās iniūriās perse-
quantur.

39. Eporedorīx Haeduus, summō locō nātus adulēscēns et
summae domī potentiāe, et ūnā Viridomārus, parī aetāte et
grātiā, sed genere disparī, quem Caesār ab Diviciācō sībī trā-
dītum ex humilī locō ad summam dignitātem perduxerat, in
equitum numerō convēnerant nōminātīm ab eō evocātī. Hīs
erat inter sē dē principātū contentiō, et in illā magistrātūm
contrōversiā alter prō Convictolitāve, alter prō Cotō summīs
opibus pugnāverant. Ex hīs Eporedorīx cognītō Litavicci
cōnsiliō mediā fere nocte rem ad Caesarem dēfert; ārāt nē
patiātur cīvitātem prāvis adulēscēntium cōnsiliīs ab amīcitā
populi Rōmānī dēficere; quod futūrum prōvideat, sī sē tot
hominum miliā cum hostibus coniūnxerint, quōrum salūtem
neque propinquī neglegere neque cīvitās levi mōmentō aesti-
māre possit.

40. Magnā affectus sollicitūdine hoc nūntiō Caesar, quod
semper Haeduōrum cīvitātī praeceptūcē indulserat, nūllā inter-
positā dubitātiōne legiōnēs expeditās quattuor equitātumque
omnem ex castrīs edūcit, nec fuit spatium tālī tempore ad
contrahanda castra, quod rēs posita in celeritāte videbātur; C.
Fabium lēgātum cum legiōnibus duābus castrīs praesidiō relin-
quīt. Frātrēs Litavicci cum comprehendī iussisset, paulō ante
reperit ad hostēs profūgisse. Adhortātus militēs nē necessāriō tempore itineris labōre permoveantur, cupidissimīs omnibus, prōgressus mīlia passuum xxv agmen Haeduōrum cōspicātur; immisō equitātū iter eōrum morātur atque impedit interdictique omnibus nē quemquam interficiant. Eporēdorigem et Viridomārum, quōs illī interfectōs existimābant, inter equitēs versāri suōsque appellāre iubet. Hīs cognitiīs et Litavicci fūrae perspetā Haeduī manūs tendere, dēditionem significāre et prōiectīs armīs mortem dēprecāri incipiunt. Litaviccus cum suīs clientibus, quibus mōre Gallōrum nefās est etiam in extrae fortūnā dēserere patrōnōs, Gergoviam profūgit.


42. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Haeduī prīmis nūntiīs ab Litavicciō acceptīs nūllum sībi ad cognōscendum spatium relinquunt. Impellit aliōs avāritiā, aliōs īrācundiā et temeritās, quae maximē illī hominum generī est innāta, ut levem audiētionem habeant prō rē compertā. Bona cīvium 5 Rōmānōrum dīripiunt, caedes faciunt, in servitūtem abstrahunt. Adiuvat rem prōclīnātām Convictolitāvis plēbemque ad furōrem impellit, ut facinore admissō ad sānitātem revertī pudet. M. Aristium, tribūnum militum, iter ad legiōnēs fācientem fidē da ā ex oppidō Cavillōnō ēducunt; idem facere 10
cogunt eos qui negotiando causā ibi constiterant. Hōs continuō in itinere adortī omnibus impedimentīs exuunt; repugnantēs diem noctemque obsident; multīs utrimque interfectīs maiōrem multitūdinem in arma concitant.

43. Interim nūntiō allātō omnēs eōrum milītes in potestāte Caesaris tenērī, concurrunt ad Aristium, nihil públicō factum cōnsiliō dēmonstrant; quaestīōnem dē bonīs diēreptīs dēcernunt, Litavicī frātrumque bona publicant, légātōs ad Caesarem suī pūrgandī gratiā mittunt. Hos continuo in itinere adorti omniibus impedimentīs exuunt; repugnantēs diem noctemque obsident; multīs utrimque interfectīs maiōrem multitūdinem in arma concitant.

44. Haec cogitānti accidere visa est facultās bene gerendae rei. Nam cum in minōra castra operis perspiciendi causā venisset, animadvertit collem qui ab hostibus tenēbātur nūdātum hominibus, qui superōriibus diēbus vix prae multitūdine cernī poterat. Mirātus quae rex in perfugīs causam, quōrum magnus ad eum cotidiē numerus cōnfluēbat. Ĉonstābat inter omnēs, quod iam ipse Caesar per explōrātōrēs cognōverat, dorsum esse eius iugī prope aequum, sed silvestre et angustum, quà esset aditus ad alteram partem oppidi; vehementer huic illō locō timēre nec iam aliter sentīre, įnō colle ab Rōmānīs occupātō, si alterum āmīsissent, quīn paene circumvāllātī atque omnī exitū et pābulātiōne interclūsiū vidērventur; ad hunc mūniendum locum omnēs ĉa Vercingetorīgē evocātōs.

45. Hāc rē cognitā Caesar mittit complī rēs equitum tur-

46. Oppidi mūrūs ā plānitiē atque initiō ascēnsūs rēctā regiōne, sī nūllus ānfrāctus intercōderet, mōc passūs aberat; quicquid hūc circuitūs ad molliiendum clivum accesserat, id spatium itineris augēbat. Ā mediō fērē colle in longitūdinem, ut nātūra montīs fērēbat, ex grandibus saxīs sex pedum mūrum, qui nostrōrum impetum tardāret, praedūxerant Gallī atque īnferiōre omnī spatiō vacuō relictō superiōrem partem collis usque ad mūrum oppidi dēnsissimīs castrīs complēverant. Mīlītēs datō signō celeriter ad mūniōnem perveniunt eamque trānsgressī trīnīs castrīs potiuntur; ad tanta fuit in castrīs capiendīs celeritās ut Teutomātus, rōx Nitiobrogum, subitō in tabernāculō oppressus, ut merīdiē conquīverat, superiōre corporis parte nūdā, vulnerātō equō, vix sē ex manibus praedantium mīlitum ēripēret.
47. Consecutus id quod animō prōposuerat, Caesar receptuī canī iussit, légionisque decimae, quācum erat, continuō signa cōnstitērunt. At reliquārum légionum militēs nōn aŭdītō sonō tubae, quod satis magna vallēs intercēdēbat, tamen ā tribūnīs militum lēgātīisque, ut erat ā Caesare praeceptum, retinēbantur. Sed élātī spē celeris victōriāe et hostium fugā et superiōrum temporum secundīs proeliīs nihil adeō arduum sībi esse exīstimābant quod nōn virtūte cōsequī possent, neque finem prius sequendi fēcērunt quam mūrō oppidi portīisque appropinquārunt. Tum vērō, ex omnibus urbīs partibus ortō clāmōre, quī longius aberant repentīnō tumultū perterritī, cum hostem īntrā portās esse exīstimārent, sē ex oppidō ēīscērunt. Mātēs famīliae dē mūrō vestem argumentum iactābant et pectore nūdō prōminentēs passis manibus obtestābantur Rōmānōs ut sībi parcerent neu, sīcūt Avarici fēcissent, nē ā mulieribus quidem atque īnfantibus abstīnērent; nōn nullae dē mūrō per manūs dēmissae sēsē mīlitibus trādēbant. L. Fabius, centuriō légēnis octāvae, quem inter suōs ēō diē dīxisse cōnstābat excitāri sē Avaricēnsibus praemīs neque commissūrum ut prius quisquam mūrum ascenderet, trēs suōs nactus manipulāres atque ab īīs sublevātus mūrum ascendit; hōs ipse rūrsus singulōs exceptāns in mūrum exultīt.

48. Interim īī qui ad alteram partem oppidi, ut supra dēmōnstrāvimus, mūnitīonis causā convēnerant, prīmō exaudītō clāmōre, inde ētiam crēbris nūntiis incitāti oppidum ā Rōmānīs tenērī, praemissīs equībus magnō cursū ēō contēndērunt. Eōrum ut quisque prīmus vēnerat, sub mūrō cōnstitēbat suōrumque pugnantium numerum augēbat. Quōrum cum magna multītūdō convēnisset, mātēs familiae, quae paulō ante Rōmānīs dē mūrō manūs tendēbant, suōs obtestārī et mōre Gallicō passum capillum ostentāre liberōsque in cōnspectum prōferre coepērunt. Erat Rōmānīs nec locō nec numerō aequa contentiō; simul et cursū et spatiō pugnae dēfatīgātī nōn facile recentēs atque integrōs sustinēbant.

49. Caesar cum inīquō locō pugnāri hostiumque cōpiās
augērī vidēret, praemetuēns suīs ad T. Sextium lēgātum, quem minōribus castrīs prae‐sidiō reliquerat, misit ut cohortēs ex castrīs celeriter ēdūceret et sub īnfinī colle ā dextrō latere hostium cōstitueret, ut, si nostrōs locō depulsōs vīdisset, quō minus liberē hostēs insequerentur terrēret. Ipsa paulum ex eō locō cum legiōne prōgressus ubi cōnstiterat ēventum pugnae exspectābat.


Vercingetorix ab rādīcibus collis suōs intrā mūnītiōnēs redūxit. Eō diē militēs sunt paulō minus septimeṅtī désiderātī.

52. Posterō diē Caesar cōntīone advocātā temeritātem cupiditātemque militum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsī iūdicāvisissent quō prōcēdendum aut quid agendum vidērētur neque signō recipēndī datō cōnstitissent neque à tribūnīs militum légātīisque retinērī potuissent. Exposuit quid inīquitās locī possent, quod ipse ad Avaricum sēnsisset, cum sine duce et sine equitātū dēprehēnsīs hostibus explōrātam victōriam dīmisisset, nē parvum modo dētrimentum in contentiōne prop- ter inīquitātem locī accideret. Quantopere eōrum animī magnitūdinem admīrārētur, quōs nōn castrōrum mūnītiōnēs, nōn altitūdō montis, nōn mūrus oppidi tardāre potuisset, tantopere licentiam arrogantiamque reprehendere, quod plūs sē quam imperātōrem dē victōriā atque exitū rērum sen- tire existimārent; nec minus sē à milite modestiam et con- tinentiam quam virtūtem atque animī magnitūdinem désiderāre.

53. Hāc habitā cōntīone et ad extrēmum cōnfirmātīs mili- tibus, nē ob hanc causam animō permovērentur neu, quod inīquitās locī attulisset, id virtūtī hostium tribuerent, eadem dē profectione cōgitāns quae ante sēnserat, legiōnēs ex castrīs ἑδūxīt aciemque idōneō locō cōnstituit. Cum Vercingetorīx nihilō magis in aerum locum dēscenderet, levī factō equestrī proeliō, atque eō secundō, in castra exercitum redūxit. Cum hoc idem posterō diē fēcissent, satis ad Gallicam ostentātiōnem minuendam militumque animōs cōnfirmandōs factum existi- māns in Haeduōs mōvit castra. Nē tum quidem insecūtīs hostibus, tertīō diē ad flūmen Elaver vēnit; pontem refēcit ex- ercitumque trādūxit.

54. Ibi ā Viridomārō atque Eporēdōrīge Haeduīs appellā- tus discit cum omnī equitātū Litavicccum ad sollicitandōs Haeduōs prefectum: Opus esse ipsōs antecēdēre ad cōnfirmandam cīvitātem. Etsī multīs iam rēbus perfidiām Haeduōrum per- spectam habēbat atque hōrum discessū māturārī dēfectiōnem
civitātis existimābat, tamen eōs retinendōs nōn cēnsuit, nē aut
īnferre iniūriam vidērētur aut daret timōris aliquam suspiciō-
nem. Discēdentibus īs breviter sua in Haeduōs merita expo-
suit, quōs et quam humilēs accēpisset, compulsōs in oppida,
multātōs agris, omnibus ēreptīs sociīs impositō stipendiō, ob-
sidibus summā cum contumeliā extortīs, et quam in fortūnām
quamque in amplitūdinem dūxisset, ut nōn sōlum in prīstimum
statum redīssent, sed omnium temporum dignitātem et grā-
tiam antecessisse vidērentur. Hīs datīs mandātīs eōs ab sē
dīmisit.

55. Noviodūnum erat oppidum Haeduōrum ad ūpās Li-
ergīs opportūnō locō positum. Hūc Caesār omnēs obsīdēs
Galliae, frūmentum, pecūniam pūbicam, suōrum atque exerci-
tūs impedimentōrum magnum partem contulerat; hūc magnum
numerum ēquōrum huius bellī causā in Ītāliā atque Hispāniā
cōemptum miserat. Eō cum Eporōdōris Viridomārusque vē-
nissent et dē statū civitātis cognōvissent, Lītavīccum Bibracte
ab Haeduīs receptum, quod est oppidum apud eōs maxima
auctōritātis, Convictolitāvem magistrātum magnamque partem
senātūs ad eum convēnisse, lēgātōs ad Vercingetōrigem dē 10
pāce et amicitā conciliādā pūbicē missōs, nōn praetermittend-
dum tantum commodum existimāverunt. Itaque interfectīs
Noviodūnī custōdbibus quīque eō negotiandī causā convēnerant,
pecūniam atque ēquōs inter sē partīti sunt; obsīdēs civitātum
Bibracte ad magistrātum dēdūcendōs cūrāvērunt; oppidum, 15
quod ā sē tenērī nōn posse iūdicābant, nē cuī esset ūsui Rō-
mānīs, incendērunt; frūmentī quod subītō potuērunt nāvibus
āvexērunt, reliquum flūmine atque incendīō corrūpērunt. Ipsī
ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus cōpiās cōgere, praesidīa custōdiāsque
ad ūpās Ligerīs dispōnere, equitātumque omnibus locīs inicī-
endī timōris causā ostentāre coepērunt, si ab rē frūmentāriā
Rōmānōs exclūdere possent. Quam ad spem multum eōs a−
diuvābat, quod Liger ex nīvibus crēverat, ut omnīnō vādō nōn
posse trānsīrī vidērētur.

56. Quibus īrebus cognītīs Caesār mātūrandum sībī cēn-
suit, si esset in perﬁciendis pontibus periclitandum, ut prius- quam essent maiōres eō coāctae cópiae dēmicaret. Nam nē commūtātō consiliō iter in prōvinciam convertēret, ut nōn nēmō tum quidem necessāriō faciendum existimābat, cum in-fāmia atque indignitās reī et oppositus mōns Cebenna viārum- que diﬃcultās impediēbat, tum maximē quod abiūntō Labiēnō atque iis legiōnibus quās ūnā miserat vehementer timēbat. Itaque admodum magnīs diurnīs noctūrīisque itineribus con-fectīs contrā omnium opīniōnem ad Ligerim vēnit vadōque per equītēs inventō pró reī necessitātē opportūnō, ut braccia modo atque umerī ad sustinenda arma liberī ab aquā esse possent, dispositō equitātū quī vīm flūminis refringeret atque hostibus prīmō aspectū perturbātīs, incolūmum exercitum trādūxit fru-mentumque in agrīs et pecorīs cópiam nactus replētō his rēbus exercītū iter in Senonēs facere īnstituit.


58. Labiēnus prīmō vīneās agere, crātibus atque aggere palūdem explēre atque iter mūnīre cōnābātur. Postquam id diﬃcilius fīeri animadvertit, silentiō ē castrīs tertiā vigiliā ēgressus, eōdem quō vēnerat itinere Metiosēdum pervēnit. Id est oppidum Senonum in īnsula Sēquanae positum, ut paulō ante dē Lutetīā dīximus. Déprehēnsīs nāvibus circiter quīn-quāgentā celeriterque coniūntīs atque eō militibus impositīs et reī novitāte perterritīs oppidānīs, quōrum magna pars erat
ad bellum évocāta, sine contentiōne oppidō potitūr. Refectō ponte, quem superiōribus dicibus hostēs resciderant, exercitum trāducit et secundō flūmine ad Lutetiam iter facere coepit. Hostēs, rē cognitā ab iis quī Metiosēdō fūgerant, Lutetiam incidēd pontēsque eius oppidī rescindī iubent; ipsī profectī ā palūde in rīpā Sēquanae ē regiōne Lutetiae contrā Labiēnī castra cōnsīdunt.

59. Iam Caesar ā Gergoviā discississe audiēbātur, iam dē Haeduōrum défectiōne et secundō Galliae mōtū rūmorēs afferē-bantur, Gallīque in colloquiis interclūsum itinere et Ligerī Caesarem inopiā frūmentī coāctum in prōvinciām contendisse cōnfīrēbant. Bellovacī autēm défectiōne Haeduōrum cognitā, quī iam ante erant per sē infīdēlēs, manūs cōgēre atque apertē bellum parāre coepērunt. Tum Labiēnus tantā rērum commūtātiōne longē aliud sibi capiendum cōnsilium atque anteā sēnserat intellegēbat, neque iam ut aliquid acquireret proelīo-que hostēs lacesseret, sed ut in columem exercitum Agedinicum reducērēt cōgitābat. Namque altera ex parte Bellovacī, quae civitās in Galliā maximam habet opiniōnem virtūtēs, īstābant, alteram Camulogenus parātō atque iōnīctō exercitū tenēbat; tum legiōnēs ā praesidiō atque impedimentīs interclūsusās maximōm flūmen distinēbat. Tantīs subitō difficūltātibus obiectīs ab animī virtūtē auxiliūm petendum vidēbat.

60. Itaque sub veserum cōnsiliō convocātō, cohortātus ut ea quae imperāsset diligenter industriōque administrārent, navēs, quās Metiosēdō dēduōxerat, singulās equītibus Rōmānīs attribuit et primā confectā vigiliā quattuor milia passuum secundō flūmine silentiō prōgredī ibique sē exspectāre iubet. Quinque cohortēs, quās minimē firmās ad dimicandum esse exīstīmābat, castrīs praesidiō relinquit; quīnque eiusdem legiōnīs reliquās dē medīā nocte cum omnibus impedimentīs adversō flūmine magnō tumultū proficiscī imperat. Conquirit etiam lintrēs; hās magnō sonitū rēmōrum incitātās in eandem partem mittit. Ipse post paulō silentiō egressus cum tribus legiōnibus eum locum petit quō nāvēs appellī iussērat.
61. Eo cum esset ventum, explôrâtôrês hostium, ut omni flûminis parte erant dispositi, inopînantês, quod magna subitô erat coûta tempestâs, â nostris opprîmuntur; exercitus equitâ-
tusque equitibus Römânîs administrântibus, quós eî negotiô praefêcerat, celerîter trânsmittitur. Ùno ferê tempore sub lûcem hostibus nûntiâtur in castris Rômânôrum praeter con-
suêtûdinem tumultiârî, et magnum ìre agmen adversô flûmine sonitumque rêmôrum in eádem parte exaudîrî, et paulô ínfrâ mîlitês návibus trânsporîrî. Quibus rébus audîtîs, quod exûstîmábant tribûs locîs tránsire legiônês atque omnês pertur-
bâtôs déféctîone Haeduórum fugam parârê, suás quoque còpiâs in três partês distribuûrunt. Nam praesidiô ë regiône castrô-
rum relictô, et parvâ manû Metiosêdum versus missâ quae tantum prôgrederêtur quantum návês prôcessissent, reliquâs còpiâs conûtrâ Labiênum dûxêrunt.

62. Prûmâ lûce et nostri omnês erant trânsporâtî et hostîum aciês cernèbâtûr. Labiênum, mîlitês cohôrtâtûs ut suae prûstîná virûtûs et secundissimôrum proelîrôrum retinê-
rent memoriam atque ipsum Caesarem, cuius ductû saepe numérô hostês superâssent, prae­sentem adesse existîmârent, dat signum proelî. Prîmô concursû ab dextrô cornû, ubi septíma lêgîô constîterat, hostês pelluntr atque in fugam coniciuntur; ab sinistrô, quem locum duodecima lêgîô tenêbat, cum prîmî ërdinês hostium tránfîxî pilîs concidissent, tamen úccerrîmê reliqui resistêbant, nec dabat suspicîônem fugae quis-
quam. Ipse dux hostium Camulogenus suis aderat atque eös cohôrtâtûbâtûr. Êncertô etiam nunc exitû victóriâe, cum sep-
tîmae legiônîs tribûnîs esset nûntiâtum quae in sinistrô cornû gererentur, post tergum hostium legiônem ostendêrunt signaque intulêrunt. Ín èo quidem tempore quisquam locô cessî, sed circumventî omnês interfectîque sunt. Eandum fortûnâm tulit Camulogenus. At ìi qui in praesidiô conûtrâ castra Labiêni erant relictî, cum proelîum commîssum audîssent, subsidîô suîs iûrunt collemque cêpêrunt, neque nostrôrum mîlitum victôrûm impetum sustînêre potuûrunt. Sic cum suîs fugien-
tibus permixti, quos non silvae montesque texitur, ab equitatu sunt interfecti. Hoc negotio confecto Labienus revertitur Agedincum, ubi impedimenta totius exercitus relictarant; inde cum omnibus copiis ad Caesarem pervenit.

63. Defectio ne Haeduorum cognitae bellum augetur. Legatiionis in omnès partés circummittuntur; quantum gratia, auctoritate, pecuniæ montesque texerunt, ab equitatu sunt interfecti. Hoc negotio confecto Labienus revertitur Agedincum, ubi impedimenta totius exercitus relicta erant; inde cum omnibus copiis ad Caesarem pervenit.

64. Ille imperat reliquis civitatisibus obsidés diemque ei rei cónstituit. Omnès equités, quídecim milia numeró, celeriter convenire iubet; peditátu quam antea habuerit sè fore contentum dicit, neque fortunam temptatürum aut áci dímicatürum; sed, quoniam abundet equitátu, perfacile esse factū frumentātionibus pábulationibusque Románös prohibère; aequò modo animō sua ipsī frumenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant, quà rei familiāris iacturā perpetuum imperium libertatemque sè conseguī videant. His cōnstitūtīs rebus Haeduis Segusiāvisque, qui sunt fīnitimī prōvinciae, decem milia peditum imperat; huc addit equités octingentōs. His praesicit frātrem Eporēdorīgis bellumque inferre Allobrogibus iubet. Altera ex
CAESAR’S GALLIC WAR, VII, 66

parte Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs, item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad finēs Volcārum Arecomicōrum dē-populandōs mittit. Nihilō minus clandestīnīs nūntiīs lēgātiō-nibusque Allobrogēs sollicitat, quōrum mentēs nōndum ab superiōre bellō resēdisse spērābat. Hōrum principibus pecū-niās, cīvitātī autem imperium tōtiōs prōvinciae policītūr.

65. Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs próvisa erant praeśīdia cohortiūm duārum et virgintī, quae ex ipsā coācta prōvinciā ab L. Caesare lēgātō ad omnēs partēs oppōnēbantur. Helviī suā spōnte cum fīnitimīs proeliō congressīi pelluntur et C. Valeriō Domnotaurō, Cabūrī fīliō, prīncipe cīvitātīs, complūribusque aliīs interfectīs intrā oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbris ad Rhodanum dispositīs praeśīdiīs magnā cum cūrā et diligentiā suōs finēs tuentur. Caesar, quod hostēs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat et interclūsīs omnibus itineribus nūllā rē ex prōvinciā atque Italiā sublevārī poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germānīam mittit ad eās cīvitātēs quās superiōribus annīs pācāverat, equitēsque ab hīs accessit et levis armātūrae pēditēs qui inter eōs proeliārī cōnsūerant. Eōrum adventū, quod minus idōneīs equīs utēbantur, a tribūnīs militūm reliquisque equitī-bus Rōmānīs atque evocātīs eqūōs sūmit Germānīisque distribuit.

66. Interea, dum haec geruntur, hostiūm cōpiiēs ex Arvernīs equitēsque qui tōti Galliāe erant imperātī conveniunt. Magnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingōnum finēs iter faceret quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferre posset, circiter mīlia passuum decem ab Rōmānīs trīnīs castrīs Veringetorīx cōnsēdit convocātīsque ad cōnsilium praefectīs equitin vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat: Fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sībi ad prae-sentem obtinendam libertātem satis esse; ad reliqui temporis pācem atque ōtium parum prōfici; maiōribus enim coāctīs cōpiīs reversūrōs neque finem bellandī factūrōs. Proinde in agmine impeditōs adoriantrunt. Si peditēs suiīs auxiliūm ferant atque in eō morentur, iter facere nōn posse; sī, id quod magic futūrum cōnfidat, relictīs impedīmentīs suae salūtī cōnsulant,
et üsus rerum necessariarum et dignitate spoliatum iri; nam 15 de equibus hostium, quin neomo eorum prògredii modo extrà agmen audeat, né ipsos quidem débere dubitäre. Id quò maiore faciant animò, cópias sè omnes prò castris habitûrum et terròri hostibus futûrum. Conclâmant equítès, sànctíssimò iùre iùrandò confirmâri oportère né tectò recipiâtur, né ad 20 liberòs, né ad parentès, né ad uxòrem aditum habeat qui non bis per agmen hostium perequitâtir.

67. Probátâ re atque omnibus ad iús iùrandum adáctis, posterò diè in trés partès distribútò equitâtù duae sè aciès ab duòbus lateribus ostendunt, unà à primò agmine iter impedire coepit. Quà re nùntiâtâ Caesar suum quoque equitâtum tripertitò divisum contrà hostem iùre iubet. Pugnâtur unà omnibus in partibus. Cònsistit agmen; impedimenta intra legiônès recipiuntur. Si quá in parte nostrì laborâre aut gravior premì vidèbantur, eò signa infèrri Caesar aciemque converti iubèbat; quae rés et hostès ad insequendum tardábat et nostròs spè auxilići confirmâbat. Tandem Germàní ab dextrò 10 latere summum iugum nacti hostès locò dèpellunt; fugientês usque ad flùmen, ubi Vercingetorìx cum pedestribus còpiis cònsèderat, persequantur complûrësque interficiunt. Quà re animadversâ reliqui, né circumvenièrentur veriti, sè fugae mandant. Omnibus locís fit caeddès. Très nóbilissimi Haedui 15 capti ad Caesarem perduçuntur: Còtus, praefectus equitum, qui contròversiam cum Convictolitave proximís comitiís habuerat, et Cavarillus, qui post défèctiônem Litaviccì pedestribus cópiis præfuerat, et Eporëdorìx, quò duce ante adventum Caesaris Haedui cum Sëquanìs bellò contenderant.

The siege of Alesia was the climax of the war, and the greatest of Caesar's military operations against the Gauls. The position was one of remarkable strength, and the number of the enemy was enormous.

The location of the town at Alise Ste. Reine was made entirely certain by Colonel Stoffel, who, acting under the orders of the Emperor Napoleon III, spent three years in excavating the works described by Caesar. At the present time further excavations are going on at the same place. The town occupied the summit of a hill whose base is six miles in circumference. The slopes rise gradually to a wall of rock which is broken in a few places, especially at the
68. Fugātō omni equitātū Vercingetorix cōpiās suās, ut

Caesar's Lines around Alesia

A simplified form of plans which are based on the actual results of excavation.

eastern end. Above this wall, 500 feet above the plain, is a flat summit, one and a quarter miles long and a half mile wide. Springs and wells furnished abundant water. On the north, east, and south other hills of equal height surround this one, but on the west is an open plain.

Caesar had ten legions, containing perhaps 40,000 men, and some cavalry. As only two Gallic states now remained faithful to him, his Gallic cavalry were few. He had therefore hired some German cavalry, who were superior to the Gallic in fighting ability, though far inferior in number. He must also have had some auxiliary infantry. Vercingetorix had 80,000 infantry and 15,000 cavalry. After the siege began, more than 250,000 Gauls came to help Vercingetorix.

Chap. 68-74. Caesar pursues Vercingetorix to Alesia and lays siege to the town. Knowing that an army will come to relieve the town, he constructs a double line of works about it.

Chap. 68. Vercingetorix retreats to Alesia, pursued by Caesar.

1. fugātō... equitātū: as Caesar was marching toward the province, Vercingetorix attacked him with his cavalry, while his infantry stood in battle array before their camp, taking no part in the fight. Vercingetorix was
pro castris collocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit celeriterque impedi-
menta ex castris ēdūcī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar, impedi-
mentīs in proximum collem ductīs, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relīctīs, secūtus hostēs quantum diēī tempus est passum, circiter tribus milibus ex novissimō agmine interfecit, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbīs sitū perterrītīisque hostibus, quod equitātū, quā maximē partē exercitūs cōnfidē-
bant, erant pulsi, adhortātus ad labōrem militēs Alesiam circumvāllāre institūt.

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidīōne expugnāri nōn posse vidērētur; cuius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina sublūēbant. Ante oppidum plānītīs circiter milia passuum tria in longitū-
dinem patēbat; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs mediocrī in-
teriectō spatiō pari altītūdīnis fastigiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub múrō quae pars collis ad orientem sōlēm spectābat, hunc omnem locum cópiāe Gallōrum complēverant fossamque et māceriam in altītūdīnem sex pedum praedūxerant. Eius múniτōnis quae ab Rōmānis instituēbātur circuitus xi milīa passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnīs locīs erant posita viii castellaque

---

defeated chiefly by Caesar’s German cavalry.

| 6. pari fastigiō: descriptive ablative. |
| 7. múrō: the wall of the town. |
| quae pars, hunc omnem locum, “all that part which.” |
| 8. māceriam: traces of this wall may still be seen. The camp protected the low ridge which connects the hill of Alesia with the one to its east,—the only point at which the town could possibly have been stormed. |
| 9. eius múniτōnis: this probably refers only to the ring of camps and redoubts; but he may have already traced out and begun the inner wall and ditch, represented on the plan as completely encircling the town. This line is somewhat less than eleven Roman miles in circumference. |
| 11. tenēbat, “extended”; so that |
XXIII facta; quibus in castellis interdiū statioāēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō tieret; haec cadem noctū excubitōribus ac fīrmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.


71. Vercingetorīx, priusquam mūniōnēs ab Rōmānīs perfectantur, consilium capit omnum ab sē equitātūm noctū dimittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eorum

mīlia is an accusative of extent of space.
castra VIII: traces of all these have been discovered.
castella XXIII: traces of five have been discovered; the rest are located on the plan only by conjecture.

Chap. 70. The Gauls are defeated in a cavalry battle.
1. opere: the building of redoubts and camps.
2. intermissam collibus, "unbroken by hills."
5. prō castrīs: those near the plain.
6. praesidiō, "support."
8. angustiōribus... relictīs, "in the gates, which had been made too narrow." The cavalry fled up the Ose and the Oserain to the western walls of the Gallic camp.
11. prō vāllō = prō castrīs, 1. 5.
12. nōn minus: than the horsemen, who had just been routed.
quī... Gallī: the Gallic infantry, who had been in the camp all the time.
15. portās: of the town.

Chap. 71. Vercingetorīx sends out all his cavalry to appeal for help.
1. perfectantur: App. 236, b.
2. equitātūm dimittere: they were useless in the city, and would only help to consume the limited supply of provisions.
civitatem adeat omnèsque qui per aetatem arma ferre possint ad bellum cógant. Sua in illós meritá própónit obtestáturque ut suae salútis ratiónum habeant neu sé optimé dē commünī libertáte meritum hostibus in cruciátum dédant. Quod si indíligentióres fuerint, milia homínium dèlecta lxxx vngō sēcum interítura dēmónstrat. Ratióne initā frúmentum sē exigué diērum xxx habēre sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī posse parcendō. His datis mandātis, quā erat nostrum opus intermissum, secunda vigilia silentio equitātum dimittit. Frúmentum omne ad sē referri iubet; capitis poenam iis qui non paruerint constituit; pecus, cuius magna erat cöpia á Mandubiis compulsa, virītīm distribuit; frúmentum parcē et paulātīm mētīrī instituit; cöpiās omnēs quās prō oppidō collocāverat in oppidum recipit. His ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectare et bellum administrare parat.

Quibus rebus cognitis ex perfugīs et captīvis, Caesar haec genera mūnītiónis instituit. Fossam pedum vigintī déréctīs lateribus dūxit, ut eius fossae solum tantundem patēret quantum summa labra distārent; reliquās omnēs mūnītiónes ab ea fossā passūs cccc redūxit hoc cōnsiliō, quoniam

5. cógant: plural because all the cavalry are thought of as a subject; omnēs is the object.
6. sē... meritum, "him, the man who had done most for the liberty of all."
9. ratióne initā, "according to his calculations."
10. tolerārī posse: impersonal; "they could hold out."
12. dimittī: they probably escaped up the valleys of the Ose and the Oserain.
15. virītīm distribuit: in order that they might be eaten first, since there was nothing to feed them on.

Chap. 72. Caesar's works of investment.
2. haec genera: excavations show that the complete works, as described in this and the following chapter, were constructed only in the plain west of the town. When the line ran over hills it did not need so much artificial protection.

pedum vigintī: in width; the depth was eight or nine feet. This trench was dug only in the plain, and was no part of the real line of investment. As Caesar says later, it merely protected the men while they were working back of it.

3. déréctīs lateribus, "with perpendicular sides."
solum: not sōlum.
5. passūs CCCC: this is about the real distance at the ends: see plan, p. 392.
hoc cōnsiliō: explained by the clauses ne... advolāret aut... possent.
tantum esset necessario spatium complexus nec facile totum opus corona militia cingeretur, ne de impröviso aut noctu ad munitiones multitudinis hostium advolaret, aut interdiu tela in noströs operi dœstina-tös conicere possent. Hoc intermissœ spatii duas fossas XV pedes lätas eadem altitūdine perduxit; quärum interiorem campestribus ac dēmissis locis aqua ex flūmine dērivātā complevit. Post eās aggerem ac vāllum XII pedum extrūxit; hui e lōricam pinnāsque adiē-

6. tantum spatium: the distance around the hill of Alesia.
7. nec... cingeretur: i.e. Caesar could not spare men enough to form a line of protection for those who were working.
15. eadem altitūdine: i.e. the two trenches were of the same depth, which the excavations show was eight or nine feet.
16. interiorem: the one nearer the town.
18. ex flūmine: chiefly the Oserain. The gravel washed into the trench was traced for some distance by the excavators.
19. post eās: Caesar describes the works from the point of view of Alesia.
20. XII pedum: this was the combined height of the earthwork (aggerem) and the palisades (vāllum).
21. lōricam pinnāsque: these were made of interwoven osiers, and were used as a facing for the palisades. The lōrica was continuous, furnishing some protection, but low enough to allow the Romans to throw missiles over it; the
cit, grandibus cervis eminentibus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris qui ascēnsum hostium tardārent, et turrēs tōtō opere circumdedit quae pedēs LXXX inter sē distārent.

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriāri et frūmentāri et tantās mūnitionēs fieri necesse dēminūtis nostris cōpiis, quae longius ā castrīs prōgrediēbantur; ac nōn numquam opera nostra Gallī temptāre atque ruptionēm ex oppidō plūribus portis summā vi facere cōnābantur. Quārē ad haec rūrsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō militum mūnitionēs dēfendī possent. Itaque trunciī arborum aut admodum firmīs rāmis abscessīs atque hōrum delibrātīs ac praeacūtīs cacuminibus perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae dūcebantur. Hūc illīs stipitēs dēmissī et ab īnīmō revīncī, nē revelli possent, ab rāmis ēmiumbant. Quīnī erant ōrdinēs, coniōnctī inter sē atque implicātī; quō qui intrāverant sē īpsi acūtissimīs vāllīs induēbant. Hōs cippōs appellābant. Ante hōs obliquī ēr-

(pinnae were battlements, high enough to shield the whole person.

22. cervīs: tree tops, with the branches sharpened. They projected horizontally, and were placed in place by the lower ends of the palisades.

pluteōrum: here referring to the entire parapet, including vāllum, tōrica, and pinnae.

23. tōtō opere: ablative of place.

24. quae distārent: a clause of characteristic; "so that they were, etc."

Chap. 73. The devices by which Caesar strengthened his lines of investment.

1. erat ... prōgrediēbantur, lit. "to get timber and provisions and for ... to be made was necessary for our diminished troops, which, etc." = "our troops, reduced in number by having to go farther and farther from the camp, had to, etc." fierē is best translated by the active. The soldiers had to go farther and farther from the camp as they exhausted the supplies near at hand; this reduced the number of men actually at work at any one time.

5. rūrsus addendum, "that he must still add."

6. quō, "in order that."

7. trunciī, etc.: a tree top or a great limb with many branches was lopped off, and each branch was peeled and sharpened. Five rows of these were set upright in a trench which ran parallel with the trenches described in 72, 10. Apparently there were several of these trenches, although the illustration, p. 396, shows but one.

9. hūc = in hōs fossās.

10. ab rāmis, "with their branches only."

11. quīnī: five rows in each trench.

coniōnctī ... implicātī: the rows were set so closely together that their projecting branches interlaced.

12. quō qui intrāverant, "whoever got among them."

vāllīs: the sharpened branches, which were like palisades.

13. ante hōs: i.e. on the side toward Alesia.

obliquī ... dispositīs: i.e. as checkers are arranged on a board.
dinibus in quincuncem dispositis scrobēs in altitūdinem trium
15 pedum fodiēbantur paulātim angustiōre ad infimum fastigiō. Huc teretēs stīpitēs feminis crassitudine ab summō praecūtī et praeustī dēmittēbantur ita ut non amplius digitīs quattuor ex terrā ēminērent; simul cōnfirmandī et stabiliendi causā singulī ab īnīmō solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur, reliqua pars scrobis
20 ad occultandās īnsidiās vīminibus ac virgultīs īntegēbātur. Huius generis octōnī ērdinēs ductī tertīas inter sē pedēs distā-
bant. Id ex similītūdine flōris liliīm appellābant. Ante haec
25 tāleae pedem longae ferreīs hāmīs īnfixīs tōtae in terram īn-
dioebantur mediocribusque intermissis spatiīs omnibus locīs dis-
serēbantur; quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

74. Hīs rēbus perfectīs, regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit
aequissimās prō locīī naturā, xiiiī mīlia passuum complexus
parēs eiusdem generis mūniōnēs, diversās ab hīs, contrā ex-
teriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē magnā quidem multitūdine
mūniōnūm praesidia circumfundī possent; nē autem cum
periculō ex castrīs ēgredī cōgātur, diērūm xxx pābulum fru-
mentumque habēre omnēs convectum iubet.

15. paulātim fastigiō: i.e. the pits were funnel-shaped. They were about six feet in diameter at the top. Many of them have been found.
16. crassitudine: descriptive ablative.
17. praeustī: to harden the point.
18. singuli . . . exculcā-
bantur, "each stake was
22. haec: i.e. the līliā.
23. tāleae: wooden stakes
with barbed hooks of iron
set in their tops. The hooks
were so short that they would
25. not be seen among the grass.
Several of them have been
30. found.
31. regiōnēs . . . aequissimās,
"keeping on as level ground as pos-
sible." This outer line ran over the
tops of the hills (see plan, p. 392); but
Caesar avoided, as far as he could, places
where an outside enemy could charge
downhill on the works.
2. XIII . . . passuum: the line in-
cluded all of Caesar's camps and re-
doubts, and of course was longer than the
inner line; but it was somewhat
5. less than fourteen miles in length.
3. diversās ab hīs, "facing in the
opposite direction."
4. ut . . . possent: i.e. that the gar-
risons of single camps might not be
surrounded and cut off from the others.
Between the two lines troops could
move back and forth so as to concen-
trate at points of danger.
7. habēre convectum, "bring in
and keep."
30.
75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Galli conciliò princi-
pum indictō nōn omnēs qui arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit 
Vercingetorix, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cui-
que cīvitātī imperandum, nē tantā multitūdine cōnfās nec 
moderāri nec discernere suōs nec frumentandī ratiōnem habēre 5 
possent. Imperant Haeduīs atque eōrum clientibus, Segusi-
āvis, Ambivaretīs, Aulercīs Brannovicibus, mīlia xxxv; parem 
umerum Arvernīs, adiūctīs Eleutetīs, Cadārcīs, Gabalīs, Vel-
lāviis, qui sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse cōnsuērunt; Sēquanīs, 
Senonibus, Biturīgibus, Santonīs, Rutēnis, Carnutibus du-
dēna mīlia; Bellovacīs x; totidem Lēmovicibus; octōna Picton-
ibus et Turonīs et Parisiis et Helvētiis; sēna Andibus, Ambiānīs, 
Mediomatrixīs, Petrocorīs, Nerīviis, Morinīs, Nitiobrogibus; 10 
v mīlia Aulercīs Čēnomaniīs; totidem Atrebātibus; IIII Velio-
casibus; Aulercīs Ebuvoricibus III; Raurecis et Bōīs bīna; 15 
x ūniversis cīvitātibus quae Óceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum 
cōnsuētūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō 
Coriosolītēs, Redonēs, Ambibariī, Caletēs, Osismī, Venetī, 
Lexoviī, Venellī. Ex his Bellovacīi suum numerum nōn contro-
lērunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō cum Rōmānīs bellum 20 
gestūrōs dicerent neque cuiusquam imperiō obtemperātūrōs; 
rogāti tamen ab Commiō pró eius hospitiō duo mīlia mīsērunt.

Chap. 75-79. A great Gallic army arrives at Alesia just when the 
supplies of the town are exhausted.

Chap. 75. The Gallic states raise a great army.
2. ut cēnsuit Vercingetorix: cf. 
71, 4. The decision to send a fixed 
quota from each state, instead of all the 
fighting men, was wise. The total of 
the quotas given in this chapter is 
259,000. If that army could not conquer 
Caesar, no army of Gauls could.
5. ratiōnem habēre, “have any 
means.”
6. imperant, etc.: forty-two states 
are named in the following list. No 
Aquitanian state is mentioned; the 
Remi and the Lingones were faithful 
to Caesar; the Treveri were threatened 
by the Germans. With these exceptions 
the list includes all the important states 
of Gaul.
10. duodēna mīlia, “twelve thou-
sand each”; translate the following 
distributives similarly.
19. suum numerum, “their full 
quota.”
20. quod dicerent: cf. note on quod 
diceret, V, 6, 11.
sūo . . . arbitriō, “on their own ac-
count and according to their own 
ideas.” The Bellovacīi were strong and 
proud (II, 4, 12-15), and they kept their 
promise by taking up arms against 
Caesar the following year.
22. pró, “in consideration of.”
Chap. 76. The Gallic army marches to Alesia under divided leadership.

1. antea: cf. IV, 21, 13; V, 22, 11.
2. civitatem eius: the Atrebates.
3. immunem, “free from tribute.” This implies that the other conquered states paid tribute, though Caesar has not said so.
4. iura...reddiderat: i.e. had allowed the state to live under its old form of government, instead of appointing a governor to rule it.
5. cœnsensio libertatis vindicandae, “unanimity in demanding liberty.”
6. movērētur: the subject is Gallia.
7. dēlectī ex civitātibus, “representatives of the several states.” The fatal weakness of the Gauls was their inability to unite effectively. The states were so jealous of one another that they could not agree on a single commander, now that Vercingetorix was out of the question. It was bad enough to have four commanders-in-chief; but it was worse to hamper them with a council of representatives.
9. aspectum modo, “the mere sight.”
10. ancipitī proelīō, “in a battle with double front”; explained by the following clauses.
11. pugnārētur, cernerentur: indirect discourse for the future indicative.

Chap. 77. The besieged are in such distress that desperate measures are proposed in a council.

1. diē quā expectāverant: Vercingetorix had told the cavalry that he had supplies for thirty days; at the end of that time he expected relief. For the gender of diē see App. 30, a.
auxilia suorum expectāverant, consūmpō omni frūmentō, insciī quid in Haeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōnsultābant. Ac variīs dictīs sententiīs, quārum pars dēditionem, pars, dum virēs suppeterent, ērup- tionem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda orātiō Critognātī vidētur propter eīus singulārem et nefāriam crūdēlitātem. Hīc summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et magnae habitus auctōritātīs, ‘Nihil,’ inquit, ‘dē eōrum sententīā dictūrīm sum qui turpissimam servītūtem dēdidītis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs civīum locō neque ad conciliō adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum hīs mihi rēs est qui ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō omnium vestrum cōnsēnsū pristīnae residere virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista mollitīa, nōn virtūs, paulīsper inopiam fērre non possē. Qui sē ultro morti offerant iō facilei reperintur quam qui dulcem servītūtem deditionis nōmine appellant; neque hos lo hāc civitāte habeos neque ad conciliō adhibendos censeo. Cum his mihi res est qui eruptionem probant; quorum in consilio omnium vestrum consensu pristīnae residere virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animi est ista mollitia, non virtus, paulisper inopiam ferre non possē. Qui se ultro morti offerant iō facilei reperintur quam qui dulcem servītūtem deditionis nōmine appellant; neque hos lo habendos civīum locō neque ad conciliō adhibendos censeo.

3. in Haeduīs: where the army of relief had gathered.

5. suppeterent: implied indirect discourse for the present indicative.

6. nōn praetereunda, “to deserve not to be passed over.”

12. cum his . . . est, “I am concerned with those.”

14. ista is the subject, and is explained by the infinitives which follow. It is attracted from the neuter into the gender of the predicate noun, mollitia.

15. quī . . . ferant, “men are more easily found to offer . . . than to, etc.”

17. probārem si vidērem: App. 254. tantum potest, “has so much weight.”

dignitās, “the authority,” of those who wished to make a sally.

18. nūllam . . . iactūram, “no loss except (that) of our lives.”


20. quid propīnquiī nostrīs animī fore existimātis, lit. “what of courage do you think there will be to our relatives?”

23. nūlīte exspoliāre, prósternēre, subicere: App. 219.
ad diem non vēnērunt, dē eōrum fīdē constantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illīs ulteriōribus mūniōnibus animē caussā cotīdiē exercērī putātis? Si illōrum nūntiīs confīrmārī nōn potestis, omni aditū praeceptō, hīs ītīmīnī testibus appropinquāre eōrum adventum; cuīs īrīs timōre exterrī diem noctemque in opere versantur. Quid ergō meī cōnsiliē est? Facere quod nostri maiōrēs nēquāquam pari bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; qui in oppida compulsi ac simīli inopīa subāctī eōrum corporibus qui aetēs ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vitam tolerāvērunt neque se hostibus tradiderunt. Cuius rei si exemplum non habērēmus, tamen libertātīs causā īnstituēt et posterīs prōdī pulcherrīnum iūdīcērem. Nam quid illī simile bellō fuit? Dépopulātā Galliā Cimbrī magnāque illātā calamitāte finibus quidem nostrīs aliquamōdō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petīrunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nōbīs relīquērunt. Rōmānī vérō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cognōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs civitātībusque considere atque his aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod si ea quae in longinquis nātiōnibus geruntur ignōrātīs, respicite finitīmam Galliām, qua in prōvinciām redāctā, iūre et lēgibus commūtātīs, secūribus subjeccta perpetuā premītur servitūte.'

28. ulteriōribus mūniōnibus: the outer line of works, which showed that the Romans expected an attack from that side.
29. illōrum: the Gauls outside.
30. īs: the Romans.
31. testibus, "as witnesses."
32. quid ... est, "what, then, is my advice?"; lit. "belongs to my advice."
33. pari: i.e. equal to the present war.
34. Cimbrōrum Teutonumque: see Int. 27.
35. pulcherrimum: predicate adjective with esse understood; "I should think it most glorious for this precedent to be established."
36. quid ... fuit, "what likeness had that war (to this one)"; illī bellō is a dative of possessor.
37. dépopulātā: passive in meaning, though the verb is deponent.
38. aliās ... petīrunt: after ravaging Gaul, instead of settling there they marched into Spain.
39. quōs: the antecedent is hōrum.
40. finitīmam Galliām: i.e. the Province.
78. Sententiis dictis constituit ut iī quī valētūdine aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius experiantur quam ad Critognātī sententiam dēscēdant; illō tamen potius ūtendum cōnsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia mo- rentur, quam aut dēditionēs aut pācis subeundam condicionēm. Mandubii, quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum liberis atque uxori- bus exīre cōguntur. Hī, cum ad mūnītiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus orabant ut se in servitiīm receptōs cibo iuvarent. At Caesar dispositīs in vāllō custōdiēs recipī prohibēbat.

79. Interea Commius reliquīque duces quībus summa imperi permissa erat cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam pervenīunt et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mīlle passibus ā nostrīs mūnītiōnibus cōnsīdent. Posterō diē equitātū ex castrīs ēductō omnem eam plānitiem quam in longītūdīnem mīlia passum tria patērē dēmonstrāvīmus complent pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locīs superiōribus cōnstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesia déspectus in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliīs vīsīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs, atque omnium animī ad laetītiam excīnantur. Itaque pōductīs cōpiās ante oppidum cōnsīstunt et proximam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere explent sēque ad ēruptionēm atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.
80. Caesar, omni exercitū ad utramque partem munitionum dispositō, ut, si ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et növerit, equitātum ex castrīs edūcī et proelium committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs quae summum undique iugum tenēbant déspectus, atque omnēs miliēs intentī pugnae prōventus exspectābant. Gallī inter equitēs rārōs sagittāriōs expeditōsque levīs armātūrāe interīecerant qui suīs cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitium impetus sustinerent. Ab his complūrēs dē imprōvisō vulnerātī proelīō excēdēbant.  

Cum suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōnferent et nostrōs multitudine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et iī qui mūnitionibus continēbantur et iī qui ad auxilium convenerant clāmōre et ululatū suōrum animōs confirmabant. Quod in conspectī omnium res gērebatur neque rectē ac turpi factum celāri poterat, utrosque et laudis cupidītas et timor ignōminiae ad virtūtem excitabat. Cum a merīdiē prope sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pugnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōnferēs turmīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in fugam coniectīs sagittāriī circumventi interfēctīque sunt. Item ex reliquis partibus nostrī cēdentēs usque ad castra insecūtī sui colligendī facultātēm nōn dedērunt. At iī qui Alesiā prōcesserant, maestī, prope victōriā dēspērātā, sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

81. Uno dī intermissō, Gallī, atque hoc spatiō magnō

---

14. neque... factum, “and no brave or cowardly act”; factum is used as a noun, but is modified by adverbs because it is really a participle.

16. cum pugnārētur, “when the battle had been going on.”

17. dubiā victōriā, “without decisive result.”

Germānī: they had saved the day for Caesar in former battles; see 70, 4.

20. cēdentēs: accusative.

Chap. 81. A night attack is made on both the Roman lines.

THE SIEGE OF ALESIA, B.C. 52


82. Dum longius a mūniţiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multī-tū-dine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteāquam propius successērunt, aut sē stimulīs inopīnantēs induēbant aut in scrobēs dēlātī transfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiectī pīlīs mūrāli-bus interībant. Multīs undique vulneribus acceptīs, nūllā mūniţiōne Perruptā, cum lūx appeteret, verità nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs éruptiōne circumveniērent, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs, dum ea quae a Vercinget

2. harpagónum: hooks fastened to long poles, with which they intended to pull down the breastworks on the Roman ramparts.
3. campestrēs: in the plain west of the town.
4. quā . . . possent: a purpose clause.
9. ut . . . attribūtus: cf. 80, 1.
11. sudībus: stakes with sharpened points hardened by fire, used as javelins.
12. glandībus: for throwing in slings.
15. hae partēs: the defenses in the plain.
16. ex . . . dēductōs,""troops brought from, etc."

Chap. 82. The night attack is repelled.
1. dum aberant: for tense see App 234, 6.
longius, "at a considerable distance."
3. stimulīs: see 73, 22-25.
scrobēs: see 73, 13-22.
7. ex . . . castrīs: especially the ones marked D and E on the plan
8. interiōrēs: the besieged.
orige ad ēruptionem praeparāta erant prōferunt, priōres fossās explent, diūtius in his rebus administrāndīs morātī prius suōs discersisse cognōvērunt quam mūniōnibus appropinquārent. Ita rē infectā in oppidum revertērunt.

83. Bis magnō cum dētrimentō repulsi Gallī quid agant cōnsulunt; locōrum perītōs adhibent; ex ēs superiorōrum castrōrum sitūs mūniōnēsque cognōscunt. Erat ā septentrionibus collis, quem propter magnitudinem circuitūs opēre circumplectī nōn potuerant nostri, necessāriōque paene inīquō locō et lēniter dēclivī castra fēcerant. Haec ēs C. Antistius Rēginus et Ĉ. Cāninius Rēbilus légati cum duābus legiōnis obtinēbant.

Cognitīs per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus duces hostium lx mīlia ex omnī numere dēlīgunt ēarum cīvitātum quae maximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pactō agi ēgisse tē ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam merīdiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassīellaunum Arvernum, ēnum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorīgis, praeſciunt. Ille ex castrīs prīmā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōnſecō sub lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit militēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam merīdiēs appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūniōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castrīs sēsē osten- dere coepērunt.

9. priōres fossās: probably the twenty-foot trench and the trenches in which the cippi were placed.

Chap. 83-88. The relieving army makes a final and desperate attack, and then disappears.

Chap. 83. The relieving army finds a weak point and attacks it.

1. quid agant: this question would require the subjunctive in the direct form; App. 210.

4. opere: the outer line of defense.

5. locō inīquō: explained by lēniter dēclivī. The camp is marked A on the plan. Because the ground sloped down to its outer wall, missiles could easily be thrown into it, and a sloping mound of earth could be built up to its rampart.

7. duābus legiōnis: a strong garrison, to compensate for the weakness of the position.

10. quid quōque pactō: English cannot well compress the two questions into one, as the Latin does; “what they want done, and in what way.”

12. videātur: implied indirect discourse for the future; they said in effect, “we will attack when it shall seem, etc.”

19. reliquae cōpiae: they amounted
84. Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suōs cōspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs, longuriōs, mūrālēs falcēs, reliquaque quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat prōfert. Pugnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs, atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē visa pars firma est, hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnitionibus distinētur nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet elāmor quī post tergum pugnantibus existit, quod suum pēriculum in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehemens tius hominum mentēs perturbant.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus, quid quāque in parte gerātur cognōscit; labōrāntibus subsidium submittit. Utrisque ad animum occurrīt ūnum esse illud tempus quō maximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnitionēs, dē omni salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, si rem obtinuerint, finem labōrūm omnium expectant. Maximē ad superiōrēs mūnitionēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Iniquum locī ad dēclīvitātem fastīgium magnum habet mōmentum.

to 190,000 men, less those who may have been killed in battle; but they were so poorly commanded that Caesar says nothing more of them. They probably made a feeble attack in the plain. If they had made vigorous attacks at several other points, Caesar could not have sent reinforcements to camp A. Their bad generalship saved Caesar.

Chap. 84. Vercingetorix attacks the inner line.
2. longuriōs: for bridging the trenches.
3. prōfert: his first attack was somewhere in the plain, perhaps near camp A.
7. post tergum: as the Romans formed two lines placed back to back, each line had the enemy behind it.
8. pugnantibus, "as they fought"; App. 120.

suum . . . cōstāre: their own peril (we should say "safety") depended on the line behind them.

Chap. 85. Both sides fight desperately, the Gauls gaining some advantage.
1. idōneum locum: supposed to have been on the hill-side, a little west of camp E.
quāque in parte, "everywhere"; i.e. wherever there was fighting. He could not see all parts of his lines.
2. utrisque . . . occurrīt, "both sides realized."
5. si rem obtinuerint, "if they won the victory."
6. maximē . . . labōrātur: at this point hundreds of Gallic coins were found. Millstones, broken water jars, and similar things found in the trenches seem to show that the Romans were forced to use as missiles whatever they could lay their hands on.
7. iniquum . . . fastīgium, "the unfavorable downward slope of the ground."
Alii tela coniciunt, aliī testūdine factā subeunt; défatigātīs in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūnīversīs in munitionem coniectūs et ascēsum dat Gallīs et ea quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī contendit; nec iam arma nostrīs nec virēs suppetunt.

86. His rébus cognitis Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit; imperat, si sustinēre nōn possit, déductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne pugnet; id nisi necessāriō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs; cohortātur nē labōri succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmicatiōnūm fructum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōnsistere. Interiores déspērātīs campestribus locīs propter magnitudinem mūnitionum loca praerupta ascēnṣū temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōnferunt. Multitudine tēlōrum ex turribus propugnantes deturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum ac lōricam rescindunt.

87. Mittit prīnum Brūtum adulescentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliīs C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pugnāretur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō ac repulsīs hostibus, eō quō Labiēnum miserat contendit; cohortēs quattuor ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequi, partem circumire exteriōrēs mūnitionēs et à tergō hostēs adorīri iubet. Labiēnus, post-

10. agger, etc.: earth was thrown over the stimulī, scrobēs, etc.; and a sloping mound of earth was thrown against the rampart of the camp.

Chap. 86. Caesar sends re-enforcements to the camp and encourages those fighting in the plain.

3. déductīs: from the rampart. ēruptiōne: this plan had once saved Galba under similar circumstances; III, 5 and 6.

id: i.e. make a sally.

4. reliquōs: those defending the works in the plain. Caesar galloped down from his position on the hill.

7. loca praerupta: near the bottom of the hill on which camp E lay. The fortifications were less formidable here because of the nature of the ground. There were no cippi to cross.

Chap. 87. Labienus decides on a sally and Caesar hastens to take part in it.

1. mittit: to the loca praerupta, where the besieged were trying to break through.

4. eō . . . contendit: he rode across the plain, between his lines, to camp A.

6. equitum: cavalry followed him from camps F, G, and H. He sent a mounted aide to camp B, ordering the cavalry stationed there to ride around outside his outer line and take the Gauls in the rear.
THE SIEGE OF ALESIA, B.C. 52

9. XI. cohortibus: originally two legions defended the camp; Labienus had brought six cohorts; Caesar was bringing four; Labienus now secures eleven more: more than two-fifths of the whole army were concentrated at this one point. This was the opportunity for the rest of the Gallic army, if it had been capably led.

10. quid . . . existimet: i.e. a sally.

Chap. 88. The sixty thousand are slain, and the rest of the relieving army disperses.

1. vestitus: a scarlet cloak.

2. dē locīs superiōribus: the hill above camp A.

3. haec . . . dēvexa: the slopes below camp E, from which Caesar started.

hostēs . . . committunt: apparently the Romans have sallied out and the Gauls have withdrawn a little in surprise; now the Gauls attack with greater vigor, hoping to win the victory before Caesar can arrive.

4. excipit . . . clamor: everyone who has seen a football game will understand how the soldiers at other parts of the line watched and cheered on their men.

6. post tergum: of the Romans who have sallied out. The equitātus and cohortēs are those who have followed Caesar.

8. equitēs occurrunt: these are the cavalry from camp B.

12. ex oppidō, "the Gauls from the town."

14. ex castrīs: the camp of the relieving army. The Gauls feared an immediate attack.

quod nisi, "and unless."

subsidiiis: their marches back and forth to relieve points of danger.
cōpiae délērī potuissent. Dé mediā nocte missus equitātus
novissimum agmen cōnsequitur: magnus numerus capitur
atque interficitur; reliquī ex fugā in civitātēs discēdunt.

89. Posterō dē Vercingetorix conciliō convocātō id bellum
sé suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum, sed commūnis liber-
tātis causā dēmōnstrat, et quoniam sit fortūnae cēdendum, ad
utramque rem sé illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satisfacere
5 seu vivum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem
lēgātī. Iūbet arma trādī, principēs prōduci. Ipse in mūni-
tiōne prō castrīs cōnsīdit; eō ducēs prōducentur; Vercinget-
orum dēditur, arma prōciuntur. Reservātīs Haeduīs atque
Arvernis, si per eōs civitātēs recuperēre possēt, ex reliquis
captīvīs tōtī exercitūi capitā singula praedae nōmine dis-
tribuīt.

90. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs in Haeduōs proficīscitur; civitātem
recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernis missī quae imperāret sē factū-
rōs pollicentur. Imperat magnum numerum obsidum. Legi-
ōnēs in hiberna mittit. Captīvōrum circiter xx mīlia Haeduīs
5 Arvernisque reddit. T. Labiēnum cum duābus legionibus et
equitātū in Sēquānōs proficīscī iūbet; huic M. Semprōniō
Rutilum attribuīt. C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium
Basilum cum legionibus duābus in Rēnis collocat, nē quam ā
finitimis Bellovaciēs calamitātēm accipiānt. C. Antistium Rēgī-
nōm in Ambivāretōs, T. Sextium in Biturīgēs, C. Canīniūm

Chap. 89-90. Vercingetorīx surrenders, and the Gallic league is
broken up.

Chap. 89. Vercingetorix and the
besieged army surrender.

3. ad utramque rem, "for either
purpose"); explained by the following
clauses. The conduct of Vercingetorix
in defeat shows that he was of the true
heroic mould.

7. Vercingetorix dēditur: he was
kept a prisoner till the year 46, that he
might appear in Caesar's triumphal
procession in Rome; then he was ex-
ecuted.

8. Haeduīs atque Arvernis: since

these were the leading states of Gaul,
their submission would effectually break
up all concerted rebellion.

9. si posset, "to see whether."

10. capitā singula, "a man apiece."

Chap. 90. The Haedui and the
Arverni submit. The army goes into
winter quarters.

6. huic . . . attribuīt: i.e. Rutilius
was placed under the orders of Labio-
nus.

8. nē . . . accipiānt: the Remi had
remained faithful to Caesar, while the
Bellovaci had announced their inten-
tion of fighting him.

15. supplicātiō: cf. IV, 38, 12. One might have expected that the number of days would be increased, since this was by far the greatest of Caesar's campaigns in Gaul.
THE DIRECT FORM OF THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE
IN BOOKS I AND II

I, 13, 7-19. Si pācem populus Römannus cum Helvētiīs faciat, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiī ubi eōs tū cōnstitueris atque esse volueris; sin bellō persequī perseverābis, remissere et veteris incommodi populī Rōmānī et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum iī quī flūmen trānsierant suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nōli ob eam rem tuae magnopere virtūtī tribuere aut nōs dēspicerē; nōs ita ā patribus maiōribusque nostriīs didicumus ut magis virtūte contendāmus quam dolo aut īndidiis nītāmur. Quārē nōli committere ut ēīc locus ubi cōnstitimus ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et internecīōne exercītūs nōmen capiāt aut memoriām prōdat.

I, 14, 1-20. Eō mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur, quod eās rēs quās vōs commemorāvistis memoriā teneō, atque eō gravius ferō quō minus merītō populī Rōmānī accidērunt; quī si alicuius inīuriae sībi cōnscius fuisse fuit difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptus est, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegēbat quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putābat. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblivīscī velit, num etiam recentium inīuriārum, quod eō invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāvistis, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāvistis, memoriam dépōnere potest? Quod vestrā victoriā tam insolenter gloriāmini, quodque tam diū vōs impūne inīuriās intulisse admirāmini, eōdem pertinent. Čonsuēvērunt enim dī immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commutātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī volunt, hīs secundīōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnītātem concēdere. Cum haec ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ā vōbis mihi dabantur, uti ea quae pollicēmini vōs factūrōs intellegam, et sī Haeduīs dē inīuriīs quās ipsīs
sociisque intulistis, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, vōbiscum pācem faciam.

20-23. Ita Helvētiī à maiōribus suīs īnstitūti sunt utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; huius reī populus Rōmānus est testis.


I, 18, 6-24. Ipse est Dumnorīx, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem procert liberaŭtātem grātiā, cupidus rerum novarum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquāque omnia Haeduōrum vectigālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habet, propter eā quod illō licente contrā licērī audet nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxīt et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāvit; magnum numerōm equitātūs suō sūmpť semper alīt et circum sē habet; neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās civitātēs largiter potest, atque huius potentiaē causā mātrem in Biturigibus homīnī illic nobilissimō ac potentissimō collocāvit, ipse eō Helvētiis uxōrem habet, sorōrem ex mātēre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitātēs collocāvit. Favet et cupid Helvētiīs propter eam affinītātem, ōdit etiam suō nōmine Caesarēm et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūtā et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiae atque honoris est restitūtus. Si quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgni obtinēndi venit; imperiō populi Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē ēa quam habet grātiā dēspērat.
I, 20, 2-12. Scio ista esse vera, nec quisquam ex eo plus quam ego dolöris capit, propteræa quod, cum ego grátia plúri-
mum domi atque in reliquâ Galliâ possem, ille minimum propter
adúlescentiam posset, per mē crëvit; quibus opibus ac nervis
nôn solum ad minuendam grátiam, sed paene ad pernicem
meam útitur. Ego tamen et amóre fráternō et existimatiōne
vulgī commoveor. Quod si quid eī à tē gravius acciderit, cum
ego hunc locum amicitiae apud tē teneam, nēmō existimābit nôn
meā voluntāte factum; quā ex re tōtius Galliae animī à mē
ávertentur.

I, 30, 3-10. Intellegimus, tametsï pró veteribus Helvētiōrum
iníriīs populī Römānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetiēris, tamen
eam rem nôn minus ex úsū Galliae quam populī Römānī acci-
disse, propteræa quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās
Helvētiī reliquērunt, utī . . . habērent.

I, 31, 5-8. Nōn minus id contendimus et labōrāmus, nē ea
quae dīxerimus ènuntientur quam utī ea quae volumus impe-
трēmus, propteræa quod, sī ènuntiātum erit, summum in cruci-
ātum nōs ventūrōs vidēmus.

8-56. Galliae tōtius factiōnēs sunt duae: hārum alterius
principātum tenent Haeduī, alterius Arvernī. Hī cum tanti-
pere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenterent, factum
est utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesseren-
tur. Hōrum prīmō circīter mīlia xv Rhēnum trānsiērunt;
posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī
ac barbarī adamārunt, trāductī sunt plūrēs. Nunc sunt in
Gallīa ad centum et vigintī mīlium numerum. Cum hīs
Haeduī eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contened-
runt; magnam calamitātēm pulsī accēpērunt, omnem nōbili-
tatem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmisērunt. Qui-
bus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctī, quī et suā virtūte et
populī Römānī hospitiō atque amiciā plūrimum ante in
Gallīa potuerant, coāctī sunt Sēquanīs obsidēs dare . . .
imperīō essent. Ūnus ego sum ex omnī cīvitāte Haeduō-
rum quī addūcī nōn potuerim ut iūrārem aut liberōs meōs
obsidēs darem. Ob eam rem ex civitāte profugi et Rōmam
ad senātum vēnī auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque
iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenēbar. Sed peius victūribus
Sēquanīs quam Hāeduīs victīs accidit, prop terrēā quod Ariovis-
tus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrūm finibus cōnsēdit tertiamque
partem agrī Sēquanī, qui est optimus tōtīs Galliae, occupāvit
et nunc dē alterā parte tertīa Sēquanōs dēcēdere iūbet, prop-
tereā quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia homīnum
xxiv ad eum vēnērunt, quibus locus ac sēdēs parantur. Paucīs
annīs omnēs ex Galliāe finibus pellentur atque omnēs Germānīn
Rhēnum trānsībunt; neque enim cōnferendus est Gallicus cum
Germānōrum agrō, neque haec cōnsuetūdō victūs cum illā com-
paranda. Ariovistus autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proelīo
vīcit, quod proelium factum est ad Magetobrigam, superbē et
crūdēlīter imperat, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuīisque liberōs poscit
et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdit, sī qua rēs nōn ad
nūtum aut ad voluntatem eius facta est. Homō est barbarus,
irācundus, temperārius; nōn possunt eius imperia diūtiūs sus-
tinērī. Nisi quid in tē populōque Rōmānō erit auxili, omnibus
Galliī idem est faciendum quod Helvētiī fēcērunt, ut domō
... experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō erunt, nōn du-
bitō quīn dē omnibus obsidibus qui apud eum sunt gravissimum
supplicium sūmat. Tū vel auctōritāte tuā atque exercītūs vel
recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre pōtes nē
maior multītūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque
omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā pōtes dēfendere.

I, 32, 8-15. Höc est miserīor et gravior fortūna Sēquanō-
rum quam reliquōrum, quod sōli nē in occultō quidem querī
neque auxilium implōrāre audeant absentisque Ariovistī crūdēl-
tātem, velut sī cōram adsit, horrent, prop terrēā quod reliquis
tamen fugae facultās datūr, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs
Ariovistum recēpērunt, quōrum oppida omnia in potestātē eius
sunt, omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendī.

I, 34, 5-12. Si quid mihi ā Caesare opus esset, ego ad eum
vēnissem; sī quid ille mē vult, illum ad mē venire oportet.
Praeterea neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venire audeō quās Caesar possidet, neque exercitum sine magnō comeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere possūm. Mihi autem mirum vidētur quid in meā Galliā, quam bellō vīci, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōti sit.

I, 35, 2-18. Quoniam tantō meō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōnsulātū meō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātūs est, hanc mihi populūque Rōmānō grātiam refert, ut in colloquium venire invitātūs gravētur neque dē communī rē dicendum sībi et cognōscendum putet, haec sunt quae ab eo postulō: prīnum, nē quam multitūdinem homīnum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliām tradūcāt; deinde, obsidēs quōs habet ab Haeduīs reddat Sēquanīisque permittat ut quōs ipsī habent voluntāte eius reddere illīs līceat; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā lacessat, nēve ās sociāsque eōrum bellum īnferat. Si ita fēcerit, mihi populūque Rōmānō perpetua grātia atque amīcitia cum eō erit; si nōn impetrābō, quoniam M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōnsulibus senātūs cōnsuēvit utī quīcumque Galliām prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī publicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populū Rōmānī défenderet, Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglegam.

I, 36. Iūs est bellī ut quī vicerint iīs quōs vicerint quem ad modum velint imperent; item populus Rōmānus victīs nōn ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēvit. Si ego populō Rōmānō nōn praescribō quem ad modum suō iūre ātātur, nōn oportet mē ā populō Rōmānō ĭn meō iūre impedirī. Haeduī mihi, quoniam bellī fortūnām temptāvērunt et armīs congressī ac superātī sunt, stipendiāriī sunt factī. Magnam Caesar iniūriām facit, qui suō adventū vectīgālia mihi dēteriōra facit. Haeduīs obsidēs nōn reddam, neque ās neque eōrum sociās iniūriā bellum īnferam, si in eō manēbunt quod convenit stipendiumque quotannis pendent; si id nōn fēcerint, longē iīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āberit. Quod mihi Caesar dēnūntiat sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglectūrum, nēmō mēcum sine suā perniciē contendit. Cum volet, congre-
diātur: intelleget quid invicti Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIV tēctum non subieērunt, virtūte possint.

I, 40, 3-47. Primum (vōs incūsō) quod aut quam in partem aut quō consiliō dūcāminī vōbīs quaerendum aut cōgitudum putātis. Ariovistus mē cōnsule cupidissimē populi Rōmānī amīcitiam appetit; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicet? Mihi quidem persuādētur, cognitīs meīs postulātīs atque aequitāte condicionum perspectā, eum neque meam neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod si furōre atque amentia impulsus bellum intulerit, quid tandem vereāminī? aut cūr dē vestrā virtūte aut dē meā diligentiā despēritīs? Factum est eius hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memorīa, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonis à C. Mariō pulsīs non minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbat; factum est etiam nūper in Ítaliā servīlī tumultū, quōs tamen alicquid usus ac disciplīna quam ā nōbis accēperant sublevābant. Ex quō iūdicārit potest quantum habeat in sē bonī constantiā, propterēa quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timuistī, hōs posteā armātōs ac victōrēs superāvistis. Dēnique hī sunt īdem Germānī quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētīi congressī nōn sōlum in suīs, sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque superāvērunt, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitūi non potuērunt. Si quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovet, hī, sī quaerent, reperīre possunt... vicisse. Cui rationi contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs locus fuit, hāc nē ipse quidem spērat nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferunt faciunt arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris despērāre aut praescribere videantur. Haec mihi sunt curae: frūmentum Sēquanī, Leucī, Lingonēs subministrant, iamque sunt in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsī brevī tempore iūdicābitis. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūri dīcimīnī, nīhil eā ré commoveor; scīō enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audīens nōn fuerit, aut male rē
gesta fortunam defuisse aut aliquo faciinore compert0 avaritiam esse convictam; mea innocentia perpetua vitæ, fœlicitas Helvitiœrum bellœ est perspecta. Itaque quod in longiore diem collaturus fui praesentab0 et hac nocte dê quártâ vigilia castra movēb0, ut quam primum intellegere possim utrum apud vós pudor atque officium an timor plûs valeat. Quod si præterea nēmō sequētur, tamen ego cum sōlâ decimâ legiône ibō, dê quà nôn dubitō, mihique ea prætoria cohors erit.

I, 44. Trānsii Rhēnum nōn mē sponte, sed rogātus et arcessītus à Gallis; nōn sine magnâ spē magnísque praemiōs domum propinquōsque relīquī; sēdēs habeō in Galliâ ab ipsis concessâs, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntâte datōs; stipendium capiō iūre bellī quod victōrēs victis impōnere consuērunt. Nōn ego Gallis, sed Galli mihi bellum intulērunt; omnēs Galliæ civitātēs ad mē oppugnandum vēnērunt ac contrā mē castra habuērunt; eae omnēs cōpiae à mē ūnō proeliiō pulsaec ac superātæ sunt. Si iterum experīri volunt, iterum parātus sum dēcerērē; si pāce ĩtī volunt, iniquum est dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad hoc tempus pependērunt. Amicitiam populī Rōmānī mihi ornamento et praesidio, nōn detrimentō esse oportet; si per populum Rōmānum stipendium remiitētur et dēditicii subtrahentur, non minus libenter recūsābō populī Rōmānī amicitiam quam appetī. Quod multitūdinem Germanōrum in Galliam trādūcō, id mē mūniendī nōn Galliæ impugnandae causā faciō; eius reī testimōnium est quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnī et quod bellum nōn intuli, sed dēfendi. Ego prius in Galliam vēnī quam populus Rōmānus. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitus populi Rōmānī Galliæ prōvinciae finibus ēgressus est. Quid tībi vis? Cūr in meās possessionēs venīs? Prōvincia mea haec est Gallia, sicut īlla vestra. Ut mihi concēdī nōn oporteat, si in vestrōs finēs impetum faciam, sic item vōs estis iniquī, quod in meō iūre mē interpellātis. Quod frātrēs à senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dicis, nōn tam barbarus neque tam imperitus sum rērum ut nōn sciam neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs
auxilium tulisse neque ipsös in hís contentiö nibus quás Haeduí mécum et cum Sèquanís habuérunt auxilió populí Römáni úsös esse. Dēbeō suspicārī simulātā tē amícitiā, quod exercitum in Galliā habēs, mei opprimendī causā habēre. Nisi décēdēs atque exercitum dēdūcēs ex hís regió nibus, tē nōn prō amícō, sed prō hoste habēbō. Quod si tē interfēcerō, multis nobilībus princi-pibusque populī Römáni grātum faciam; id ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habeō, quōrum omnium grātiam atque amı-citiam tuā morte redimere possum. Quod si dēcesseris et liberam possessionem Galliāe mihi trādideris, magnō tē praemīo remūnerābō et quaecumque bella gerēs sine ūllō tuō labōre et periculō cōnficiam.

I, 45, 2-11. Neque mea neque populī Römāni cōnsuētūdō patitur utī optimē meritōs sociōs déseram, neque ego iūdicō Galliam potius esse tuam quam populī Römāni. Bellō superātī sunt Arverní et Rutēnī a Q. Fabīo Maximō, quibus populus Römānus ignōvit neque in prōvinciam redēgit neque stipendium imposuit. Quod si antiquissimum quoque tempus spectārī oportet, populī Römāni iūstissimum est in Galliā imperium; si iūdicium senātūs observārī oportet, libera dēbet esse Galliā, quam bellō victam suīs légibus utī voluit.

II, 3, 4-14. Nōs nostraque omnia in fidem atque potestā-tem populī Römāni permittimus. Neque (nōs) cum reliquis Belgis cōnsēnsimus, neque contrā populum Römānum conviūrā-vimus, parātique sumus et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frumento cōterisque rēbus iuvāre. Reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs sunt, Germānique qui cīs Rhēnum in-colunt sēsē cum hīs conviūnxērunt; tantusque est eōrum omnium fūror ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsangūneösque nostrōs, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem légibus ūtuntur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum nobīscum habent, dēterrēre potuerīmus quīn cum hīs consentīrent.

II, 4, 2-28. Plērique Belgae sunt ortī a Germānīs, Rhēnumque antiquitūs trāducē propter locī fertilitātēm ibi cōnsē-dērunt, Gallōsque quī ea loca incolēbant expulērunt, sōlique
sunt qui patrum nostrorum memoria, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredī prohibuerint; quā ex re sīt utī eārum rērum memoria magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē militāri sūmant. Dē numerō eōrum omnia (nōs) habēmus explōrāta, propterē quod propinquitātibus affinitātibusque conjunctī, quantam quīsque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognōvimus. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovāci et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valent; hī possunt conficere armāta mīlia centum; pollicitiī sunt ex eō numero ēlecta mīlia sexāgintā, tōtiusque bellī imperium sibi postulant. Suessiōnēs nostri sunt finītīmi; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possident. Apud eōs fuit rēx nostrā etiam memoria Dīviciācus, tōtius Galliae potentissimus, qui cum magnae partis hārum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuit; nunc est rēx Galba; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summa tōtius bellī omnium voluntāte dēfertur; oppida habent numerō xii; pollicitur mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nervīi, qui maximē ferī inter ipsōs habentur longissimēque absunt; quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānī decem mīlia, Morīnī xxv mīlia, Menapiī vii mīlia, Caelī x mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromandūi totidem, Atuatucī xix mīlia; Condūsī, Eburōnēs, Cae-rōsī, Caenānī, qui ēnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrāmurus ad xl mīlia.

II, 14, 2-13. Bellovāci omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduæ fuērunt; impulsī ab suīs principibus, qui dicēbant Haeduōs ā tē in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcērunt et populō Rōmānō bellum intulērunt. Quī eīus consiliī principēs fuerant, quod intellegēbant quantum calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profugērunt. Petunt non sōlum Bellovāci sed etiam prō hīs Haeduī ut tūā clēmentiā ac mãnsuētūdīne in eōs ātāris. Quod si fēceris, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificābis; quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella incidērunt, sustentāre cōnsuērunt.
II, 15, 8-15. *Nullus aditus est ad eós mercatóribus; nihil patiuntur viní reliquárumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinientium īnferri, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem existimant. Sunt hominēs ferī magnaeque virtūtis; increpitant atque incūsant reliquōs Belgās, qui sē populō Rōmānō dēdiderint patriamque virtūtem prōiēcerint; cōnfīrman t sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condicionem pācīs accep-tūrōs.*

II, 16, 2-9. *Sābis flūmen à castrīs tuīs nōn amplius milia passuum x ābest; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervīī cōnsēdērunt adventumque ībi Rōmānōrum exspectant ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, finitimīs suīs; exspectantur etiam ab īīs Atuatū-cōrum cōpiae atque sunt in itinere; mulieres quīque per aetā-tem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidēbantūr in eum locum coniēcērunt quō propter palūdēs exercitu aditus nōn esset.*


II, 32, 1-6. *Magis cōnsuētūdine meā quam meritō vestrō civitātem cōnservābō, sī priusquam mūrum arīēs attigerit vōs dēdideritis; sed dēditōniis nūlla est condiciō nisi armīs trā-ditīs. Id quod in Nervīīs fēcī faciam finitimīisque imperābō nē quam dēditicīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam inerant.*
APPENDIX

INTRODUCTION

The Appendix was originally prepared for use in the revision of Bellum Helveticum (1900). It has now received a thorough revision, but the numbering has been left unchanged, except at a very few points. It is intended to include all the grammatical material which need be put into the hands of a class for second year work. The regular paradigms are given in full, with only such exceptional forms as are needed for the reading of Caesar and Cicero. Rules of syntax are almost invariably stated in full, so that when the student takes up a more complete grammar he will have to master only the exceptions, not the principles.

The examples are drawn chiefly from Caesar, especially the first half of the first book. Some are made up, for the sake of brevity and clearness, and a few are taken from Cicero. References like I, 14, 3 indicate the book, chapter, and line of Caesar.

The writer has consulted the usual authorities, and is under special obligations, as regards the treatment of the verb, to the writings and personal instruction of Professor William Gardner Hale. He has received much assistance in revising the work from the thoughtful and practical suggestions of Messrs. Janes and Jenks of the Boys' High School, Brooklyn, N. Y.

423

(Copyright 1900, by Scott, Foresman & Co.)
PRONUNCIATION

QUANTITY OF VOWELS

1. A vowel is usually short:
   a. Before another vowel, or h; as eō, nihil.
   b. Before nd and nt; as laudandus, laudant.
   c. In words of more than one syllable, before any other final consonant than s; as laudem, laudat.

2. A vowel is long:
   a. Before nf, ns, nx, and nct; as īnferō, cōnsul, iūnxi, iūnctum.
   b. When it results from contraction; as īsset, for iisset.

3. A vowel is usually long:
   a. In monosyllables not ending in b, d, l, m, or t; as mē, hīc, but ab, ad.

SOUNDS OF VOWELS

4. Long vowels, whether accented or not, should be given twice the time given to short vowels. This is the chief difficulty in the Roman pronunciation, because in English only accented syllables are commonly given more time than others.

   a = a in Cuba  ā = ah!
   e = e in net  ē = e in they
   i = i in pin  ĩ = i in machine
   o = o in for (not as in got)  ō = oh!
   u = oo in foot  ū = oo in boot
   y = French u or German ü; it rarely occurs.

SOUNDS OF DIPHTHONGS

5. The following are the commonly recognized diphthongs which appear in classical Latin:
   ae = ai in aisle
   oe = oi in oil
   au = ow in how
eu has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds ee'-oo.

ui has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds oo'-ee. The diphthong appears in cui, huic, cuius, and huius.

a. When the consonant i (= j) stands between two vowels, as in maior, eius, Troia, and cuius, though i was written only once it was pronounced twice, as if the spelling were, maior, eius, Troia, and cuius. The second i is the consonant, pronounced like y in yet.

The first i makes a diphthong with the preceding vowel. In such cases,

\[
\begin{align*}
ai &= ai \text{ in aisle} \\
\text{ei} &= \text{ey} \text{ in they} \\
\text{oi} &= \text{oi} \text{ in oil} \\
\text{ui} &= \text{indicated above.}
\end{align*}
\]

SOUNDS OF CONSONANTS

6. The consonants are, in general, pronounced as in English; but the following points should be noted:

- c and g are always hard, as in can, go
- i (consonant, sometimes printed j) = y in yet
- n before c, g, q, and x = ng in sing
- r pronounced distinctly
- s as in this, never as in these
- t as in tin, never as in nation
- v = w
- x = ks
- ch, ph, th = c, p, t
- bs, bt = ps, pt
- qu = qu in quart
- ngu = ngu in anguish
- su = sw in suâdeô, suâvis, suëscô, and their compounds.

a. When consonants are doubled, as in mittô, annus, both consonants should be sounded, as they are in out-talk, pen-knife. We sound only one consonant in ditty, penny.

7. i is generally a consonant between vowels, and at the beginning of a word before a vowel. In compounds of iaciô, the form iciô was written. It is commonly believed that in these words consonant i was pronounced, though not written, before vowel i; as déiciô, pronounced as if déiiciô; abiciô, as if abiiciô.
SYLLABLES

8. Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

   a. A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the second vowel; as fe-rō, a-gō, mo-nē.

   b. The combination of a mute and a liquid (b, c, d, g, p, t, ch, ph, or th, followed by l or r) is pronounced together so easily that it goes with the second vowel like a single consonant; as pa-tris, a-grī. But in poetry such a combination was often divided; as pat-ris, ag-rī.

   c. Any other combination of two or more consonants is divided before the last consonant, or before the combination of a mute and a liquid; as mit-tō, dic-tus, magis-ter, magis-trī.

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

9. A syllable is long:

   a. If it contains a long vowel or diphthong; as both syllables of laudō, and the first syllable of eius (5, a).

   b. If its vowel is followed by any two consonants except a mute and a liquid, or by one of the double consonants x and z. The quantity of a short vowel is not changed by this position: est is est, not ēst. The time taken in pronouncing a consonant at the end of the syllable before the consonant at the beginning of the next syllable (8, c), lengthens the syllable. This will be felt if the consonants are pronounced distinctly in mit-tō (6, a), an-nus, dic-tus, par-tēs, nos-ter.

   c. Often in poetry when a short vowel is followed by a mute and a liquid. The pronunciation is then pat-ris, ag-rī (8, b). In prose such a syllable is always considered short.

ACCENT

10. Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable; as om'nis.

11. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if it is long, otherwise on the antepenult; as divī sa, appel' lō, in' colunt.

12. When an enclitic is joined to another word, the accent falls on the syllable immediately preceding the enclitic; as Gallia'que.

INFLECTIONS

NOUNS

GENERAL RULES OF GENDER

13. The gender of most nouns is determined by the nominative
ending or must be learned for the individual words; but the following
rules will prove helpful.

a. The names of male beings, rivers, winds, and months are masculine.

b The names of female beings, countries, towns, islands, plants, trees, and of most abstract qualities are feminine.

c. Indeclinable nouns, and infinitives, phrases, and clauses used as nouns are neuter.

DECLENSIONS

14. There are five declensions of Latin nouns, distinguished from each other by the final letter of the stem, and the ending of the genitive singular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DECLENSION</th>
<th>FINAL LETTER OF STEM</th>
<th>ENDING OF GEN. SING.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>á</td>
<td>-ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>{consonant}</td>
<td>-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>-ús</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>ē</td>
<td>-ě or -el</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Strictly speaking, the cases are usually formed by adding case-endings to the stem. But when the stem ends in a vowel, that vowel is often modified in some way, or is so combined with the true case-ending that neither the stem-vowel nor the true case-ending can be seen. Therefore it is more convenient to apply the name case-ending to the combined stem-vowel and true case-ending, and to say that the cases are formed by adding case-endings to the base. The base of a noun is found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

FIRST DECLENSION

15. The stem ends in -ā; the nominative in -a. The gender is usually feminine.

**lingua, f., tongue, language**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>ENDINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>lingua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>linguae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>linguae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>linguam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocative</td>
<td>lingua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>linguā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX

PLURAL

Nomative linguae languages (as subject) -ae
Genitive linguārum of languages, languages’ -ārum
Dative linguīs to or for languages -īs
Accusative linguās languages (as object) -ās
Vocative linguae O (or ye) languages -ae
Ablative linguīs by, from, in, or with languages -īs

a. Exceptions in gender are shown by meanings (13); as Belgae, m., the Belgae; Matrona, m., the (river) Marne.

b. The locative singular ends in -ae; as Samarobrīvae, at Samarobriva.

SECOND DECLENSION

16. The stem ends in -o; the nominative masculine in -us, -er, -ir; the nominative neuter in -um.

| animus, m. | puer, m. | ager, m. | vir, m. | bellum, n. |
| mind | boy | field | man | war |

SINGULAR

| N. animus | puer | ager | vir | bellum |
| G. animī | puerī | agrī | virī | bellī |
| D. animō | puerō | agrō | virō | bellō |
| A. animum | puerum | agrum | virum | bellum |
| V. anime | puer | ager | vir | bellum |
| A. animō | puerō | agrō | virō | bellō |

PLURAL

| N. animī | puerī | agrī | virī | bella |
| G. animōrum | puerōrum | agrōrum | virōrum | bellōrum |
| D. animās | puerās | agrās | virās | bellās |
| A. animōs | puerōs | agrōs | virōs | bella |
| V. animī | puerī | agrī | virī | bella |
| A. animīs | puerīs | agrīs | virīs | bellīs |

filius, m., Gāius, m., Bōi, m., deus, m.,
son Gaius the Boi god

SING. PLUR. SING. PLUR.
N. filius | Gāius | Bōi | deus | dī, dī |
G. fill | Gāl | Bōiōrum | deī | deōrum |
D. fillō | Gāliō | Bōis | deīs | dīs, dīs |
A. filium | Gāium | Bōiōs | deum | deōs |
V. fill | Gāl | Bōi | deus | dī, dī |
A. fillō | Gāliō | Bōis | deō | dīs, dīs |
a. Exceptions in gender are usually shown by the meanings (13). Vulgus, crowd, is usually neuter. Locus, m., place, has plural loca, n., places.

b. The locative singular ends in -i; as Agedincī, at Agedincum.

c. Nouns in -ius regularly form the genitive and vocative singular in -i, instead of -ii and -ie, and nouns in -ium form the genitive in -i. The words are accented as if the longer form were used; cōnsi'li, of a plan; ini'ṭī, of a beginning.

d. Proper names ending in -āius, -ēius, and -ōius are declined like Gāius and Bōi.

e. A few words have -um instead of -ōrum in the genitive plural; socium (or sociōrum), of allies.

### THIRD DECLENSION

17. Third declension stems end in a consonant or in -i. Nomina-
tive case-ending for masculines and feminines, -s or none; for neuters, none.

#### A. CONSONANT STEMS

18. Stems ending in a labial mute, b or p. The nominative ending is -s.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N. pronoun</th>
<th>Plural stems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>princeps, m., chief</td>
<td>principēs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

19. Stems ending in a dental mute, d or t. The nominative ending for masculines and feminines is -s, and the final d or t of the stem is dropped before it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N. pronoun</th>
<th>Plural stems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laus, f., praise</td>
<td>miles, m., soldier</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem laud-</th>
<th>Stem milit-</th>
<th>Stem capit-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudēs</td>
<td>militēs</td>
<td>capite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudēs</td>
<td>militēs</td>
<td>capite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudēs</td>
<td>militēs</td>
<td>capite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudēs</td>
<td>militēs</td>
<td>capite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudēs</td>
<td>militēs</td>
<td>capite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudēs</td>
<td>militēs</td>
<td>capite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudēs</td>
<td>militēs</td>
<td>capite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudēs</td>
<td>militēs</td>
<td>capite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
20. Stems ending in a guttural mute, *g* or *c*. The nominative ending is -s, which unites with the final *g* or *c* of the stem to form *x*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>léx, f., law</td>
<td>lègés</td>
<td>légibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dux, m., leader</td>
<td>ducés</td>
<td>ducibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

21. Stems ending in a liquid, *l* or *r*. There is no nominative case-ending.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnsul, m., consul</td>
<td>cōnsulēs</td>
<td>cōnsulibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pater, m., father</td>
<td>patrés</td>
<td>patribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aequor, n., sea</td>
<td>aequor</td>
<td>aequoribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

22. Stems ending in a nasal, *m* or *n*. There is no nominative case-ending, except in *hiems*, the only stem in -m. The nominative of masculines and feminines usually drops the final *n* and changes the preceding vowel to *ō*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>homō, m., f., human being</td>
<td>hominēs</td>
<td>hominibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ratiō, f., reason</td>
<td>ratiōnēs</td>
<td>ratiōnibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flūmen, n., river</td>
<td>flūmen</td>
<td>flūmina</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hominēs</td>
<td>hominum</td>
<td>hominibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flūminis</td>
<td>flūminum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flūminī</td>
<td>flūminibus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hominem</td>
<td>hominis</td>
<td>hominibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flūmen</td>
<td>flūmina</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flūmen</td>
<td>flūmina</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homine</td>
<td>hominis</td>
<td>hominibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flūmine</td>
<td>flūminibus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23. Stems ending in s (apparently r, because s changes to r between two vowels). The nominative has no case-ending, but usually ends in s, sometimes in r.

mōs, m., custom  honor, m., honor  tempus, n., time
Stem mōs-  Stem honōs-  Stem tempos-
SING.  PLUR.  SING.  PLUR.  SING.  PLUR.
N. mōs  mōrēs  honor  honōrēs  tempus  temporā
G. mōris  mōrum  honōris  honōrum  temporis  temporum
D. mōrī  mōribus  honōrī  honōribus  temporī  temporibus
A. mōrem  mōrēs  honōrem  honōrēs  tempus  temporā
V. mōs  mōrēs  honor  honōrēs  tempus  temporā
A. mōre  mōribus  honōre  honōribus  tempore  temporibus

B. i-STEMS

24. Here belong (1) masculine and feminine nouns ending in -is or -ēs if they have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative, and (2) neuters in -e, -al, -ar.

25. Theoretically the i should appear in all cases except the nominative and vocative plural of masculines and feminines, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular of some neuters; but this declension became confused with that of consonant stems, and no absolute rule can be given for the endings. Masculine and feminine nouns usually have acc., -em, abl., -e, acc. plural either -ēs or -īs. Neuters have abl. -i.

turris, f., tower  hostis, m., f., enemy  caedēs, f., slaughter
Stem turri-
SINGULAR
N. turris  hostis  caedēs
G. turris  hostis  caedīs
D. turri  hosti  caedī
A. turrim or -em  hostem  caedēm
V. turris  hostis  caedes
A. turri or -e  hoste  caede
PLURAL
N. turrēs  hostēs  caedēs
G. turrium  hostium  caedium
D. turribus  hostibus  caedibus
A. turrīs or -ēs  hostēs or -Īs  caedēs or -Īs
V. turrēs  hostēs  caedēs
A. turribus  hostibus  caedibus
cubile, n., couch  vectigal, n., tax
Stem cubili-  Stem vectigali-

SINGULAR

N. cubile  vectigal
G. cubilis  vectigalis
D. cubili  vectigali
A. cubile  vectigal
V. cubile  vectigal
A. cubili  vectigali

PLURAL

N. cubilia  vectigalia
G. cubilium  vectigalium
D. cubilibus  vectigalibus
A. cubilia  vectigalia
V. cubilia  vectigalia
A. cubilibus  vectigalibus

a. Most nouns in -is are declined like hostis. Arar (for Araris), m., the Saone, and Liger (for Ligeris), m., the Loire, are declined in the singular like turris. Ignis, m., fire, and nāvis, f., ship, often have abl.-I. Mare, n., sea, is declined like cubile, but commonly has no other plural cases than nominative and accusative.

C. MIXED STEMS

26. Some consonant stems have borrowed from -i stems the genitive plural in -ium and the accusative plural in -is. Here belong most monosyllables in -s and -x preceded by a consonant; most nouns in -ns and -rs; and a few nouns in -tās, -tātis.

cliēns, m., retainer  urbs, f., city
Stem client-  Stem urb-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. cliēns</td>
<td>clientēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. cliēntis</td>
<td>clientium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cliēnti</td>
<td>clientibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. cliēntem</td>
<td>clientēs or -is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. cliēns</td>
<td>clientēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. cliēnte</td>
<td>clientibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>urbs</td>
<td>urbēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urbis</td>
<td>urbium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urbī</td>
<td>urbibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urbem</td>
<td>urbēs or -is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urbs</td>
<td>urbēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urbe</td>
<td>urbibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
D. IRREGULAR NOUNS

27. The following nouns present peculiarities of inflection:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>CASE</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>senex, m.</td>
<td>senis, f.</td>
<td>old man</td>
<td>pl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m.</td>
<td>os, n.</td>
<td>bone</td>
<td>ossis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vis, f.</td>
<td>vi</td>
<td>vis</td>
<td>vis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bös, m.; f.</td>
<td>bovi</td>
<td>bös</td>
<td>bös</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iuppiter, m.</td>
<td>Iovis</td>
<td>Iuppiter</td>
<td>Iuppiter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

28. The gender of many nouns is shown by the meaning (13). There are numerous exceptions to the following rules.

a. Masculine are nouns in -ō (except those in -dō, -gō, -iō) -or, -ōs, -er, -es.

b. Feminine are nouns in -dō, -gō, -iō, -ās, -ēs, -is, -ūs, -ys, -x, and in -s when preceded by a consonant.

c. Neuter are all others; namely, nouns in -a, -e, -ī, -y, -c, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -us.

FOURTH DECLENSION

29. Stem ends in -u; nominative masculine in -us, nominative neuter in -ū.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>passus, m.</td>
<td>passus, m.</td>
<td>pace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cornu</td>
<td>cornua</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cornuum</td>
<td>cornibus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Domus, house, manus, hand, Idūs, Ides, are feminine.

b. The dative singular of nouns in -us sometimes ends in -ū.

c. The dative and ablative plural of a few nouns sometimes end in -ubus.
434 APPENDIX

d. Domus, f., house, has some second declension forms. The forms in common use are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>domus</td>
<td>domus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>domūs</td>
<td>domūm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>domū or domō</td>
<td>domibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>domum</td>
<td>domūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>domus</td>
<td>domūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>domō or domū</td>
<td>domibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loc.</td>
<td>domī (at home)</td>
<td>domibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FIFTH DECLENSION**


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>dies</td>
<td>dies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>diei</td>
<td>diei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dieum</td>
<td>dieibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>dies</td>
<td>dies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>dies</td>
<td>dies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>diebus</td>
<td>diebus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The ending of the genitive and dative singular is -ēi after a vowel, -ei after a consonant. -ē is sometimes used instead of either.

c. Dies and rēs are the only nouns of this declension that are declined throughout the plural. Acīes, spēs, and a few others have nominative and accusative plural forms.

**ADJECTIVES**

31. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. magnus</td>
<td>magna</td>
<td>magnum</td>
<td>magnī</td>
<td>magnae</td>
<td>magna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. magnī</td>
<td>magnae</td>
<td>magnī</td>
<td>magnūrum</td>
<td>magnārum</td>
<td>magnūrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. magnō</td>
<td>magnae</td>
<td>magnō</td>
<td>magnūs</td>
<td>magnī</td>
<td>magnīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. magnum</td>
<td>magnam</td>
<td>magnum</td>
<td>magnūs</td>
<td>magnās</td>
<td>magna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. magne</td>
<td>magna</td>
<td>magnum</td>
<td>magnī</td>
<td>magnae</td>
<td>magna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. magnō</td>
<td>magnā</td>
<td>magnō</td>
<td>magnīs</td>
<td>magnīs</td>
<td>magnīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX

liber, free

SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mas.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. liber</td>
<td>libera</td>
<td>liberum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. liberī</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>liberī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. liberō</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>liberō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. liberum</td>
<td>liberam</td>
<td>liberum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mas.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>V. liber</td>
<td>libera</td>
<td>liberum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. liberō</td>
<td>liberā</td>
<td>liberō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mas.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. liberī</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. liberōrum</td>
<td>libera</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. liberis</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. liberōs</td>
<td>libera</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mas.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>V. liberī</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. liberōs</td>
<td>libera</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

noster, our

SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mas.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. noster</td>
<td>nostra</td>
<td>nostrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. nostrī</td>
<td>nostrae</td>
<td>nostrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. nostrō</td>
<td>nostrae</td>
<td>nostrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. nostrum</td>
<td>nostram</td>
<td>nostrum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mas.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>V. noster</td>
<td>nostra</td>
<td>nostrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. nostrō</td>
<td>nostrā</td>
<td>nostrō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mas.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. nostrī</td>
<td>nostrae</td>
<td>nostra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. nostrōrum</td>
<td>nostrārum</td>
<td>nostrōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. nostrīs</td>
<td>nostrās</td>
<td>nostrās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. nostrōs</td>
<td>nostrae</td>
<td>nostrae</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mas.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>V. nostrīs</td>
<td>nostrās</td>
<td>nostrās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. nostrōs</td>
<td>nostrae</td>
<td>nostrae</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -IUS.

32. Nine adjectives of the first and second declensions have the genitive singular in -ius (in alter usually -ius) and the dative singular in -i in all genders. These are alius, another, sōlus, only, tōtus, whole, ūllus, any, nūllus, no, ūnum, one, alter, the other, uter, which (of two), neuter, neither. In the plural the case-endings of these adjectives are exactly the same as in magnus. Note the ending -ud in the neuter of alius.

SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mas.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ūnum</td>
<td>ūna</td>
<td>ūnum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ūnīus</td>
<td>ūnīus</td>
<td>ūnīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ūnī</td>
<td>ūnī</td>
<td>ūnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. ūnum</td>
<td>ūnam</td>
<td>ūnum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. ūnō</td>
<td>ūnā</td>
<td>ūnō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mas.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. alius</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>aliud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. alius</td>
<td>alīus</td>
<td>alīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. aliī</td>
<td>aliī</td>
<td>aliī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. aliūm</td>
<td>aliām</td>
<td>aliud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. aliō</td>
<td>aliā</td>
<td>aliō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mas.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. tōtus</td>
<td>tōta</td>
<td>tōtum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. tōtīus</td>
<td>tōtīus</td>
<td>tōtīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. tōtī</td>
<td>tōtī</td>
<td>tōtī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. tōtum</td>
<td>tōtam</td>
<td>tōtum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. tōtō</td>
<td>tōtā</td>
<td>tōtō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mas.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. alter</td>
<td>altera</td>
<td>alterum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. alterius</td>
<td>alterius</td>
<td>alterius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. alterī</td>
<td>alterī</td>
<td>alterī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. alterum</td>
<td>alteram</td>
<td>alterum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. alterō</td>
<td>alterā</td>
<td>alterō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

33. There are both consonant stems and i-stems. Adjectives of three terminations have a special form in the nominative singular for each gender; adjectives of two terminations have one form in the nominative singular for the masculine and feminine, another for the neuter; adjectives of one termination have the same form in the nominative singular for all genders. Except comparatives, all adjectives of two or three terminations have only -i in the ablative singular.

A. CONSONANT STEMS

34. Two Terminations.

fortior, braver

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mas. and Fem.</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. tortior</td>
<td>fortius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. fortioris</td>
<td>fortiorīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. fortiorī</td>
<td>fortiorī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. fortiorēm</td>
<td>fortius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. fortior</td>
<td>fortius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. fortiorē</td>
<td>fortiorē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Here belong all comparatives; but plus, more, is irregular and defective. In the singular it is used only as a noun.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neuter</td>
<td>Mas. and Fem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. plūs</td>
<td>plūrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. plūris</td>
<td>plūrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ....</td>
<td>plūribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. plūs</td>
<td>plūrēs or -īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. plūre</td>
<td>plūribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35. One termination.

vetus, old

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. vetus</td>
<td>vetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. veteris</td>
<td>veteris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. veterī</td>
<td>veterī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. veterēm</td>
<td>vetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. vetus</td>
<td>vetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. veterē</td>
<td>vētere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
a. Here belongs princeps, chief. Dives, rich, also belongs here, but has ditia for the nominative, accusative, and vocative neuter plural.

B. i-STEMS

36. Three terminations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ácer</td>
<td>ácris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ácris</td>
<td>ácris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ácri</td>
<td>ácri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. ácrem</td>
<td>ácrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. ácer</td>
<td>ácris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. ácri</td>
<td>ácri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Here belong celeber, famous, equester, equestrian, pedester, pedestrian; names of months in -ber; and a few others.

37. Two terminations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. omnis</td>
<td>omne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. omnis</td>
<td>omnis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. omnī</td>
<td>omnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. omnem</td>
<td>omne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. omnis</td>
<td>omne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. omnī</td>
<td>omnī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Here belong all adjectives in -is, -e.

38. One termination.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. audāx</td>
<td>audāx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. audācis</td>
<td>audācis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. audāci</td>
<td>audāci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. audācem</td>
<td>audāx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. audāx</td>
<td>audāx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. audāci</td>
<td>audāci</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### APPENDIX

**oriëns, rising**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mas. and Fem.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Neut.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mas. and Fem.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Neut.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. oriëns</td>
<td>oriëns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. orientis</td>
<td>orientis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. orientī</td>
<td>orientī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. orientem</td>
<td>oriëns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. oriëns</td>
<td>oriëns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. oriente or -ī</td>
<td>oriente or -ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>orientibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a.* Here belong most adjectives of one termination, and all participles in -āns and -ēns. Participles usually have the ablative singular in -ī only when used as adjectives, in -e when used as participles or nouns.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

39. The regular comparative endings are -ior, -ius; superlative, -issimus, -a, -um. They are added to the base of the positive (found by removing the case-ending from the genitive singular). Examples: altus, high; altior, -ius. higher; altissimus, -a, -um, highest; fortis, brave; fortior, braver; fortissimus, bravest.

40. Adjectives in -er form the comparative regularly, but form the superlative by adding -rimus to the nominative of the positive. Example: ācer, sharp (base, ācr-), ācior, ācerrimus.

41. Most adjectives in -illos are compared regularly. Six, while forming the comparative regularly, form the superlative by adding -limus to the base of the positive. They are facilis, easy; difficilis, difficult; similis, like; dissimilis, unlike; humilis, low; gracilis, slender. Example: facilis, facilior, facillimus.

### IRREGULAR COMPARISON

- **bonus, melior, optimus**, good, better, best.
- **malus, peior, pessimus**, bad, worse, worst.
- **magnus, maior, maximus**, great, greater, greatest.
- **parvus, minor, minimus**, small, less, least.
- **multus, plús, plúrimus**, much, more, most.
- **dexter, dexterior, dextimus**, on the right. dexterous, etc.
DEFECTIVE COMPARISON

43. The following comparatives and superlatives appear without a positive because formed from stems not used as adjectives:

(citrā, adv., on this side) citerior, citimus, hither, hithermost.
(dē, prep., down) détērior, détērīmus, worse, worst.
(intrā, prep., in, within) ĭntērior, ĭntimus, ĭnner, ĭnmōst.
(prae, prep., before) prīor, prīmus, former, first.
(prope, adv., near) prōpriōr, prōximus, nearer, next.
(ultrā, adv., beyond) ultērior, ultimus, farther, farthest.

44. Of the following the positive forms are rare, except when used as nouns (generally in the plural):

exterus, exterior, extrēmus (extimus), outer, outmost.
inferus, inferior, infimus (imus), lower, lowest.
posterus, posterior, postrēmus (postumus), latter, last.
superus, superior, suprēmus (summus), higher, highest.

COMPARISON BY ADVERBS

45. Most adjectives in -us preceded by a vowel, and many others, form the comparative and superlative by using the adverbs magis, more, and maximē, most. Example: idōneus, suitable; magis idōneus, more suitable; maximē idōneus, most suitable.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

46. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives in all the degrees of comparison.

a. The positive is formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding -ē to the base; as lātus, wide, lātē, widely: from adjectives of the third declension by adding -ter or -iter to the base, except that adjectives whose base ends in nt add only -er; as audāx, audācis, bold, audāctēr, boldly; fortis, brave, fortīter, bravely; prūdēns, prūdentēs, prudent, prūdenter, prudently. But the neuter accusative singular of adjectives of all declensions may be used adverbially; as multum, much, facile, easily.

b. The comparative is the accusative singular neuter of the comparative of the adjective; as lātius, more widely, audācius, more boldly, fortius, more bravely, prūdentius, more prudently, plus, more, facilius, more easily.
c. The superlative is formed by adding -ē to the base of the superlative of the adjective; or, less often, is its accusative singular neuter; as lātissimē, most widely, audācissimē, most boldly, fortissimē, most bravely, prūdentissimē, most prudently, plūrimum, most, facillimē, most easily.

NUMERALS

47. Numeral adjectives are of three classes: cardinals, answering the question how many? as one, two, etc.; ordinals, answering the question which in order? as, first, second, etc.; and distributives, answering the question how many each? as, one each, two each, etc.

Roman

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numerals</th>
<th>Cardinal</th>
<th>Ordinal</th>
<th>Distributive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. ūnus, -a,-um</td>
<td>prīmus, -a,-um</td>
<td>singuli, -ae,-a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. duo, -ae,-o</td>
<td>secundus or alter</td>
<td>bīnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. trēs, tria</td>
<td>tertius</td>
<td>ternū or trīnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. quattuor</td>
<td>quārtus</td>
<td>quaternī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. quīnquē</td>
<td>quīntus</td>
<td>quīnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. sex</td>
<td>sextus</td>
<td>sēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII. septem</td>
<td>septimus</td>
<td>septēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII. octō</td>
<td>octāvus</td>
<td>octōnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX. novem</td>
<td>nōnus</td>
<td>novēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X. decem</td>
<td>decimus</td>
<td>dēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XI. ūndecim</td>
<td>ūndecimus</td>
<td>ūndēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XII. duodecim</td>
<td>duodecimus</td>
<td>duodēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII. tredecim</td>
<td>tertius decimus</td>
<td>ternī dēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIV. quattuordecim</td>
<td>quārtus decimus</td>
<td>quaternī dēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XV. quīndecim</td>
<td>quīntus decimus</td>
<td>quīnī dēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVI. sēdecim</td>
<td>sextus decimus</td>
<td>sēnī dēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVII. septendecim</td>
<td>septimus decimus</td>
<td>septēnī dēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVIII. duodēvigintī</td>
<td>duodēvīcēsimus</td>
<td>duodēvīcēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIX. ūndēvigintī</td>
<td>ūndēvīcēsimus</td>
<td>ūndēvīcēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XX. vigintī</td>
<td>vīcēsimus</td>
<td>vīcēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXI. ūnus et vigintī</td>
<td>vīcēsimus prīmus</td>
<td>vīcēnī singulī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(vīgintī ūnus)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVIII. duodētrigintā</td>
<td>duodētrīcēsimus</td>
<td>duodētrīcēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXIX. ūndētrigintā</td>
<td>ūndētrīcēsimus</td>
<td>ūndētrīcēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXX. trīgintā</td>
<td>trīcēsimus</td>
<td>trīcēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XL. quadrāgintā</td>
<td>quadrāgēsimus</td>
<td>quadrāgēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L. quīnquāgintā</td>
<td>quīnquāgēsimus</td>
<td>quīnquāgēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LX. sexāgintā</td>
<td>sexāgēsimus</td>
<td>sexāgēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX

LXX. septuāgintā
tā septuāgēsimus
LXXX. octōgintā
tā octōgēsimus
XC. nōnāgintā
tā nōnāgēsimus
C. centum
tē centēsimus
CI. centum (et)
tē centēsimus (et)
CC. ducentī, -ae, -a
tē ducentēsimus
CCC. trecentī
tē trecentēsimus
CCCC. quadringentī
tā quadringentēsimus
D. quingentī
tē quingentēsimus
DC. sescentī
tē sescentēsimus
DCC. septingentī
tē septingentēsimus
DCCC. noningentī
tē nongentēsimus
M. mīlē
tī milēsimus
MM. duo mālia

a. The ending -ēnsimūs is often used for -ēsimus.

48. Of the cardinals, ūnus, duo, and trēs are declined; quattuor to centum, inclusive, are indeclinable; ducentī to nōngentī, inclusive, are declined like the plural of magnus (31); mīlē as an adjective is indeclinable, as a substantive is declined like the plural of cubile (25) and generally spelled mīlia. Ordinals are declined like magnus, distributives like the plural of magnus.

49. For the declension of ūnus see 32. Its plural usually means only or alone, but is used in the sense of one with nouns used only in the plural; as, ūna castra, one camp. Duo and trēs are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. duo</td>
<td>duae</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>trēs</td>
<td>tria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. duōrum</td>
<td>duārum</td>
<td>duōrum</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>trium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. duōs, duo</td>
<td>duās</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>trēs, trīs</td>
<td>tria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

50. The numbers intermediate between those given in the table are expressed as follows: In a combination of tens and units the units may precede, followed by et; as trēs et quadragintā, three and forty; or the tens may precede without an et; as quadragintā trēs, forty three. In other combinations of two numerals the higher precedes, with or without et; as ducentī (et) vigintī, two hundred and twenty. In com-
APPENDIX

Combinations of three or more numerals, the order is as in English, without et; as *duo milia sescenti viginti sex*, two thousand six hundred and twenty six.

**PRONOUNS**

**PERSONAL PRONOUNS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First person, <em>ego</em>, I</th>
<th>Second person, <em>tū</em>, you (thou)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SING.</strong></td>
<td><strong>PLUR.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>N.</em> <em>ego</em></td>
<td><em>nōs</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>G.</em> <em>mei</em></td>
<td><em>nostrum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>D.</em> <em>mihi</em></td>
<td><em>nōbis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>A.</em> <em>mē</em></td>
<td><em>nōs</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>A.</em> <em>mē</em></td>
<td><em>nōbis</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a.* There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun, usually *is*, *he*, *ea*, *she*, *id*, *it*, 57; or, when *him*, *them*, etc., refer to the subject (163), by the reflexive pronouns.

*b.* *nostrum* and *vestrum* are the forms used as partitive genitives (101); *nostri* and *vestri*, as objective genitives (98).

*c.* The preposition *cum* is enclitic with personal pronouns; as, *nōbis-cum*, with us.

**REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS**

52. A reflexive pronoun can neither be the subject of a finite verb nor agree with such a subject: therefore there can be no nominative. For the first and second persons the personal pronouns are used as reflexives. For the third person there is a special pronoun.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SING.</strong></td>
<td><strong>PLUR.</strong></td>
<td><strong>SING.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>G.</em> <em>mei</em></td>
<td><em>nostrum</em></td>
<td><em>tui</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>D.</em> <em>mihi</em></td>
<td><em>nōbis</em></td>
<td><em>tibi</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>A.</em> <em>mē</em></td>
<td><em>nōs</em></td>
<td><em>tē</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>A.</em> <em>mē</em></td>
<td><em>nōbis</em></td>
<td><em>tē</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a.* The preposition *cum* is enclitic with reflexive pronouns; as, *sēcum*, with himself.
### POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

1. **1st pers.** meus, -a, -um, *my*  
   noster, -tra, -trum, *our*
2. **2d pers.** tuus, -a, -um, *your (of one)*  
   vester, -tra, -trum, *your (of more than one)*

3. **3d pers.**
   - suus, -a, -um, *his, her, its (when referring to the subject)*
   - eiusmod (gen. sing. of is) *his, her, its (when not referring to the subject)*

### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

54. **hic, this (near the speaker)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. hoc</td>
<td>hāc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

55. **iste, that (near the person spoken to)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. iste</td>
<td>ista</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. istius</td>
<td>istius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. istī</td>
<td>istī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. istum</td>
<td>istam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. istō</td>
<td>istā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

56. **ille, that (something more remote) is declined like iste.**

57. **is, this, that, he, she, it (unemphatic)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. is</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. eius</td>
<td>eius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ei</td>
<td>ei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. eum</td>
<td>eam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. eō</td>
<td>eā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
58. **Idem, the same**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th></th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. idem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
<td>idem</td>
<td>idem or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. eiusdem</td>
<td>eiusdem</td>
<td>eiusdem</td>
<td>eörundem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. eīdem</td>
<td>eīdem</td>
<td>eīdem</td>
<td>īsdem or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. eundem</td>
<td>eandem</td>
<td>idem</td>
<td>ēōsdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. ēōdem</td>
<td>ēādem</td>
<td>ēōdem</td>
<td>īsdem or</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

59. **THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th></th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ipse</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>īspi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ipsius</td>
<td>ipsīus</td>
<td>ipsīus</td>
<td>īpsūrūm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. īspī</td>
<td>īspī</td>
<td>īspī</td>
<td>īpsīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. ipsum</td>
<td>ipsam</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>īpsōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. īpsō</td>
<td>īpsā</td>
<td>īpsō</td>
<td>īpsīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

60. **THE RELATIVE PRONOUN**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th></th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. qui</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>quī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>quōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>quōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. quō</td>
<td>quā</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Quicumque and quisquis, whoever, are generalizing relatives. The qui of quicumque is declined regularly. Quisquis, quicquid (quid-quad), and quōquo are the only common forms of quisquis.

b. The preposition cum is usually enclitic with the relative pronoun, as quibuscum, with whom.

61. **INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS**

Qui, quae, quod, the adjective what? is declined like the relative. Quis, quid, the substantive who? what? is used in the singular.
APPENDIX

quis, who?
SING.

Mas. and Fem. Neut.
N. quis quid
G. cuius cuius
D. cui cui
A. quam quid
A. quem quō

a. The enclitic -nam is sometimes added to an interrogative to strengthen it; quisnam, who, pray?

b. Cum is usually enclitic with the interrogative pronoun.

62. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS
The indefinite pronouns are quis, qui, and their compounds. Quis and qui in this sense are in general declined like the interrogatives.

SUBSTANTIVE ADJECTIVE

quis, quid, any one quī, quae (qua), quod, any
aliquis, aliquid, some one aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, some
quispiam, quidpiam, some one quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam, some
quisquam, quicquam (quidquam), (adjective supplied by ūllus)
any one (abl. sing. and entire plural supplied by ūllus, -a, -um)
quīvis, quaēvis, quidvīs
quīlībet, quaēlībet, quidlībet
any one etc., you like
quisdam, quaedam, quiddam, a certain man
quisque, quidque, each

a. In quī and aliquī the nominative and accusative plural neuter are qua (or quae) and aliqua.

b. In the declension of quīdam, m becomes n before d; as quendam.
VERBS

63. There are four conjugations of Latin verbs, distinguished from one another by the final vowel of the stem, best seen in the present infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJUGATION</th>
<th>FINAL VOWEL OF STEM</th>
<th>PRESENT INFINITIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>ã</td>
<td>-äre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>ë</td>
<td>-ëre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>e (i, u)</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>ì</td>
<td>-ìre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

64. All forms of a verb are formed on one or another of three stems,—the present stem, the perfect stem, and the supine stem. In regular verbs the perfect and supine stems are based on the present stem, but in some irregular verbs they are formed on distinct roots.

a. On the present stem are formed: active and passive,—present, imperfect, and future indicative; present and imperfect subjunctive; imperative; present infinitive: active,—present participle; gerund: passive,—gerundive.

b. On the perfect stem are formed: active,—perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; perfect infinitive.

c. On the supine stem are formed: active and passive,—future infinitive; active,—future participle; supine: passive,—perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; perfect infinitive; perfect participle.

65. The principal parts are forms which show to which conjugation a verb belongs and what each of its stems is. They are, in the active, (1) the first person singular present indicative (as the first form of the verb), (2) the present infinitive (to indicate the conjugation and give the present stem), (3) the first person singular perfect indicative (to give the perfect stem), (4) the supine (to give the supine stem).

For example, the principal parts of laudō are:

laudō, laudāre (present stem, laudā).
laudāvī (perfect stem, laudāv).
laudātum (supine stem, laudāt).
The supine of the majority of verbs is not found in Latin literature so that other forms of the verb are often given instead of the supine. But no one form is found for every verb, and it is simpler to give the supine always.

In the passive the principal parts are (1) the first person singular present indicative, (2) the present infinitive, (3) the first person singular perfect indicative.

### 66. CONJUGATION OF *SUM* (irregular verb)

Principal parts: *sum*, *esse*, *fui*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.</td>
<td>PLUR.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>sum</em></td>
<td><em>sumus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>es</em></td>
<td><em>estis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>est</em></td>
<td><em>sunt</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IMPERFECT</strong></td>
<td><strong>IMPERFECT</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>eram</em></td>
<td><em>erâmus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>eras</em></td>
<td><em>erâtis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>erat</em></td>
<td><em>erant</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE</strong></td>
<td><strong>FUTURE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>erô</em></td>
<td><em>erimus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>eris</em></td>
<td><em>erîtis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>erit</em></td>
<td><em>erunt</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFECT</strong></td>
<td><strong>PERFECT</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fui</em></td>
<td><em>fuimus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fuisti</em></td>
<td><em>fuistis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fuit</em></td>
<td><em>fuérunt or -êre</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLUPERFECT</strong></td>
<td><strong>PLUPERFECT</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fuérâmus</em></td>
<td><em>fuissem</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fuérâtis</em></td>
<td><em>fuissês</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fuérant</em></td>
<td><em>fuisset</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE PERFECT</strong></td>
<td><strong>FUTURE PERFECT</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fuérô</em></td>
<td><em>fuerîmus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fuéris</em></td>
<td><em>fuerîtis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fuérit</em></td>
<td><em>fuerînt</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Imperative

**Present**

2d pers. *este*

**Future**

2d pers. *estō*

3d pers. *estō*

### Participles

**Fut.** futūrus

**Infinitive**

Pres. esse

**Perfect**

fuisse

**Future**

futūrus (esse) or fore

### First Conjugation

**Active Voice**

Principal parts: laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum

#### Indicative

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudō</td>
<td>laudāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudās</td>
<td>laudātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudat</td>
<td>laudant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

| laudābam | laudābāmus |
| laudābās | laudābātis |
| laudābat | laudābant |

**Future**

| laudābō | laudābimus |
| laudābis | laudābitis |
| laudābit | laudābunt |

**Perfect**

| laudāvī | laudāvīmus |
| laudāvistī | laudāvistis |
| laudāvit | laudāvērunt |
| or -ēre |

**Pluperfect**

| laudāveram | laudāverāmus |
| laudāverās | laudāverātis |
| laudāverat | laudāverant |

**Future Perfect**

| laudāverō | laudāverīmus |
| laudāverīs | laudāverītis |
| laudāverit | laudāverint |

**Subjunctive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudōs</td>
<td>laudēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudēs</td>
<td>laudētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudet</td>
<td>laudent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

| laudārem | laudārēmus |
| laudārēs | laudārētis |
| laudāret | laudārent |

**Perfect**

| laudāverīmus | laudāverītis |
| laudāverīt | laudāverint |

**Pluperfect**

| laudāvissem | laudāvissemus |
| laudāvissēs | laudāvissētis |
| laudāvisset | laudāvissent |
### IMPERATIVE

**Present**
- 2d pers. laudā
- Future laudātō
- 3d pers. laudātō

**Future**
- 2d pers. laudātō

### PARTICIPLE

**Present** laudāns
**Future** laudatōs

### INFINITIVE

**Present** laudāre
**Future** laudātūrus

### SUPINE

**Acc.** laudātum
**Abl.** laudātū

### GERUND

**Gen.** laudandū
**Dat.** laudandō
**Acc.** laudandum
**Abl.** laudandō

### FIRST CONJUGATION

#### PASSIVE VOICE

**Principal parts:** laudor, laudārī, laudātus sum

#### INDICATIVE

**Present**
- SING. laudor
- PLUR. laudāmur
- laudāris or -re laudāmini
- laudātur laudantur

**Imperfect**
- SING. laudābar
- PLUR. laudābāmur
- laudābāris or -re laudābāmini
- laudābātur laudābantur

**Future**
- SING. laudābor
- PLUR. laudābimur
- laudāberis or -re laudābimini
- laudābitur laudābuntur

**Perfect**
- SING. laudātus sum
- PLUR. laudātī sumus
- laudātus sim
- laudātī simus
- laudātus es
- laudātī estis
- laudātus sīs
- laudātī sītis
- laudātus est
- laudātī sunt
- laudātus sit
- laudātī sint
Pluperfect

laudatus eram laudati eramus
laudatus eran laudati eratis
laudatus eras laudati erat

Future

laudatus ero laudati erimus
laudatus eris laudati eritis
laudatus erit laudati erunt

Pluperfect

laudatus essem laudati essemus
laudatus esses laudati essetis
laudatus esset laudati essent

INFINITIVE

Pres. laudari
Perf. laudatus esse
Fut. laudatum ire

PARTICIPE

Perf. laudatus
Fut. laudandus

68.

SECOND CONJUGATION
ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: moneo, monere, monul, monitum

INDICATIVE

Present
SING. moneo
mones
monet

PLUR. monemus
monetis
monent

Imperfect
monebam
monebas
monebat

Future
monebis
monebit
monebus

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present
SING. monem
mones
monet

PLUR. moneam
moneas
moneat

Imperfect
monerem
moneris
monerat

Future
moneremus
moneretis
monerent
### Appendix

#### Conjugation

**Perfect**

- monuī
- monuistī
- monuīt
- or -ēre

**Pluperfect**

- monueram
- monuerās
- monuerat

**Future Perfect**

- monuērō
- monuēris
- monuērit

#### Imperative

**Present**

- 2d pers. monē
- monēte

**Future**

- 2d pers. monēto
- monētōte
- 3d pers. monētō

#### Infinitive

- monēre
- monuisse
- monitūrus (esse)

#### Passive Voice

**Principal parts:** moneor, monērī, monitus sum

**Indicative**

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneor</td>
<td>monēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēris or -re</td>
<td>monēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monētūr</td>
<td>monentūr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive**

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monear</td>
<td>moneāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēaris or -re</td>
<td>moneāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monētār</td>
<td>moneātūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monētant</td>
<td>moneātant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monēbar</th>
<th>Monēbāmur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monēbāris or -re</td>
<td>Monēbāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monēbātur</td>
<td>Monēbantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monērer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monērēris or -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monērētur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monēbor</th>
<th>Monēbimur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monēberis or -re</td>
<td>Monēbimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monēbitur</td>
<td>Monēbuntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monitus sum</th>
<th>Monītus sumus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monitus es</td>
<td>Monītus estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitus est</td>
<td>Monītus sunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monitus eram</th>
<th>Monītus erāmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monitus erās</td>
<td>Monītus erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitus erat</td>
<td>Monītus erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperative

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2d pers.</th>
<th>Monēre</th>
<th>Monēmini</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2d pers.</th>
<th>Monētor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3d pers.</td>
<td>Monētōr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Participle

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monitus sum</th>
<th>Monītus sumus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monitus sī</td>
<td>Monītus sītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitus sīt</td>
<td>Monītus sīnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monitus essēn</th>
<th>Monītus essēmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monitus essēs</td>
<td>Monītus essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitus esset</td>
<td>Monītus essenti</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dūcō</th>
<th>Dūcimus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dūcis</td>
<td>Dūcītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dūcit</td>
<td>Dūcunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fut.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monitus</th>
<th>Monītum Irī</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Third Conjugation

**Active Voice**

Principal parts: dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum

**Indicative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dūcō</td>
<td>Dūcimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dūcis</td>
<td>Dūcītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dūcit</td>
<td>Dūcunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dūcās</td>
<td>Dūcātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dūcat</td>
<td>Dūcant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb Form</td>
<td>Imperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ducēbam</td>
<td>Ducēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ducēbas</td>
<td>Ducēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ducēbat</td>
<td>Ducēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ducam</td>
<td>Ducēmus</td>
<td>Ducēmus</td>
<td>Ducēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ducēs</td>
<td>Ducētis</td>
<td>Ducētis</td>
<td>Ducētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ducet</td>
<td>Ducēnt</td>
<td>Ducēnt</td>
<td>Ducēnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Duxi</td>
<td>Duximus</td>
<td>Duxerim</td>
<td>Duxerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duxisti</td>
<td>Duxistis</td>
<td>Duxeris</td>
<td>Duxeritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duxit</td>
<td>Duxērunt</td>
<td>Duxerit</td>
<td>Duxerint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Duxeram</td>
<td>Duxerāmus</td>
<td>Duxissem</td>
<td>Duxissēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duxeras</td>
<td>Duxerātis</td>
<td>Duxissēs</td>
<td>Duxissētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duxerat</td>
<td>Duxerant</td>
<td>Duxisset</td>
<td>Duxissent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Duxerō</td>
<td>Ducērimus</td>
<td>Ducērōn</td>
<td>Ducērint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duxeris</td>
<td>Ducēritis</td>
<td>Ducērint</td>
<td>Ducērint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duxerit</td>
<td>Ducērunt</td>
<td>Ducērint</td>
<td>Ducērint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2d pers. Duc*</td>
<td>Ducite</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3d pers. Ducítō</td>
<td>Ducítote</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PARTICIPLE</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. Ducēns</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Ductūrus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GERUND**

| Gen. Ductūdēn     | Ducēndūdēn|
| Dat. Ductūdō      |           |
| Acc. Ductūdēnum   |           |
| Abl. Ductūdō      |           |

*Irregular for Ducē.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUPINE</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acc. Ductūm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. Ductū</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFINITIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ducere</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duxisse</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ductūrūsus (esse)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GERUND**

| Gen. Ducēndūdēn   |           |           |           |
| Dat. Ducēndūdō    |           |           |           |
| Acc. Ducēndēnum   |           |           |           |
| Abl. Ducēndō      |           |           |           |
THIRD CONJUGATION
PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: dūcor, dūci, ductus sum

### INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense/Suffix</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>dūcor</td>
<td>dūcimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūceris or -re</td>
<td>dūcimīni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūcitur</td>
<td>dūcuntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>dūcēbar</td>
<td>dūcēbāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūcēbāris or -re</td>
<td>dūcēbāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūcēbātur</td>
<td>dūcēbantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>dūcar</td>
<td>dūcēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūcēris or -re</td>
<td>dūcēminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūcētur</td>
<td>dūcentur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>ducēsum</td>
<td>ductī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ductēsum</td>
<td>ductī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ductēsum</td>
<td>ductī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>ductēsum</td>
<td>ductī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ductēsum</td>
<td>ductī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ductēsum</td>
<td>ductī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>ductēsum</td>
<td>ductī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ductēsum</td>
<td>ductī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPERATIVE</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>2d pers. dūcere:ductēsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2d pers. dūcitor</td>
<td>dūcēminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3d pers. dūcitor</td>
<td>dūcēminī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUBJUNCTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense/Suffix</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>dūcar</td>
<td>dūcāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūcāris or -re</td>
<td>dūcāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūcātur</td>
<td>dūcantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>dūcerer</td>
<td>dūcererēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūcererēris or re</td>
<td>dūcererēminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūcererētur</td>
<td>dūcentur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>ductēsum</td>
<td>ductī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ductēsum</td>
<td>ductī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ductēsum</td>
<td>ductī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>ductēsum</td>
<td>ductī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ductēsum</td>
<td>ductī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ductēsum</td>
<td>ductī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>ductēsum</td>
<td>ductī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPERATIVE</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>2d pers. dūcere:ductēsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2d pers. dūcitor</td>
<td>dūcēminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3d pers. dūcitor</td>
<td>dūcēminī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dūci</td>
<td>ductus esse</td>
<td>ductum ēri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PARTICIPLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense/Suffix</th>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>Fut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ductus</td>
<td>dūcendor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## FOURTH CONJUGATION

**ACTIVE VOICE**

Principal parts: audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum

### INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiō</td>
<td>audīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīs</td>
<td>audītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit</td>
<td>audīunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiēvī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēvistī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēvit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect or -ēre</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiēverīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēverītīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēverīnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUBJUNCTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiām</td>
<td>audiāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiās</td>
<td>audiātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiat</td>
<td>audiant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audīrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīrés</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīret</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audīēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audient</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audīverim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverīnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INFINITIVE

Pres. audīre
Perf. audīvisse
Fut. auditūrus (esse)
PARTICIPLE

Pres. audiēns  Fut. auditūrus

SUPINE

Acc. auditum  Abl. auditū

GERUND

Gen. audiendī
Dat. audiendō
Acc. audiendum
Abl. audiendō

FOURTH CONJUGATION
PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: audior, audīrī, auditus sum

INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audior</td>
<td>audimur</td>
<td>audiār</td>
<td>audiāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīris or -re</td>
<td>audiāmini</td>
<td>audiāris or -re</td>
<td>audiāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditur</td>
<td>audiuntur</td>
<td>audiātur</td>
<td>audiātur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperfect

| | | audiēbar | audiēbāmur |
| | | audiēbāris or -re | audiēbāmini |
| | | audiēbātūr | audiēbantūr |

Future

| | | audiēmur | audiēmur |
| | | audiēmini | audiēmini |
| | | audientur | audientur |

Perfect

| | | auditūs sum | auditī sumus |
| | | auditūs es | auditī estis |
| | | auditūs est | auditī sunt |

Pluperfect

| | | auditūs eram | auditī erāmus |
| | | auditūs erās | auditī erātis |
| | | auditūs erat | auditī erant |

Future Perfect

| | | auditūs erō | auditī erimus |
| | | auditūs eris | auditī eritis |
| | | auditūs erit | auditī erunt |
### IMPERATIVE

**Present**

2d pers. audīre | audīmini

**Future**

2d pers. auditor | audiuntor

### PARTICIPLE

**Present**

Perf. auditus

Fut. audiendus

### THIRD CONJUGATION IN ĪO

#### ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: capīō, capere, cēpī, captum

#### INDICATIVE

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capīō</td>
<td>capimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capis</td>
<td>capitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capit</td>
<td>capiunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiēbam</td>
<td>capiēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbās</td>
<td>capiēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbat</td>
<td>capiēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiām</td>
<td>capiāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēs</td>
<td>capiētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēt</td>
<td>capiētint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēpi</td>
<td>cēpimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpistī</td>
<td>cēpistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpit</td>
<td>cēpērunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUBJUNCTIVE

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiam</td>
<td>capiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiam</td>
<td>capiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiat</td>
<td>capiant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>caperem</td>
<td>caperēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caperēs</td>
<td>caperētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caperet</td>
<td>caperent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiēmus</td>
<td>capiēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiētis</td>
<td>capiētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiētint</td>
<td>capiētint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēperim</td>
<td>cēperim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperēs</td>
<td>cēperēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperit</td>
<td>cēperit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperint</td>
<td>cēperint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### APPENDIX

#### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cēperam</th>
<th>cēperāmus</th>
<th>cēpissem</th>
<th>cēpissēmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēperās</td>
<td>cēperātis</td>
<td>cēpissēs</td>
<td>cēpissētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperat</td>
<td>cēperant</td>
<td>cēpisset</td>
<td>cēpissent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cēperō</th>
<th>cēperimus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēperis</td>
<td>cēperitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperit</td>
<td>cēperint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERATIVE

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2d pers. Cape</th>
<th>capite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2d pers. capītō</th>
<th>capītōte</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3d pers. capītō</td>
<td>capiuntō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PARTICIPLE

**Pres. capiēns**  
**Fut. captūrus**

#### SUPINE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acc. captum</th>
<th>Abl. captū</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### THIRD CONJUGATION IN 10

#### PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: capior, capī, captus sum

#### INDICATIVE

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capior</td>
<td>capimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caperis or -re</td>
<td>capimīnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitur</td>
<td>capiuntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>capiēbar</th>
<th>capiēbāmur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiēbāris or -re</td>
<td>capiēbāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbātūr</td>
<td>capiēbantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>capiar</th>
<th>capiēmur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiēris or -re</td>
<td>capiēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiētūr</td>
<td>capientur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiar</td>
<td>capiamur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiāris or -re</td>
<td>capiāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiātūr</td>
<td>capiantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>caperer</th>
<th>caperēmur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>caperēris or -re</td>
<td>caperēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caperētūr</td>
<td>caperentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### INFINITIVE

**Pres. capere**  
**Perf. cēpisse**  
**Fut. captūrus (esse)**

#### GERUND

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gen. capiēndī</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dat. capiēndō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. capiēndēm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. capiēndō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>GERUND</strong></th>
<th><strong>INDICATIVE</strong></th>
<th><strong>SUBJUNCTIVE</strong></th>
<th><strong>INFINITIVE</strong></th>
<th><strong>GERUND</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen. capiēndī</td>
<td>Pres. capiēr</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>capiēmur</td>
<td>Gen. capiēndī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. capiēndō</td>
<td>capiērīs or -re</td>
<td>capiēmīnī</td>
<td>capiēmur</td>
<td>capiēndō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. capiēndēm</td>
<td>capiētūr</td>
<td>capiēmīnī</td>
<td>capiēmīnī</td>
<td>capiēndēm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. capiēndō</td>
<td>caperentur</td>
<td>capiēmīnī</td>
<td>caperēmur</td>
<td>capiēndō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### APPENDIX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
<th>IMPERATIVE</th>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>captus sum</td>
<td>capti sumus</td>
<td>captus eram</td>
<td>capere</td>
<td>capi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>captus es</td>
<td>capti estis</td>
<td>captus eras</td>
<td>capitor</td>
<td>captus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>captus est</td>
<td>capti sunt</td>
<td>captus erat</td>
<td>capitur</td>
<td>captum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>captus erat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>iri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>captus erō</td>
<td>capti erimus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>captus eris</td>
<td>capti eritis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>captus erit</td>
<td>capti erunt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERATIVE

- **Present**: 2d pers. capere - capimini
- **Future**: 2d pers. capitor - capiuntor

#### PARTICIPLE

- **Perf. captus**
- **Fut. capiendus**

#### CONTRACTED FORMS

72. When the perfect stem ends in *v*, the *v* is sometimes dropped, and usually the two vowels thus brought together contract into one. 
   a. Perfects in -āvi, -ēvi, and -ōvī, and the other tenses based on the same stem, sometimes (apparently) drop *ve, vē, or vi* before *r* or *s*.

   Examples: laudāstī for laudāvistī; laudāsse for laudāvisse; délērunta for délēvērunt; nōrim for nōverim.

   b. Perfects in -īvī, and the other tenses based on the same stem, sometimes drop *v* in all forms. When the resulting combination is *iis* it usually contracts to *īs*.

   Examples: audīi for audīvī; audieram for audīveram; audīsse for audīvisse.
DEPONENT VERBS

73. Deponent verbs have passive forms with active meanings. But
the future passive participle is passive in sense, and the perfect parti-
ciple is sometimes so. On the other hand they have the following
active forms: future infinitive, present and future participles, gerund,
supine.

Of the following verbs the principal parts, indicative, subjunctive,
and imperative are precisely the same as those for the passive voice of
the verbs already given for the corresponding conjugations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>hortor, urge</th>
<th>vereor, fear</th>
<th>sequor, follow</th>
<th>partior, share</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

INFINITIVE

| Pres. hortāri | verēri | sequī | partīrī |
| Perf. hortātus esse | veritus esse | secūtus esse | partītus esse |
| Fut. hortātūrus (esse) | veritūrus (esse) | secūtūrus (esse) | partītūrus (esse) |

PARTICIPLE

| Pres. hortāns | verēns | sequēns | partiēns |
| Perf. hortātus | veritus | secūtus | partītus |
| Fut. hortātūrus | veritūrus | secūtūrus | partītūrus |
| Fut. Pass. hortandus | verendus | sequendus | partiendus |

GERUND

hortandī, -ō, etc. verendī, etc. sequendī, etc. partiendī, etc.

SUPINE

hortātum, -tū veritum, -tū secūtum, -tū partītum, -tū

74.

SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

Semi-deponent verbs have active forms for the tenses based on the
present stem, passive forms for those based on the perfect stem.

They are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvisus sum, rejoice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fidō, fidere, fisus sum, trust</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

75. The active periphrastic conjugation expresses future or intended action. It is formed by combining the future active participle with the verb sum: thus,

Pres. laudātūrus sum, I am about to praise, I intend to praise,
Imp. laudātūrus eram, I was about to praise, I intended to praise, etc.

76. The passive periphrastic conjugation expresses obligation or necessity. It is formed by combining the future passive participle with the verb sum: thus,

Pres. laudandus sum, I am to be (must be) praised, I have to be praised.
Imp. laudandus eram, I was to be praised, I had to be praised, etc.

IRREGULAR VERBS

SUM AND ITS COMPONDS

77. For the conjugation of sum see 66. Sum is inflected in the same way when compounded with the prepositions ad, dé, in, inter, ob, prae, sub, super. Praesum has a present participle, praesēns.

78. In absum, sum is inflected in the same way, but ā is used for ab before f, giving āfui, āfutūrus, etc. There is a present participle absēns.

79. In prōsum, sum is inflected in the same way, but the preposition prō has its original form prōd before all forms of sum beginning with e; as, prōdesse, prōderam. The present tense is, prōsum, prōdes, prōdest. prōsumus, prōdestis, prōsunt.

80. Possum, be able, can, is a compound of pot- and sum.

Principal parts: possum, posse, potui

INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres. possum, potes, potest possim
possumus, potestis, possunt

Imp. poteram possem

Fut. poterō
Perf. potui potuerim
Plup. potueram potuissem
Fut. Perf. potuerō
## APPENDIX

### INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>posse</td>
<td>Pres. potēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>potuisse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 81.

**ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear**

**ACTIVE VOICE**

#### INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>ferō, fers, fert, ferimus, fertis, fertunt</td>
<td>feram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>ferēbam</td>
<td>ferrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>feram</td>
<td>tulerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf</td>
<td>tulī</td>
<td>tulissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup</td>
<td>tuleram</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perf.</td>
<td>tulerō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fer</td>
<td>fer</td>
<td>ferēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferte</td>
<td>ferre</td>
<td>lāturus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fertō</td>
<td>fertōte</td>
<td>lāturus (esse)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fertō</td>
<td>feruntō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### GERUND

ferendi, etc.

#### PASSIVE VOICE

#### INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>feror, ferris, furtur</td>
<td>ferar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>ferēmur, ferimini, feruntur</td>
<td>ferrer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>ferēbar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf</td>
<td>lātus sum</td>
<td>lātus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup</td>
<td>lātus eram</td>
<td>lātus essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perf.</td>
<td>lātus erō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ferre, ferimini</td>
<td>ferrei</td>
<td>lātus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fertor</td>
<td>lātus esse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fertor, feruntor</td>
<td>lātum īri</td>
<td>ferendus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 82.

**volō, velle, volui, be willing**

**nōlō, nolle, nolui, be unwilling**

**mālō, mālle, mālui, prefer**
### APPENDIX

#### INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>volō</td>
<td>nōlō</td>
<td>mālō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vis</td>
<td>nōn vis</td>
<td>māvis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vult</td>
<td>nōn vult</td>
<td>māvult</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volumus</td>
<td>nōlumus</td>
<td>mālumus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vultis</td>
<td>nōn vultis</td>
<td>māvultis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volunt</td>
<td>nōlunt</td>
<td>mālunt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>volēbam</td>
<td>nōlēbam</td>
<td>mālēbam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>volam</td>
<td>nōlam</td>
<td>mālam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>volūī</td>
<td>nōlūī</td>
<td>mālūī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>volueram</td>
<td>nōlueram</td>
<td>mālueram</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perf. voluerō</td>
<td>nōluerō</td>
<td>māluerō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>velim</td>
<td>nōlim</td>
<td>mālim</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vellem</td>
<td>nōllem</td>
<td>mālēm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>voluerim</td>
<td>nōluerim</td>
<td>māluerim</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>voluissem</td>
<td>nōluissem</td>
<td>māluissem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>nōli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>nōlitō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nōlle</td>
<td>mālle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōlisse</td>
<td>mālisse</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PARTICIPLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Participle</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nōlēns</td>
<td>nōlēns</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**83. Fīō, be made, be done, become, happen, is the irregular passive of faciō, make.** Note the i before all vowels, except before e in the combination -er.

Principal parts: fīō, fieri, factus sum

#### INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>fīō, fis, fit</td>
<td>fimus, fītis, fiunt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>fīēbam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>fīam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>factus sum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>factus eram</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>fiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perf. factus erō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### APPENDIX

#### IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>fi</em> (<em>fit</em>)</td>
<td><em>fieri</em></td>
<td><em>factus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fieri</em></td>
<td><em>factus esse</em></td>
<td><em>faeri</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>eō</em> (<em>ere, iē, itum, go</em></td>
<td><em>eam</em></td>
<td><em>erem</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>is</em></td>
<td><em>erem</em></td>
<td><em>ierem</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>it</em></td>
<td><em>itam</em></td>
<td><em>ieram</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>imus</em></td>
<td><em>ieram</em></td>
<td><em>iissem or issem</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ītis</em></td>
<td><em>iē</em></td>
<td><em>iērem</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>eunt</em></td>
<td><em>iē</em></td>
<td><em>iērem</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>i</em></td>
<td><em>ire</em></td>
<td><em>iem</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ite</em></td>
<td><em>iem</em></td>
<td><em>ieram</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>itō</em></td>
<td><em>iē</em></td>
<td><em>iō</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>itō</em></td>
<td><em>iē</em></td>
<td><em>iē</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>euntō</em></td>
<td><em>iē</em></td>
<td><em>iē</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>eo</em> (<em>is, it</em></td>
<td><em>eam</em></td>
<td><em>ierem</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>imus</em></td>
<td><em>ierem</em></td>
<td><em>ierem</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ītis</em></td>
<td><em>ierem</em></td>
<td><em>ierem</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>eunt</em></td>
<td><em>ierem</em></td>
<td><em>ierem</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 84. DEFECTIVE VERBS

The most important of these are the perfects *memini*, *I remember*; *ōdī*, *I hate*; and *coepi*, *I have begun*. Notice that *memini* and *ōdī* have the meanings of presents. Their pluperfects and future perfects have the meanings of imperfects and futures.

#### INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>memini</em></td>
<td><em>ōdī</em></td>
<td><em>coepi</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>memineram</em></td>
<td><em>ōderam</em></td>
<td><em>coeperam</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>meminerō</em></td>
<td><em>ōderō</em></td>
<td><em>coeperō</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SUBJUNCTIVE

Perf. meminerim õderim coeperim
Plup. meminissem õdissem coepissem

IMPERATIVE

Sing. mementō
Plur. mementōte

INFINITIVE

Perf. meminisse õdisse coepisse
Fut. õsūrus (esse) coeptūrus (esse)

PARTICIPLE

Per* ōsus coeptus
Fut. ōsūrus coeptūrus

a. Instead of coepī the passive form coeptus sum is regularly used when a passive infinitive depends on it. Example: laudārī coeptus est, he began to be praised.

87. IMPERSONAL VERBS

Impersonal verbs correspond to English impersonals with it. They have no personal subject, but most of them take as subject a substantive clause or sometimes a neuter pronoun. They appear only in the third person singular of the indicative and subjunctive tenses, the present and perfect infinitives, and occasionally in the participles and gerund. They are:

a. Most verbs expressing actions of nature; as pluit, it rains.

b. The following, which are exclusively impersonal: deçet, it becomes; libet, it pleases; licet, it is permitted; miseret, it causes pity; oportet, it is right; paenitet, it repents; piget, it displeases; pudet, it shames; rēfert, it concerns; taeđet, it wearies. All of these except rēfert belong to the second conjugation.

c. Personal verbs used impersonally with a special meaning; as accēdit, it is added, from accēdō, I approach.

d. The passives of most intransitive verbs; as pugnātur, it is fought.
A sentence is a group of words so related as to express a complete thought. It consists of at least two parts — the subject (that of which something is said), and the predicate (that which is said about the subject). These two essential parts may be modified in various ways. A sentence may consist of a single verb, because the subject is implied in its ending.

Sentences are declarative, interrogative, imperative, or exclamatory as in English.

A Simple Sentence has one subject and one predicate. Example: Caesar vēnit, Caesar came.

A Compound Sentence consists of two or more simple sentences of equal value. These sentences are called coordinate clauses, and are connected by coordinating conjunctions; i.e., by conjunctions with such meanings as and, but, for, or. Example: Caesar vēnit et Gallī fūgērunt, Caesar came and the Gauls fled.

A Complex Sentence consists of a simple sentence (called a principal clause), modified by one or more dependent sentences (called subordinate or dependent clauses). The clauses are connected by relative pronouns or by subordinating conjunctions; i.e., by conjunctions with such meanings as in order that, so that, if, because, although, when, after, before. Example: ubi Caesar vēnit, Gallī fūgērunt, when Caesar came, the Gauls fled.

THE FUNCTION OF CASES

The cases help to show in what relation to the rest of a sentence any given substantive stands. This is shown in English almost entirely by the order of words or by the use of prepositions; yet the so-called possessive case illustrates the use of the Latin cases, for the ending 's in the soldier's arms indicates that soldier modifies arms and that the soldier is the possessor of the arms. But in the English sentences the soldier (subject) fights, he kills the soldier (direct object), he gives the soldier (indirect object) a sword, only the order of words shows the relation of the word to the rest of the sentence; while in Latin miles would be used in the first sentence, militem in the second, and militi in the third.
93. But each of the cases, except the nominative and the vocative, expresses more than one thing. Consequently one must know just what uses each case can have, and must then determine which one of these uses it has in the sentence in which it occurs. This can be determined sometimes by the meaning of the word itself, sometimes by the obvious meaning of the sentence, sometimes by the fact that another word needs a certain case to satisfy its meaning and that case appears but once in the sentence. Examples: the accusative may express duration of time, but *militem, a soldier*, could not be used in this sense, while *multōs annōs, many years*, is quite probably so used. *Dicit pilum militem vulnerāvisse* might mean either *he says that a javelin wounded the soldier*, or *a soldier wounded the javelin*, but the latter makes no sense. *Persuāsit, he persuaded*, needs a dative to express the person persuaded, and if there is but one dative in the sentence its use is evident.

94. For further clearness many relations are expressed in Latin by prepositions, though not so many as in English. Examples: *ā milite interfectus est, he was killed by a soldier; cum milite vēnit, he came in company with a soldier.*

95. AGREEMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES

**RULE:** A noun which explains another noun and means the same person or thing is put in the same case.

Compare 97. Such a noun may be either a predicate noun or an appositive.

a. **RULE:** A predicate noun is connected with the subject by *sum* or a verb of similar meaning.

Such verbs are those meaning *appear, become, seem, be called, be chosen, be regarded*, and the like. Examples: *Pīsō fuit cōnsul, Piso was consul; Pīsō factus est cōnsul, Piso became consul; Pīsō appellantūs est cōnsul, Piso was called consul.* For the predicate accusative with verbs of calling, etc., see 126.

b. **RULE:** An appositive is set beside the noun which it explains, without a connecting verb.

Examples: *Pīsō, cōnsul, militē Pīsōni gladium dedit. Piso, the consul, gave a sword to Piso, the soldier.*
96. NOMINATIVE

**RULE:** The nominative is used as the subject of a finite verb (i.e., the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative modes).

**EXAMPLE:** Gallia est divisa (I, 1, 1), Gaul is divided.

GENITIVE

A. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS

97. **GENERAL RULE:** A noun which explains or limits another noun and does not mean the same person or thing (compare 95) is put in the genitive.

The relation between the two nouns is usually expressed in English by *of*, but often by *for* or by other prepositions. These combinations of nouns are divided, according to their meanings into the groups given in 98-105.

A genitive may be either (a) attributive, depending directly upon another noun; as domus Caesaris, Caesar's house; or (b) predicative, connected by *sum* or a verb of similar meaning; as domus est Caesaris, the house is Caesar's.

a. Appositional Genitive. [But the genitive is sometimes used instead of an appositive; i.e., it sometimes means the same person or thing as the noun on which it depends. Example: tuôrum comitum sentiña (Cic. Cat. I, 12), that refuse, your comrades.

ATTRIBUTIVE

98. Subjective and Objective Genitives. These depend on nouns which have corresponding verbal ideas, as amor, love, amô, I love. The thought expressed by the noun and limiting genitive can be expanded into a sentence. If the genitive then becomes the subject it is a subjective genitive; if it becomes the object it is an objective genitive. Examples: amor patris, the love of the father, may imply that the father loves, (subjective), or that some one loves his father (objective); occâsum sōlis (I, 1, 22), the setting of the sun (subjective); régni cupiditâte (I, 2, 2), by desire for power (objective).

99. Possessive Genitive.

**RULE:** The genitive may express the possessor.

The possessive pronouns are regularly used instead of the possessive genitive of personal pronouns. Examples: finibus Belgârum (I, 1, 16), by the territory of the Belgae; finibus vestris, by your territory.
a. A genitive or possessive pronoun must precede causā or grātiā, for the sake of. Examples: huius potentiae causā (I, 18, 14), for the sake of this power; meā causā, for my sake.

100. Descriptive Genitive.

RULE: The genitive modified by an adjective may describe a person or thing by naming some quality.

Compare the descriptive ablative (141). This genitive is regularly used to express measure. Examples: huiusce modī senātūs cōnsultum (Cic. Cat. I, 4), a decree of this kind; trium mēnsium molīta cībāria (I, 5, 7), provisions for three months.

101. Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole).

RULE: The genitive may express the whole of which a part is mentioned.

This genitive may depend on any substantive, adjective, pronoun, or adverb which implies a part of a whole. Examples: eōrum ūna pars (I, 1, 15), one part of them; hōrum omnium fortissimī (I, 1, 6), the bravest of all these; ubinam gentium sumus (Cic. Cat. I, 9), where in (not of) the world are we?

a. Note especially the genitive of a noun, or of the neuter singular of a second declension adjective used substantively, depending on a neuter singular adjective or pronoun or on satis used substantively. Examples: quantum bonī (I, 40, 17), how much (of) good; satis causae (I, 19, 6), sufficient (of) reason.

b. In place of this genitive the ablative with dē or ex is often used, especially with cardinal numerals and with quidam. Example: ūnus ē filiīs captus est (I, 26, 12), one of his sons was captured.

c. English often uses of in apparently similar phrases when there is really no partitive idea. Latin does not then use the genitive. Example: ĕi omnēs (I, 1, 3), all of these.

102. Genitive of Material.

RULE: The genitive may express the material of which a thing is composed.

Example: aciēm legiōnūm quattuor (I, 24, 3), a battle line (consisting) of four legions.
APPENDIX

Predicative

103. Possessive Genitive. The possessive genitive (99) is often used predicatively. Note especially such phrases as est hominis, it is the part (duty, characteristic) of a man. Example: est hoc Gallicae consuetudinis (IV, 5, 4), this is a characteristic of the Gallic customs.

104. Descriptive Genitive. The descriptive genitive (100) is often used predicatively. Example: senatus consultum est huiusce modi, the decree is of this kind.

105. The Genitive of Value. With sum and verbs of similar meaning, and with verbs of valuing, indefinite value is expressed by the genitive. Compare the ablative of price (147). The words commonly so used are magni, parvi, tantí, quanti, plúris, minórís. Example: tantí eius grátiam esse ostendit (I, 20, 14), he assured him that his friendship was of such value.

B. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

106. RULE: Many adjectives take a genitive to complete their meaning. They are:

a. Regularly, adjectives with such meanings as conscious (of), desirous (of), mindful (of), sharing (in), skilled (in), and their opposites, and plenus, full (of). Examples: bellandi cupidí (I, 2, 13), desirous of fighting; reí militáris perítissimus (I, 21, 9), most skilled in military science.

b. Sometimes with the genitive, sometimes with the dative (122), similis, like; dissimilis, unlike. The genitive is more common of living objects, and regular of personal pronouns. Example: túi similis (Cic. Cat. I, 5), like you; véri simile (III, 13, 11), probable (like the truth).

c. Occasionally other adjectives. Example: locum medium utrúsque (I, 34, 2), a place midway between them.

C. GENITIVE WITH VERBS

107. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting.

RULE: Memini, bear in mind, reminíscor, remember, and oblívíscor, forget, govern either the genitive or the accusative.

The genitive is regular of persons, the accusative of neuter pronouns. Examples: reminíscerétur veteris incommodi (I, 13, 11), he should remember the former disaster; veteris contumélieae oblívíscí (I, 14, 7), to forget the former insult.

**RULE:** Verbs of accusing, acquitting, convicting, and condemning take a genitive of the charge.

The penalty is expressed by the ablative. Example: *mē inertiae damnō* (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *I pronounce myself guilty of inactivity.*


**RULE:** The impersonal verbs miseret, pity, paenitet, repent, piget, dislike, pudet, be ashamed, taedet, be disgusted, take the genitive of the person or thing which causes the feeling, and the accusative of the person who has the feeling.

The personal verb misereor, pity, also takes the genitive. Examples: *mē meorum factūrum numquam paenitēbit* (Cic. Cat. IV, 20), *I shall never repent of my deeds; mē eius miseret or eius misereor, I pity him.*

110. Interest and Réfert.

**RULE:** *The impersonal verbs* interest and réfert, *it concerns,* *it is to the interest of,* *take the genitive of the person concerned.*

But if the person is expressed in English by a personal pronoun, interest is used with the ablative singular feminine of a possessive pronoun. Examples: *rei publicae intersit* (II, 5, 5), *it is to the interest of the state; meā interest, it is to my interest.*

111. **RULE:** Potior occasionally governs the genitive.

For potior with the ablative see 145. Example: *Galliae potīrī* (I, 3, 22), *to become masters of Gaul.*

**THE DATIVE**

112. The dative expresses that *to* or *for* which anything is or is done. It may depend on a verb or an adjective or, very rarely, a noun; or it may modify a whole sentence without depending on any one word.

113. Indirect Object.

**GENERAL RULE:** *The dative denotes the person or thing indirectly affected by the action of a verb.*

The indirect object depends closely on the verb, while the dative of reference (120) modifies the whole clause.

114. Indirect Object with Transitive Verbs.

**RULE:** *Many verbs govern an indirect object in addition to a direct object.*
These are especially verbs of giving and saying. The dative is usually translated by to, less often by for. For the indirect object with transitive verbs compounded with a preposition see 116. Example: ei filiam dat (I, 3, 15), he gives (to) him his daughter.

a. Dōnō, give, present, and a few other verbs take either the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing, or the accusative of the person and the ablative of the thing. Examples: ei librum dōnō, I give (to) him a book; eum librō dōnō, I present him with a book.

b. Some verbs, instead of admitting both the accusative and the dative, admit either, but with a different meaning. Especially cōnsulō, consult or consult for, and metuō, fear or fear for. Examples: si mé cōnsulis (Cic. Cat I, 13), if you consult me (ask my advice); cōnsulite vō-bīs (Cic. Cat. IV, 3), consult for yourselves (for your own interests).

c. This dative is retained with the passive voice. Example: ei filia datur, his daughter is given to him.

115. Indirect Object with Intransitive Verbs. The dative is used with all intransitive verbs whose meaning permits. Many of these verbs seem to be transitive in English, so that the indirect object must be translated by the English direct object.

RULE: The dative (usually of the person) is used with many verbs meaning benefit or injure, command or obey, please or displease, serve or resist, trust or distrust, believe, envy, favor, pardon, persuade, spare, threaten, and the like.

Examples: cīvitāti persuāsit (I, 2, 3), he persuaded the state; novīs rēbus studēbat (I, 9, 8), he was anxious for a revolution; Allobrogibus imperāvit (I, 28, 7), he commanded the Allobroges.

a. The dative is used with some phrases of similar meanings, as audīens sum, obey, and fidem habēre, trust. Example: cuī fidem habēbat (I, 19, 15), whom he trusted.

b. Many of these verbs which are ordinarily intransitive occasionally take an accusative of the thing, usually a neuter pronoun. Examples: prōvinciāe militum numerum imperat (I, 7, 4), he levies a number of soldiers on the province; id iīs persuāsit (I, 2, 6), he persuaded them to this (literally, he persuaded this to them).

c. Not all verbs with the meanings given above are intransitive. The most important exceptions are the verbs dēlectō, delight, iubēō
command, iuvō, please, vetō, forbid, which are transitive and therefore take the accusative (124). Example: Labiēnum iubet (I, 21, 5), he commands Labienus.

d. Since only the direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive (124, b), no intransitive verb can have a personal subject in the passive. The verbs of 115 can be used in the passive only impersonally, and the dative is retained, though it is usually translated as a subject. Examples: Caesarī persuādeō, I persuade Caesar, becomes Caesarī a mé persuādētur, Caesar is persuaded by me (literally, it is persuaded to Caesar).

116. The Indirect Object with Compound Verbs. I. Certain prepositions usually give to verbs with which they are compounded a meaning which, in Latin idiom, requires the dative. If the simple verb is transitive the compound governs a direct object in addition to the indirect. The dative is variously translated with these verbs: when it is translated by from, it is sometimes called the dative of separation.

RULE: The dative is required with many compounds of ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super; and with some compounds of ab, circum, and ex.

Examples: cum omnibus praestārent (I, 2, 5), since they excelled all; finitīmis bellum inferre (I, 2, 12), to make war upon their neighbors; mūnītiōnī Labiēnum præficit (I, 10, 7), he puts Labienus in command of the works; scūtō mīlitī dētractō (II, 25, 13), having snatched a shield from a soldier.

II. RULE: The dative is used with compounds of satis and bene.

Example: si Haeduis satisfaciant (I, 14, 19), if they should make restitution to the Haedui.

a. The meaning of the compound does not always permit the dative. Among the most important exceptions are the transitive verbs, aggressor, attack; incendō, burn; interficiō, kill; oppuṅnō, assault; but there are many others. Example: eōs aggressus (I, 12, 9), having attacked (or attacking) them.

b. Very often with these compounds the preposition is repeated, or some other preposition is used, governing its proper case, instead of the dative. So especially if place is designated, or if motion is expressed. Example: illum in equum intulit (VI, 30, 15), he put him on a horse.

c. The dative is retained with the passive. Example: mūnītiōnī Labiēnus præficitur, Labienus is put in command of the works.
117. Dative of Possessor.

**RULE:** The dative is used in the predicate with *sum* to denote the possessor.

It may be translated as a nominative with the verb *have*. Examples: *mihi est liber, I have a book* (literally a book is to me); *demonstrant sibi nihil esse* (I, 11, 12), they declared that they had nothing (lit. there was nothing to them).

118. Dative of the Agent.

**RULE:** The dative is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation (76) to express the agent.

Compare the ablative of the agent (137), which is used with the other forms of the passive. Example: *nón expectandum sibi statuit* (Caes. I, 11, 13), he decided that he must not wait (lit. that it must not be waited by him).

a. The ablative of the agent (137) is often used with the passive periphrastic, especially if the dative would be ambiguous. Example: *civitāti ā tē persuādandum est*, the state must be persuaded by you.

119. Dative of Purpose.

**RULE:** The dative may express purpose or tendency.

This dative is especially common with *sum*. It is often found in connection with another dative (indirect object, dative of reference, dative of the possessor). Examples: *quem auxiliō Caesarī miserant* (I, 18, 27), whom they had sent to aid Caesar, lit. whom they had sent for an aid to Caesar; *qui novissimis praevidiō erant* (I, 25, 14), who were guarding the rear, lit. who were for a guard to the rear.

120. Dative of Reference.

**RULE:** The dative may name the person with reference to whom the statement is made.

This dative does not depend on any one word (compare 113) but loosely modifies the whole predicate. It often takes the place of a genitive modifying a noun. Examples: *cibāria sibi quemque efferre iubent* (I, 5, 8), they order each one to carry food for himself; *sēsē Caesarī ad pedēs prōiecērunt* (I, 31, 4), they cast themselves at Caesar’s feet.
121. Ethical Dative. The ethical dative is a dative of reference with so weak a meaning as to be unnecessary to the sense. It designates the person to whom the thought is of interest, and usually shows some emotion. Its use is confined to the personal pronouns. Example:

Tongilium mihi éduxit (Cic. Cat. II, 4), he took me out Tongilius, he took out my Tongilius, or simply he took out Tongilius.

122. Dative with Adjectives.

**RULE:** Adjectives meaning friendly or unfriendly, like or unlike, useful or useless, equal, fit, near, suitable, govern the dative.

Examples: plébi acceptus (I, 3, 14), acceptable (pleasing) to the people; proximi sunt Germánis (I, 1, 9), they are nearest to the Germans; castrís idóneum locum (VI, 10, 5), a place suitable for a camp.

a. With some of these adjectives a preposition with its proper case is often used instead of a dative. Example: ad amicitiam idóneus, suitable for friendship.

b. The adjectives proper and proximus and the adverbs proprius and proxime sometimes govern the accusative, like the preposition prope. Example: proximi Rhenum (I, 54, 3), nearest the Rhine.

c. For similis and dissimilis see 106, b.

**ACCUSATIVE**

123. Subject of Infinitive.

**RULE:** The accusative is used as the subject of the infinitive.

Example: certior factus est Helvētiōs trādūxisse (I, 12, 5), he was informed that the Helvetii had led across.

124. Direct Object.

**RULE:** The accusative is used with transitive verbs to express the direct object.

The direct object may be either (a) the person or thing directly affected by the action of the verb, as puerum laudat, he praises the boy; or (b) the thing produced by the action of the verb, as coniūrātiōnem fēcit, he made a conspiracy.

a. The direct object may be a substantive clause (228, 229, 262, 277).

b. The direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive. Examples: puer laudātur, the boy is praised; coniūrātiō facta est, a conspiracy was made.
c. Many compounds of intransitive verbs with prepositions, especially ad, circum, in, per, praeter, sub, trans, have transitive meanings. Example: ire, to go, intransitive; but flūmen transire, to cross (go across) the river.

d. Many verbs which are transitive in English are intransitive in Latin; see especially 115.

THREE CLASSES OF VERBS GOVERNING TWO ACCUSATIVES (125-127).

125. Two Objects. A few verbs take two objects, one of the person, one of the thing.

a. RULE: Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, (also célō, I conceal) have a direct object of the thing, and may have another of the person.

But with verbs of asking and demanding the person is usually expressed by the ablative with ab. Examples: Haeduós frumentum flāgitāre (I, 16, 1), he kept asking the Haedui for the grain; eadem ab aliis quae rīt (I, 18, 5), he asked the same question of others.

b. RULE: Moneō, I warn, advise, and a few other verbs may take an accusative of the person and the neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective of the thing.

The pronoun is an inner accusative (128, a). Examples: eōs hoc moneō (Cic. Cat. II, 20), I give them this advice; sī quid ille sē velit (I, 34, 6), if he wanted anything of him.

c. With the passive of these verbs the accusative of the person becomes the subject, and the accusative of the thing is retained. Example: Haedui frumentum flāgitābantur, the Haedui were asked for the grain; (ii) hoc momentur, they are given this advice.

126. Object and Predicate Accusative.

RULE: Verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing, and the like, take a direct object and a predicate accusative, both referring to the same person or thing.

The predicate accusative may be either a noun or an adjective. Examples: quem régem cōnstituērat (IV, 21, 14), whom he had appointed king; Caesarem certīōrem fēcit, he informed Caesar (made Caesar more certain).
a. With the passive of these verbs the direct object becomes the subject, and the predicate accusative becomes the predicate nominative (95, a). Examples: qui rex constitutus erat, who had been appointed king; Caesar certior factus est (I, 12, 5), Caesar was informed (made more certain).

127. Two Objects with Compounds.

**Rule:** Transitive verbs compounded with trans may take one object depending on the verb, another depending on the preposition.

Example: tres partes flumen traduxerunt (cf. I, 12, 6), they led three parts across the river.

a. With the passive of these verbs the object of the verb becomes the subject, the object of the preposition is retained. Example: tres partes flumen tráductae sunt, three parts were led across the river.

128. Cognate Accusative.

**Rule:** An intransitive verb may take an accusative of a noun of kindred meaning, usually modified by an adjective or genitive.

Examples: eam vitam vivere, to live that life; tridui viam prócédere (I, 38), to advance a three days' march.

a. A neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective is often used in a similar way. This is sometimes called an inner accusative. Examples: id iis persuásit (I, 2, 3), he persuaded them of this (lit. he persuaded this to them); multum posse, to have much power.

b. Adverbial Accusative. A few accusatives are used adverbially. In some cases it is impossible to decide whether an accusative should be classed here or under a. The most common adverbial accusatives are multum, much, plús, more, plúrimum, most, plérumque, for the most part, and nihil, not at all. Here belong also id temporis (Cic. Cat. I, 10), at that time, and maximam partem (IV, 1, 14), for the most part. Example: multum sunt in vēñātiōne (IV, 1, 15), they engage much in hunting.

129. Accusative in Exclamations.

**Rule:** An accusative is sometimes used as an exclamation.

Example: O fortūnātam rem pūblīcam (Cic. Cat. II, 7), Oh, fortunate state! The nominative and vocative are less often used in the same way.
130. Accusative of Time and Space.

**RULE:** The accusative is used to express duration of time and extent of space.

The noun must be one meaning time or distance, as, diēs, day; pēs, foot. Compare 152 and 148. Examples: régnum multōs annōs obtinuerat (I, 3, 10), he had held the royal power many years; milia passuum ducenta quadrāgintā patēbant (I, 2, 16), extended two hundred and forty miles.

131. Place to Which.

**RULE:** Place to which is regularly expressed by the accusative with ad or in, but names of towns and domus and rūs omit the preposition.

Compare 134, a, and 151. Examples: ad iūdicum coegit (I, 4, 14), he brought to the trial; in agrum Nōricum trānsierant (I, 5, 11), they had crossed over into the Noreian territory; sē Massiliam cōnferet (Cic. Cat. II, 14), he will go to Marseilles; domum reditiōnis (I, 5, 6), of a return home.

a. Ad is, however, sometimes used in the sense of towards (not to), or in the neighborhood of. Example: ad Genavam pervenit (I, 7, 4), he reached the neighborhood of Geneva.

132. VOCATIVE

The name of the person addressed is put in the vocative. Example: dēsilite, commilitōnēs (IV, 25, 11), jump down, comrades.

133. ABLATIVE

The language from which Latin developed had two more cases than Latin has,—the instrumental and the locative. The original ablative meant separation (from), the instrumental meant association or instrument (with or by), and the locative meant place where (in). The forms of these three cases united in the Latin ablative; so that this one case has meanings which belonged to three separate cases. This fact accounts for the many and widely differing uses which the case has.

134. Ablative of Separation.

**RULE:** Separation is usually expressed by the ablative, with or without ab, dē, or ex.
With some verbs both constructions are used; the individual usage of others must be noted. For the so-called dative of separation see 116, 1. Examples: suís finibus eós prohibent (I, 1, 13), they repel them from their own territory; quae hostem à pugnā prohibērēnt (IV, 34, 9), which kept the enemy from battle; à Bibracte aberat (I, 23, 2), he was distant from Bibracte.

a. Place from which: with verbs expressing motion:—

RULE: Place from which is expressed by the ablative with ab, dē, or ex, but names of towns and domus and rūs omit the preposition.

Compare 131 and 151. Examples: ut dē finibus suís exīrent (I, 2, 4), to go out from their territory; quī ex prōvīnciā convēnerant (I, 8, 2), who had gathered from the province; Rōmā profugērunt (Cic. Cat. I, 7), they fled from Rome; domō exīre (I, 6, 1), to go out from home.

Ab is, however, used with names of towns to express from the neighborhood of.

b. RULE: With verbs and adjectives of depriving, freeing, being without, and the like, the ablative without a preposition is generally used.

Examples: magnō mē metū liberābis (Cic. Cat. I, 10), you will free me of great fear; proeliō abstinēbat (I, 22, 11), refused battle (literally refrained from battle).

135. Ablative of Source.

RULE: The ablative, usually without a preposition, is used with the participles nātus and ortus, to express parentage or rank.

Examples: amplissimō genere nātus (IV, 12, 13), born of the highest rank; sorōrem ex mātre (nātam) (I, 18, 16), his sister on his mother's side.


RULE: The material of which anything is made is expressed by the ablative with ex, less often dē.

Example: nāvēs factae ex rōbore (III, 13, 5), the ships were made of oak.

137. Ablative of Agent.

RULE: The agent of the passive voice is expressed by the ablative with ab.
The agent is the *person* who performs the act. Compare the ablative of means (143), and the dative of agent (118). Example: *exercitum ab Helvētiis pulsum* (I, 7, 13), *that his army had been routed by the Helvetii*.

138. Ablative of Cause.

**RULE:** Cause is expressed by the ablative, generally without a preposition.

Examples: *grātiā et largītīone* (I, 9, 5), *because of his popularity and lavish giving*; *quod suā victōriā glōriārentur* (I, 14, 11), *that they boasted (because) of their victory*.

*a.* Cause is more frequently expressed by *causā* and the genitive (99, a); by the accusative with *ob, per, or propter*; and by *dē or ex* with the ablative. Examples: *propter angustiās* (I, 9, 2), *because of its narrowness*; *quā dē causā* (I, 1, 11), *and for this reason*.

139. Ablative of Comparison.

**RULE:** With comparatives, “than” may be expressed by the ablative.

Examples: *luce sunt clāriōra tua cōnsilia* (Cic. Cat. I, 6), *your plans are clearer than day*; *nōn amplius quinīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum* (I, 15, 14), *not more than five or six miles* (compare b). This is not to be confused with the ablative of measure of difference (148).

*a.* When *quam* is used for *than*, the two nouns compared are in the same case. The ablative is generally used only when the first noun is nominative or accusative, and when the sentence is negatived.

*b.* *Plus, minus, amplius, and longius* are often used instead of *plus quam*, etc. Example: *quae amplius octingentae ūnō erant visae tempore* (V, 8, 19), *of which more than 800 had been in sight at one time*.

140. Ablative of Accompaniment.

**RULE:** Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with *cum*.

Example: *ut cum omnibus cōpiis exirent* (I, 2, 4), *to go out with all their troops*.

In military phrases *cum* is sometimes omitted.

Example: *Caesar subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis* (II, 19, 1), *Caesar followed with all his troops*.
141. Descriptive Ablative.

**RULE:** The ablative modified by an adjective may describe a person or thing by naming some quality.

It may be used either attributively or predicatively. Compare the descriptive genitive (100). Examples: homines inimīcō animō (I, 7, 15), men of unfriendly disposition; nōndum bonō animō vidērentur (I, 6, 11), they did not yet seem (to be) well disposed (of a good spirit).

142. Ablative of Manner.

**RULE:** Manner is expressed by the ablative, usually with either cum or a modifying adjective, rarely with both.

Examples: pars cum cruciātū necābatur (V, 45, 5), some were killed with torture; magnīs itineribus (I, 10, 8), by forced marches.

a. Ablative of Accordance.

**RULE:** In some common phrases the ablative means in accordance with.

These are especially the following nouns, modified by either an adjective or a genitive,—cōnsuētūdine, iūre, iussū (iniussū), lēge, mōribus, sententia, sponte, voluntāte. Examples: iniussū suō (I, 19, 4), without his orders; mōribus suīs (I, 4, 1), in accordance with their customs; suā voluntāte (I, 20, 11), in accordance with his wish.

b. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.

**RULE:** Sometimes the ablative expresses situation or an attendant circumstance.

Usually it is impossible to distinguish clearly such an ablative from the ordinary ablative of manner. Examples: imperiō populi Rōmānī (I, 18, 22), under the sovereignty of the Roman people; intervāllō pedum duōrum iungēbat (IV, 17, 9), he joined at a distance apart of two feet.

143. Ablative of Means.

**RULE:** The means or instrument by which a thing is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Compare the ablative of the agent (137). Example: rēgni cupiditāte inductus (I, 2, 2), influenced by the desire for royal power.
a. Notice the ablative with the following words,—verbs and adjectives of filling (except plēnus, ridō, confidō, trust in; nitor, rely upon; lcessō (proeliō), provoke (to battle); assuēfactus, assuētus, accustomed to; frētus, relying upon. Examples: nātūrā locī confidēbant (III, 9, 12), they trusted in the nature of the country; nūllō officiō assuēfacti (IV, 1, 17), accustomed to no obedience.

144. Ablative of the Way. *by which*

**RULE:** The road or way by which a person or thing goes is expressed by the ablative of means.

Examples: frumentō quod flūmine Arāri nāvibus subvexerat (I, 16, 5), the grain which he had brought up (by way of) the Saone; eōdem itinere contendit (I, 21, 8), he advanced by the same road.

145. Ablative with Special Deponent Verbs. The ablative is used with ĕtor, use, fruor, enjoy, fungor, perform, fulfill, potior, get possession of, vēscor, eat, and their compounds.

This is an ablative of means, but is to be translated by a direct object. Examples: eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō (I, 5, 9), adopting (having used) the same plan; imperiō potiri (I, 2, 6), to get possession of the government.

146. Ablative with opus est.

**RULE:** The ablative of means is used with opus est and ūsus est, meaning there is need of.

Example: Caesāri multis auxiliis opus est, Caesar needs many auxiliaries.

a. But if the thing needed is expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective it may be used as the subject, with opus as predicate noun. Example: si quid opus esset (I, 34, 5), if he needed anything.

b. Sometimes the ablative neuter of the perfect passive participle is used with opus est. Example: si opus factō esset (I, 42, 19), if there should be need of action.

147. Ablative of Price.

**RULE:** With verbs of buying, selling, and the like, price is expressed by the ablative.

Compare the genitive of value, 105. Example: parvō pretiō redempta (I, 18, 9), bought up at a low price.

**RULE:** The ablative is used with comparatives and words of similar meaning to express the degree of difference.

Compare 139. Examples: nihilo minus (I, 5, 1), lit. less by nothing, = nevertheless; paucis ante diēbus, (I, 18, 25), a few days before (lit. before by a few days).

a. Eō . . . quō, in this construction, may be translated the . . . the. Example: eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō accidissent (I, 14, 3), lit. he endured them with more anger by that amount by which they had happened less deservedly, = he was the more angry the less deservedly they had happened.

149. Ablative of Specification.

**RULE:** The ablative is used to express that in respect to which a statement is true.

Examples: linguā inter sē differunt (I, 1, 3), they differ in language; maior nātū, older (greater in birth).

a. The ablative is used with dignus, worthy, and indignus, unworthy. Example: ipsis indignum (V, 35, 11), unworthy of themselves.

150. Ablative Absolute.

**RULE:** A noun and a participle in the ablative may modify a sentence as a subordinate clause would.

**RULE:** Two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, may stand in the ablative absolute when the English would connect them by the word "being."

The construction is called absolute because it does not depend syntactically on anything in the sentence. It is used much more frequently than the nominative absolute in English; hence it should be translated in some other way. It is always possible to translate by a subordinate clause, but sometimes other translations are more convenient. Notice the translations of the following examples: (translated by active past participle) remōtis equis proelium commisit (I, 25, 2), having sent the horses away, he began the battle; (translated by prepositional phrase) M Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus (I, 2, 2), in the consulship of, etc.; eō déprecatōre (I, 9, 4), by his mediation; (translated by subordinate clause) omnibus rēbus comparātīs diēm dīcunt (I, 6, 13);
when everything was ready they set a day; Séquanis invitis ire non poten-
	rant (I, 9, 1), if the Sequani should refuse they could not go; monte occu-
pâtō nostrōs exspectābat (I, 22, 11), though he had occupied the mountain

to wait for our men; (translated by coordinate clause) locīs superiōri-
bus occupātīs . . . . conantur (I, 10, 12), they occupied advantageous posi-
tions and tried, etc.

151. Place in Which.

RULE: Place in which is regularly expressed by the ablative with in.

Compare 131 and 134, a. Example: in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt
(I, 1, 13), they fight in their territory.

a. RULE: Names of towns and small islands stand in the locative
(15, b; 16, b) if they are singular nouns of the first and second declensions;
otherwise in the ablative without a preposition.

The locatives domī, at home, and rūrī, in the country, are also in regu-
lar use. Examples: Samarobrīvae (V, 24, 1), at Samarobriva; domī
largiter posse (I, 18, 13), he had great influence at home.

b. RULE: No preposition is regularly used with locī, locīs, parte,
partibus when accompanied by an adjective or an equivalent genitive; or
with any noun modified by tōtus.

Examples: nōn nūllīs locīs trānsītur (I, 6, 8), is crossed in several
places; vulgō tōtīs castrīs (I, 39, 17), everywhere throughout the entire
camp.

c. Latin often uses some other construction where the English would
lead one to expect the construction of place in which. So ab and ex
are used to express position; and the ablative of means is often used in-
stead of the ablative with in if the construction is at all appropriate.
Examples: ūnā ex parte (I, 2, 7), on one side; cotidiānīs proeliīs conten-
dunt (I, 1, 12), they contend in (by means of) daily battles; memoriā tenē-
bat (I, 7, 12), he held in (by means of) memory.

152. Ablative of Time.

RULE: Time at or within which is expressed by the ablative without a
preposition.

Compare the accusative of time (130). Examples: eō tempore (I,
3, 14), at that time; id quod ipsī diēbus vigintī aegerrimē cōnfēcerant (I,
13, 4), a thing which they had barely accomplished in(within) twenty days.

a. The ablative rarely denotes duration of time. Example: eā tōtā
nocte iērunt (I, 26, 13), they marched during that whole night.
CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

153. Ablative. The following prepositions govern the ablative: ab, absque, cōram, cum, dē, ex, prae, prō, sine, tenus.

a. The forms ab and ex must be used before words beginning with a vowel or h. It is always safe to use ā and ē before words beginning with a consonant, though ab and ex are often found.

b. Cum is enclitic with the personal and reflexive pronouns, and usually with the relative and interrogative.

154. Accusative or Ablative. In and sub with the accusative imply motion from outside into and under, respectively. Subter and super sometimes govern the ablative.

155. Accusative. All other prepositions govern the accusative.

156. PREDICATE AND ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES

A predicate adjective is connected with its noun by some part of the verb sum or a verb of similar meaning (see 95, a); as, flūmen est lātum, the river is wide. An attributive adjective modifies its noun without such a connecting verb; as, flūmen lātum, the wide river.

157. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

RULE: Adjectives (including participles and adjective pronouns) agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

Examples: homō bonus, a good man; mulierē bonae, to a good woman; bellōrum magnōrum, of great wars.

a. An adjective which belongs in sense to two or more nouns,—

1. If attributive, regularly agrees with the nearest noun. Examples: vir bonus et mulier, a good man and woman; bella et victōriae magnae, great wars and victories.

2. If predicative, regularly agrees with all the nouns, and must, therefore, be plural. If the nouns are of the same gender the adjective usually takes that gender; otherwise it is neuter unless one or more of the nouns denote things with life, when the adjective is usually masculine rather than feminine, feminine rather than neuter. But the adjective may be neuter under almost any circumstances. Examples: hominēs et mōrēs sunt bonī, the men and their characters are good; hominēs et arma sunt magni, the men and their arms are large; montēs et flūmina sunt magna, the mountains and rivers are large.
APPENDIX

158. ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY

Adjectives are rarely used as substantives in the singular, more commonly in the plural. The masculine is used in all cases in the sense of man or men, and the feminine in the sense of woman or women. The neuter is used in the sense of thing or things, and commonly only in the nominative and accusative because they are the only cases in which masculine and neuter forms can be distinguished. But the genitive singular neuter is common as the partitive genitive (101, a).

Examples: multī, many men; multōrum, of many men; multae, many women; multārum, of many women; multa, many things; multārum rērum, of many things.

159. ADJECTIVES FOR ADVERBS

Some adjectives are commonly used where the English idiom suggests the use of adverbs, chiefly when they modify the subject or object. Examples: invitus vēnit, lit. he came unwilling, = he came unwillingly or he was unwilling to come; prīmus vēnit, lit. he the first came, = he came first, or he was the first to come.

160. ADJECTIVES WITH PARTITIVE MEANING

Some adjectives mean only a part of an object. The most common of these are, ìmus, ìfimus, the bottom of; medius, the middle of; summus, the top of; prīmus, the first part of; extrēmus, the last part of; reliquus, the rest of. Examples: in colle mediō (I, 24, 3), on the middle of (half way up) the slope; summus mōns (I, 22, 1), the top of the mountain; prīmā nocte (I, 27, 12), in the first part of the night; multō diē, late in the day.

161. COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

Comparatives and superlatives of both adjectives and adverbs are usually to be translated by the corresponding English forms; but the comparative is sometimes to be translated by quite, rather, somewhat, or too, the superlative by very. Examples: diūtūrnīōrem impūnitātem (I, 14, 15), quite long immunity; cupidius însecūtī (I, 15, 5), following too eagerly; monte Iūrā altissimō (I, 2, 9), by the very high mountain Jura.

a. The superlative is often strengthened by quam, with or without a form of possum. Examples: quam maximum numerum (I, 3, 3), quam maximum potest numerum (I, 7, 4), as great a number as possible, or the greatest possible number.
PERSONAL PRONOUNS

A personal pronoun is rarely used as the subject of a finite verb except for emphasis or contrast. Example: ego maneō, tū abis, I remain, you go.

a. The plural of the first person is more often used for the singular than in English. The plural of the second person is not used for the singular, as is done in English. Example: uti supra dēmonstrāvimus (II, 1, 1), as I (lit. we) have said before.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

163. GENERAL RULE: Reflexive pronouns refer to the subject of the clause or sentence in which they stand.

They correspond to myself, himself, etc., in such sentences as I praise myself, he praises himself. This use of myself, etc., must not be confused with the use in such sentences as I myself praise him, where myself emphasizes I and is in apposition with it. The latter use corresponds to the Latin intensive pronoun (172). The reflexive of the third person has two uses.

164. The Direct Reflexive.

RULE: Sui and suus are used in every kind of sentence or clause to refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand.

Example: eum videō qui sē laudat, I see the man who praises himself.

165. The Indirect Reflexive.

RULE: In a subordinate clause which expresses the thought of the principal subject sui and suus are also used to refer to the principal subject instead of the subject of the clause in which they stand.

This is especially important in indirect discourse (271) where the whole indirect discourse expresses the thought of the speaker, and consequently every pronoun referring to the speaker is regularly some form of sui or suus. Example: Caesar dicit mé sē laudāvisse, Caesar says that I praised him (Caesar).

166. The Reciprocal Expression. The reflexive pronouns are used with inter to express the reciprocal idea, one another, each other. Examples: inter nōs laudāmus, we praise one another or each other; obsidēs uti inter sēsē dēnt (I, 9, 10), that they give hostages to each other.
POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

167. The possessive pronouns (or adjectives) are rarely expressed except for clearness or contrast. Example: *Caesar exercitum duxit*, *Caesar led (his) army*.

a. *Suus* is the adjective of the reflexive pronoun *suē*, and is used in the same way. See 164 and 165.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

168. *Hic* refers to something near the speaker, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person. Example: *hic liber*, *this book* (near me).

169. *Iste* refers to something near the person spoken to, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the second person. Example: *iste liber*, *that book* (near you). When used of an opponent it often implies contempt.

170. *Ille* refers to something more remote from the speaker or person spoken to, and is often called the demonstrative of the third person. Example: *ille liber*, *that book* (yonder).

a. *Ille* and *hic* are often used in the sense of *the former, the latter*. *Hic* is usually *the latter*, as referring to the nearer of two things mentioned; but it may be *the former* if the former object is more important and therefore nearer in thought.

171. *Is* is the weakest of the demonstratives and the one most used as the personal pronoun of the third person, or to refer without emphasis to something just mentioned, or as the antecedent of a relative.

a. When *is* is used substantively it is translated by a personal pronoun; when used as an adjective, by *this* or *that*; when used as the antecedent of a relative it is translated in various ways, *—the man, a man, such a man, that, etc.*

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

172. *Ipse* emphasizes the noun with which it agrees. It is usually translated by *self*, and is not to be confused with the reflexive pronouns. Examples: *ipse Caesar eum laudat*, *Caesar himself praises him*; *ipse Caesar se laudat*, *Caesar himself praises himself*. 
a. *Ipse* is often used to strengthen a possessive pronoun. It then stands in the genitive to agree with the genitive implied in the possessive. Examples: *meus ipsius liber*, my own book (*the book of me myself*); *vester ipsorum liber*, your own book (*the book of you yourselves*).

**THE RELATIVE PRONOUN**

173. **RULE:** A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its construction in its own clause.

If it is used as subject the verb agrees in person with the antecedent. If the relative has two or more antecedents it follows the same rules of agreement as predicate adjectives (157, a, 2). The relative is never omitted. Examples: *Caesar, quem laudō, Caesar, whom I praise; ego, qui eum laudō, I, who praise him; Caesar et Cicero, qui me laudant, Caesar and Cicero, who praise me*.

a. Coordinate Relative. It is often necessary to translate a relative by a coordinating conjunction (*and, but, etc.*) and a personal or demonstrative pronoun. Example: *relinquēbatur una via, qua ire non poterant* (I, 9, 1), there was left only one way, and by it they could not go. Latin is fond of letting a relative stand at the beginning of an entirely new sentence, with its antecedent in the preceding sentence. It is then usually best translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun. Example: *qui* (I, 15, 5), they.

**INDEFINITE PRONOUNS**

174. **RULE:** *Quis*, anyone, is the indefinite commonly used after *si*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num*.

Example: *si quis laudat, if anyone praises*.

175. **RULE:** *Aliquis* (*aliquī*) is the indefinite commonly used in affirmative sentences to mean *some one, some, etc*.

Example: *aliquis dicit, some one may say*.

176. *Quispiam* has almost exactly the same meaning as *aliquis*, but is rare. Example: *quispiam dicit, some one may say*.

177. **RULE:** *Quisquam and ullus* are the indefinites commonly used in negative sentences (except with *nē*), and in questions implying a negative, to mean *any, anyone, etc*.

Examples: *neque quemquam laudō, nor do I praise anyone; cur quisquam iūdicāret* (I, 40, 6), *why should anyone suppose?*
178. Nesció quis (nesció qui), originally meaning *I know not who*, is often used in a sense very much like that of *aliquis*, but with even more indefiniteness. Example: *nesció quis laudat*, *some one or other praises*.

**AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT**

179. **RULE:** A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

In the compound tenses the participle agrees with the subject in gender. Examples: *Caesar laudātus est*, *Caesar was praised*; *mulierēs laudātæ sunt*, *the women were praised*.

a. But the verb sometimes agrees with the meaning of the subject rather than its grammatical form. Thus a singular collective noun sometimes has a plural verb, and a neuter noun a masculine participle in agreement. Examples: *multitūdō vēnērunt*, *a great number came*; *duo mília occisi sunt*, *two thousand were killed*.

180. If there are two or more subjects, the verb is usually plural. In the compound tenses of the passive the participle follows the rule given for predicate adjectives (157, a, 2). If the subjects differ in person the first person is preferred to the second and the second to the third. Examples: *homō et mulier occisi sunt*, *the man and the woman were killed*; *ego et tū vēnimus*, *you and I came*.

a. The verb may agree with the nearest subject, especially if the verb stands first or after the first subject. It regularly does so if the subjects are connected by conjunctions meaning or or nor. Example: *Caesar vēnit et Labiēnus*, *Caesar and Labienus came*; *neque Caesar neque Labiēnus vēnit*, *neither Caesar nor Labienus came*; *filia atque ūnus ē filiīs captus est* (I, 26, 11), *his daughter and one of his sons were taken*.

b. If the two or more subjects are thought of as forming a single whole, the verb is singular. Example: *Matrona et Sēquana dividit* (I, 1, 5), *the Marne and Seine separate* (they make one boundary line).

**THE VOICES**

181. The voices have the same meanings and uses as in English. An intransitive verb can not be used in the passive except impersonally. Examples: *laudat*, *he praises*; *laudātur*, *he is praised*; *ēi crēditur* (115, d) lit. *it is believed to him = he is believed.*
THE MODES

182. The Latin verb has three modes,—the indicative, the subjunctive and the imperative. The name mode is applied to them because they indicate the manner in which the action of the verb is spoken of; for example, as a fact, as wished, as willed.

183. The Indicative speaks of the action as a fact, either stating a fact or asking a question about a fact. Examples: laudat, he praises; non laudat, he does not praise; laudatne? does he praise?

184. The Subjunctive has three classes of meanings, some of which may be further subdivided.

a. The Subjunctive of Desire. Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express will (then called volitive) or wish (then called optative). Examples: laudet, let him praise or may he praise; imperō ut laudet, I command that he praise, i.e., I give the command “let him praise.”

b. The Subjunctive of Contingent Futurity. Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express what would take place under some condition, either expressed or implied, or, very seldom, it may express what may possibly take place. The latter use is the potential. Examples: laudet, he would praise (if there should be reason); is est qui laudet, he is a man who would praise.

c. The Subjunctive of Fact. Only in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express certainty and be translated like the indicative.

Example: laudātur cum laudet, he is praised because he praises. Compare laudātur quod laudat, he is praised because he praises.

185. The Imperative is used only in independent sentences. It expresses a command. Example: laudā, praise (thou); désilīte (IV, 25, 11), jump down.

OTHER VERBAL FORMS

186. The Infinitive is not, strictly speaking, a mode, but a verbal noun. It is, however, used as a mode in certain kinds of dependent clauses. Example: dicit Caesarem laudāri, he says that Caesar is praised.
187. Verbal Nouns and Adjectives. The gerund and the supine are verbal nouns; the gerundive and the participles are verbal adjectives. None of these can form clauses in Latin, though they are often best translated into English by clauses.

THE NEGATIVES

188. There are two kinds of negatives in Latin.

a. RULE: Nōn, not, and neque, and not, nor, are used to negative statements and questions.

That is, they are used with the indicative, the subjunctive of contingent futurity (184, b), the subjunctive of fact (184, c), and the infinitive. Examples: nōn laudat, he does not praise; nōn laudet, he would not praise; nōnne laudat? does he not praise?

b. RULE: Nē, not, and nēve, and not, nor, are used to negative the subjunctive of desire (184, a).

But nē . . . quidem, not even, is used in statements. Examples: nē laudet, let him not praise, or may he not praise: nē laudat quidem, he does not even praise.

THE TENSES

189. The tense of a verb tells either one or both of two things: (1) the time of the action, whether past, present, or future; and (2) the stage of progress of the action at that time, whether already completed, still going on, or about to take place. For example, the following forms are all past, and yet express different things: laudāvit, he praised, simply puts the action in the past; laudāverat, he had praised, means that the action was already completed in the past time; laudābat, he was praising, means that the action was going on in the past time; and laudāturus erat, he was going to praise, means that in the past time the action was on the point of taking place. Latin is much more accurate in its use of tenses than English is.

THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

190. The Present regularly puts the action in the present time and corresponds to all the forms of the English present. Example: laudat, he praises (simple), he is praising (progressive), he does praise (emphatic).
a. The historical present speaks of a past fact as if it were present, in order to put it vividly before the mind. It is much more common in Latin than in English, and therefore should usually be translated by a past. Example: oppida sua omnia incendunt (I, 5, 3), they burned (burn) all their towns.

b. With such expressions as iam diū, iam prīdem, for a long time, multōs annōs, for many years, the Latin present is to be translated by the English present perfect. Example: multōs annōs tē moneō, I have been warning you for many years. There are really two ideas, "I have been in the past" and "I still am." English expresses one of them; Latin, like French and German, expresses the other.

c. For the present with dum, etc., see 234, a.

191. The Imperfect puts the action in the past and represents it as going on at that time. See 189. Example; laudābat, he was praising.

a. The imperfect is often used of repeated past action; as laudābat, he used to praise, or he kept praising. It is less often used of attempted past action; as laudābat, he tried to praise.

b. With the expressions mentioned in 190, b, the imperfect is to be translated by the English past perfect. Example: multōs annōs tē monēbam, I had been warning you for many years.

192. The Future puts the action in the future time and corresponds to the English future. See 199. Example: laudābō, I shall or will praise, or be praising.

193. The Perfect has two uses.

I. The present (or definite) perfect corresponds to the English present perfect with have. It represents the action as completed at the present time. Example: laudāvī, I have praised.

a. This perfect is often nearly equivalent to a present. For example, vēni, I have come, is nearly equivalent to I am here. A few perfects are regularly translated by presents; especially nōvi, cognōvi, I know (literally I have found out), and consuēvi, I am accustomed (literally I have become accustomed). Cf. the English, "I've got it," for "I have it."
II. The historical (or indefinite) perfect simply puts the action in the past, without telling anything about the stage of progress (189) at that time. It corresponds to the English past tense. Example: laudāvī, I praised.

194. The Pluperfect describes the action as already completed in the past, or puts it at a time before another past point of time. See 189. Example: laudāveram, I had praised.

   a. The pluperfect of the verbs mentioned in 193, I, a, are nearly equivalent to imperfects. Examples: vēneram, I had come, i.e., I was there; nōveram, I knew; cōnsuēveram, I was accustomed.

195. The Future Perfect represents the action as completed in future time, or as to take place before some future point of time. See 199. Example: laudāverō, I shall or will have praised.

   a. The future perfects of the verbs mentioned in 193, I, a, are nearly equivalent to futures. Examples: vēnerō, I shall have come, i.e., I shall be there; nōverō, I shall know; cōnsuēverō, I shall be accustomed.

196. The Active Periphrastic (75) Tenses represent the action as about to take place in a time future to the time of the tense of sum. Examples: laudātūrus est, he is about to praise; laudātūrus erat, he was about to praise; laudātūrus erit, he will be about to praise.

INDICATIVE TENSES IN NARRATION

197. In telling of past events the indicative tenses used are the historical perfect (or the equivalent historical present), the imperfect, the pluperfect, and occasionally the imperfect periphrastic. The perfect is the narrating tense in which the successive main events of the story are told. The other tenses are the descriptive tenses in which the details which surround the main events are told. See 189.

For example, suppose one wished to begin a story with the following points. "The Helvetii lived in a small country; they planned to leave; Caesar went to Gaul." Told in that way all the verbs would be perfects; but the story is badly told. One would certainly pick out some chief event or events and group the others about them; and whatever events he so picked out would be expressed by the perfect, while the rest would be imperfect and pluperfect. He might begin in this way, "The Helvetii, who lived . . . . . . , planned . . . . . . . But Caesar went . . . . . . ." Then planned and went are perfects, each being
thought of as a separate step in the story; but lived is thought of as subordinate detail, telling something that was going on at the time of the main event, planned, and must be imperfect in Latin, though English uses the simple past tense. Or he might prefer to begin in this way, “The Helvetii, who lived......, had planned...... But Caesar went.” Then went is thought of as the first main event, and is the only perfect; lived is still imperfect; but had planned is thought of as a subordinate detail, giving something which had happened before the went and which led up to it, and is, therefore, a pluperfect.

198. The chief events, thus expressed by perfects, are usually made the principal, or independent clauses; and the subordinate details, thus expressed in imperfects and pluperfects, are usually made the subordinate, or dependent clauses. Therefore the following principle is a good one to follow unless there appears a clear reason for violating it:

**RULE:** In a narrative of past events the independent clauses generally use the perfect, the dependent clauses generally use the imperfect and pluperfect.

a. But there are dependent indicative clauses in which this principle does not hold. The following are the most important.

1. After postquam, ubi, etc. (see 237), the perfect or historical present is regularly used. See also 235, a, and 236, a.

2. After dum, while (see 234, a) the present is regularly used.

THE FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT

199. Latin is very accurate in the use of the future and future perfect, while English is very inaccurate. In many subordinate clauses English uses the present for the future or the future perfect, while Latin uses the tenses required by the meanings. For an example see 256.

THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

200. The tenses of the subjunctive have two sets of meanings.

a. When the subjunctive has the same meaning as the indicative (184, c), the tenses of the subjunctive mean the same as the corresponding indicative tenses.
b. When the subjunctive has one of its other meanings (184, a, b), the time denoted by the tenses is future to that denoted by the corresponding indicative tenses. Examples: laudet, let him praise, is a command to praise in the future; imperāvit ut laudaret, he commanded that he praise, is a past command, to be carried into effect after the time of commanding.

201. The following table shows the meanings of the subjunctive tenses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>present or future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>imperfect or future to a past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>perfect or future perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>pluperfect or future perfect to a past</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Some tenses have developed special meanings in certain constructions. See 221, 226, 254.

b. Any tense of the subjunctive may thus refer to the future. But where the meaning would be doubtful and it is necessary to express the future clearly, the periphrastic tenses are used. So rogō quid faciās regularly means I ask what you are doing, and would not be understood to mean I ask what you will do. Therefore the latter meaning must be expressed by rogō quid factūrus sis.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES IN DEPENDENCE

202. When a subjunctive clause depends on some other clause, a little knowledge of the real meaning of the English will enable one to use the right tense, just as in the indicative. When the tenses mean the same as those of the indicative they will be used in the same way (197, 198). When they have the future set of meanings, it will be found that a present or perfect is usually required after a tense of present or future meaning, and the imperfect and pluperfect after one of past meaning. For example: I come, or I shall come, that I may praise, laudem; I came that I might praise, laudārem. In the subjunctive the usage is more regular than in the indicative, so that the convenient but not very accurate rule, called the rule of sequence of tenses, can be followed.

RULE: In dependent subjunctive clauses principal tenses follow principal, and historical follow historical.
APPENDIX

203. Principal tenses are those which have to do with the present and future, historical are those which have to do with the past. The following table of examples shows which are the principal and which the historical tenses of both indicative and subjunctive.

**Principal Tenses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogō,</td>
<td>quid faciat,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I ask</td>
<td>what he is doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogābō,</td>
<td>quid fēcerit,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I shall ask</td>
<td>what he has done (or did)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present perfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogāvī,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have asked</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future perfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogāverō,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I shall have asked</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Historical Tenses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rogābam,</td>
<td>quid faceret,</td>
<td>quid fēcisset,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was asking</td>
<td>what he was doing</td>
<td>what he had done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Historical perf.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogāvī,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I asked</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogāveram,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I had asked</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Notice that the perfect subjunctive, even when it means past time, is called a principal tense.

204. Exceptions to Rule of Sequence. Two special points must be mentioned, not hard to understand if one remembers that this rule tells only how the natural meanings of the tenses make them depend on each other.

a. An exception may occur whenever the meaning of the sentence makes it natural. Still, Latin is not fond of these exceptions, and if exceptional tenses must be used it is better to use an indicative construction instead of a subjunctive, when there is a choice. For example, if the sentence, he marched around because the mountains are high, is to be put into Latin, cum sint would be an exception to sequence and it is better to use the indicative construction quod sunt.

The most common exceptions are in result clauses, where a perfect subjunctive sometimes follows a perfect indicative. Example: temporis tanta fuit exiguitas, ut tempor dēfuerit (II, 21, 9), so short was the time that there was no opportunity.
A subjunctive following an historical present may be either principal or historical, for it may either keep up the liveliness of the present or behave as if the perfect had been used. Examples: diem dicunt quă diē conveniānt (I, 6, 14), they appoint a day on which they are to assemble; omne frūmentum combūrant ut parātiōrēs ad pericula sub-eunda essent (I, 5, 5), they burned all the grain that they might be more ready to undergo danger.

TENSES OF INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES

205. RULE: The time denoted by infinitives and participles is relative to the tenses of the verbs on which they depend.

That is, a present infinitive or participle expresses action as going on at the time of the main verb, whether that is present, future, or past; a future expresses action as future to the time of the main verb; and a perfect expresses action as completed at the time of the main verb. The following table gives examples of the infinitive. The tense meanings of the participles are the same.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>dicē eum</th>
<th>laudāre</th>
<th>laudātūrum esse</th>
<th>laudāvisse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lit. him</td>
<td>to be praising</td>
<td>to be about to praise</td>
<td>to have praised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I say that he is praising</td>
<td>will praise</td>
<td>has praised, or praised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dicam eum,</td>
<td>I shall say that he is praising</td>
<td>will praise</td>
<td>has praised, or praised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dixi eum,</td>
<td>I said that he was praising</td>
<td>would praise</td>
<td>had praised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. With such perfects as dēbū, licuit, oportuit, potui, Latin correctly uses the present infinitive, though English illogically says ought to have, etc. Example: laudāre potui lit. I was able to praise, = I could have praised.

b. Some verbs lack the supine stem and therefore have no future active infinitive. The future passive infinitive which is given in the paradigms is rarely used. In both cases the place of the future infinitive is taken by fore (futūrum esse) ut, it will (would) be that, with the present or imperfect subjunctive. Examples: dicit fore ut timeat, lit. he says that it will be that he fears, = he says that he will fear; dīxit fore ut laudārētur, lit. he said that it would be that he was praised, = he said that he would be praised.
STATEMENTS

206. The Indicative is used to state facts. Examples: Caesar vēnit, Caesar came; Caesar nōn veniet, Caesar will not come.

207. The Subjunctive of Contingent Futurity (184, b) is used to state what would take place under some condition. The condition is usually, but not always, expressed. This kind of statement is the conclusion of the conditional sentences in 254 and 257. For the peculiar use of tenses see those paragraphs. In many grammars this use of the subjunctive is called potential. Examples: Caesar veniat, Caesar would come; Caesar nōn vēnissent, Caesar would not have come; velim, I should like.

208. The Potential Subjunctive (184, b) is sometimes used to state what may or can happen. It is very rarely used except where a negative is expressed or implied and in the phrase aliquis dicit, some one may say. In an independent sentence the student should always express may, might, can, could, by such words as possum and licet. Example: nēmō dubitet, but usually nēmō dubitāre potest, no one can doubt.

QUESTIONS

USE OF MODES

209. The indicative, the subjunctive of contingent futurity, and, rarely, the potential subjunctive, are used in questions with precisely the same meanings as in statements (206-208). Examples: quis veniet? who will come? quis veniat? who would come? quis dubitet? who can doubt (implying that no one can)?

210. A Deliberative Question is one that asks for an expression of some one’s will. The answer, if any, is a command. This kind of question is asked by the subjunctive. Example: quid faciam? what shall I do? what am I to do?

a. Under deliberative questions are usually classed those subjunctive questions which ask why one should do something or what one should do. Example: cūr dubitem? why should I doubt?

211. A rhetorical question is one which is used for rhetorical effect and which expects no answer. Any of the above questions may be either rhetorical or real. The rhetorical character of the question has no effect on the mode.
INTRODUCTORY WORDS

212. Questions which can not be answered by yes or no are introduced in Latin, as in English, by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb. Examples: quis vēnit? who came? quālis est? what sort of man is he? ubi est? where is he?

213. RULE: Questions which can be answered by yes or no are usually, but not always, introduced by an interrogative particle.

In written English the interrogation point and usually the order of words show that a sentence is a question. The Romans had no interrogation point, and the order of words was free, so that an introductory particle was usually necessary.

a. RULE: When the question asks for information, without suggesting the answer, the enclitic -ne is added to the first word.

The first word is regularly the verb, unless some other word is put first for emphasis. Examples: scribitne epistulam? is he writing a letter? epistulamne scribit? is it a letter that he is writing?

b. RULE: When the form of the question suggests the answer yes, the interrogative particle is nōnne.

Example: nōnne epistulam scribit? is he not writing a letter?

c. RULE: When the form of the question suggests the answer no, the interrogative particle is num.

Example: num epistulam scribit? he is not writing a letter, is he?

DOUBLE QUESTIONS

214. Double questions ask which of two or more possibilities is true. Utrum may stand at the beginning not to be translated, but as a mere warning that a double question is to follow; or -ne may be added to the first word; or no introductory word may be used, as always in English. The or is expressed by an; or not is annōn. Examples: utrum pugnāvit an fūgit? pugnāvitne an fūgit? pugnāvit an fūgit? did he fight or run away? pugnāvit annōn? did he fight or not?

ANSWERS

215. Latin has no words answering exactly to yes and no. It often replies by repeating the verb as a statement; or it may use ita, sānē, etc., for yes, nōn, minimē, etc., for no. Example: epistulamne scribit? scribit, yes; nōn scribit, no.
COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS

216. These are expressions of will, for which the appropriate modes are the subjunctive of desire (184, a) and the imperative (185). The negative with the subjunctive is nē (188, b).

217. RULE: An Exhortation is a command or prohibition in the first person plural of the present subjunctive.

Examples: laudēmus, let us praise; nē eāmus, let us not go.

218. RULE: A Command in the second person is expressed by the imperative.

The future imperative is seldom used unless the verb used has no present. Examples: venite, come (ye); memento, remember.

219. RULE: A Prohibition (Negative Command) in the second person is usually expressed by nōli, nōlite, be unwilling, and the present infinitive.

A prohibition is less often expressed by cavē (with or without nē), take care, and the present subjunctive; or by nē and the perfect subjunctive. Examples: nōli dubitāre, do not doubt; less often cavē (nē) dubitēs, or nē dubitāverīs.

220. RULE: A Command or Prohibition in the third person is regularly expressed by the third person of the present subjunctive.

Examples: eat, let him go; nē veniant, let them not come.

WISHES

221. Wishes are regularly expressed by the subjunctive of desire (184, a) and are usually introduced by utinam (not to be translated).

a. RULE: A wish for something in the future is expressed by the present subjunctive, with or without utinam.

Example: (utinam) adsit, may he be here!

b. RULE: A wish for something at the present time is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive with utinam.

c. RULE: A wish for something in the past is expressed by the pluperfect subjunctive with utinam.

Both of these express a wish, or rather a regret, for something unattainable. Examples: utinam adesset, would that he were here! utinam affuisset, would that he had been here!
COORDINATE CLAUSES

222. A coordinate clause is connected with another clause by means of a coordinating conjunction. The coordinating conjunctions are such as mean and, but, or, for, and the like. They are used exactly as in English.

DEPENDENT CLAUSES

223. Dependent clauses are those which are attached to other clauses by a relative or interrogative pronoun or adverb, or by a subordinating conjunction. Subordinating conjunctions are such as mean if, because, although, when, after, before, in order that, so that, and the like.

Neither the relatives nor any of the conjunctions have in themselves any effect on the mode of the verb in the dependent clause; but that clause may contain the indicative or the subjunctive with any of its meanings (184, a-c).

Dependent clauses are classified according to their meaning and use in the following groups: purpose clauses (225), result clauses (226), substantive clauses of desire (substantive purpose) (228), substantive clauses of result or fact (229), relative clauses of characteristic (230), determining relative clauses (231), parenthetical relative clauses (232), temporal clauses (233-242), causal clauses (243-245), adversative (concessive) clauses (246, 247), substantive quod clauses (248), conditional clauses (249-259), clauses of proviso (260), clauses of comparison (261), indirect questions (262-264), indirect discourse (265-273), attracted clauses (274), infinitive clauses (277-280).

PURPOSE AND RESULT CLAUSES

224. The subjunctive of desire (184, a) is used in purpose clauses, the subjunctive of fact (184, c) in result clauses. This explains the difference in negatives (188), and on the other hand the presence of a negative determines the kind of clause. In the ut clauses, or when an English clause is to be translated into Latin, the only test is the meaning: if any feeling of will or intention is implied, the clause is one of purpose; otherwise, of result.

PURPOSE CLAUSES

225. RULE: Purpose may be expressed by the subjunctive with ut, nē, quō, or a relative.
The infinitive, common in English, is never to be used. For the so-called substantive clause of purpose, see 228. The connecting words are used as follows:

a. In affirmative clauses:

1. If the principal clause contains a noun which can conveniently be used as an antecedent, a relative pronoun or adverb is commonly used. Example: hominēs mīsit quī vidērent, he sent men to see, lit. who were to see.

2. If the purpose clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, quō is used. Example: vēnit quō facilius vidēret, he came that he might see more easily, lit. by which the more easily he might see.

3. Otherwise, and most commonly, the conjunction ut is used. Example: vēnit ut vidēret, he came to see, that he might see, or in order to see; venīt ut videat, he comes to see.

b. In negative clauses the conjunction nē is always used. Example: hoc fēcit nē quis (not ut nēmō) vidēret, he did this that no one might see, or to keep anyone from seeing.

RESULT CLAUSES

226. **RULE:** Result is expressed by the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.

For the so-called relative clause of result see 230, a. For the substantive clause of result see 229. Examples: mōns impendēbat, ut perpauci prohibēre possent (I, 6, 4), a mountain overhung, so that a very few could easily check; incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut iūdicāri nōn possit (I, 12, 2), of extraordinary sluggishness, so that it can not be determined; tam fortis est ut pugnet, he is so brave that he would fight, or as to fight, or that he fights.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE) AND OF RESULT

227. These clauses differ from clauses of purpose and result in that they are used like nouns, either as the object of a transitive verb, or as the subject of the passive, or in apposition with a noun or neuter pronoun.

They are also called *complementary clauses*, because they serve to complement (complete) the meaning of such expressions as *I command, I hinder, the result is.*
There is the same difference between substantive clauses of desire (purpose) and substantive clauses of result as between purpose clauses and result clauses, and they are to be distinguished in the same way (224).

**SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE)**

228. These clauses all consist of the subjunctive of desire (184, a) introduced by a conjunction. As the subjunctive of desire is divided into the volitive (expressing will) and the optative (expressing wish), some grammars divide these clauses into substantive volitive clauses and substantive optative clauses. The older name, substantive purpose clauses, is not good, because they do not really express purpose. For example: imperō ut eās, I command you to go, does not mean I command in order that you may go, but rather I give the command "go".

a. **RULE:** Most verbs expressing any form of desire, or of attempt to carry out a desire, may take the subjunctive with ut or nē.

Such are verbs meaning accomplish (when the subject is a conscious agent), command, permit, persuade, request, resolve, strive, urge, wish, and the like.

But after most of these verbs the infinitive may be used instead, and it always is used after iubeō, command, cōnor, attempt, patiō, sinō, permit. See 280, a. Ut is often omitted after verbs of asking, commanding, and wishing, especially after volō. The subjunctive, usually without ut, is often used with oportet, it is right, and licet, it is permitted; but see 276. Examples: cīvitātī persuāsit ut exīrent (I, 2, 3), he persuaded the citizens to leave; cīvitātī persuāsit nē exīrent, he persuaded the citizens not to leave; oportet eat, he ought to go; ei licet eat, he may go; obsidēs utī dent perficit (I, 9, 11), he causes them to give hostages.

b. **RULE:** Verbs expressing fear take the subjunctive with nē meaning that, or ut meaning that not.

But nē nōn, that not, is often used instead of ut. Examples: timeō nē veniat, I fear that he will come (originally timeō: nē veniat, I am afraid: let him, or may he, not come); timeō ut (or nē nōn) veniat, I fear that he will not come (originally timeō: veniat, I am afraid: let him or may he, come; ut or nē nōn was then used as the opposite of nē).

c. **RULE:** Verbs meaning avoid, hinder, prevent, and refuse may take the subjunctive with nē, quīn, or quōminus.
But the infinitive may be used instead. *Nē* is used after an *affirmative principal clause*, *quin* after a *negative*, *quōminus* after either *positive* or *negative*. Examples: *eum impedīō nē*, or *quōminus*, veniat, *I hinder him from coming*; *eum nōn impedīō quin*, or *quōminus*, veniat, *I do not hinder him from coming*; *neque recūsātūrōs quōminus esset* (*I, 31, 24*), and that they would not refuse to be.

**SUBSTANTIVE *UT* CLAUSES OF RESULT OR FACT**

229. These clauses are all usually called substantive result clauses, but most of them are better called *ut* clauses of fact, since they do not express result. They usually contain the subjunctive of fact (*184, c*) and are to be translated by the indicative.

a. **RULE:** Verbs meaning accomplish take the subjunctive with *ut* or *ut nōn* when the subject is not a conscious agent.

Compare 228, a. Example: *montēs efficient ut nōn exīre possint*, the mountains make (that they can not) it impossible for them to leave.

b. **RULE:** Impersonal verbs meaning the result is, it happens, it remains, there is added, and the like, may take the subjunctive with *ut* or *ut nōn*.

The clause is the subject of the verb. But with some of these verbs an indicative *quod* clause of fact may be used with the same meaning. See 248. Example: *his rēbus fīēbat ut vagārentur* (*I, 2, 11*), *the result was that they wandered*.

c. **RULE:** Such phrases as *mōs est*, *cōnsuētūdō est* (*it is the custom*), may take the subjunctive with *ut* or *ut nōn*.

The clause is a predicate nominative. But a substantive clause of desire (with *ut* or *nē*) may be used with such phrases, especially with *īūs est*, *lēx est*. Example: *mōs est ut ex equīs pugnent*, *it is their custom to fight on horseback*.

d. **RULE:** Negatived verbs and phrases meaning doubt take the subjunctive with *quin*.

After an affirmative expression of doubting an indirect question with *num*, *an*, or *ēi* is used, as *whether* is in English. *Dubitō* with the infinitive means *hesitate*. Example: *nōn est dubium quin hoc fēcerit*, *there is no doubt that he did this*.
RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

230. **GENERAL RULE:** The subjunctive is used in certain kinds of relative clauses which describe an indefinite antecedent.

The subjunctive is not used in all relative clauses which describe an antecedent. If the antecedent is definite, the clause is parenthetical (232). If the clause is used chiefly to tell who or what the antecedent is, it is a determining clause (231). If the clause can be turned into a condition without changing the meaning of the sentence, it is a conditional clause (250). Clauses of characteristic are of the following kinds.

a. **RULE:** The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which are equivalent in meaning to ut clauses of result.

These clauses complete the meaning of an expressed or implied antecedent like is = (such) a man (171, a), eius modi, such, or an adjective modified by tam. Certain grammars call some of these clauses relative result clauses. Usually the subjunctive is to be translated as if it were indicative.

Examples: is est qui pugnet, he is a man who fights; secūtæ sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castrīs continērunt (IV, 34, 8), storms followed which kept our men in camp (= such storms . . . . . that they kept); tam improbus qui nōn fāteātur (Cic. Cat. I, 5), so villainous as not to admit.

b. **RULE:** The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which complete statements and questions of existence and non-existence.

So after est qui, there is a man who; nōn or nēmō or nūllus est qui, there is no one who; quis est qui? who is there who? sōlus or ūnus est qui he is the only man who; etc. Usually the subjunctive is to be translated as if it were indicative.

Examples: nūllī sunt qui putent, there are none who think; erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus exīre possent (I, 6, 1), there were only two ways by which they could leave.

c. In some relative clauses of characteristic the subjunctive is to be translated by can, could, or by should, ought. Examples: unum (iter) vix quā singulī carrī dučerentur (I, 6, 4), one road by which wagons could be moved; neque commissum intellegēret quārē timēret (I, 14, 6), he did not know that anything had been done on account of which he should be afraid.
DETERMINING RELATIVE CLAUSES

231. RULE: Relative clauses which are used for the purpose of telling what person or thing is meant by an indefinite antecedent, employ the indicative.

Example: ad eam partem Œceanī quae est ad Hispāniam (I, 1, 21), to that part of the ocean which is near Spain.

PARENTHETICAL RELATIVE CLAUSES

232. RULE: A relative clause for which a parenthetical statement may be substituted usually employs the indicative.

The antecedent of a parenthetical clause must always be definite, so that the relative clause may be entirely removed without destroying the meaning of the rest of the sentence. When the antecedent is indefinite the clause is either characterizing (230), determining (231), or conditional (250). Example: Dumnorīgī, qui principātum obtinēbat, persuādet (I, 3, 14), he persuaded Dumnorix, who held the chief power; the same meaning could be expressed by Dumnorīgī (is principātum obtinēbat) persuādet.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

233. There are many conjunctions denoting time relations. The most common is cum which must be treated by itself, but the others may be classified according to their meanings.

While, as long as

234. Conjunctions with these meanings show that one act was going on at the same time as another. Cum with the imperfect subjunctive does the same.

a. RULE: Dum meaning while (i.e., at some time during the time that) is used with the present indicative, even in speaking of past time.

See 198, a, 2. Example: dum haec geruntur, Caesāri nūntiātum est (I, 46, 1), while these things were going on, it was reported to Caesar.

b. RULE: Dum, dōnec, quoad, and quam diū, as long as, while (i.e., during the entire time that) are used with the indicative, which is usually in the same tense as the main verb.

Example: quoad potuit, restitit (IV, 12, 16), he resisted as long as he could.
235. Conjunctions meaning *until* show that the action of the principal clause lasted up to that of the subordinate clause. Sometimes the actor in the principal clause foresees the second act and intends to bring it about, or prepares for it, and sometimes he does not. This is the basis for the distinction in the use of modes.

a. **Rule:** *Dum, dōnec, and quoad* meaning *until* are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen.

The perfect is regularly used for past time. Example: *Galli fuērunt liberi dum Caesar vēnit,* the Gauls were free until Caesar came.

b. **Rule:** *Dum, dōnec, and quoad* meaning *until* are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen.

Examples: *Galli exspectāvērunt dum Caesar venīret,* the Gauls waited until Caesar should come, or for Caesar to come, or until Caesar came.

Before

236. Conjunctions meaning *before* also represent the action of the subordinate clause as subsequent to that of the principal clause, and the principle on which the choice of modes is based is the same as that given in 235.

a. **Rule:** *Priusquam and antequam* are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen.

The perfect is regularly used for past time. Example: *Galli inter se pugnāvērunt priusquam Caesar vēnit,* the Gauls fought with one another before Caesar came.

b. **Rule:** *Priusquam and antequam* are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen.

Example: *Galli magnās cōpiās comparāre cōnātī sunt priusquam Caesar venīret,* the Gauls tried to prepare large forces before Caesar should arrive, or arrived, or in view of Caesar’s arrival.

c. These conjunctions are often written as two words, the *prius* or *ante* standing in the principal clause, and the *quam* at the beginning of the subordinate clause. Translate as if the complete word stood where *quam* does. Example: *Galli prius inter se pugnāvērunt quam Caesar vēnit,* translated as in a.
After

237. **Rule**: Postquam, after, ut, ubi, when (after, not while), simul ac, cum primum, as soon as (immediately after), are used with the indicative, generally the perfect or the historical present.

Example: ubi certiores factī sunt, légātōs mittunt (I, 7, 6), when they were informed of it they sent envoys.

**Cum**

238. Cum has three chief uses:

- temporal, when, after;
- causal, since, because;
- adversative (concessive), although.

It is in reality an undecorred relative, whose antecedent is something like at the time or at a time, sometimes expressed, more often only implied. The use of modes with cum is much the same as with the declined relative (230-232, 245, 247, 250).

239. Causal and Adversative Cum.

**Rule**: Cum meaning since or although is used with all tenses of the subjunctive.

Compare the causal relative (245) and the adversative relative (247). Examples: quae cum ita sint, perge (Cic. Cat. I, 10), since this is so, go on; hīs cum persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs mittunt (I, 9, 2), since they could not persuade them, they sent envoys; cum ad vesperum pugnātum sit (I, 26, 4), although they fought till evening.

240. Temporal cum. Inaccurate but convenient rules are:

**Rule**: Cum meaning when is always used with the indicative when the principal verb is present or future.

**Rule**: Cum meaning when is generally followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive when the principal verb is past.

See examples under 241 and 242, which give more accurate rules for the same clauses.

241. Temporal Cum with the Indicative.

a. Clauses of Date.
**RULE**: Cum meaning *when* is followed by the indicative when the clause merely dates the action of the principal clause.

These clauses are in reality determining clauses (231), and are especially common when an antecedent like *tum* or *eō tempore* is expressed in the principal clause. But a subjunctive is often found where an indicative might be expected. Examples: *tum cum ex urbe Catilinam eiciebam* (Cic. Cat. III, 3), *at the time when I was trying to drive Catiline from the city*; *cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, principēs erant Haeduī* (VI, 12, 1), *at the time when Caesar came to Gaul the Haeduī were the leaders*.

**b. Clauses of Repeated Action.**

**RULE**: Cum meaning *whenever* is usually followed by the indicative.

These clauses correspond exactly to conditional relative clauses (150). It is necessary only that *whenever* be a possible translation of *cum*; *when* is usually a better translation. For the occasional subjunctive in such clauses see 242, b.

Example: *haec cum dēfixerat, contrāria duo statuēbat* (IV, 17, 10), *when he had set them firmly* (in each of several cases) *he put two others opposite*.

**c. Inverted Cum Clauses.**

**RULE**: Cum meaning *when* is followed by the indicative when the principal action is stated in the *cum* clause.

In the most common type of *cum* clauses (242, a) the principal action is stated in the principal clause, and the *cum* clause describes the situation under which it happened. In the inverted clause this relation is reversed.

Example: *vix agmen prōcesserat, cum Gallī cohortātī (sunt) inter sē* (VI, 8, 1), *hardly had the line advanced, when the Gauls encouraged one another* (for *cum . . . prōcessisset, . . . cohortātī sunt, when the line had advanced the Gauls encouraged, etc.*).

242. **Temporal Cum with the Subjunctive.**

**a. Situation and Narrative Clauses.**

**RULE**: Cum meaning *when* is followed by the subjunctive when the clause describes the situation under which the principal action took place.
RULE: Cum meaning when is followed by the subjunctive when the clause states a new point in the story. (Unless the clause is inverted, 241, c.)

These rules are given together because most subjunctive clauses are both situation and narrative clauses. Sometimes, however, one rule seems to apply better than the other. The situation clause corresponds to the relative clause of characteristic (230). Examples: cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur (II, 1, 1), when Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul, frequent rumors came to him (mainly situation, for the fact that Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul has been stated before, so that it is no new point in the story); cum cīvitās iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, Orgetorīx mortuus est (I, 4, 2), while the state was trying to enforce its laws, Orgetorīx died (both situation and narrative, for the fact that the state tried to enforce its laws is told only in this cum clause).

b. Clauses of Repeated Action.

RULE: Cum meaning whenever is sometimes followed by the subjunctive.

Compare 241, b. Example: cum ferrum sē īnflexisset, neque ēvelle-re poterant (I, 25, 7), when the iron had bent (in each of many cases), they could neither draw it out, etc.

CAUSAL CLAUSES

243. Dependent causal clauses are introduced by the conjunctions cum, quod, quia, quoniam, and quandō, or by the relative. The conjunctions nam, enim, etenim, for, introduce coordinate clauses.

244. RULE: Quod, quia, quoniam, and quandō, because, since, are used with the indicative unless the reason is quoted.

When the writer wishes to imply because (as he said), (as he thought), (as I said), (as I thought), the subjunctive is used. See 273. Examples: (with the indicative) reliqōs Gallōs praeceādunt, quod contendunt (I, 1, 11), they surpass the other Gauls because they fight; (with the subjunctive) quod sit dēstitūtus queritur (I, 16, 18), he complained because (as he said) he had been deserted.

245. RULE: Cum, since, because, and often qui, since he, etc., are used with the subjunctive.
APPENDIX

But the indicative is often used with qui, where the causal idea is perfectly clear. If præsertim, especially, stands in a subjunctive qui or cum clause, the clause is probably causal. Examples: (with the subjunctive) illi autem, qui omnia praecíara sentírent, negotíum suscepérunt (Cic. Cat. III, 5), and they, since they had none but patriotic thoughts, undertook the matter; (with the indicative) fuit militum virtús laudanda, qui adaequárunt (V, 8, 12), the energy of the soldiers deserved praise, who (= since they) kept up with, etc. For example with cum, see 239.

ADVERSATIVE (CONCESSIVE) CLAUSES

246. RULE: Quamquam, although, and etsi, tametsi, even if, although, are used with the indicative.

Example: etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverant, tamen suspícabátur (IV, 31, 1), although he did not yet know their plans, nevertheless he suspected. But quamquam sometimes introduces an independent sentence, and is then best translated by and yet.

247. RULE: Cum, although, and less commonly quamvis (in Ciceron), however much, however, although, qui, although he, etc., ut, although, are used with the subjunctive.

Examples: (for cum see 239) quamvis senex sit, fortis est, however old he may be, he is brave; ut omnia contra opiniónum acciderent (Caes. III, 9, 17), though everything should turn out contrary to their expectations. But the indicative is sometimes used with qui when the adversative idea is clear.

SUBSTANTIVE QUOD CLAUSES

248. RULE: Substantive clauses with quod, that, employ the indicative.

This clause is most commonly used as the appositive of a neuter pronoun. Example: illa praeteréo, quod Maelium occidit (Cic. Cat. I, 3), I pass over this, that he slew Maelius.

a. Sometimes the quod clause, standing at the beginning of its sentence, is used in the sense of as to the fact that, whereas. Example: quod umum pagum adortus es, nolì ob eam rem déspicere (compare I, 13, 12), as to your having attacked one canton, do not despise us on that account.
APPENDIX

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

249. A conditional sentence has two essential clauses, a condition and a conclusion. The condition is the dependent clause, and is so called because it states the condition on which the truth of the principal clause depends; the conclusion is the principal clause. Example: if *he comes* (condition) *I shall see him* (conclusion).

CONNECTIVES IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

250. The connectives are the conjunctions *si, i?, si non, if not, nisi, if not or unless, sin, but if, and relative pronouns and adverbs used in a conditional sense.

Whenever a relative has for its antecedent, either expressed or implied, a word like anyone, everyone, always, everywhere (any word that includes all of a class of objects), it is a conditional relative, and the clause is a condition. For example, anyone who thinks will see, means if anyone thinks he will see; whenever I saw him he used to say, means if at any time I saw him he used to say. Compare this use of the relative with those given in 230-232.

CLASSES OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

251. There are four classes of conditional sentences, two for those dealing with present or past time, two for those dealing with future time:

a. Undetermined Present or Past (253). *si pugnat, vincit, if he fights he conquers; si pugnavit, vicit, if he fought he conquered.*

b. Present or Past Contrary to Fact (254). *si pugnaret, vinceret, if he were fighting he would be conquering; si pugn?visset, vicisset, if he had fought he would have conquered.*

c. More Vivid (Confident) Future (256). *si pugnabit, vincet, if he fights (shall fight) he will conquer.*

d. Less Vivid (Confident) Future (257). *si pugnet, vincat, if he should fight he would conquer.*

A. Present or Past

252. In present or past time a conditional sentence may either express no opinion as the truth or falsity of a statement, simply saying
that one thing is true if another is; or it may imply that a condition is not fulfilled, and that in consequence the conclusion is not fulfilled. There is no form of condition which affirms the truth of a statement. The speaker or hearer may know it to be true, but the sentence does not say so.

253. Undetermined Present or Past. RULE: A present or past conditional sentence whose form affirms nothing as to its fulfillment employs the present or past tenses of the indicative.

Examples: *si fortis est eum laudō,* *if he is brave I praise him;* *quī fortis est prō patriā pugnat,* whoever is brave fights for his country; *nisi prō patriā pugnāvit nōn fortis fuit,* unless he fought for his country he was not brave.

254. Present or Past Contrary to Fact. RULE: A present or past conditional sentence whose form implies that the condition is not or was not fulfilled employs the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

The imperfect subjunctive is used to express present time, the pluperfect to express past time. Examples: *si fortis esset eum laudārem,* *if he were brave I should praise,* or *be praising,* him (implying but he is not, and I do not); *nisi prō patriā pugnāvisset eum nōn laudāvissem,* unless he had (if he had not) fought for his country I should not have praised him (implying but he did, and I do; the contrary of the negative supposition); *si pugnāvisset eum laudārem,* *if he had fought I should praise,* or *be praising,* him (implying but he did not, and I do not; notice the change of tense).

a. When the conclusion of such conditions contains a verb meaning could or ought, or such expressions as it would be hard, or just, the verb of the conclusion is usually in the indicative, the imperfect for present time, the perfect or pluperfect for past time. The condition requires the subjunctive, like any other condition contrary to fact.

This is because the conclusion is not usually really contrary to fact, though the English idiom makes it seem so. When the conclusion is really contrary to fact, the subjunctive is used. Examples: *si fortis esset pugnāre poterat,* *if he were brave he could fight* (he has the power in any case; hence the indicative); *si fortis fuisset pugnāre dēbuit* or *dēbuerat,* *if he had been brave he ought to have fought* (the duty rested upon him in any case; hence the indicative).
B. Future

255. There are two forms of future conditions, one expressing less confidence in the fulfillment of the condition than the other. There is no form to express nonfulfillment, since one can not be sure of the nonfulfillment of a future condition.

256. More Vivid (Confident) Future. **RULE:** A future conditional sentence whose translation contains shall or will employs the future or future perfect indicative.

The English commonly uses the present with a future meaning in the condition. *If I see him I shall tell him,* means *if I shall see him I shall tell him,* and the Latin is precise in using the future. Moreover, if the condition must be fulfilled before the conclusion can take place, the Latin uses the future perfect, while the English commonly uses the present. *If he arrives first he will tell him,* means *if he shall have arrived first,* and the Latin is precise in using the future perfect. Examples: *si pugnabit eum laudabo,* *if he fights or is fighting (shall fight or shall be fighting) I shall praise him; qui pugnaverit laudabitur,* whoever fights or has fought (shall have fought) will be praised.

257. Less Vivid (Confident) Future. **RULE:** A future conditional sentence whose translation contains should or would employs the present or perfect subjunctive

The difference between the present and perfect is the same as that between the future and future perfect indicative in 256. Examples: *si pugnet vincat,* *if he should fight, or were to fight, he would conquer; qui pugnet laudetur,* whoever should fight, or should be fighting, would be praised; *si non pugnaverit eum non laudem,* *if he should not fight, or should not have fought, I should not praise him.*

**MIXED CONDITIONS**

258. In Latin, as in English, the condition and the conclusion are usually of the same form. But sometimes, in both languages, one may wish to use a condition of one form, a conclusion of another. Example: *si veniat hic adsumus,* *if he should come we are here.*

**CONDITION OMITTED OR IMPLIED**

259. Instead of being expressed by a clause as in the examples given above, the condition may be implied in a phrase or even in a single
word. Sometimes it is omitted altogether, but is supplied in thought. Examples: damnátum poenam sequi oportébat (I, 4, 3), (if) condemned, it was necessary that punishment be inflicted on him; dícát, he would say (if he should be asked); vélim, I should like. The last two are simply the independent subjunctive of contingent futurity (207).

**CLAUSES OF PROVISO**

260. **RULE:** Dum, modo, and dummodo in the sense of if only, provided that, are used with the subjunctive.

Notice that although these seem like conditions the construction is not the same, for the subjunctive is always used, and the negative is often nē. This is because the construction originally meant only let (him come: I will, etc), and the mode is the subjunctive of desire (184, a). Examples: magnō mē metū liberābis dummodo mūrus intersit (Cic. Cat. I, 10), you will rid me of much fear if only there be (only let there be) a wall between us; modo nē (or nōn) discēdat eum vidēbō, if only he do not leave I shall see him.

**CLAUSES OF COMPARISON**

261. **RULE:** The subjunctive is used with ac sī, quam sī, quasi ut sī, tamquam, tamquam sī, velut, velut sī, as if, just as if.

The tenses follow the rule of sequence although the English translation might lead one to expect always the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive. Examples: currit quasi timeat, he runs as if he were afraid; cucurrit quasi timēret, he ran as if he were afraid.

**INDIRECT QUOTATION**

A. **INDIRECT QUESTIONS**

262. **GENERAL RULE:** The subjunctive is employed in all indirect questions:

An indirect question is a substantive clause introduced by an interrogative word. A direct question may be quoted in the exact words in which it was asked, as he asked "where are you going?"; or it may be quoted indirectly; that is, with such changes as make it a dependent clause, as he asked where I (or he) was going. In the latter form it is an indirect question.

263. **RULE:** Subjunctive questions (209, 210) retain the subjunctive in the indirect form.
The modal meaning is unchanged. Examples: (direct) quis veniat? who would come? (indirect) rogō quis veniat, I ask who would come; (direct) quid faciam? what am I to do? (indirect) rogāvi quid facerem, I asked what I was to do.

264. RULE: All indicative questions change to the subjunctive in the indirect form.

a. When the direct question is introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb (212), the same word serves to introduce the indirect form. Examples: (direct) quis vēnit? who came? (indirect) rogō quis vēnerit, I ask who came; (direct) ubi est? where is he? (indirect) mihi dīxit ubi esset, he told me where he was.

b. When the direct question can be answered by yes or no (213) the indirect form is introduced by num or -ne, whether (no difference in meaning). Sī is also used in the sense of to see whether or whether, Examples: (direct) venitne? is he coming? (indirect) rogō num veniat, or rogō veniatne, I ask whether he is coming; exspectāvit sī venirent, he waited to see whether they would come.

c. Indirect double questions are introduced by the same particles as direct double questions (214), but or not is expressed by necne, instead of annon. Examples: rogāvi utrum pugnāvisset, an fūgisset, I asked whether he had fought or run away; rogāvi utrum pugnāvisset necne, I asked whether he had fought or not.

B. INDIRECT DISCOURSE

265. Direct discourse repeats the exact words of a remark or a thought. Example: he said, "the soldiers are brave." Indirect discourse repeats a remark or thought with such changes in the words as to make of it a dependent construction. Example: he said that the soldiers were brave.

Indirect discourse may quote a long speech consisting of separate sentences, and periods may be used between these sentences; but, none the less, each sentence is to be thought of as depending on a verb of saying or thinking, which may be either expressed or implied at the beginning. When one speaks of a principal clause in indirect discourse one means a clause that was principal in the direct form.
Principal Clauses

266. **Declarative Sentences.** **RULE:** Every principal clause containing a statement requires the infinitive with subject accusative in indirect discourse (279).

But the subject is not always expressed. Example: miles est fortis, the soldier is brave, becomes dixit militem esse fortem, he said that the soldier was brave.

a. For the meanings of the infinitive tenses see 205. It follows from the statements there made that the present infinitive must be used for an original present indicative, the future for the future indicative, and the perfect for the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect indicative.

267. **Imperative Sentences.** **RULE:** Every sentence, containing a command or prohibition requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

This is a use of the subjunctive of desire; the negative is ne. Examples: ad Íd. Apr. revertimini, return about the thirteenth of April, becomes respondit:....ad Íd. Apr. reverterentur (I, 7, 19), he replied....: (that) they should return, etc.; is ita ēgit:....ne....dēspiceret (I, 13, 14), he should not despise (from an original nōli dēspicerē (219), do not despise).

268. **Interrogative Sentences.** I. **RULE:** An indicative question (209), if real (211), changes to the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

Example: respondit:....quid sibi vellet (I, 44, 24), what did he want (for an original quid tibi vis, what do you want?)?

II. **RULE:** An indicative question (209), if rhetorical (211), changes to the infinitive in indirect discourse.

This is because a rhetorical question is equivalent to a declarative sentence, which would require the infinitive (266) Example: respondit:....num memoriam dēpōnere posse (I, 14, 8), could he forget (for an original I can not forget [can I?]?)

III. **RULE.** A subjunctive question (209, 210), whether real or rhetorical, retains the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

Example: incūsāvit:....cūr quisquam iūdicāret (I, 40, 6), why should anyone suppose (for an original iūdicet. See 210. a)?
269. **Subordinate Clauses.** **RULE:** Every subordinate indicative or subjunctive clause of the direct form requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

Infinitives remain unchanged. Example: *incūsāvit:*.... *ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sé boni cōnstantia, propterea quod ...superāssent* (I, 40, 17), from which it could be seen what an advantage courage had, since they had conquered (for original iūdicārī, potest, habēat, superāvistis).

a. But a coordinate relative clause (173, a), being equivalent to a clause connected by et, or some other coordinating conjunction, sometimes has the infinitive in indirect discourse. See example under 269: since quō connects with the preceding sentence posse might have been a subjunctive.

**Tenses of the Subjunctive**

270. The tenses of the subjunctive regularly follow the rule of sequence, taking their time from the verb of *saying* or *thinking.*

a. **Repraesentātiō.** But after a past verb of *saying* or *thinking* the person who quotes very often drops the secondary sequence and uses the tenses of the original speaker, for the sake of vividness. It is best to use past tenses in translating. Example: *respondit:*.... *cum ea ita sint.... sēsē pācem esse factūrum* (I, 14, 16), *he replied.... that although these things were so he would make peace.*

b. After a perfect infinitive the secondary sequence must be used even if the infinitive depends on a primary verb of saying or thinking; for the perfect infinitive is past, even though it depends on a present. Example: *dicit Caesarem laudātum esse quod fortis esset,* he says that Caesar was praised because he was brave.

c. In changing from the direct form to a subjunctive of the indirect the following rule is helpful: *keep the stem of the original and follow the sequence.* So for example a present or future indicative becomes present subjunctive after *dicit,* imperfect after *dīxit,* in either case retaining the present stem; a perfect or future perfect indicative becomes perfect subjunctive after *dicit,* pluperfect after *dīxit,* in either case retaining the perfect stem.

**Other Changes**

271. If a pronoun of the first person changes to one of the third person it must be to some form of *suī* or *suus* (rarely of *ipse*). See 165.
All other changes of person or pronouns are the same as in English. Example: hunc militem laudō, I praise this soldier, may become dicō mé hunc militem laudāre, I say that I praise this soldier, or dicit sē illum militem laudāre, he says that he praises that soldier. Adverbs will be changed in the same way, now to then, here to there, etc. Vocatives will become nominatives or disappear.

Conditions in Indirect Discourse

272. I. The condition, since it is the dependent clause, must have its verb in the subjunctive. The tense follows the rule of sequence except that the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive of conditions contrary to fact never change, even after a primary tense.

II. The conclusion, since it is the principal clause, must have its verb in the infinitive. Indicative tenses change to infinitive tenses according to 266, a. The present and perfect subjunctive of less vivid (confident) future conclusions become the future infinitive, in -ūrus esse. The imperfect and pluperfect of conclusions contrary to fact become an infinitive not elsewhere used, in -ūrus fuisse.

Examples are needed for only the conditions contrary to fact, since all others follow the regular rules of sequence and indirect discourse. Si pugnāret eum laudārem, if he were fighting I should praise him, becomes, after either dicit or dixit, si pugnāret sē eum laudātūrum fuisse; si pugnāvisset eum laudāvissem, if he had fought I should have praised him, becomes, after either dicit or dixit, si pugnāvisset sē eum laudātūrum fuisse.

C. IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE

273. RULE: The subjunctive may be used in any subordinate clause to imply that it is a quotation.

This is the reason for the subjunctive in causal clauses with quod, etc. (244) It is also especially common in clauses depending on purpose clauses and substantive clauses of desire (purpose). Examples: Caesar frumentum quod essent pollicitū flāgitāre (I, 16, 1), Caesar kept demanding the grain which (as he said) they had promised; erat ei praeceptum nē proelium committeret nisi ipsius cōpiae visae essent (I, 23, 8), he had been commanded not to give battle unless Caesar’s forces should be seen (Caesar had said nisi meae copiae visae erunt, unless my forces shall be seen).
SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

274. RULE: Sometimes a verb that would otherwise stand in the indicative is put in the subjunctive only because it depends on another subjunctive or on an infinitive.

Example: cum certissimae rés accèderent, quod Helvētiōs trādūxis-set (I, 19, 1), since the most clearly proven facts were added (namely) that he had led the Helvetii.

THE INFINITIVE

For the tenses of the infinitive see 205.

A. WITHOUT SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

275. RULE: Many verbs which imply another action of the same subject take a present infinitive to complete their meaning.

Such are verbs meaning be able, be accustomed, attempt, begin, cease, dare, determine, ought, wish, and the like. But with some of these verbs a substantive clause of desire (purpose) is often used. See 228, a. Examples: ire potest, he can go; ire potuit, he could have gone, literally he was able to go; ire débet, he ought to go; cōnstituērunt comparāre (I, 3, 2), they determined to prepare.

a. As these verbs have no subject accusative, either expressed or understood, a predicate noun or adjective must agree with the nominative subject of the principal verb. Example: fortis esse cōnātur, he tries to be brave.

INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT

276. The present infinitive (rarely the perfect) without an expressed subject accusative may be used as the subject of the verbs mentioned in 278. With licet, it is permitted, the dative is commonly used instead of a subject accusative. Examples: ire oportet, one must go, literally to go is right; ire oportuit, one ought to have gone (205, a), literally to go was right; ei ire licuit, he might have gone, literally to go was permitted to him; ire necesse est, one must go.

a. Since a subject accusative is easily supplied in thought with these infinitives, a predicate noun or adjective is regularly in the accu-
APPENDIX

sative. But with licet a predicate is commonly dative. Examples: fortém esse oportet, one ought to be brave; virō licet esse fortī (fortem), a man may be brave, lit. it is permitted to a man to be brave.

B. WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

277. The infinitive with a subject accusative (123) forms an infinitive clause (186).

INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS SUBJECT

278. RULE: The present infinitive (rarely the perfect) with subject accusative may be used as the subject of such impersonal verbs as decet, libet, oportet, placet, praestat, visum est, and of est with a predicate noun or adjective.

But with some of these verbs the subjunctive is also used. See 228, a, and 229, c. As stated in 276, the subject accusative is not always expressed with these verbs, and with licet the dative is much more common. Examples: mē īre oportet, I ought to go; Caesarem īre oportuit, Caesar ought to have gone (205, a); mē īre ncesse est, I must go.

INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS OBJECT

279. RULE: The infinitive in all its tenses, with subject accusative, is used as the object of verbs of knowing, learning, and telling.

This is indirect discourse. For examples see 205 and 266.

a. When these verbs are made passive either the personal construction or the impersonal is possible; but the personal is the more common in the uncompounded tenses. Examples: (personal) Caesar vēnisse fertur, Caesar is said to have come; (impersonal) Caesarem vēnisse dictum est, it has been said that Caesar came.

280. Note the use of the accusative and infinitive with the following verbs.

a. Regularly with iubeō, order, vetō, forbid, patior, sinō, permit, which might be expected to take the substantive clause of desire (228, a). Example: militēs pugnāre iussit, he ordered the soldiers to fight.

b. With volō, nōlō, mālō, cupiō, regularly when the subject of the infinitive is not the same as that of the principal verb, sometimes when it is the same (compare 275). Examples: volō eum īre, I wish him to go; cupiō mē esse clémentem (Cic. Cat. I, 4), I desire to be merciful.
c. Regularly the accusative and future infinitive with verbs of *hoping* and *promising*. But *posse* may be used instead of a future infinitive, after verbs of *hoping*, because *possum* implies futurity. Examples: *id sēsē effectūrōs spērābant* (VII, 26, 4), lit. they hoped that they could accomplish this, = they hoped to accomplish this; *sēsē potūrī posse spērant* (I, 3, 22), they hoped that they could get possession.

C. WITH SUBJECT NOMINATIVE

281. Historical Infinitive. **RULE:** The infinitive is sometimes used with a nominative subject, as an equivalent for an independent past indicative.

Example: *cotidiē Caesar frūmentum flagitāre* (I, 16, 1), *Caesar daily demanded the grain.*

PARTICIPLES

282. Participles are verbal adjectives and are used either attributively or predicatively (157). Like other adjectives they may be used substantively (158). They may govern cases just as the finite verb does. For the meanings of their tenses see 205.

283. Participles are often used in Latin where English uses a coordinate or a subordinate clause. Only the meaning of the sentence shows what conjunction to use in translating. Examples: *victus fugit* may mean *he was conquered and fled*, when he had been conquered he fled, or because he had been conquered he fled; *victus fugiet* may be translated by similar clauses, or by *if he is conquered he will flee*. See also the examples under 150.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

284. The present active participle corresponds in meaning to the English present participle, but is much less frequently used. There is no present passive participle.

a. Therefore such forms as *seeing*, usually, and such forms as *being seen*, always, must be translated into Latin otherwise than by a present participle.

1. Present participles are often used in English where the action is really completed before the action of the verb: Latin then uses the perfect participle. For example, *seeing this he fled*, means *having seen*, etc., and may be translated *hōc visō* (150) *fugit*, lit. *this having been seen*. 
2. Present participles are very often used in English where Latin uses dum with the present indicative (234, a,) or cum with the imperfect (or pluperfect) subjunctive (242, a). Examples: he was killed (while) fighting, sometimes pugnāns occisus est, usually either dum pugnat occisus est, or cum pugnāret, occisus est; seeing this he fled, cum hoc vidisset fūgit.

b. Remember that he is running is always currit, never est currēns.

285. FUTURE PARTICIPLES

I. The future active participle is used by Caesar and Cicero only with some form of sum, making either the active periphrastic conjugation (75 and 196) or the future active infinitive. Example: praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant (I, 5, 5), lit. except what they were about to take with them, = except what they intended, etc.

II. The future passive participle has the same form as the gerundive (288), but in usage is quite distinct. It has two uses.

a. The future passive participle is used with the verb sum to form the passive periphrastic conjugation (76). This denotes duty or necessity; as laudandus est, he is to be praised, he must (ought, deserves to) be praised. The English form is usually active: remember that the Latin is passive. The agent is regularly dative (118). Intransitive verbs must be used impersonally. Examples: Caesar est mihi laudandus, lit. Caesar must be praised by me, = I must praise Caesar; mihi pugnandum fuit (impersonal), lit. it had to be fought by me, = I had to fight.

b. The future passive participle is sometimes used, to denote purpose, in agreement with the objects of verbs meaning to have (a thing done) or to undertake (to do a thing); especially cūrō, cause, have (literally take care), dō, give over, suscipiō, undertake. Examples: pontem faciendum cūrat (I, 13, 2), he had a bridge made; cōnsulibus senātus rem públicam défendendam dedit, the senate entrusted the defense of the state to the consuls.

PERFECT PARTICIPLE

286. Latin has a perfect passive participle, corresponding to such English forms as seen or having been seen, but no perfect active participle (but see a), corresponding to such English forms as having seen. The English perfect active participle with a direct object can usually
be translated into Latin by putting the English object in the ablative and using the passive participle in agreement with it (ablative absolute, 150). Examples: visus fūgit, having been seen he fled; Caesare visō fūgit, having seen Caesar he fled; literally, Caesar having been seen he fled. See also 150.

a. But the perfect passive form of deponent verbs usually (not always) has an active meaning, so that with these verbs the change described in 286 is not to be made. Example: Caesarem cōnspicātus fūgit, having seen Caesar he fled.

b. The perfect passive participle is sometimes used in agreement with the object of habeō. The meaning is nearly the same as that of the past active tenses of the simple verb; but the resulting fact is emphasized, rather than the past act. Example: magnās cōpiās coāctās habet, he has great forces (which he has) collected, or he has collected great forces (and still has them); while magnās cōpiās coēgit, he (has) collected great forces, leaves it uncertain whether he still has them.

c. Note the translation of such phrases as post urbem conditam, after the founding of the city; literally, after the city founded.

GERUND

287. The gerund is an active verbal noun and corresponds to the English verbal nouns in -ing. It governs the case that is governed by the finite forms of the verb; but see 289, II. Examples: fugiendi causa (99, a), for the sake of fleeing; ad persuādendum ei (115), for persuading him; urbem videndi causa, for the sake of seeing the city.

GERUNDIVE

288. The gerundive is a passive verbal adjective, and must agree with its noun in gender, number, and case. For the same form used as a future passive participle, see 285, II.

The gerundive construction is commonly used in place of the gerund with a direct object. In this construction the English direct object takes the Latin case which the gerund would have, and the gerundive agrees with it. There is no exact English equivalent; the translation is the same as for a gerund with a direct object. For example, in the gerund construction urbem videndi causa, videndi is the genitive modifying causa, and urbem is the direct object of videndi. In the gerundive construction urbis videndae causa, urbis is the genitive mod-
ifying causā and videndae agrees with urbis, literally for the sake of the city to be seen. Both alike must be translated for the sake of seeing the city.

CHOICE OF CONSTRUCTION

289. I. RULE: If the verb is intransitive the gerund must be used.

The gerundive is passive, and intransitive verbs can be used in the passive only impersonally. Example: ei crēdendī causā, for the sake of believing him (115).

a. But the gerundive of ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vēscor (145) is used. Example: spēs potiundī oppidī (II, 7, 5), hope of taking the town.

II. RULE: If the verb is used transitively the gerundive construction is more common, and must always be used after a preposition.

A direct object is sometimes used with a gerund in the genitive or the ablative without a preposition. Examples: (always) ad effēminandōs animōs (I, 1, 8), to weakening the courage; (usually) urbis videndae causā, for the sake of seeing the city; sometimes urbem videndī causā, for the sake of seeing the city.

USE OF CASES

290. Neither the gerund nor the gerundive is used as the subject or direct object of verbs.

291. The Genitive is used with nouns and adjectives. With causā and grātiā it forms a common expression of purpose. Examples: bellandī cupiditās, a desire of fighting; Caesaris (or Caesarem) videndi cupidus, desirous of seeing Caesar; bellandī causā vēnit, he came to fight (for the sake of fighting).

a. If the substantive is a personal or reflexive pronoun, an irregular construction is used,—meī, tuī, sui, nostrī, or vestrī with a genitive in -ī (sometimes called gerund, sometimes gerundive), regardless of gender and number. Example: sui cōnservandī causā, for the sake of saving themselves. The usual gerund would be sē cōnservandī; the gerundive sūl cōnservandōrum.

292. The Dative is very rare.

293. The Accusative is used with a few prepositions, especially ad expressing purpose. Examples: parātus ad proficiscendum, ready to set
out; ad Caesarem videndum (gerundive, see 289, II), venit, he came to see Caesar.

294. The Ablative is used, with the prepositions ab, de, ex, in, and as the ablative of means or cause. Examples: in quaerendo reperiēbat, in questioning (them) he learned; lapidibus subministrandis (III, 25, 4), by furnishing stones.

THE SUPINE

295. RULE: The Accusative of the supine is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.

It may govern a direct object. Examples: grātulátum vēnērunt (I, 30, 2), they came to offer congratulations; lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium (I, 11, 4), they sent envoys to ask aid.

296. RULE: The Ablative of the supine is used as an ablative of specification (149).

It does not take a direct object. The supine of the verbs audīō, cognōscō, dicō, faciō, videō, is most commonly found; and with the adjectives facilis, difficilis, crédibilis, incrēdibilis, iūcundus, inīucundus, optimus, mīrabilis, and the expressions fās est, nefās est, opus est. Example: perfacile factū (I, 3, 16) lit. very easy as to the doing, = very easy to do.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR

297. The Months. The Latin names of months are adjectives, not nouns as are ours. In the times of Caesar and Cicero the names of the months were Iānuārius (-a, -um), Februārius, Mārtius, Aprilis (-e), Maius, Iūnius, Quīntilis, Sextilis, September (-bris, -bre), Octōber, November, and December. Later Quīntilis was changed to Iūlius, in honor of Julius Caesar, and Sextilis to Augustus, in honor of the emperor Augustus.

Before 46 B. C., that is till near the death of Caesar and Cicero, March, May, July, and October had 31 days, February had 28, and each of the others had 29. In 46 B. C. Caesar reformed the calendar and gave the months their present number of days.

298. Calends, Nones, and Ides. The Romans counted the days backwards from three points in each month, the Calends, the Nones, and the Ides, instead of forward from the first as we do; that is, they called
the days "the third before the Ides", "the fourth before the Calends," etc.

The *Calends* (Kalendae,—ārum, f. pl.) were always the first of the month. The *Nones* (Nōnae, -ārum, f. pl.) were the seventh, the *Ides* (Īdūs, -uum, f. pl.) the fifteenth of March, May, July, and October. In all other months they were the fifth and thirteenth.

299. Method of Reckoning. In reckoning dates they counted both the first day and the last day; for example, while we should speak of Monday as the second day before Wednesday, a Roman would have counted Wednesday as one, Tuesday as two, and Monday as three, and would thus have called Monday the third day before Wednesday.

In counting back from the Calends, remember that the Calends do not belong to the month in which the required day is. Add one to the number of days in the preceding month, then reckon backwards, counting both ends as usual.

300. Method of Expressing Dates. An idiomatic formula is commonly used, which can neither be parsed nor translated literally; for example a. d. IV. Īd. Iān. = ante diem quartum Īdūs Iānuāriās. The logical, but less usual form is diē quārtō ante Īdūs Iānuāriās, on the fourth day before the Ides of January. For examples take the dates:

(LATIN-ENGLISH) (ENGLISH-LATIN)

Jan. 1 = Kal. Iān.


VOCABULARY

In this vocabulary the figures 1, 2, and 4, following verbs, mean that the principal parts are formed like those of *laudō*, *moneō*, and *audiō*, respectively; or, if the verb is deponent, like those of *hortor*, *vereor*, and *partior* (App. 73).

To all words occurring in the first four books of the text, numbers are affixed, showing the book and chapter of first occurrence. If the word occurs first in chapters 30-54 of Book I, the place of its second occurrence is also given. Words unaccompanied by reference numbers do not occur in the first four books.

Words in Italics are purely explanatory, and are never intended as definitions for translation purposes.

After geographical names letters are given, enclosed in parentheses. They correspond to letters on the margin of the general map, and thus serve as an index to the position of the names on the map.

**Pronunciation of Proper Names.** It is generally agreed that the English pronunciation of proper names should be used in translation; but as no modern grammar gives the rules for the English pronunciation, the greatest confusion exists in practice. Therefore the pronunciation of all proper names is indicated in parentheses.

To indicate the sounds of vowels, diacritical marks are used with the following values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>diacritical mark</th>
<th>sound</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ā</td>
<td>a in mat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ā</td>
<td>a in mate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ā</td>
<td>a in arm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ā</td>
<td>a in Cuba.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ē</td>
<td>e in met.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ē</td>
<td>e in me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ē</td>
<td>e in fern.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ē</td>
<td>e in icy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ō</td>
<td>o in note.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ō</td>
<td>o in or.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ō</td>
<td>o in us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ŭ</td>
<td>u in rude.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

y has the sounds of i, and is used in indicating pronunciation only as the consonant (= y in youth), or to indicate an i sound so rapidly uttered that it is barely distinguishable from the consonant y, as in Lūcius = lū/shyūs.

It must be understood, however, that unaccented syllables are so hastily pronounced that their vowel sounds are usually somewhat indistinct.

The main accent is indicated by a single mark (‘), the lighter, secondary accent by a double mark (‘‘).

In giving tribe names it is best to use always the Latin forms of the names (Nervii, Helvetii, etc.), rather than the anglicized forms (Nervians, Helvetians, etc.). Most of these anglicized forms have no warrant in good English usage, none has much warrant. The few that are possible are given in the vocabulary, but are not recommended for use. Modern geographical names may well be used, so far as they are familiar.
### VOCABULARY


*a.* abbr. for ante. I. 6.

ää (before consonants), ab (before vowels and some consonants), abs (before tē, and in some compounds), prep. with abl., originally denoting separation; (1) of place, persons, time, etc., from, away from, from the vicinity of; (2) denoting in some phrases, at, in, on, on the side of; ā tergō, in the rear: (3) with expressions of measure, away off; ab milibus passuum duobus, two miles away: (4) with the pass. voice often denoting the agent, as the person from whom the action comes, by: (5) variously translated in other relations, from, by, in respect to, after. I. 1.

*abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum*, tr. [dō, put], put away, remove, withdraw, hide, conceal. I. 12.

*abdūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum*, tr. [dūcō, lead], lead away, draw or carry off, withdraw. I. 11.

*abeō, -ire, -ii, -itum*, intr. [ēō, go. App. 84], go away, depart.

*abiciō, -icerē, -āeciī, -iectum*, tr. [iacī, throw. App. 7], throw away or down; hurl. IV. 15.

*abīēs, -ietis, f., fir tree.*

*ablūngō, -lun gere, -lūnxiī, -iunctum*, tr. [iungō, join], disjoin, detach.

*abs, see ā.*

*abscidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cisum*, tr. [caedō, cut], cut off or lop off, tear off or away. III. 14.

*absēns, -euntis, adj. [pres. part. of absūm, be absent], absent, at a distance. I. 32; III. 17.

*absimilis, -e, adj. [similis, like], unlike. III. 14.*

*absistō, -sistere, -stītī, —, intr. [sistō, stand], keep away from.*

*abstineō, -tinere, -tinui, -tentum*, intr. [tenēō, hold], keep aloof from, refrain; spare. I. 22.

*abstrahō, -tranere, -trāxi, -tractum*, tr. [trahō, draw], to drag away, carry away by force. III. 2.

*absum, abesse, āfui, intr. [sum, be. App. 78], be away from, be absent or distant, be wanting or free from. I. 1.

*abundō, 1, intr. [unda, wave], overflow; abound.*

*ac, see atque.*

*accēdō, -cédere, -cessi, -cessum*, intr. [ad+cedō, go], approach, draw near to, arrive at, come to; to be added; accēdēbat, it was added. I. 19.

*accelerō, 1, intr. [ad+celerō, hasten], hasten.*

*acceptus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of accipió, accept], acceptable, beloved by (with dative). I. 3.*

*accidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, intr. [ad+cadō, fall], fall to or upon; fail, happen, fall to the lot of, occur; ac cidit, it happens. I. 14.*

*accidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cisum*, tr. [ad+caedō, cut], cut into.

*acci piō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum*, tr. [ad+capiō, take], take or receive to one's self, accept; experience, suffer; learn, hear, take. I. 14.

*accūlis, -e, adj. [ad+clīvus, a slope], sloping, upward, rising, ascending. II. 29.*

*accūlivitās, -tātis, f. [accūlis, ascending], ascent, slope. II. 18.*

*Accō, -ōnis, m., Acco (ākō), a chief of the Senones.*

*accommodātus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of accommodō, adapt], fit, adapted, appropriate. III. 13.*

*accommodō, 1, tr., adjust or adapt to one's self, fit or put on. II. 21.*

*accuratē, adv., carefully.*
accurrò, -currere, -currì or -cucurri, -currsum, intr. [ad+curreo, run], run or hasten to. I, 22.

accisò, I, tr. [ad+causa, cause, case], bring a case or charge against; blame, censure, accuse. I, 16.

acerbè, adv. [acerbus, harsh], harshly, with pain.

acerbitás, -tātis, / - [acerbus, harsh], harshness, rigour.

acerbus, -a, -um, adj. harsh, biting, severe.

acerrimè, see acriter.

acervus, -i, m., a heap, mass. II, 32.

acicès, -ēi (old gen., acie), f., sharp point or edge of a weapon; sharp or keen sight, glance; a line (as forming an edge), battle line; prima, the van; media, the centre; novissima, the rear. I, 22.

acquirò, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitum, tr. [ad+quaerō, seek], seek or gain in addition, win, acquire.

acriter, adv. [ācer, sharp], sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously. Comp. acrius; sup. acerrimè (App. 40). I, 26.

actūarius, -a, -um, adj. [āgō, move, drive], fitted with oars.

actus, see agō.

acūtus, -a, -um, adj. [nf. part. of acūō, sharpen], sharpened, pointed.

ad, prep. with acc., originally denoting motion toward: (1) denoting motion, to, toward, against, to the vicinity of; (2) denoting position, at, by, near; (3) denoting purpose, with gerund and gerundive, to, for; (4) with numerals, up to, about; (5) of time, up to, until; at, on; (6) variously translated in other relations, at, after, for, to, according to, in the eyes of, among. I, 1.

adactus, see adigō.

adaequò, I, tr. [aēquō, make equal], make level with or equal to, equal; keep up with. I, 48; II, 32.

adamò, I, tr. [amō, love], love strongly, covet. I, 31.

addō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr. [dō, put], place on; add.

addúcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr. [dūcō, lead], lead or draw to, bring to; induce, influence. I, 3.

ademptus, see adimō.

adeō, adv. [eō, thither], to such an extent, so much, so very, so; in fact.

adeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, tr. and intr. [eō, go]. App. 84], go to, approach, visit; assail, attack. II, 7.

adepus, see adipiscor.

adequitū, I, intr. [equitō, ride; equus, horse], ride up. I, 46.

adhaereō, -haerēre, -haesi, -haesum, intr. [haereō, stick], cling or stick to.

adhibeō, 2, tr. [habeō, have], bring to, bring in, summon; employ, use. I, 20.

adhortor, 1, tr. [hortor, encourage], encourage, incite.

adhuc, adv. [hūc, hither], hitherto, as yet. III, 22.

adiaceō, -iacère, -iacuí, —, intr. [iacēō, lie], lie near or close to, adjoin.

Adiatunnus, -i, m., Adiatunnus (aēdi-a-tūn'us), the leader of the Sotiates. III, 22.

adićiō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, tr. [iāciō, throw. App. 7], throw to, throw up, hurl; add. III, 1.

adigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr. [agō, move], drive or bring by force, move; thrust, plunge, hurl (of weapons); bind (by an oath). II, 21.

adimō, -imere, -ēmi, -emptum, tr. [emō, take], take away, remove.

adipiscor, -ipiscī, -eptus sum, tr., attain to, gain.

aditus, -ūs, m. [adeō, go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. I, 43; II, 15.

adiūdicō, 1, tr. [lūdicō, judge], adjudge, assign.

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxi, -iūnectum, tr. [iungō, join], join to, attach, unite; add. III, 2.

adiūtor, -ōris, m. [adiuvō, aid], helper, abettor, assistant.

adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūnectum, tr. [iuvō, aid], aid, help, assist; contribute to, support. II, 17.

administer, -trī, m. [minister, servant], attendant; priest.

administrō, I, tr. [minister, servant],
serve, attend, wait upon; manage, guide. II, 20.

admiror, I, tr. [miror, wonder at], wonder at, be surprised at, admire. I, 14.

admittó, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [mittó, send], admit; commit; incur; let go; give reins to (a horse). I, 22.

admodum, adv. [modus, measure], up to the measure; very much, very; with num., fully; with neg., at all. III, 13.

admoned, adsum, adventus, -us, m. [pres. part. of adoléscó, grow up], youth, young man. I, 47; II, 7.

adolescentia, -ae, f. [adolescéns, youth], youthfulness, youth. I, 20.

adolescentulus, -i, m. [dim. of adolescenténs, youth], a very young man. III, 21.

adventus, -us, m. [veniò, come], coming, arrival, approach. I, 7.

adversariús, -ri, m. [adversus, turned against], antagonist, foe.

adversus, -a, um, adj. [pf. part. of advertó, turn to], turned to or against; opposite, fronting; adverse, unfavorable; unsuccessful; adversó flúmine, up the river; in adversum ós, full in the face. I, 18.

adversus, prep. w. acc. [adversus, turned against], opposite to, against. IV, 14.

advocó, 1, tr. [vocó, call], call to, summon.

advoló, 1, intr. [voló, fly], fly to or against, rush on or at.

aedificium, -di, n. [aedificó, build], building, house. I, 5.

aedificó, 1, tr. [aedéns, house + fació, make], build, construct. III, 9.


Aemilius, -li, m., Aemilius (e-mil'i-us), I, 23.

eaquáliter, adv. [aequalis, equal; aequus, equal], equally, evenly. II, 18.

aequinoctium, -ti, n. [aequus, equal +nox, night], the equinox. IV, 36.

aequitás, -tátis, f. [aequus, equal], equality; fairness, equity; animi aequitás, contentment. I, 40.

aequó, 1, tr. [aequus, equal], make even or equal, equalize. I, 25.

aequus, -a, -um, adj., even, level, equal; equitable, impartial, just; aequus animus, equanimity, composure. I, 43; III, 17.

aerária, -ae, f. [aes, copper], copper mine. III, 21.

aes, aeris, n. copper; anything made of copper, coin, money; aes allēnum, another's money, debt. IV, 31.

aestás, -tátis, f., summer. I, 54; II, 2.

aestheticó, -onis, f. [aestimó, value], valuation.

aestimó, 1, value, reckon, estimate, regard, consider. III, 20.

aestivus, -a, -um, adj. [aestus, heat; aestas, summer], of summer, summer.

aestuárium, -ri, n. [aestus, tide], low marsh-land, tidal inlet, estuary, marsh. II, 28.

aestus, -ús, m., heat; boiling, surging; tide; minuente aestá, at ebb tide. III, 12.

aestás, aestatis, f., period of life, age. II, 16.

aeternus, -a, -um, adj., everlasting.

afferó, afferre, attuli, allátum, tr. [ad + feró, carry. App. 81], bring, take or carry to, present; occasion, cause; bring forward, allege; report. I, 43; II, 1.

affició, -ficere, -feci, -fictum, tr. [ad + fació, do], do to, treat, affect; magnó dolóre afficiere, to annoy greatly. I, 2.

affigó, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, tr. [ad + figó, fix], fasten to. III, 14.
affingō, -fingere, -finxi, -fectum, tr. [ad + fingo, invent], invent in addition.

affinitās, -tātis, f., alliance by marriage, relationship. I, 18.

affirmātiō, -ōnis, f. [affirmō, affirm; ad + firmus, strong], declaration, assertion.

affixus, see affīgō.

afflictō, 1, tr. [freq. of affigō, strike against; damage], great, shatter, injure; harass, distress. III, 12.

affigō, -figere, -fixi, -fectum, tr., strike against; overthrow; damage, injure. IV, 31.

affore, fut. inf. of adsum.

Āfriicus, -ī, m., Africus (āf'ri-kūs), the southwest wind.

āfuī, see absūm.

Agedincum, -ī, n. (Be), Agedincum (ā'ged-īn'kūm), now Sens.

ager, agri, m., field, land; district, territory. I, 2.

ager, aggeris, m., material for earthworks, earth; embankment, mound; rampart. II, 12.

aggredior, -grēdī, -gressus sum, tr. [ad + gradiōn, step], advance to or against; attack. I, 12.

aggredgō, 1, tr. [ad + grēx, flock], unite in a flock; assemble; join, attach. IV, 26.

agītō, 1, tr. [freq. of agō, move; discuss], discuss.

agmen, -inis, n. [agō, move], a moving body; a marching column; army; in agmine, on the march; primum agmen, the van; novissimum or extrēmum agmen, the rear. I, 15.

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, tr., set in motion; drive (of animals); move forward, advance (of military works); do, transact, carry on (of business); discuss, speak; hold (conventum); give, render (grātiās); plead (causam or rem); quod agitur, the matter in hand; rēs agitur, something is at stake. I, 13.

agricultūra, -ae, f. [ager, land + colō, cultivate], cultivation of the land, agriculture. III, 17.

alacer, -cris, -cre, adj., lively, eager, active, ready, joyous. III, 19.

alacritās, -tātis, f. [alacer, lively], liveliness, ardor. I, 41; IV, 24.

ālārius, -a, -um, adj. [āla, wing], on the wing; pl. as noun, auxiliaries. I, 51.

albus, -a, -um, adj., white.

alcēs, -īs, f., elk.

Alesia, -ae, f. (Cf), Alesia (a-le'zhya), now Alise Ste. Réfine.

alīās, adv. [alius, another], at another place, elsewhere; at another time; alīās . . . alīās, at one time . . . at another. II, 29.

alēnō, 1, tr. [alēnus, of another], make another's or foreign, estrange, alienate; alēnātā mente, maddened.

alēnūs, -a, -um, adj. [alius, other], of or belonging to another, another's; strange, alien, unfamiliar; unfavorable; foreign to the purpose; aēs alēnum, debt; alēnissimi, entire strangers. I, 15.

alīō, adv. [alius, other], to another place, person or thing, elsewhere.

aliquamdiū, adv. [aliquis, some + diū, long], for some time. I, 40.

aliquandō, adv. [aliquis, some], at some time, at length, finally.

aliquantō, adv. [aliquantus, some], somewhat, a little. III, 13.

aliquantus, -a, -um, adj., some, considerable; neut. as noun with partitive gen., a good deal, not a little.

aliquis, -quid, and aliquis, -qua, -quod, indef. pron. [quis, who. App. 62, q], some one, something; anyone, anything, any. I, 14.

aliquot, indecl. num. adj. [quot, how many], some, a few, several. III, 1.

aliter, adv. [alius, other], otherwise;

aliter . . . ac, otherwise . . . than. II, 19.

alius, -a, -ud, gen. alius (App. 32), another, other; alius . . . alius, one . . . another; in pl., some . . . others. I, 1.

allātus, see afferēr.

alliciō, -licere, -lexi, -lectum, tr., attract, allure, entice.

Allobrogēs, -um, m. (Dfg), the Allo-
animal, -ális, n. [anima, breath of life], a living creature, animal.

ampliéd, adv. [amplus, large], largely;
animus, -i, m., soul, spirit; mind, intellect; feelings; character; resolution, courage; animi causa, for amusement; in animó habère, intend. I, 1.

annótinus, -a, -um, adj. [annus, year], of last year.
annus, -i, m., year. I, 3.
annuus, -a, -um, adj. [annus, year], yearly. I, 16.

änser, -eris, m., goose.
ante (1) adv., before, above, previously; (2) prep. w. acc., before, in advance of. I, 3.

anteā, adv. [ante, before + -ēa, this], formerly, before, previously, once; always with a verb. I, 17.

antecédō, -cēderē, -cessī, -cessum, tr. and intr. [cēdō, go], go before, precede, excel, surpass. III, 8.

antecursor, -ōris, m. [currō, run], forerunner; pl., vanguard.
anteferō, -ferre, -tuli, -tatum, tr. [ferō, bear]. App. 81], bear or carry before; prefer.

antemna, -ae, f., sail-yard. III, 14.
antepōnē, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], place before; prefer. IV, 22.

antevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, tr. [vertō, turn], put before, prefer.
antiquitās, adv. [antiquus, ancient], from early or ancient times; long ago, anciently. II, 4.
antiquus, -a, -um, adj. [ante, before], former, old, ancient. I, 18.

Antistius, -tī, m., Gaius Antistius Regius (gā’/yūs ān’-tī’-ūs rē’-jī’-nūs), one of Caesar’s lieutenants.

Antōnius, -nī, m., Marcus Antonius (mār’kūs ān-tō’-nī’-ūs), one of Caesar’s lieutenants, afterward triumvir.

Ap., abbr. for Appius (āp’i-ūs), a Roman praenomen.
aperiō, -perire, -perui, -pertum, tr., open, expose.
apertē, adv. [aperitus, open], openly, manifestly.
apertus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of aperiō], open, exposed; ab latere apertō, on the unprotected flank. I, 25.
apollō, -inis, m., Apollo (a-pōl’ō),
aparē, i, tr. [ad+parō, prepare], prepare, make ready.
apellō, i, tr., accost, address, call by name, name, call. I, 1.
apellō, -pellerē, -puli, -pulsum, tr. [ad+pellō, drive], bring to land; bring together. III, 12.
appetō, -petere, -petī, -petīm, tr. and intr. [ad+petō, seek], seek for, aim at; encroach upon; approach, be near. I, 40.
applīcō, i, tr. [ad+plīcō, fold], apply; se applicāre, lean.
apportō, i, tr. [ad+portō, carry], bring.
apprōbō, i, tr. [ad+prōbō, approve], favor, approve.
apprōpinquō, i, intr. [ad+propinquus, near], come near or close, approach. II, 10.
appulsus, see appellō.
aprīliō, abbr. for Aprilis, -e, adj., of April, April. I, 6.
aptus, -a, -um, adj., fitted, suited, adapted. III, 13.
apud, prep. with acc. at, among, near, with; (with persons) at the house of, in the presence of. I, 2.
aqua, -ae, f., water. IV, 17.
aquātiō, -onis, f. [aqua, water], getting water. IV, 11.
aquila, -ae, f., an eagle; a standard, (as the aquila was the chief standard of the legion). IV, 25.
aquilēia, -ae, f., Aquileia (āk’wī-lē’-yā), a city of Cisalpine Gaul. I, 10.
aquilifer, -eri, m. [aquila, eagle+ferō, bear], standard-bearer.
aquitānus, -a, -um, adj., of Aquitania, Aquitanian; pl. as noun, the Aquitani (āk’wī-ťā-nī’), possibly Aquitanians, inhabiting southwestern Gaul. I, 1.
arar, Ararēs (acc. -im), m. (CDfg), the Arar (ā’rār), the modern Saone. I, 12.
arbiter, -trī, m., umpire, arbitrator.
arbitrium, -rī, n. [arbiter, umpire], decision or judgment (of the arbiter); opinion, discretion, pleasure. I, 36.
ARBITROR

arbitor, i, tr. and intr. [arbiter, umpire], decide; think, believe. I, 2.

arbor, -oris, f., tree. II, 17.

arcessō, -ere, -ivi, -itum, summon, send for, invite. I, 31; II, 20.

ărdeo, ārdere, ārī, ārsum, intr., burn, blaze; be inflamed, be eager.

Ardenuu, -ae, f. (ABfg), Ardenua (ār′nū-ēn′tā), better the Ardennes, a vast forest of northeast Gaul.

ardusus, -a, -um, adj., high, steep; difficult. II, 33.

Arecomici, Arecomici (ār′nō-kōm′i-sī), see Volcae.

Arecomicae, -ārum, f. (Bbcd), adj., maritime, Aremoricam.

argentum, -i, n., silver; silver plate or coin.

gilla, -ae, f., white clay.

āridus, -a, -um, [adv. āreō, be dry], dry; neut. as noun, dry land. IV, 24.

āriēs, ārietus, m., a ram; battering-ram, a long beam for demolishing walls; one end of it was capped with iron in the form of a ram’s head; brace, buttress. II, 32.

Ariovistus, -ī, m., Ariovistus (ār′vī-nō′sī-tūs), a king of the Germans. I, 31; IV, 16.

Ariistus, -ī, m., Marcus Aristius (mār′-kūs a-rīs′tī-ūs), a military tribune.

arma, -ōrum, n., pl., arms; equipment; by metonymy, battle, war. I, 4.

armamenta, -ōrum, n. [armō, arm], implements, gear; tackle or rigging of a ship. III, 14.

armaūra, -ae, f. [armō, arm], armor, equipment; levīs armātūrāe, light-armed. II, 10.

armō, i, tr. [arma, arms], arm, equip; pass., arm one’s self; armātus, pf. part., as adj., armed; armāti, as noun, armed men. I, 40; II, 4.

Arpinēius, -ī, m., Gaius Arpinelus (gā′-yūs ār′pinē’-yūs), a knight in Caesar’s army.

arrīpiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, tr. [ad+ripiō, seize] take or seize hurriedly.

arrogant, -ae, adv. [arrogāns, arrogant], arrogantly, presumptuously. I, 40.

arrogantia, -ae, f. [arrogāns, arro-

gant], arrogance, haughtiness, presumption, insolence. I, 33.

ars, artis, -f., skill, art; pl., the arts.

artē, adv. [artus, close], closely, firmly. IV, 17.

articulus, -ī, m., joint.

artifactum, -ī, n. [arts, art + faciō, make], a trade, handicraft; artifice, trick.

artus, -ā, -um, adj., close, dense, thick.

Arvernus, -ī, m. (CDer), an Arvernian; pl., the Arverni (ār-vernī), possibly the Arverniians. I, 31.

arx, arcis, f., citadel, fortress, stronghold. I, 38.

ascendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scensum, tr. and intr. [ad+scendo, climb], climb up, ascend, mount, climb. I, 21.

ascensus, -ūs, m. [ascendō, climb up], a climbing up, ascending; approach, ascent. I, 21.

asciscō, -sciscere, -scivi, -scitum, tr. [ad+sciscō, approve], approve; admit or receive (as allies). I, 5.

aspectus, -ūs, m. [aspīcīō, look at], look; appearance, mien, aspect.

asper, -era, -erum, adj., rough, violent.

assiduus, -a, -um, adj. [ad+sēdeō, sit], close at hand, ever present; continual, incessant, constant.

assistō, assistere, astīti, —, intr. [ad+sistō, stand], stand by or near.

assuēfaciō, -facere, -feci, -factum, tr., accustom, train. IV, 1.

assuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, intr. [suēscō, become accustomed], become accustomed.

at, conj., but, at least. I, 43; II, 23.

atque, ac, (ac only before consonants, atque before vowels and consonants), conj., usually adds something especially important, while et usually associates objects of equal importance; and also, and even, and; after words denoting a comparison or difference, than, as, from. I, 1.

Atrebas, -bātīs, m., (Ae), an Atrebatic; pl., the Atrebates (āt′rē-ō-bā’tēz). II, 4.

Ātrius, -rī, m., Quintus Atrius (kwīn′-tūs ā′trǐ-ūs), one of Caesar’s officers.
attexō, -texere, -texui, -textum, tr. [ad+texō, weave], weave on.
attingō, -tingere, -tigē, -tactum, tr. [ad+tangō, touch], touch or border on, reach, extend to, arrive at, attain.
attribuō, -tribuere, -tribui, -tribu-tum, tr. [ad+tribuō, assign], assign, allot. III. 1.
attullī, see afferō.
Atuatucā, -ae, f. (Af), Atuatucā (ätvũ-ätũ-kã), a stronghold of the Eburones.
Atuatucī, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Atuatucī (ätvũ-ätũ-si). II. 4.
auctor, -ōris, m. [augeō, increase], one who produces, creates, or originates; promoter, instigator, adviser, author; auctor esse, advise. III. 17.
auctōritās, -tātis, f. [auctor, producer], influence, character, authority, reputation. I. 3.
auctus, -a, -um, adj. [př. pārt. of augėō, increase], increased, advanced. I. 43.
audācia, -ae, f. [audāx, bold], boldness, daring, courage; presumption, effrontery. I. 18.
audācter, adv. [audāx, bold], boldly, fearlessly, daringly. Comp., audāci-us; sup., audācissimē. I. 16.
audeō, audēre, audē, audēsum (App. 74), instr., dare, risk, venture. I. 18.
audiō, 4, tr., hear, hear of; dictō audi-ēns, obedient. I. 39; II. 12.
audītō, -ōnis, f. [audiō, hear], hearing, hearsay, report. IV. 5.
augeō, augēre, auxī, auxītum, tr., increase, augment, enhance, add to. I. 18.
Aulerci, -ōrum, m., the Aulerci (aw-lër`si), a Gallic people divided into four branches. (1) Aulerci Eburovices (čvyũ-rō-všís), (Bd), III. 17; (2) Aulerci Cenomani (sě-nôm`a-ni), (Bd); (3) Aulerci Brannovices (bránum-o-všís), location unknown; (4) Aulerci Diablintes (di`bũ-lĭm`těs), (Bc), II. 34.
aureus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum, gold], of gold, gold.
auriga, -ae, m., charioteer. IV. 33.
auris, -is, f., ear.

Aurunculēius, -i, m., Lucius Aurunculēius Cotta (lũ′shyũs aw-rǔng′kũ-lē′yũs kō̅́t′̄a), one of Caesar's lieutenants. II. 11.
Auscī, -ōrum, m. (Ed), the Auscī (aw′-sī). III. 27.
ausus, see audeō.
aut, conj., used where the difference is important or exclusive, or; aut ... aut, either ... or. I. 1.
autem, conj., but (a weak adversative); however, on the other hand; now; moreover. I. 2.
autumnus, -i, m., autumn.
auxī, see augeō.
auxiliāris, -e adj. [auxilium, aid], auxiliary; m. pl. as noun, auxiliary troops. III. 25.
auxiliōr, l, intr. [auxilium, aid], give aid, help, assist, render assistance. IV. 29.
auxilium, -lĭ, n. [augeō, increase], help, assistance, aid; pl., auxiliary troops; reinforcements. I. 11.
Avaricēnsis, -e, adj., of Avaricum.
Avaricum, -i, n. (Ce), Avaricum (av′-ăr′ıkīm), the stronghold of the Bituriges, now Bourges.
avāritia, -ae, f. [avārus, greedy], greed, covetousness. I. 40.
āvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, tr. [vehō, carry], carry away, take away.
āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, tr. [vertō, turn], turn away, from or away, turn aside, turn back, repulse; př. part. as adj., with back turned. I. 16.
avis, -is, f., bird. IV. 10.
avus, -i, m., grandfather. I. 12.
Axona, -ae, m. (Bf), the Axona (ák′ső-n̄a), a river, now the Aisne. II. 5.

B.

Bacēnis, -is, f. (Ahi), Bacenis (bā-sě-ni-ns), the forest Bacenis, between the Cherusci and the Suebi.

Baculus, -i, m., Publius Sextius Bacu-lus (pu̇b′lĭ-ũs seks̃t̃-ũs bāk′ũ-lũs). II. 25.

Baliāris, -e, adj., Balearic (bā′lě-ār′ık), (i.e., coming from the islands Ma-jorca and Minorca). II. 7.
balteus, -i, m., sword belt.
Balventius, -tī, m., Titus Balventius (tī'tūs bāl-vēn'tī shūs), one of Caesar's centurions.

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign (to Greeks and Romans), uncivilized, barbarous; pl. as nouns, savages, barbarians. I, 31; II, 35.

Basilius, -i, m., Lucius Minucius Basilus (bāl'sī'yūs mi-nū'shūs bās'i-lēs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Batavi, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Batavi (bāt'ā-vē), or Belgians. IV, 10.

Belgae, -ārum, m. (Abdefg), the Belgae (bēl'jē), or Belgians. I, 1.

Belgium, -gi, n. (Abdefg), Belgium (bēl'jē-yūm), the country of the Belgae. II, 10.

bellicosus, -a, -um, adj. [bellum, war], of or full of war, warlike. I, 10.

bellicus, -a, -um, adj. [bellum, war], of or in war, military.

bellō, 1, intr. [bellum, war], make or carry on war, wage war. II, 2.

Bellocvaci, -ōrum, m. (Bde), the Bellocvaci (bēl-lōk'vā-sē). II, 4.

bellum, -i, n., war. I, 1.

bene, adv. [bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully. Comp., melius; sup., optimē. I, 45; III, 18.

beneficium, -cl, n. [bene, well + -faciō, do], well-doing, benefit, favor, kindness. I, 9.

benevolentia, -ae, f. [bene, well + -volō, wish], good-will, kindness.

Bibracte, -is, n. (Cef), Bibracte (bī-brāk'-tē), the chief town of the Haedui. I, 23.

Bibrax, -ctis, f. (Be), Bibrax (bī-brāks), a town of the Remi. II, 6.

Bibroci, -ōrum, m. (Ac), the Bibroci (bī-brō-ki),

biduum, -ī, n. [bis, twice + diēs, day], space or period of two days, two days. I, 23.

biennium, -ni, n. [bis, twice + annus, year], two years. I, 3.

Bigerrionēs, -um, m. (Ecd), the Bigerriones (bī-jērr'i-ō néz or bēl'jē-ri-ō néz). III, 27.

bīnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [bis, twice], each, two aplece, by twos. III, 15.

bīpedālis, -e, adj. [bis, twice + pēs, foot], of two feet, two feet thick. IV, 17.

bipertītō, adv. [bis, twice + partīor, divide], in two parts or divisions, in two ways. I, 25.

bis, num. adv. [for dīus, from duo, two], twice. III, 12.

Biturigēs, -um, m. (Cde), the Bituriges (bī-tūr'i-gēz). I, 18.

Boduognātus, -i, m., Boduognatus (bō-dō-ō'

Bōlī, -ōrum, m. (Ce), the Boi (bō'ī-yē), a Celtic tribe once very powerful in southern Germany and Cisalpine Gaul. Those who joined the Helvetii were afterwards settled by Caesar as indicated on the map. I, 5.

bonitās, -tātis, f. [bonus, good], goodness; fertility. I, 28.

bonus, -a, -um, adj., good, beneficial, profitable, well-disposed; [with animō] friendly; as noun, bonum, -i, profit, advantage; bona, -ōrum, goods, property, estate; boni, -ōrum, the good, good men or citizens. Comp., meior; sup., optimus (App. 49). I, 6.

bōs, bovis, m., f.; ox; cow; pl., cattle.

bracchium, -chi, n., the arm, forearm. I, 25.

Brannovicēs, see Aulercī.

Bratuspantium, -tī, n. (Be), Bratuspantium (brātū'spān'shūyēm). II, 13.

brevis, -e, adj., short, brief, transitory; brevī, in a short time. I, 40; III, 4.

brevitās, -tātis, f. [brevis, short], shortness; brevity. II, 20.

breviter, adv. [brevis, short], briefly.

Britannia, -ae, f. (Aabcd), Britannia (brit-tān'ī-ā), better Britain, Great Britain (England and Scotland), never Britain. II, 4.

Britannicus, -a, -um, adj. [Britannia, Britain], of Britain, British.

Britannus, -a, -um, adj., of Britain, British; pl. as noun, the Britanni (brit-tān'i), better, the Britons. IV, 21.

brūma, -ae, f., the winter solstice.

Brūtus, -ī, m., Decimus Junius Brutus (dēs'ī-yūn'yēz bry'tūzs), one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war, and in the war with Pompey. He took part in the conspiracy against Caesar, and was killed by order of Antony. III, 11.
C.

C., abbr. for praenomen Gāius (gā' yūs). I, 40; III, 5.

C, sign for centum, a hundred.

Caeburūs, -i, m., Gaius Valerius Caeburūs (gā' yūs va-lē' rūs), a Gaul who possessed Roman citizenship; father of C. Valerius Procūlius and C. Valerius Domnōtaurus. I, 47.

cācūmen, -inis, n., top.

cadēver, -eris, n. [cadō, fall], a fallen or dead body, corpse. II, 27.

cadō, cadere, cecīdi, cāsant, intr.; fall in battle, be slain, die. I, 15.

Cadūrcus, -a, -um, adj. (Dd), Cadurcan; pl. as noun, the Cadurci (kā-dēr' sī).

caedōs, -is, f. [cadō, cut], a cutting; (of persons) slaughter, massacre, murder.

caedo, caedere, cecidī, cāśum, tr.; cut, kill, slay. III, 29.

caelestis, -ē, adj. [caelum, heaven], heavenly; pl. as noun, the caelestes (sē-ma' nī). II, 4.

caurermōnia, -ae, f., a sacred rite.

Caerosī, -orum, m. (Ag), the Caerosii (sē-rō' sī). II, 4.

caeruleus, -a, -um, adj., blue.


caespes, -itis, m., a sod, turf. III, 25.

caesus, see caedo.

calamītās, -tātis, f., misfortune, disaster, defeat. I, 12.

Caletī, -ōrum (or -ēs, -um), m. (Bd), the Caletī (kāl'ē-tī). II, 4.

callidus, -a, -um, adj., shrewd. III, 18.

cālō, -onis, m., a soldier's servant, camp porter or follower. II, 24.

campester, -tris, -tre, adj. [campus, a plain], of a plain, flat, level; loca, level country.

campo, -i, m., plain, open space or country. III, 26.

Camulogenus, -i, m., Camulogenus (kām'ū- lōj' ē-nūs), a chief of the Au- lerci.

Caninius, -nī, m., Ga'ius Caninius Rebil- us (gā' yūs kā-nīn'ī-ūs rēbī' lūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

canō, canere, cecīni, cantum, intr.; sing; sound.

Cantabri, -ōrum, m. (Eab), the Cantab- rī (kān' tā-brī). III, 26.

Cantium, -tē, n. (Ad), Cantium (kān'- shyūm), or Kent.

capillus, -i, m., the hair.

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, tr.; take, capture, seize, catch; take in, beguile, induce; take up (arms); choose, select (a place); form, adopt (a plan); reach, arrive at (a place); make (a beginning); collem capere, take position on a hill; fugam capere, take to flight. I, 1.

capra, -ae, f., goat.

captivus, -i, m. [capiō, take], captive, prisoner. I, 22.

captus, -ūs, m. [capiō, take], comprehend, ideas. IV, 3.

captus, see capiō.

caput, capitis, n., the head (of men and animals); person, individual; mouth (of a river); capitis poena, capital punishment. I, 29.


carēō, 2, intr.; be without, be free from; miss, want.

carīna, -ae, f., keel. III, 13.

Carnutēs, -um, m. (Bcde), the Carnus- tes (kār'nū-tēs). II, 55.

carō, cārnis, f., flesh, meat.

carpō, carpere, carpēsī, captum, tr.; pluck; censure, jeer at. III, 17.

carrus, -i, m., cart. I, 3.

cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear, valuable.

Carvilius, -ī, m., Carvilius (kār-vīl'-i-ūs), a British king.

casa, -ae, f., cottage, hut.

cāseus, -i, m., cheese.

Cassī, -ōrum, m. (Ac), the Cassi (kāsī' fī).

Cassīanus, -a, -um, adj., of Cassius, see Cassius. I, 13.

cassīs, -idis, f., a metal helmet.

Cassius, -sī, m., Lucius Cassius Longi- nus (lū' shyūs kāsh' yūs lōn-gī' nūs),
CEUTRONES

CASSIVELLAUNUS, -i, m., Cassivellaunus (kä'sə-lə-və-lə-nūs), the commander-in-chief of the Britons against Caesar.

castellum, -i, n. [castrum, fort], fortress, redoubt. I, 8.

Casticus, -i, m., Casticus (kä'stɪ-kəs). I, 3.

castrum, -i, n., fort; pl., castra, castro-rum, fortified camp, camp; castra facere or pōnere, set up camp.

ceutrones, -eum, m. (Dg), the Ceutrones (kä'trō-nēz), I, 10.

Cataulicus, -i, m., Cataulicus (kä-tō-lū-kūs), a chief of the Eburones.

causa, -ae, f., cause, reason, grounds, motive; situation, condition; a (legal) case, cause; causam dicere, to plead a case; causā, following a gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of, for.

I, 1.

caute, adv. [cautus, from caveō, be cautious] cautiously.

cautēs, -is, f., ref. III, 13.

Cavarillus, -i, m., Cavarillus (kä-vər'i-lūs), a Hauduan noble.

Cavarinus, -i, m., Cavarinus (kä-vər'i-nūs), a king of the Senones.

ceavo, caevēre, cāvi, cautum, intr., be cautious, be on one's guard; obsidibus cavēre, exchange hostages as security. I, 14.

Cavillonum, -i, n. (Cf), Cavillonum (kä-vi-lō-nūm).

Ceubenna, -ae, f. (De), the Cebenna (sē-bē'nə), or the Cevennes mountains.

cédō, cédere, cessi, cessum, intr.; go, go away; give way, yield, retreat. II, 19.

celer, -eris, -ere, adj., swift, quick; precipitāte. IV, 23.

celeritas, -tātis, f. [celer, swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. I, 48; II, 12.

celeriter, adv. [celer, swift], quickly, rapidly, speedily. Comp., celerius; sup., celerīmē (App. 40). I, 18.

cēlō, 1, tr., keep covered or hidden, secrete, conceal; in paes, escape observation, be unnoticed. II, 32.

Celtae, -ārum, m., the Celtae (sē'lī-tē), better the Celts. I, 1.

Celtillus, -i, m., Celtillus (sēl-tīl'ūs), an Arvernian chief, father of Vercingetorix.

Cēnabēnis, -e, adj. [Cēnabum], of Cenabum; pl. as noun, the people of Cenabum.

Cēnabum, -i, n. (C), Cenabum (sēn'a-būm), now Orleans.

Cēnimagni, -ōrum, m. (Ad), the Cenimagni (sēn'i-māg'nī).

Cēnomanī, see Aulercī.

cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsui, cēsum, tr.; think, decide (acc. and inf.); propose, advise, vote (ut and subj.); propose, vote for (acc.). I, 35.

cēnus, -ūs, m., enumeration. I, 29.

centum, (C), indcl. card. num., a hundred. I, 2.

centuriō, -ōnis, m. [centum, a hundred], centurion, the commander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion. I, 39; II, 17.

cēplī, see capiō.

cernō, cernere, crēvi, crētum, tr., separate; see, perceive.

certāmen, -inis, n. [certō, strive], strife, struggle, contest, combat. III, 14.

certē, adv. [certus, certain], certainly; at least, at all events. IV, 25.

certus, -a, -um, adj. [for crētus, pf. part. of cernō], decided; certain, sure, fixed; certīōrem facere, to inform (acc. and inf.); order (ut or nē and subj.); certior flei, be informed. I, 7.

cervus, -i, m., stag.

cēteri, -ae, -a, adj., the rest of the, the remainder; as noun, the rest, remaining, others. I, 32; II, 3.

Ceutronēs, -um, m., the Ceutrones (sū'trō-nēz), (1), (Dg). I, 10. (2), (Aď).
CHERUSCI

CHERUSCI, -ōrum, m. (Ahi), the Cherusci (kē-rūs'i), a German tribe.

cibārius, -a, -um, adj. [cibus, food], pertaining to food; n. pl. as noun, provisions; molīta cibāria, meal, flour.

circumicid, circumadd, circumduco, Circum, circumiter, circuitus, circuminus, Cippus, Cingetorix, Cimbrl, Cimberius, cibatius, Cherusci, Cicero, place gather erse, tr. App. tum, around.

circumvenio, circumspicio, circummunio, circumplector, circummitto, circummittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send around.

circumnānō, 4, tr. [māniō, fortify], wall around; fortify, protect. II, 30.

circumplector, -plecti, -plexus sum, tr. [plectō, fold], enfold, enclose.

circumsistō, -sistere, -stītī, —, tr. [sistō, stand], stand, flock or rally around, surround, hem in. I, 48; III, 15.

circumspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, tr. [speciō, look], look (around) for or at, consider, examine.

circumvāllō, 1, tr. [vāllum, rampart], surround with a rampart, beleaguer, invest.

circumvehō, -vehere, - vexi, -vectum, tr. [vehō, carry], carry around; pass., ride around.

circumveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -venum, tr. [venīō, come], come or get around, surround, cut off, beset; betray, defraud. I, 25.

cis, prep. with acc., on this side of. II, 3.

Cisalpinus, -a, -um, adj. [Alpēs], Cisalpine, lying on the south side of the Alps.

Clamor, clamito, Clam, circumcidi, circumdēri, circumdedi, -datum, tr. [dō, put], put around, encompass, surround. I, 38; IV, 32.

ciscrypta, prep. with acc., on this side of. II, 3.

Cita, -ae, m., Gallus Fufus Cita (gā'yus fū'fi-īs si'ta), a Roman knight.

cittās, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of citō, put in motion], swift. IV, 10.

citerior, -ius, comp. adj. (App. 43), nearer, hither; Gallia Citerior (= Cisalpina), Cisalpine Gaul, on the nearer (Italian) side of the Alps. I, 10.

cito, adv., quickly, speedily. Comp., citius; sup., cissimē. IV, 33.

citā, prep. with acc., on this side of. I, 12.

citē, adv., hither; ultē, citēque, back and forth. I, 42.

civis, -is, m., f., citizen.

civitas, -tātis, f. [civis, citizen], citizenship; the citizens (as forming a community), state, city. I, 2.

clam, adv., secretly. III, 18.

clamitō, 1, tr. [freq. of clamō, cry out], cry out repeatedly, proclaim.

clamor, -ōris, m. [clāmō, cry out], outcry, noise, din, clamor. II, 11.
clandestinus, -a, -um, adj. [clam, secretly], hidden, secret.
clárus, -a, -um, adj., clear, loud.
classis, -is, f., fleet. III, 11.
Claudius, -dī, m., Appius Claudius Pulcher (āpˈi-ūs klawˈdī-ūs pǔlˈkēr), consul 54 B.C.
claudus, claudiere, clausi, clausum, tr., shut, close; agmen claudere, close the line, bring up the rear. I, 25.
clāvus, -ī, m., nail, spike. III, 13.
clementia, -ae, f. [clēmēns, gentle], gentleness, kindness, mercy, clemency. II, 14.
cliēns, -entis, m., f. [clueō, hear, obey], client, vassal, dependent, retainer. I, 4.
clientēla, -ae, f. [cliēns, a client], the relation of client and patron; patronage, vassalage; clients.
cilivus, -ī, m., slope, ascent.
Clódius, -dī, m., Publius Claudius Pulcher (pǔlˈbī-ūs kloˈdī-ūs pǔlˈkēr), murdered by Milo in 52 B.C.
Cn., abbr. for Gnaeus (nēˈus), a Roman praenomen. IV, 1.
co-, see con-.
coacervō, 1, tr. [acervō, heap up; acervus, heap], heap or mass together, pile one upon another. II, 27.
coāctus, see cōgō.
coāctus, -ās, m. [cōgō, compel], compulsion.
coagentō, 1, tr., join, connect.
cōartō, 1, tr., crowd together.
Cocosātes, -um, m. (De), the Cocosates (kōkˈōsātēz). III, 27.
cōegi, see cōgō.
cōemō, -emere, -ēmi, -ēmptum, tr. [ēmō, buy], buy, buy up. I, 3.
cōē, -ēre, -ēri, —, intr. [ēō, go. App. 84], assemble.
cœpi, coepisse (App. 86 and a), tr., began, commenced, undertook; coepĭtus, pf. part., begun, commenced. I, 15.
cōerceō, 2, tr. [arceō, shut up], shut up completely, restrain, check. I, 17.
cōgitō, 1, tr. and intr. [co+agĭtō, consider], consider thoroughly or carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. I, 33; III, 24.

clōnātiō, -onis, f. [co+(g)nātus, born], blood relationship; family, clan.
cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvi, -nītum, tr. [co+(g)nōscō, learn], learn, ascertain; study, investigate; pf., I have learned, I know (App. 193, I, 4). I, 19.
cōgō, cōgere, coegi, coactus, tr. [co+agō, lead], lead or bring together, collect, draw together, assemble; force, compel, constrain. I, 4.
cohors, -tis, f., cohort. I, 40; II, 5.
cohortātiō, -onis, f. [cohortor, encourage], encouragement, cheering. II, 25.
cohortor, 1, tr. [co+hortor, encourage], encourage greatly, cheer, animate. I, 25.
collātus, see confereō.
collaudō, 1, tr. [con+laudō, praise], praise highly.
colligō, 1, tr. [con+līgō, bind], bind or fasten together. I, 25.
colligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, tr. [con+lēgō, gather], gather together, collect; acquire; sē colligere, collect one's self. rally. III, 6.
collis, -is, m., hill. I, 22.
collōcō, 1, tr. [con+locō, place], place, set, station; arrange; nuptum collocare, to give in marriage. I, 18.
colloquium, -quī, n. [coloquor, talk together], talking together; confer, converse; conferere, confer. I, 19.
colō, colere, colui, cultum, tr., cultivate, dwell in; honor, worship. IV, 1.
colōnia, -ae, f., colony, settlement.
color, -ōris, m., color.
com-, see con-.
combūrō, -ūere, -ussì, -ustum, tr. [com(b)+ūrō, burn], burn up. I, 5.
comes, -tis, m., f., companion.
comitium, -ti, n. [com+oeō, go], place of assembly or meeting; pl., an election.
comitor, 1, tr. [comes, companion], accompany, follow.
commeatus, -ūs, m. [commeō, go back and forth], trip, voyage; supplies, provisions. I, 34; II, 5.
commemorō, 1, tr. [memorō, call to mind], remember one of; state, mention, I, 14.
commandō, 1, tr. [mandō, entrust], entrust; surrender. IV, 27.
commeno, 1, tr. [meō, go], go back and forth; with ad, resort to, visit. I, 1.
commilitō, -ōnēs, m. [miles, soldier], fellow soldier, comrade. IV, 25.
comminus, adv. [manus, hand], hand to hand, in close contest. I, 52.
commissura, -ae, f. [committo, join], uniting, joint, juncture.
committē, -mittere, -miser, -missum, tr. [mittē, send], join, splice; commit (a crime), do; allow, permit; entrust; proelium committere, join or begin battle. I, 13.
Commius, -ī, m., Commius (kōm'i-ūs), a chief of the Atrebates. IV, 21.
commodē, adv. [commodus, convenient], conveniently; readily, easily, fitly; satis commodē, to much advantage, very easily. I, 25.
commodum, -ī, n. [commodus, convenient], convenience, interest, advantage. I, 35; III, 22.
commodus, -a, -um, adj. [modus, measure], in full measure; convenient, suitable, satisfactory. I, 42.
commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -fāctum, tr. [moneō, remind + facio], remind forcibly. I, 19.
commoror, 1, intr. [moror, tarry], wait, stop.
commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōvum, tr. [moveō, move], move or excite thoroughly, rouse, agitate, alarm. I, 13.
commūnicō, 1, tr. [commūnis, common], make common, communicate, impart, share. IV, 13.
commūniō, 4, tr. [mūniō, fortify], fortify strongly, intrench. I, 8.
commūnis, -ēs, adj., common, general; rés commūnis, the common interest. I, 30; II, 4.
commūtātiō, -ōnēs, f. [commūtō, change], a changing, change. I, 14.
commūtō, 1, tr. [mūtō, change], change or alter completely, change, exchange. I, 23.
comparō, 1, tr. [parō, prepare], prepare, get ready; acquire, gain, secure; prepare for. I, 3.
comparō, 1, tr. [[pār, equal], place in comparison, compare. I, 31.
compellō, -pellere, -pulli, -pulsum, tr. [pellō, drive], drive together, assemble, collect; force, compel. II, 23.
compendium, -di, n., gain, profit.
comperīō, -perire, -perlum, tr. [parīō, procure], find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. I, 22.
complector, -pletī, -plexus sum, tr. [pletō, fold], embrace, clasp, enclose. I, 20.
compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, tr. [obsoleo, pleō, fill], fill up or completely; complete; cover. I, 24.
complexus, see complector.
complārēs, -a, adj. [plās, more], several, many; a great many. I, 8.
comportō, 1, tr. [portō, carry], carry together, collect, bring. I, 16.
comprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, tr. [prehendō, (=prēndō), seize], grasp or lay hold of, seize, catch, arrest; take, catch (fire). III, 14.
comprobō, 1, tr. [probō, approve], approve, sanction, justify.
complusus, see compellō.
con-, com-, co- [the forms taken by cum in composition], together; completely; or mere emphasis.
conātum, -ī, n. [cōnōr, try], attempt, undertaking. I, 3.
conātus, -ūs, m. [cōnōr, try], attempt, undertaking. I, 8.
conātus, see cōnōr.
concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, tr. and intr. [cēdō, go], go away, depart; withdraw; grant, yield; allow, permit. I, 7.
concessus, -ūs, m. [concēdō, permit], concession, permission.
concīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, tr. [caedō, cut], cut down, slay, kill; cut off. I, 12.
put; put together logically, Jonceture; in fugam coniscere, put to flight. I, 26.

Coniectura, -ae, f. [conicio, Jonceture], inference, Jonceture.
Conjectus, see conicio.

Coniunctum, adv. [coniungo, join], jointly.

Coniungō, -iungere, -iunxī, -iunctum, tr. [iunxō, join], join with or together, connect, unite, bind. I, 37; II, 3.

Coniānx, -iugis, f. [coniungo, join], wife.

Coniūratīō, -ōnis, f. [coniūrō, swear together], a swearing together; plot, conspiracy; secret league, confederacy. I, 2.

Coniuṛō, I, intr. [iūrō, swear], swear or take an oath together, league together, conspire. II, 1.

Cōnōr, I, intr., attempt, endeavor, try. I, 3.

Conquīēscō, -quīēscere, -quīēvī, -quīēstum, intr. [quīēscō, to rest, quiēs, rest], lie down to rest.

Conquīrō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisītum, tr. [quaerō, search], seek for carefully, search for, hunt up. I, 27.

Consanguineus, -a, -um, adj. [sanguinis, blood], of the same blood; as noun, kinsman, relative. I, 11.

Consencendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scensum, tr. [scandō, climb], climb, mount; go on board, embark. IV, 23.

Consclentia, -ae, f. [consclus, conscious], consciousness, knowledge, sense.

Consciscō, -sciscere, -scivi, -scitum, tr. [sciscō, resolve], resolve upon; sibi mortem consiscere, commit suicide. I, 4.

Consclusus, -a, -um, adj. [sciō, know], conscious; aware. I, 14.

Conscibō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr. [scribō, write], write together in a list; levy, enroll, enlist; write. I, 10.

Consescro, I, tr. [sacrō, dedicate], dedicate, consecrate.

Conssector, I, tr. [sector, freq. of se-
cōnspicor, I, tr. [specūō, look], observe, descry, perceive. I, 25.
cōnspirō, 1, intr. [spīrō, breathe], combine, conspire. III, 10.
cōnstanter, adv. [cōnstō, stand firm], uniformly, consistently; resolutely. II, 2.
cōnstantia, -ae, f. [cōnstō, stand firm], firmness, steadfastness. I, 40.
cōnsternō, -sternere, -strāvi, -strātum, tr. [sternō, steward], stew over, cover over. IV, 17.
cōnsternō, 1, tr. [cōnsternō, -ere, stew over], confound, perplex, dismay.
cōnstitūō, -stituere, -stitūtum, tr. [stātūo, set up], set up, erect, construct; appoint decide, decree, determine, establish, set, settle; (of troops) draw up, station; (of ships) anchor, station; raise (a legion). I, 3.
cōnstō, -stāre, -stātum, intr. [stō, stand], stand firm; depend on; be complete; cost; impersonal, it is agreed, certain, evident, known. III, 6.
cōnstrātus, see cōnsternō.
cōnsuēcō, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētum, intr. [suēscō, become used], become accustomed; cf. (App. 193, I, a), be accustomed, be wont; cōnsuētus, pf. part. as adj., accustomed, usual, wonted. I, 14.
cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f. [cōnsuēscō, become accustomed], habit, custom, practice; mode of life. I, 31; II, 17.
cōnsuētus, see cōnsuēcō.
cōnsul, -ulis, m., a consul, one of the two chief magistrates elected annually by the Roman people. I, 2.
cōnsulātus, -ās, m. [cōnsul, consul], consulship. I, 35.
cōnsulō, -ere, -ui, -tum, tr. and intr.; tr., take counsel, consult, consider; intr. with dat., take counsel for, study the interests of, take care of; spare. I, 53.
cōnsulō, 1, intr. [freq. of cōnsulō, take counsel], reflect, consider, take counsel.
cōnsūltō, adv. [cōnsulō, take counsel], deliberately, designedly, on purpose.
cōnsultum, -i, n. [cōnsulō, take counsel], result of deliberation; decree, enactment, decision. I, 43.
cōnsūmō, -sūmēre, -sūmpi, -sūmp-tum, tr. [sūmō, take], take together or all at once; devour, consume, destroy; use up, waste, pass. I, 11.
cōnsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxi, -surrēctum, intr. [surgō, rise], arise together or in a body; arise.
contabulō, 1, tr. [tabula, board], floor over, build in stories, build up.
contāgiō, -ōnis, f. [contingō, touch], contact.
contāminō, 1, tr., corrupt, contaminate.
contegō, -tēgere, -tēxi, -tēctum, tr. [tēgō, cover], cover up.
contemnō, -eus, m. [contemnō, despise], disdain, contempt; an object of contempt. III, 17.
contemptus, -eus, m. [contemnō, despise], contempt; an object of contempt. II, 30.
contendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, tr. and intr. [tendō, stretch], push forward, hasten; march; strive, contend, fight; be anxious for; maintain, insist. I, 1.
contentiō, -ōnis, f. [contendō, strive], striving, struggling, contest, dispute. I, 44.
contentus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of contineō, restrain], satisfied, contented.
contexō, -texere, -texui, -textum, tr. [texō, weave], weave or bind together, connect. IV, 17.
contigī, see contingō.
continēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of contineō, hold together], holding together; continuous, unbroken; neighboring; as noun, mainland, continent. III, 28.
continenter, adv. [continēns, continuous], without interruption, continuously. I, 1.
continentia, -ae, f. [contineō, hold], self-restraint, moderation.
continentēō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, tr. [tenēō, hold], hold together; hold, keep, restrain; bound, shut in; contain; sē continēre, with abl., remain in, on or within. I, 1.
contingō, -tingere, -tīgī, -tāctum, tr. and intr. [tangō, touch], touch, reach; extend to; befall, happen to. I, 38.
continuātiō, -onis, f. [continuus, continuous], continuance, succession. III, 29.
continuō, adv. [continuus, continuous], immediately, forthwith.
continuus, -a, -um, adj. [contineō, hold together], holding together, unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. I, 48; IV, 34.
cōntiō, -onis, f. [for conventiō; conveniō, come together], assembly.
contra, adv. and prep. with acc.: (1) as adv., against him or them; on the other hand; contra ātque, contrary to what; (2) as prep., against, contrary to; opposite, facing, I, 18.
contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, tr. [trahō, draw], draw or bring together, assemble, collect; draw into smaller compass, contract. I, 34; IV, 22.
contraērius, -a, -um, adj. [contra, against], lying over against, opposite, facing; ex contrāriō, on the contrary. II, 18.
contrōversia, -ae, f. [contra, against + versus, turned], dispute, quarrel, controversy.
contulī, see cōnferō.
contumēlia, -ae, f., affront, indignity, insult; injury, violence. I, 14.
convalescō, -valēscere, -valuī, —, intr. [valēscō, incept. of valeō, be well], gain health or strength, recover.
convallis, -is, f. [vallis, valley], enclosed valley, defile. III, 20.
convehō, -vehere, - vexī, - vectum, tr. [vehō, carry], carry or bring together, collect.
conveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, tr. and intr. [veniō, come], come together, assemble; convene, meet; come to, arrive; to be agreed upon; impersonal, be convenient, suitable, necessary. I, 6.
conventus, -ūs, m. [conveniō, come together], a coming together, meeting, assembly; court. I, 18.
convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, tr. and intr. [vertō, turn], turn completely, turn or wheel around; turn, change; signa convertere, face about. I, 23.
Convictolitāvis, -is, m., Convictolitavis (kön-vik'tō-li-tā'vis), a Hae-duan chief.
vincīō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum, tr. [vincō, conquer], conquer completely; prove. I, 40.
convocō, 1, tr. [vocō, call], call together, summon, assemble. I, 16.
coorior, -orīri, -ortus sum, intr. [co- orior, rise], arise, spring up, break out. III, 7.
cōpia, -ae, f., supply, plenty, abundance, number; pl., resources; forces, troops. I, 2.
cōpiōsus, -a, -um, adj. [cōpia, plenty], well supplied, wealthy. I, 23.
cōpula, -ae, f., grappling-hook. III, 13.
cor, cordis, n., heart; cordī esse, be dear.
cōram, adv., face to face, in person. I, 32.
Coriosolitēs, -um, m. (Bb), the Coriosolites (kō'ri-ō-sōl/i-tēz). II, 34.
corium, -ri, n., skin, hide, leather.
cornū, -ūs, n., horn; (of an army) flank, wing. I, 52; II, 23.
corōna, -ae, f., wreath, chaplet; ring, circle; sub corōnā vēndere, sell at auction. III, 16.
corpus, -oris, n., body, person; a (dead) body. I, 25.
corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -rumpum, tr. [con+rumpō, break], destroy, ruin.
cortex, -icis, m., f., bark. II, 33.
Cūrus, -I, m., the northwest wind.
cotidiānus, -a, -um, adj. [cotidiē
daily), every day, daily; usual, customary. I, 1.
cotidie, adv. [quot, how many+diēs, day], daily, every day. I, 16.
Cotta, see Aurunculeius.
Cotuātus, -ī, m., Cotuatus (kōt'ū-tūs), a chief of the Carnutes.
Cotus, -ī, m., Cotus (kōt'ūs), a Hae-

dian noble.
crassitudō, -inis, f. [crassus, thick], thickness. III, 13.
Crassus, -ī, m. (1) Marcus Licinius Crassus (mār'kūs Ė-sīn/ī-ūs krās/ī-ūs), triumvir with Caesar and Pompey, I, 21; (2) his son, Marcus Licinius Crassus, one of Caesar's quaestors; (3) a second son, Publius Licinius Crassus, one of Caesar's lieutenants. I, 52; II, 34.
crātēs, -is, f., wicker-work; fascine (bundle of sticks for filling trenches, etc.) IV, 17.
crēbrō, adv. [crēber, repeated], repeated-
edly, often.
crēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr., believe, suppose; entrust. II, 33.
cremō, I, tr., burn. I, 4.
crēō, 1, tr., create; elect, choose, appoint. I, 16.
crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum, intr., grow or increase (in size, power, age, etc.), swell. I, 20.
Crētēs, -um, m., the Cretes (krē-tēz), better, Cretans, natives of the island of Crete. II, 7.
Critognātus, -ī, m., Critognatus (krītō-

-ūg-nūtūs), a chief of the Arverni.
cruciātus, -ūs, m. [cruciō, torture; crux, cross], torture, torment. I, 31; II, 31.
crūdēlītās, -tātis, f. [crūdēlis, cruel], cruelty, harshness. I, 32.
crūdēliter, adv. [crūdēlis, cruel], cru-

crūs, crūris, n., leg.
cubile, -is, n. [cubō, lie down], bed, resting-place.
culmen, -inis, n., top, ridge. III, 2.
culpa, -ae, f., blame, fault, guilt. IV, 27.
cultus, -ūs, m. [colō, cultivate], culti-
vation; civilization; mode of life; dress. I, 1.
cum, conj., when, as, while; after, as soon as; whenever; since, because; although; cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also, both . . . and; cum pri-
mum, as soon as. See App. 238-242. I, 1.
cum, prep. with abl., with, along with, together with. I, 1.
cŭnctātiō, -onis, f. [cūncstor, delay], delaying, delay, hesitation, reluctance. III, 18.
cūncstor, 1, intr., delay, hesitate, be re-
luctant. III, 23.
cŭnc tus, -s, -um, adj. [for coniunc-
tus, joined together], all together, all. II, 29.
cuneātum, adv. [cuneus, wedge], in wedge-shaped masses.
cuneus, -ī, m., wedge, wedge-shaped mass.
cuniculus, -ī, m., burrow; tunnel, mine. III, 21.
cupidē, adv. [cupidus, desirous], desir-
ously, eagerly. I, 15.
cupidītās, -tātis, f. [cupidus, eager], eagerness, desire, greed, avarice. I, 2.
cupidus, -a, -um, adj. [cupiō, desire], eager, desirous, zealous, fond. I, 2.
cupiō, cupere, cupūvī, cupūtum, tr. and intr., long or be eager for, desire; wish well to, favor. I, 18.
cūr, interrog. and rel. adv., why, for what reason; for which reason, where-
fore. I, 40; IV, 16.
cūra, -ae, f., care, attention. I, 33.
cūro, 1, tr. [cūra, care], care for, take care of, provide for; with gerundive (App. 285, II, b), have, order. I, 13.
currus, -ūs, m., chariot; wagon. IV, 33.
cursus, -ūs, m. [currō, run], running, speed; course, career; passage, voyage. I, 48; II, 23.
custōdia, -ae, f. [custōs, guard], cus-
tody, guard (state of being guarded); pl., guards, keepers. II, 29.
custōdiō, 4, tr. [custōs, guard], guard.
custōs, -ōdis, m., guard, watchman, spy. I, 20.
defero, better.

Daci, -orum, m., the Daci (da'vi) or Danubians, the inhabitants of Dacia, on the Danube.

dannō, I, tr. [damnum, damage], declare guilty, sentence, condemn. I, 4.

damnum, -ī, n., loss.

Dānuvius, -vi, m. (Bhí), the Danuvius (da-nu'vi-ús), better, the Danube.

dē, prep. with abl., originally denoting motion from; (1) of place, from, down from, away from, out of; (2) of time, just after, about; (3) variously translated in other relations, about, concerning, of, from, in accordance with, for. I, 1.

dēbeō, 2, tr. [dē-habeō, have], have, or keep from some one; owe; with inf., ought, must; pass., be due. I, 11.

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, intr. [cēdō, go], go from or away, depart, withdraw, leave, forsake; die. I, 31.

decem (X), indef. card. num., ten. I, 4.

dēcērō, -cērere, -crēvī, -crētum, tr. [cērō, separate; decide], decide; vote, decree. II, 35.

dēcertō, 1, intr. [certō, contend], fight to the end, fight out, struggle fiercely or earnestly, vie, contend. I, 44; II, 10.

dēcessus, -ūs, m. [dēcēdō, depart], departure; ebb, fall (of the tide). III, 13.

Decetia, -ae, f., (Ce), Decetia (de-sē' shya), a town of the Haeduvi, now Decize.

dēcidō, -cidere, -cīdi, —, intr. [cadō, fall], fall from or off. I, 48.

decimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [decem, ten], tenth. I, 40; II, 21.

dēcipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [capīō, take], entrap; deceive. I, 14.

dēclārō, 1, tr. [clārus, clear], make plain, declare. I, 50.

dēclivis, -e, adj. [clivus, a slope], sloping downward, declining; n. pl. as noun, slopes. II, 18.

dēclivitās, -tātis, f. [dēclivis, sloping downward], descent.

dēcrētum, -ī, n. [dēcernō, decide], decision, decree, order.

dēcrētus, see dēcernō.

decumānus, -a, -um, adj. [decimus, tenth], of or belonging to the tenth; decuman; decumānà porta, the rear gate (of the camp). II, 24.

decurīō, -onis, m. [decem, ten], decurion, a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria, a squad of ten. I, 23.

dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī, -currsum, intr. [currō, run], run down hurry down. II, 19.

dēdecus, -oris, n. [decus, honor], dishonor, disgrace. IV, 25.

dēdī, see dō.

dēdīdi, see dēdō.

dēditīcius, -a, -um, adj. [dēdō, surrender], surrendered; as noun, one surrendered, prisoner, subject. I, 27.

dēditūō, -onis, f. [dēdō, surrender], surrender, capitulation. I, 27.

dēditus, see dēdō.

dēdō, -dere, -dīdi, -ditum, tr. [dō, give], give up or over, yield, surrender; devote; sē dēderea, submit, surrender. II, 15.

dēducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr. [ducō, lead], lead down or away, withdraw; bring, conduct, lead; influence; launch (ships); give in marriage. I, 44; II, 2.

dēfatīgātō, -onis, f. [dēfatīgō, weary], fatigue, weariness. III, 19.

dēfatīgō, 1, tr. [fatīgō, weary], completely weary, fatigue, tire out, exhaust. I, 40.

dēfectīō, -onis, f. [dēficiō, fail], falling away, desertion, revolt. III, 10.

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnsum, tr. [fendō, strike], keep or ward off, repel; defend, protect. I, 11.

dēfēnsiō, -onis, f. [dēfendō, defend], a defending, defence. II, 7.

dēfensor, -ōris, m. [dēfendō, defend], defender, protector; (means of) defense. II, 6.

dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, tr. [ferō, carry. App. 81], bring from or down, carry, take; report, disclose; bring be-
fore, refer; bestow, confer; dēlāitus (sometimes), falling; coming by chance. II. 4.

defessus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of dē-fetiscor, grow weary], worn, exhausted, faint. I. 25.
deficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, tr. and intr. [faciō, make], fall, desert, fall away, revolt. II. 10.
defigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, tr. [figō, fix], fix or fasten down, drive in, plant. IV. 17.
definitō, 4, tr. [finiō, limit], mark off; define, determine.
defīxus, see dēfīgō.

defōre, fut. inf. of dēsūm.
defōrmis, -e, adj. [fōra, form], misshapen, deformed, unsightly. IV. 2.
defugī, -fugere, -fugi, -fugitum, tr. [fugī, flee], flee from, shun.

defuī, see dēsūm.
dēciō, -icere, -icēi, -iectum, tr. [lāciō, throw. App. 7], hurl or cast down; dislodge; kill; foil, disappoint. I. 8.
dēcēctus, -ās, m. [dēciciō, cast down], declivity, slope, descent. II. 8.
dēinceps, adv., one after the other, in turn, successively. III. 29.

deinde, adv. [dē + inde, thence], thereupon, then, next. I. 25.
dēlātus, see dēferō.
dēlectō, 1, tr., delight; pass., delight in, take pleasure in. IV. 2.
dēlectus, see dēlīgō.
dēleō, dēlerē, dēlevī, dēlētum, tr., rub out, efface, destroy, annihilate. II. 27.
dēliberō, 1, tr. [libra, balance], weigh well; consider, deliberate. I. 7.
dēlibrō, 1, tr. [liber, bark], peel.
dēlictum, -i, n., fault, offence.
dēligō, 1, tr. [ligō, bind], bind or tie down, fasten, moor. I. 53; IV. 29.
dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, tr. [legō, choose], pick out, select, choose. I. 3.
dēlītēscō, -lītēscere, -lītui, —, intr. [lātēscō, incept. of lāteō, lie hidden], hide one's self, lurk. IV. 32.
dēmentia, -ae, f. [mēns, mind], madness, folly. IV. 13.
déposco, -poscere, -poposc, —, tr. [poscō, demand], demand; call for. 

dépositus, see dépōnō.

déprecatōr, m. [déprecōr, plead for], mediator, intercessor. I, 9.

déprecōr, 1, tr. and intr. [précor, pray], pray for deliverance from; beg off; implore, plead for. II, 31.

déprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendō, -prehēnsum, tr. [prehendō (=prēn-
dō), seize], seize, capture, catch.

dépunō, 1, intr. [pugnō, fight], [fight decisively; contend.

dépulsus, see dépellō.

dérēctē, adv. [dérēctus, straight], straight. IV, 17.

dérēctus, -a, -um, adj. [dērigō, put in line], straight. IV, 17.

dērigō, -rigere, -réxi, -rēctum, tr. [regō, direct], put in line; arrange, draw up, put in order.

dērivō, 1, tr. [rivus, stream], draw off.

dērogō, 1, tr. [rogō, ask], take away, withdraw.

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsum, intr. [scandō, climb], climb or go down, descend; have recourse (to), resort.

dēsecō, -secäre, -secui, -sectum, tr. [secō, cut], cut away or off.

dēserō, -serere, -serui, -serum, tr. [serō, entwine, join], disjoin; abandon, desert, forsake; désertus, pf. part. as adj., deserted, solitary. I, 45; II, 25.

dēsertor, -ōris, m. [dēserō, desert], deserter.

dēsiderō, 1, tr., feel the lack of, miss, lose; desire, wish, wish for. IV, 2.

dēsidia, -ae, f., inactivity, idleness.

dēsignō, 1, tr. [signō, mark], mark out; mean, indicate. I, 18.

dēsiliō, -silire, -silui, -sultum, intr. [saliō, leap], leap from or down, alight, dismount. IV, 2.

dēsistō, -sistere, -stīti, -stitum, intr. [sistō, stand], abandon, cease, give up. I, 8.

dēspectus, see dēspiciō.

dēspectus, -ūs, m. [dēspiciō, look down upon], a looking down, view. III, 14.
DEUS 25

DIMITTO

deus, -i (nom. pl., dī; dat. pl., dīs), m.,
god, deity. I, 12.
deustus, see dēbrō.
dēvehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vegetum, tr. 
[vehō, carry], carry away, bring.
dēveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, intr. 
[venīō, come], come down, go, come. II, 21.
dēvexus, -a, -um, adj. [dēvehō, carry 
away or down], sloping; neut. pl. as noun, 
slopes, hill-sides.
dēvincē, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum, tr. 
[vincē, conquer], conquer completely, 
subeute.
dēvōcō, 1, tr. [vocō, call], call off or 
avay; bring.
dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, tr. 
[vovēō, vow], vow away, consecrate, 
devoētus, pf. part. as noun, 
a sworn follower. III, 22.
dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., on the right, 
right. I, 52; II, 23.
dextra, -ae, f. [dexter, right; sc. ma-
num], the right hand. I, 20.
dī-, see dīs.
Diablintēs, -um, m. (Be), the Diablintēs 
diciō, -ōnis, f., dominion, authority, 
rule, sway. I, 31; II, 34.
dīcō, 1, tr. [dīcō, say], proclaim; give 
over, surrender.
dīcō, dicere, dixī, dictum, tr., say, 
tell, speak, express, mention; name, 
appoint; causam dīcere, plead a 
case; iās dīcere, administer justice. I, 1.
dictō, -ōnis, f. [dīcō, say], speaking, 
pleading. I, 2; II, 5.
dictum, -i, n. [pf. part. of dīcō, say], 
saying, remark; command; dīctō 
audiēns, obedient. I, 39.
dīducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr. 
[ducō, lead], lead or draw apart; sepa-
rate, divide. III, 23.
dīēs, -ēs, m. and f., day; time; in dīēs, 
from day to day; diem ex dīē, day 
after day. I, 4.
dīf-, see dīs.
differō, differre, distulī, dilātum, 
tr. and intr. [ferō, carry. App. 81], 
scatter, spread; put off, defer; be dif-
ferent, differ. I, 1.
difficilis, -e, adj. [facilis, easy]. not 
easy, hard, troublesome, difficult. I, 
6.
difficultās, -tātis, f. [difficilis, diffi-
culty], difficulty, trouble, embarrassment. II, 20.
difficulter, adv., with difficulty. Comp., 
difficultius.
diffidō, -fidere, -fīsus sum, intr. [fidē, 
trust. App. 74], distrust; lack confi-
dence, despair.
diffluō, -fluere, -fūxī, —, intr. [fluō, 
flow], flow in different directions, di-
vide. IV, 10.
difundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, tr. 
[fundō, pour], pour or spread out.
digitus, -i, m., finger; as measure of 
length, a finger's breadth, the 16th part 
of a Roman foot; digitus pollex, the 
thumb. III, 13.
dignitās, -tātis, f. [dignus, worthy], 
worthiness, dignity, merit, rank. I, 
43; III, 16.
dignus, -a, -um, adj., worthy, deserv-
ing.
dīi, see deus.
dīūdīcō, 1, tr. [fūdīcō, judge], decide.
dilēctus, see diligō.
dilēctus, -ūs, m. [dilīgō, choose], 
choice; levy.
dillectenter, adv. [dilīgens, careful], 
carefully; with exactness, pains or 
care. II, 5.
diligentia, -ae, f. [dilīgens, careful], 
carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking, 
dilīgō, -ligere, -lēxi, -lēctum, tr. 
[legō, choose], single or choose out, 
esteem highly, love.
dimētur, -mētiri, -mēnsum sum, tr. 
[mētior, measure], measure out or off. 
II, 19.
dimicātīō, -ōnis, f. [dimicō, fight], 
fight, contest.
dimicō, 1, intr. [micō, brandish], fight, 
struggle, contend. II, 21.
dimidius, -a, -um, adj. [medius, mid-
dle], divided in the middle, half; neut. 
as noun, a half.
dimmittō, -mittere, -missī, -missum 
tr. [mittō, send], send in different di-
rections, send away or off, dismiss;
break up; let go, let slip, let pass, give up, lose. I, 13.

dir-, see dis-.

dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, tr. [emō, take], take apart, interrupt, break off. I, 46.

diripīō, -ripere, -ripūl, -reptum, tr. [rapiō, seize], rend or tear asunder; plunder, pillage. II, 17.

Dis, Dītis, m., Dis (dīs), Pluto (plūtō), the god of the lower world.

dis, see deus.

dis- (di-, dif-, dir-), insep. prefix, apart, asunder, in different directions; negative, = Eng. un, not.

discēō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, intr. [cēō, go], go away, depart, retire; leave (especially with ab or ex). I, 14.

discēptātor, -āris, m., judge, umpire.

discernō, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum, tr. [cernō, separate], separate, keep apart.

discussus, -ās, m. [discēō, depart], departure, withdrawal, absence. II, 14.

disciplina, -ae, f. [discō, learn], learning; discipline; instruction; system. I, 40; IV, 1.

disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, tr. [claudō, shut], shut off, hold or keep apart, separate. IV, 17.

discō, discere, didici, —, tr. and intr., learn, be taught. I, 13.

discrimen, -minis, n., danger, critical condition.

discutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum, tr., clear away.

disiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], scatter, rout, disperse. I, 25.

dispār, -paris, adj. [pār, equal], unequal, ill-matched.

disparē, 1, tr. [parē, prepare], separate.

dispersō, -spergere, -persi, -persum, tr. [spargō, scatter], scatter, disperse. I, 40; III, 28.

Disponō, -pōnerē, -posuī, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], place apart or about; distribute, arrange, station. I, 8.

Disputātiō, -ōnīs, f. [disputō, discuss], argument, discussion.

Disputō, 1, intr. [putō, reckon], discuss, debate about.

dissēnsiō, -ōnis, f. [dissentiō, think differently], disagreement, dissension.

dissentiiō, -sentīre, -sēnī, -sēnsum, intr. [sentīō, feel], differ, disagree.

disser-, -serere, -sēvī, -sītum, tr. [serō, sow], sow or set at intervals.

dissimulō, 1, tr. [simulō, make like], disguise, conceal. IV, 6.

dissipō, 1, tr., spread on all sides, scatter, disperse. II, 24.

dissuādeō, -suādere, -suāsī, -suāsum, intr. [suādeō, advise], advise against.

distineō, -tinēre, -tīnuī, -tentum, tr. [teneō, hold], hold or keep apart; divide, isolate. II, 5.

distō, -stāre, —, —, intr. [sto, stand], stand apart; be apart, removed or separated. IV, 17.

distrahī, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr. [trahō, drag], pull asunder, re-move.

distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum, tr. [tribuō, assign], assign, divide, distribute. III, 10.

distulī, see differō.

ditissimus, sup. of dives.

dīa, adv., for a long time, long; quam dīa, as long as; comp., dīitus, longer, too long, any longer; sup., dītissīmē, for the longest time. I, 14.

Diurō, -a, -um, adj. [dīēs, day], of the day, by day, daily. I, 38.

Diusitus, -a, -um, adj. [diā, long], of long duration, long.

Diūturnitās, -tātis, f. [diūturnus, long], long duration. I, 40; III, 4.

Diūturnus, -a, -um, adj. [diā, long], long. I, 14.

diversus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of divertō, turn in different directions], diverse, different; separate, remote. II, 22.

dives, diūvitēs, wealthy, rich. Sup., diūtissimus. I, 2.

Diviciācūs, -ī, m., Diviciacus (dīvī-shī-ā-kūs), (1) a chief of the Haeduī, friendly to the Romans. I, 3. (2) a chief of the Sueiones. II, 4.
Divicō, -ónis, m., Divico (dīvīkō), an Helvetic chieflain. I, 13.

Dividō, dividere, divisi, divisum, tr., divide, separate; divisus, pf. part. as subj., divided. I, 1.

divinus, -a, -um, adj. [divus, divine], of the gods, divine, sacred. II, 31.

dō, dare, dēdī, datum (App. 85), tr., give, bestow, present, grant, furnish; offer; yield, give up; in fugam dare, put to flight; dare manūs, yield; dare negotium, with dat., employ, engage, direct. (Some compounds of dō are derived from an obsolete verb, dō, put.) I, 3.

doceō, docère, docui, doctum, tr., show, teach, instruct; inform. I, 43; II, 5.

documentum, -i, n. [docēō, teach], example; warning.

doleō, 2, intr., feel pain, be distressed or annoyed, grieve. I, 14.

dolor, -ōris, m. [doleō, grieve], grief, distress, pain (physical or mental), vexation, annoyance. I, 2.

dolus, -i, m., craft, trick, treachery. I, 13.

domesticus, -a, -um, adj. [domus, house], belonging to the home, domestic; in or of one's own land. II, 10.

domicilium, -iī, n. [domus, house], residence, dwelling, home, domicile. I, 30; II, 29.

dominor, 1, intr. [dominus, master], be master, rule. II, 31.

dominus, -i, m., master.

Dominītius, -ī, m., Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus (lusōshyūs dó-mish'yūs ā-hēn'gō-bā'rus), consul 54 B.C.

Domnotaurus, see Valerius.

domus, -ūs (App. 29, d), f., house; home; native country. I, 5.

dōnō, 1, tr. [dōnum, gift], give, present; endow with. I, 47.

dōnūm, -i, n. [dō, give], present, gift.

dorsum, -i, n., back; ridge.

dōs, dōtis, f. [dō, give], a marriage portion, dowry.

Druidēs, -um, m., the Druids, an ancient priestly caste in Gaul and Britain.

Dubis, -īs, m. (CIG), the (river) Dubis (dū'bis), now the Doubs. I, 38.

dubitātiō, -ónis, f. [dubitō, doubt], doubt, uncertainty; hesitation. I, 14.

dubitō, 1, intr. [dubius, doubtful], be uncertain, doubt; hesitate, delay. I, 17.

dubius, -a, -um, adj. uncertain, doubtful. I, 3.

ducēnti, -ae, -a, (CC), card. num. adj. [dūo, two+centum, hundred], two hundred. I, 2.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, tr., lead, conduct, guide, draw; bring, fetch; trace, construct, extend; deem, consider, judge; protract, defer. I, 3.

ductus, -ūs, m. [dūcō, lead], leading, command.

dum, conj., while, as long as; till, until. I, 7.

Dumnonīx, -īgis, m., Dumnoniix (dūm'nō-riks), a Haeduan chieflain, brother of Diviciacus. I, 3.


duodecim, card. num. adj. [duō, two+decem, ten], twelve. I, 5.

duodecimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [duodecim, twelve], twelfth. II, 23.

duōdēni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [duodecim, twelve], twelve each, twelve at a time.

duōdēvigintī, card. num. adj. [duō, two+viginti, twenty], eighteen. I, 23.

duplex, -plicis, adj. [duō, two+plicō, fold], twofold, double. II, 29.

duplicō, 1, tr. [duplex, double], double, increase. IV, 36.

dūrita, -ae, f. [dūrus, hard], hardness, hardship.

dūrō, 1, tr. [dūrus, hard], make hardy, harden.

Dūrocortorum, -i, n. (Bf), Durocortorum (dū'rō-kōrtō-rūm), the capital of the Remi, now Rheims.

dūrus, -a, -um, adj., hard, rough, difficult, dangerous; severe, inclement. I, 48.

Dūrus, -i, m., Quintus Laberius Durus (kwī'n'tus ła-bē'rī-ūs dū'rūs), a tribune.

dux, ducis, m. [dūcō, lead], leader, guide, commander. I, 21.
E

 ONLY before consonants,prep. with abl., originally denoting motion out of;
1. of place, out of, from, away from;
denoting position, in some phrases, on;
āē ex parte, on one side;
2. of time, from, after, since;
ē ex itinere, immediately after the march;
3. variously translated in other relations,
from, out of, of, because of, in accordance with; ē regiōne, opposite. I, 2.

ÉÉ

adv. [=ēā viā], by that way, there.

Eburōnes, -um, m. (Afg), the Eburones
(ēbū'ro-vē'zē). II, 4.

Eburōvīcēs, -um, m. (Bd), the Aulerīc
Eburōvices (aw-lēr'īs ēbū'ro-vē'zēz).
III, 17.

ēdīcō, -discere, -didicī, ---, tr. [discō, learn], learn thoroughly, get by
heart.

ēdītus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of ēdō,
give out, raise up], elevated, lofty. II, 8.

ēdō, -dere, -dīdī, -ditum, tr. [dō,
give], give out; inflict. I, 31.

ēdoceō, -docère, -docui, -doctum, tr.
[docēō, teach], teach thoroughly, in
form in detail, explain. III, 18.

ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr.
[dūcō, lead], lead out or forth; draw
(a sword). I, 10.

ēfēminō, 1, tr. [ē+fēmina, woman],
make effeminate, enervate, enfeeble.
I, 1.

ēferricō, -fercire, ---, -fertum, tr.,
fill completely, stop up.

ēfferē, efferre, extulī, élātum, tr. [ēx
+ferō, carry], bring or carry out, carry or take away; raise; spread
or publish abroad, make known; elate,
puff up. I, 5.

ēficiō, -ficère, -fēci, -fictum, tr.[ēx+
faciō, make], make or do completely,
complete, accomplish, construct;
make, cause, bring about, render. I,
38; II, 5.

ēfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, tr. [ēx
+fodiō, dig], dig out.

ēfugīō, -fugere, -fugī, ---, tr. and
intr. [ē+fugīō, flee], flee from or
away, escape. IV, 35.

egēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of egeō,
want], in want, needy, destitute.

ēgeō, egērē, egui, ---, intr., need, want,
lack, be without or destitute.

ēgestās, -tātis. I [ēgeō, want], pov-
erty.

ēgi, pf. of agō.

ego, mei (App. 51), first pers. pron., I;
pl., nós, we, us, etc. I, 40; II, 9.

ēgomet, emphatic for ego, I myself, I
for my part.

ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr.
[gradior, step], step or go out, come
forth, depart; march out, make a sor-
tie; land (from a ship), disembark. I,
27.

ēgreglē, adv. [ēgregius, excellent], ex-
cellently, admirably, remarkably. II,
29.

ēgregius, -a, -um, adj. [ē+grex, herd],
out of the common herd; excellent,
superior, eminent, remarkable. I,
19.

ēgressus, see ēgredior.

ēgressus, -ūs, m. [ēgredior, step out],
a landing, landing place.

ēlicīō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, tr. [laciō,
throw. App. 7], cast or drive out, ex-
pel; cast up; sé ēricere, rush out, sal-
ly. IV, 7.

ēius modi, of such a sort or kind, such.
III, 3.

ēlābor, -läbi, -läpsus sum, intr. [lā-
bor, slip], slip away, escape.

ēlātus, see ēferō.

Elaver, -eris, m. (Ce), the river Elaver
(ēl'ā-vēr), now the Allier.

ēlēctus, see ēligō.

ēlēctus, see ēligō.

ēlephantus, -ī, m., elephant.

Δeleuteti, -ōrum, m. (Dd), the Eleuteti
(ē-li'ē-tē-ti).

ēlicīō, -erē, -uī, -itum, tr., draw or en-
tice out, lure forth.

ēligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, tr. [le-
gō, choose], choose or pick out, select;
ēlēctus, pf. part. as adj., picked (men,
etc.). II, 4.

Elusātēs, -um, m. (Ed), the Elusates
(ēlū'sēb'ēz). III, 27.

ēmigrō, intr. [migrō, migrate], de-

ēmineō, -ēre, -uli, ---, intr., project.
éminus, adv. [manus, hand], aloof, at a distance, at long range.

émittō, -mittere, -misī, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], let go, send out or forth, release; hurl; discharge; drop. I, 25.

emō, emere, ēmi, emptum, tr., take; buy, purchase. I, 16.

énascōr, -nāscī, -nātus sum, intr.[nāscor, be born], be born from; spring up. II, 17.

enim, conj., in fact, really; for; sed enim, but in fact, however. I, 14.

énuntiō, 1, tr. [nūntiō, announce], report, declare, disclose. I, 4.

eō, ire, ii (vi), itum (App. 84), intr., go, proceed, march, pass. I, 6.

eō, adv. [old dative of is], thither, there (in sense of thither), to the place (where, etc.), to them (it, him, etc.). I, 25.

eō, abl. of is.

eōdem, adv. [old dative of idem], to the same place, to the same point (result, end, etc.). I, 15.

ephippiātus, -a, -um, adj. [ephippi-um, saddle], using a saddle. IV, 2.

ephippium, -pī, n., horse-cloth, riding-pad, saddle. IV, 2.

epistula, -ae, f., letter, epistle.

Eporēdorīx, -igis, m., Eporedorix (ēpōrēdō-rēiks), the name of two Haeduan leaders.

epulae, -ārum, f., feast, banquet.

eques, -ītis, m. [equus, horse], a horseman, a rider; pl., cavalry. Then (as originally serving on horseback), a knight (one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate). Also, a knight of (Gaul, of a corresponding class). I, 15.

equester, -trīs, -tre, adj. [eques, horseman], of or belonging to a horseman, equestrian, of cavalry, cavalry. I, 18.

equitātus, -ūs, m. [equitō, ride; equus, horse], cavalry, horsemen. I, 15.

equus, -ī, m., horse. I, 22.

Eratosthenēs, -is, m., Eratosthenes (ērato-stēs/ thē-nēz), a Greek geographer, born 276 B.C.  

érectus, see érigō.

éreptus, see éripīō.

ergā, prep. with acc., towards.

ergō, adv., therefore, then.

érigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum, tr. [re-gō, direct], lift or raise; érēctus, p.f. part. as adj., standing upright, high. III, 13.

éripīō, -ripere, -ripul, -reptum, tr. [rapiō, seize], wrest or take away, extort, deprive; rescue, relieve, save. I, 4.

errō, 1, intr., wander; err, be mistaken.

erumpō, -rupere, -rūpī, -ruptum, intr. [rumpō, break], break forth, sally. III, 5.

ēruptīō, -ōnis, f. [ērumpō, break forth], a breaking out, bursting forth, sortie, sally. II, 33.

essedārius, -rī, m. [ossa·dum, a war chariot], a soldier fighting from a war chariot, charioteer. IV, 24.

essedum, -i, n., a two-wheeled war chariot of the Britons. IV, 32.

ESUVIL, -orum, m. (Bed), the Esuvii (ē-sū/vi-li). II, 34.

et, conj., and; also, too, even; et ... et, both ... and. I, 1.

etiam, conj. and also, also, even, yet. I, 1.

etsi, conj. [et+sī, if], even if, although. I, 46; III, 24.

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsi, -vāsum, intr. [vādō, go], escape. III, 19.

ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulfum, tr. [vellō, pluck], pluck out, pull out. I, 25.

ēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, intr. [veniō, come], turn out, result. IV, 25.

ēventus, -ūs, m. [ēveniō, turn out], outcome, issue, result, consequence. II, 22.

ēvocō, 1, tr. [vocō, call], call forth or out, summon; ēvocātus, p.f. part. as noun, reënlisted veteran. III, 20.

ēvolō, 1, intr. [volō, fly], fly or rush forth. III, 28.

ex, see ē.

exāctus, see exigō.

exagitō, 1, tr. [agitō, freq. of agō, drive], drive out or away; disturb, harass. II, 29.

exāminō, 1, weigh.

exanimō, 1, tr. [anima, breath], deprive
EXERDESCO 30  EXPLEO

of breath, render breathless, exhaust; kill. II, 23.

exärdëscō, -ärđëscere, -ärsi, -ärsum, intr. [ärđëscō, incept. of ärđeō, blaze], take fire; be inflamed or enraged.
exaudiō, 4, tr. [audiō, hear], hear (from a distance). II, 11.

excédō, -cédere, -cessi, -cessum, intr. [cēdō, go], go out or away, withdraw, retire. II, 25.
excellō, -cellere, —, —, intr., excel, surpass.
excelsus, -a, -um, adj. [excellō, surpass], high.

exceptō, 1, tr. [freq. of excipiō, catch], take hold of, catch.

excidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cium, tr. [caedō, cut], hew away or down.
excipiō, -cipere, -cidi, -cium, tr. and intr. [capio, take]; tr., take up, catch, receive; take up (in turn); meet, withstand; relieve (of soldiers in battle); intr., follow. I, 52; III, 5.

excītō, 1, tr. [citō, rouse], call forth, excite, animate, arouse; erect, construct (towers); kindle (fires). III, 10.
exclūdō, -clādere, -clāsi, -clāsum, tr. [claudō, shut], shut out, cut off; hinder, prevent.

excōgitō, 1, tr. [cōgitō, think], think out, contrive, devise, invent.

excruciō, 1, tr. [cruciō, torture; crux, cross], torture greatly, torment, rack.

excubītor, -āris, m. [excubō, keep guard], watchman, sentinel.

excubō, -āre, -ū, -ītum, intr. [cubō, lie], lie outside; keep guard.

excūlō, 1, tr., trample, tread down.
excursiō, -ōnis, f. [excurrō, run forth], a running out or forth, sally, sortie. II, 30.
excūsātiō, -ōnis, f. [excūsō, excuse], excuse, apology.

excūsō, 1, tr. [causa, reason], give reason for; excuse. IV, 22.
exemplum, -ī, n., example, precedent. I, 8.

exēō, -āre, -ū, -ītum, intr. [ēō, go. App. 84], go from or out, depart from, leave. I, 2.
exercēō, 2, tr., practice, train, exercise. I, 48.
exercitātiō, -ōnis, f. [exercētō, freq. of exercēō, exercise], exercise, training; practice, experience. I, 39; III, 19.

exercitātus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of exercētō, train or practice well], well trained, skilful, versed. I, 36; II, 20.
exercitus, -ūs, m. [exercēō, train], a trained or disciplined body of men, an army. I, 3.
exhaurīō, -haurire, -hauiri, -haus- tum, tr. [haurīō, draw], draw out, empty.

exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr. [āgō, drive], finish, pass. III, 28.
exiguē, adv. [exiguus, scanty], meagrely, scarcely.
exiguitās, -tātis, f. [exiguus, scant], scantiness, meagerness, shortness, want. II, 21.
exiguus, -a, -um, adj., scanty, short, small, meager, limited. IV, 20.
eximius, -a, -um, adj. [eximō, take out], taken from the mass; hence choice, eminent. II, 8.
existimātiō, -ōnis, f. [existimō, estimate], judgment, opinion. I, 20.
existimō, 1, tr. [aestimo], estimate, reckon, think, consider. I, 6.
exitus, -ūs, m. [exēō, go out], a going out, exit, passage; issue, result, end. III, 8.
expedīō, 4, tr. [pēs, foot], set free; arrange, prepare.
expedītiō, -ōnis, f. [expediō, arrange], campaign, enterprise, expedition.
expeditus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part of expedīō, set free], unimpeached, free, unobstructed; without baggage; light armed; as noun, a light armed soldier. I, 6.

expellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, tr. [pelliō, drive], drive out or forth, expel. II, 4.

experior, -perīri, -pertus sum, tr., prove, try, test, experience. I, 31; II, 16.

expīō, 1, tr., atone for, expiate; avenge.
expleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, tr. [pleō, fill], fill out or up; finish, complete.
EXPLORATROR, -oris, m. [explōrō, search out], explorer, scout, spy. I. 12.

explōratūs, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part of explōrō, search out], ascertained; sure, certain. III. 18.

explōrō, 1, tr., search or find out, investigate, spy out, reconnoiter. II. 4.

expōnē, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr. [pōnē, place], put or set out; set on shore, disembark; draw up; set forth, explain. IV. 23.

exportō, 1, tr. [portō, carry], carry out or away. IV. 18.

expōscō, -poscere, -poposcī, —, tr. [poscō, demand], entreat, demand.

exprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, tr. [premō, press], press out, exert, elicit; raise. I. 32.

expugnātiō, -ōnís, f. [expugnō, take by storm], a taking by assault, storming.

expugnō, 1, tr. [pugnō, fight], take or carry by storm, capture by assault; overpower, sack. I. 11.

exquirō, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitum, tr. [quaerō, search], seek or search out, inquire, investigate. I. 41; III. 3.

exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, tr. [sequor, follow], follow out, enforce. I. 4.

exserō, -ere, -ui, -tum, tr., thrust or put out; uncover.

existō, -sisterē, -stītī, —, intr. [sistō, stand], stand or come forth, appear, arise; ensue. III. 15.

exspectō, 1, tr. [spectō, look at], look out for, await, expect; wait to see; anticipate, apprehend. I. 11.

exspoliō, 1, tr. [spoliō, strip], rob.

exstinguō, -stinguere, -stinxī, -stinctum, tr., put out, quench; destroy.

exstō, -stāre, -stītī, —, intr. [stō, stand], stand out, extend above.

exstruō, -struere, -strāxi, -strāctum, tr. [struō, build], build or pile up, rear, construct, build. II. 30.

exsul, -sulis, m. and f., an exile.

exterior, -ius, adj. [comp. of exterus. App. 44], outer, exterior.

exterreō, 2, tr. [terreō, frighten],

frighten outright, strike with terror, scare.

extimēscō, -timēscere, -timui, —, tr. [timēscō, incept. of timeō, fear], dread. III. 13.

extorqueō, -torquēre, -torsī, -tor-tum, tr. [torquēō, twist], wrest or force from, extort.

extra, adv. and prep. with acc., out of, outside of, beyond, without. I. 10.

extrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr. [trahō, draw], draw out; waste.

extrēmus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of exterus. App. 44], outermost, utmost, farther, extreme; the farthest part of; extrē-mi (as noun), the rear; ad extrēmum, at last, at the end; as a last resort. I. 1.

extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsi, -trūsum, tr. [trūdō, thrust], thrust or shut out. III. 12.

extruli, see efferō.

exuō, -uere, -ui, -utum, tr., draw out or off, put or strip off, divest, despoil. III. 6.

exūrō, -ürere, -ussi, -ustum, tr. [ūrō, burn], burn up. I. 5.

F.

faber, -brī, m., workman, mechanic; carpenter.

Fabius, -bi, m. (1), Gaius Fabius (gā’-yūs fā’bi-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. (2) Lucius Fabius (lū’shyūs fā’bi-ūs), a centurion of the 9th legion. (3) Quintus Fabius Maximus (kwī’n’tūs fā’bi-ūs māk’tsi-mūs), victor over the Gauls 121 B.C. I. 45.

facile, adv. [facilis, easy], easily, readily. Comp., facilis; sup., faciliōrem (App. 44). I. 2.

facilis, -e, adj. [faciō, do], easy. I. 6.

facinus -noris, n. [faciō, do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. I. 40; III. 9.

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, tr. and intr.; tr., make, construct, form, do, execute (commands, etc.); give (opportunity, etc.); with ut, bring about, cause: intr., do, act. Pass., fīō, fēri, factus sum (App. 83), with passive of above meanings, and, used impersonally, result, happen, come to pass. I. 2.
end; pl., boundaries; territory, country. I, 1.
finitimus, -a, -um, adj. [finis, limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; pl. as noun, neighbors. I, 2.
flo, fieri, factus sum, see facio.
firmiter, adv. [firmus, strong], firmly. IV, 26.
firmitudo, -inis, f. [firmus, strong], strength, firmness, solidity. III, 13.
firmō, I, tr. [firmus, strong], strengthen; fortify.
firmus, -a, -um, adj. strong, stable, vigorous, firm. I, 3.
flātūca, -ae,f., pile-driver. IV, 17.
Flaccus, see Valerius.
flāgitō, I, tr., demand. I, 16.
flamma, -ae, -f., fire, blaze.
flectō, flectere, flexī, flexum, tr., bend, turn, direct. IV, 33.
flēo, flēre, flēvī, flētum, intr., weep, shed tears, lament. I, 20.
flētus, -ūs, m. [fleō, weep], weeping, lamentation. I, 32.
flō, 1, intr., blow.
flōrens, -entis, adj. [fōrēō, flower], flourishing, prosperous, influential. I, 30; IV, 3.
flōs, flōris, m., blossom, flower.
flactus, -ūs, m. [fleō, flow], flooded, bilow, wave. III, 13.
flumēn, -inis, n. [flō, flow], river, stream. I, 1.
flō, fluere, flūxī, —, intr., flow, run. I, 6.
fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossum, tr., dig.
foedus, -eris, m., compact, treaty, alliance.
forem = essem; see sum.
fore = futūrus esse; see sum.
foris, adv., out of doors, without.
forma, -ae, f., form, shape, appearance. III, 14.
fors, foris, f., chance; forte, abl. as adv., by chance, per chance. II, 21.
fortis, -e, adj., strong, valiant, brave. I, 1.
fortiter, adv. [fortis, brave], bravely, stoutly, courageously. II, 11.
fortitūdō, -inis, f. [fortis, brave], bravery, courage. I, 2.
fortuitō, adv. [fors, chance], by chance.
fortūna, -ae, f. [fors, chance], fortune, luck, chance, opportunity; lot, condition; good fortune, success; property, estate. I, 11.
fortunātus, -a, -um, adj. [fortūna, fortune], prosperous, fortunate.
forum, -ī, n., public square, market place.
fossa, -ae, f. [fōdō, dīg], trench, ditch. I, 8.
fovea, -ae, f., pitfall.
frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, tr., break, wreck; crush, discourage. I, 31; IV, 29.
frāter, -tris, m., brother. I, 3.
fraternus, -a, -um, adj. [frāter, brother], brotherly, fraternal, of a brother. I, 20.
frāus, -dis, f., cheating, deception.
frequēns, -entis, adj., in great numbers, in crowds. IV, 11.
frētus, -a, -um, adj., relying upon. III, 21.
frigidus, -a, -um, adj., cold. IV, 1.
frigus, -oris, n., cold weather, cold; pl., frigores, cold seasons. I, 16.
frēns, frontis, f., forehead; front. II, 8.
fructuōsus, -a, -um, adj. [frēctus, fruit], fruitful, productive. I, 30.
fructus, -ūs, m. [frōr, enjoy], fruit; profit, reward.
frumentārius, -a, -um, adj. [frumentum, grain], of or pertaining to grain; of places, fruitful, productive of grain; rés frumentāria, supply of grain, provisions. I, 10.
frumentātō, -ōnis, f. [frumentor, get grain], getting grain, foraging expedition.
frumentor, 1, intr. [frumentum, grain], get grain, forage. IV, 9.
frumentum, -ī, n., grain; pl., crops. I, 3.
fruor, frui, fructus sum, intr., enjoy. III, 22.
frustrā, adv., without effect, in vain, to no purpose. III, 4.
frūx, -gis, f. [fruor, enjoy], fruit; pl., crops, produce. I, 28.
Fugus, see Cita.

Fuga, -ae, f., flight; in fugam concerere or dare, put to flight. I, 11.

Fugio, fugere, fugi, fugitum, tr. and intr. [fuga, flight], intr., flee, run away, escape; tr., shun, avoid. I, 53; II, 11.

Fugitivus, -a, -um, adj. [fugio, flee], fleeing; as noun, runaway slave. I, 23.

Fugus, see fugia.

Fūmus, -i, m., smoke. II, 7.

Fundus, -ae, f., sling. IV, 25.

Funditor, -ōris, m. [fundus, sling], slinger. II, 7.

Fundus, fundere, fūdus, fūsum, tr., pour, throw; rout, put to flight. III, 6.

Funebris, -e, adj. [fūmus, funeral], of a funeral; n. pl. as noun, funeral rites.

Fungor, fungī, fūctus sum, intr., perform, execute, discharge.

Fūnis, -is, m., rope, cable. III, 13.

Fūnus, -eris, n., funeral.

Furor, -ōris, m., rage, frenzy, madness. I, 40; II, 3.

Furtum, -i, n., theft.

Fūsitūs, -e, adj. [fundus, pour], liquid, molten.

Futūrus, see sum.

G.

Gabali, -ōrum, m. (De), the Gabali (gāliba-li).

Gabinius, -nī, m., Aulus Gabinius (awł-ľūs gā-bin'i-ūs), consul with Lucius Piso, 58 n.c. I, 6.

Geaemus, -i, n., a heavy iron javelin (of the Gauls). III, 4.

Galba, -ae, m. (1) Galba (gālb'ba), a king of the Sueviones. II, 4. (2) Servius Sulpius Galba (sēr'vi-ūs sūl-piśh'yūs gālb'ba), one of Caesar's legates, and said to have been one of his assassins. III, 1.

Galea, -ae, f., a leather helmet. II, 21.

Gallia, -ae, f., Gallia (gāl'y-a), better, Gaul, including either (1) Belgium, Celtic, and Aquitania, or (2) only Celtic. See map. I, 1.

Gallicus, -a, -um, adj. (Gallia, Gaul), pertaining to Gaul or the Gauls, Gallic. I, 22.

gallina, -ae, f., hen.

Gallus, -a, -um, adj., of Gaul, Gallic; pl. as noun, the Gauls, inhabiting Central Gaul, Northern Italy, etc. I, 1.

Gallus, -i, m., Marcus Trebius Gallus (mār'kūs trē-bī-ūs gāl'ūs), an officer in Caesar's army. III, 7.

Garumna, -ae, m. (DEcd), the Garumna (ga-rūm'na), or Garonne, a river forming the boundary between Aquitania and Celtic Gaul. I, 1.

Garumni, -ōrum, m. (Ed), the Garumnii (ga-rūm'nī), III, 27.

Gates, -um, m. (DEcd), the Gates (gāt'-ēz). III, 27.

Gauđeo, gaudère, gāvisus sum (App. 74), intr., rejoice. IV, 13.

Geldumni, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Geldumni (je-ūd-'ūm'nī or jē-ūd-'ūm'nī).

Genava, -ae, f. (Cg), Genava (je'nā-a-va), a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva. I, 6.

Genua, -i, m., son-in-law.

Generātim, adv. [genus, tribe], by tribes. I, 51.

Gēna, gentis, f., race; clan, tribe, people. II, 28.

Genua, -ae, n., descent, origin, race, class, tribe, family; kind, nature. I, 48; III, 14.

Gergovia, -ae, f. (De), Gergovia (jer-gō'vi-a), the chief town of the Arverni.

Germani, -ōrum, m., the Germani (jēr-mā'nī), better Germans. I, 1.

Germania, -ae, f., Germania (jēr-mā'nī-ā), better, Germany, the country east of the Rhine. IV, 4.

Germānicus, -a, -um, adj. [Germanus, German], of or pertaining to the Germans, German. IV, 16.

Gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum, tr., bear, carry, wield; (of war) carry on, perform, wage, conduct; pass., be done, go on, occur. I, 1.


Glands, glandis, f., acorn; ball, slug of lead.

Glēba, -ae, f., clod of earth; lump.
H.

habeō, 2, tr., have, hold, possess; think, consider, regard; deliver (with óratiōnem); in animō habēre, intend; rationem habēre, have regard for; take care or see that (followed by an ut clause); cōnsilium habēre, form a plan; in numerō hostium habēre, consider as enemies; alter sé habēre, be otherwise or different; for habēre with f. pass. part., e.g. vectigālia redempta habēre, see App. 286, b. I, 2.

Haeduus, -a, -um, adj. (Cef), of the Haedui (hēd'u-i), Haeduan; as noun, a Haeduan; pl. the Haedui, possibly Haeduans, one of the most powerful of the Gallic tribes. I, 3.

haesitō, 1, intr. [freq. of haerēo, stick], stick or cling fast, remain fixed.

hāmus, -i, m., hook, barb.

harpagō, -ōnis, m., grappling hook.

Harudēs; -um, m. (Ch), the Harudes (ha-rū'dēz), a German tribe. I, 31.

haud, adv., not, by no means, not at all.

Helvēticus, -a, -um, adj. [Helvetius], of the Helvetii, Helvetian.

Helvētius, -a, -um, adj. (Cgh), of the Helvetii (hēl-vē'shyi), Helvetian; as noun, one of the Helvetii, an Helvetian; pl., the Helvetii, possibly Helvetians. I, 1.

Helvii, -ōrum, m. (Df), the Helvii (hēl-vī-i).

Hercynia, -ae, f. (Bhi), Hercynia (hēr-sin'ī-a), the Hercynian forest.

hērēditās, -tātis, f. [hērēs, heir], inheritance.

hiberna, -ōrum, n. [sc. castra, camp], winter camp, winter quarters. I, 10.

Hibernia,-ae, f., Hibernia (hi-bōr'ni-a), better, Ireland.

hic, haec, hoc, dem. pron. (App. 54), used for what is near in space, time or thought, with more emphasis than is; this, this man, woman or thing; he, she, it; abl. sing. hoc, on this account; in this respect; the (with comparatives); hic . . . ille, the latter . . . the former. See App. 170, a. I, 1.

hic, adv., here, in this place; (of a place just mentioned), there, in that place;
IGNOTUS, -onis, m., stranger.

I. sign for anus, one.

laceo, laceré, lacuí, —, intr., lie; lie slain. II, 27.

lació, laceré, lécí, lactum, tr., throw, cast, hurl; (of an agger), throw up, construct. II, 6.

lactó, i, tr. [freq. of lació, throw], throw or hurl repeatedly, toss about; talk about, discuss. I, 18.

lactura, -ae, f. [lació, throw], loss, sacrifice.

iaculum, -i, n. [lació, throw], javelin, dart.

iam, adv., now, at this time; already, by this time, at last; really, indeed, even; neque iam or iam nón, no longer; ubi iam, as soon as. I, 5.

ibi, adv., there, in that place. I, 10.

Iccius, -i, m., Iccius (ik'shyús), a chief of the Remi. II, 3.

icetus, -ús, m., stroke, blow. I, 25.

id., abbr. for Ídus.

idcircó, adv., therefore.

idem, eadem, idem (App. 58), dem. pron. (is, this, that), the same; this very; idem atque, the same as. I, 3.

identidem, adv. [Idem, the same], repeatedly. II, 19.

Idoneus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suitable, adapted. I, 49; II, 8.


ignis, -is, m., fire. I, 4.

ignobilis, -e, adj. [in-+(g)nóbilis, well known], ignoble, unknown.

ignomínia, -ae, f., disgrace, dishonor.

ignóro, i, tr. [ignárus, not knowing], not know, be ignorant of; fail to observe, overlook. I, 27.

ignóscó, -noscere, -nóvi, -nótum, intr. [in-+(g)nóscens, knowing; nósco, forgive, pardon. I, 45; IV, 27.

ignotus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+(g)nóitus, known; nócscó, know], unknown, unfamiliar. IV, 24.
ILLATUS, see inferēō.

ille, illa, illud, gen. illius, dat. illī (App. 56), dem. pron. (of what is remote in time, place, thought, etc., cf. hic), that, that man, woman, or thing; he, she, it; hic... ille, the latter... the former, see App. 170, a. I, 3.

illīc, adv. [ille, that], in that place, there.

I, 18.

illīgo, I, tr. [ligō, bind], attach, hold or bind together. IV, 17.

illō, adv. [old dat. of ille], thither, to that place, there (=thither). IV, 11.

illīstris, -e, adj., distinguished, illustrious.

Illīricum, -ī, n., Illyricum (I-Ilr'ī-kum), Illyria, lying northeast of the Adriatic, forming a part of Caesar's province. II, 35.

imbēcillitās, -īs, f., weakness.

imber, -bris, m., a rainstorm, rain.

III, 29.

imitor, I, tr., imitate, copy after.

immānīs, -e, adj., huge, immense. IV, 1.

immineō, -minēre, ——, ——, intr., project, hang over; threaten, menace.

immittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [in+mittō, send], send or let into, insert; send against, direct towards or against; trāribus immissis, beams being placed between. IV, 17.

immolō, I, tr., sacrifice.

immortālis, -e, adj. [in+mortālis, mortal], not mortal, immortal. I, 12.

immūnis, -e, adj. [in+mūnus, burden], unburdened, by taxes, requirements, etc.

imparātus, -a, -um, adj. [in+parātus, prepared; parō, prepare], unprepared, not ready.

impedimentum, -ī, n. [impediō, hinder], hindrance, obstacle, impediment; pl., baggage, luggage (of an army), baggage-train (including the draught animals). I, 24.

impediō, 4, tr. [in+pēs, foot], entangle the feet, hamper, obstruct, hinder, impede, delay.

impeditus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of impedīō, hinder], hindered, burdened, imbeded, delayed; hindered or burdened by baggage; occupied or engaged in; at a disadvantage; of places, difficult of passage. I, 12.

impellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsūm, tr. [in+pellō, drive], drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel. I, 40; II, 14.

impendēō, -pendēre, ——, ——, intr. [in+pendēō, hang], overhang, impend. I, 6.

impēnsus, -a, -um, adj., expensive; with pretium, great. IV, 2.

imperātor, -ōris, m. [imperō, command], commander-in-chief, general. I, 40; II, 25.

imperātūm, -ī, n. [imperō, command], command, order. II, 3.

imperitus, -a, -um, adj. [in+peritus, experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. I, 40; IV, 22.

imperium, -īri, n. [imperō, command], command, order; authority, sway, supreme power, dominion, sovereignty; supreme military command, highest official power. I, 2.

imperō, I, tr. and intr. [in+parō, procure], demand from, enjoin or levy upon; command, order, instruct, rule. I, 7.

impetrō, I, tr. [in+patrō, accomplish], obtain (by request, entreaty, exertion), accomplish, succeed in obtaining (one's request): impetrāre ā (ab), gain permission from, persuade. I, 9.

impetus, -ūs, m., attack, onset, charge; impetuosity, force, vehemence. I, 22.

impius, -a, -um, adj. [in+pius, pious], wicked.

implícō, I, tr. [in+plicō, fold], interlace, interweave.


implōnō, -pōnerē, -posuī, -positum, tr. [in+plōnō, place], place upon, set on, put or impose on; mount. I, 42.

importō, I, tr. [in+portō, carry], carry or bring in, import. I, 1.

improbōs, -a, -um, adj. [in+probōs, good], unprincipled. I, 17.

imprōvisō, adv. [imprōvisus, unforeseen], unexpectedly, without warning. I, 13.

imprōvisus, -a, -um, adj. [in+prōvi-
impressus, foreseen; próvidēo, unforeseen, unexpected; dé imprōvisō, unexpectedly, suddenly. II. 3.

imprudēns, -entīs, adj. [in-+prudēns, prudent], imprudent, off one's guard, unwary. III. 29.

imprudentia, -ae, f. [imprudēns, imprudent], imprudence, want of foresight or forethought, ignorance, indiscretion. IV. 27.

impūbēs, -erīs, adj. [in-+pūbēs, mature], immature; unmarried, chaste.

impugnō, I, tr. [in+pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assail. I. 44; III. 26.

impulsus, see impellō.

impulsus, -ās, m. [impellō, impel], impulse, instigation.

impūne, adv. [in-+poena, punishment], without punishment. I. 14.

impūnitās, -tātis, f. [in-+poena, punishment], impunity.

incido, -ciderē, -cīdī, —, intr. [ca-dō, fall], fall into or upon; fall in with, meet; happen, arise. I. 53; II. 14.

incidō, -cidere, -cīdī, —, tr. [caedō, cut], cut into. II. 17.

incipō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [capio, take], undertake; begin, commence. II. 2.

incitō, I, tr. [citō, put in motion], set in motion; incite, arouse, urge on, stimulate; exasperate; cursū incitā-tō, at full speed. I. 4.

incognitus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+cognitus, known; cognoscō, learn], unknown. IV. 20.

incolō, -colere, -colūi, —, tr. and intr. [colō, cultivate], inhabit, dwell in; live. I. 1.

incolumis, -e, adj., unhurt, uninjured, safe and sound, unimpaired. I. 53; III. 6.

incognitor, -a, -um, n. [incommodus, inconvenient], inconveniently, unseasonably.

incommodum, -ī, n. [incommodus, inconvenient], inconvenience, disadvantage, trouble; disaster, defeat, loss, injury. I. 13.

incrēdibilis, -e, adj. [in-+crēdibilis, credible], incredible, unlikely; extraordinary. I. 12.

increpitō, I, tr. [freq. of increpō, chide], chide, blame; make sport of, taunt. II. 15.

incumbē, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, intr. [cf. cubē, lie], recline upon; devote one's self to.

incursō, -onis, f. [incurrō, rush into or upon], invasion; onset, attack.

incursus, -ūs, m. [incurrō, rush into or upon], attack. II. 20.

incusō, 1, tr. [causa, cause or case], bring a case or charge against; censure, upbraid, blame. I. 40; II. 15.
inde, adv., from that place, thence; then, thereupon. I, 10.

indictum, -cī, n. [indicō, disclose], disclosure, information: per indictum, through informers. - 4.

indicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, tr. [dicō, say], say publicly, proclaim, appoint, call. I, 30.

indictus, -a, -um, adj. [in—dictus, pf. part. of dicō, say], unsaid; causā indictā, without a trial.

indignē, adv. [indignus, unworthy], unworthily, dishonorably.

indignātās, -tātis, f. [indignus, unworthy], unworthiness; outrage, disgrace. II, 14.

indignor, I, intr. [indignus, unworthy], deem unworthy; be indignant.

indignus, -a, -um, adj. [in—dignus, worthy], unworthy, disgraceful.

indiligēns, -entis, adj. [in—diligēns, careful], not careful; negligent, lax.

indiligenter, adv. [indiligēns, careless], carelessly. III, 33.

indiligentia, -ae, f. [indiligēns, careless], negligence.

indūcō, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, tr. [ducō, lead], lead or draw on; induce, influence, instigate; cover. I, 2.

indulgentia, -ae, f. [indulgeō, indulge], forbearance, clemency.

indulgeō, -dulgerē, -dulsi, —, intr., be indulgent to, favor. I, 40.

induō, -duere, -dul, -dūtum, tr., put on; sé induere, be impaled or pierced. II, 21.

industriē, adv. [industrius, diligent], diligently.

indūtia, -ērum, f., truce. IV, 12.

Indutiomarōs, -is, m., Indutiomarus (in—dūt’shyō-mā’rōs), a chief of the Treveri.

ineō, -ire, -ī, -itum, tr. [ēo, go. App. 84], go into; enter upon, begin; inire consilium, form; inire rationem, make an estimate, decide; inire grā-tiam, gain; inire numerum, enumerate. II, 2.

inermis, -e, adj. [in—arma, arms], without arms or weapons, unarmed. I, 40; II, 27.

iners, -ortis, adj. [in—ars, skill], without skill; unmanly, cowardly. IV, 2.

infāmia, -ae, f. [in—fāma, renown], dishonor, ill repute.

infāns, -antis, adj. [in—fāns, speaking], not speaking; as noun, infant.

infectus, -a, -um, adj. [in—fectus, done; faciō, do], not done, unaccomplished, unfinished.

inferior, -ius, comp. of inferus.

inferō, inferre, intuitī, illātum, tr. [ferō, bear], bear into, import, infect, cause, produce; cast into; in equum inferre, mount on a horse; causā illātā, making an excuse; signa inferre, advance the standards, attack. I, 2.

inferus, -a, -um, adj., low, below; comp., inferior, lower; inferior; ab inferiōre parte, below, down stream; sup., infimus or imus, lowest, last with collis, the base of; ad infimum, ab infimō, at the bottom. I, 1.

infestus, -a, -um, adj., hostile; infestis signis, with standards in battle array.

infiicio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, tr. [faciō, make], stain.

infidēlis, -e, adj. [in—fidēlis, faithful], faithless, untrustworthy.

infigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum [figō, fix], tr., fasten in.

infimus, sup. of inferus.

infinitus, -a, -um, adj. [in—finitus, ended; finīō, limit], endless, boundless, vast, countless.

infārmītās, -tātis, f. [infārmus, not strong], weakness; fickleness, inconstancy. IV, 5.

infārmus, -a, -um, adj. [in—fārmus, strong], not strong, weak, feeble. III, 24.

inflectō, -flectere, -flexi, -flexum, tr. [flectō, bend], bend down; with reflex., become bent. I, 25.

inflox, -fluere, -flōxi, —, intr. [fluō, flow], flow into, empty into. I, 8.

infodiō, -fodere, -fōdi, -fossum, tr. [fodiō, dig], dig or drive into.

infra, adv. [inferus, below], below; prep. with acc., below, smaller than. IV, 36.
INGENS, -entis, adj., enormous, huge, vast, large. I, 39; IV, 10.

INGRATUS, -a, -um, adj. [in-+gratus, pleasing], displeasing, disagreeable.

INGREDIOR, -redni, -gressum sum, intr. [gradior, go], go or come into enter. II, 4.

INICIÓ, -icere, -iécī, -iectum, tr. [laciō, hurl. App. 7], throw into or upon; put or place on; inspire, infuse." I, 46; IV, 17.

INIMICITIA, -ae, f. [inimicus, un-friendly], enmity.

INIMICUS, -a, -um, adj. [in-+amicus, friendly], un-friendly, hostile; as noun, an enemy (personal), rival, to be distinguished from hostis, a public enemy. I, 7.

INIQVITAS, -tātis, f. [iniquus, unequal], inequality, unfairness; disadvantage. II, 22.

INIVIUS, -a, -um, adj. [in-+aequus, even, just], uneven; unjust, unfair, unfavorable, disadvantageous. I, 44; II, 10.

INITIUM, -tī, n. [ineō, go into], beginning, commencement, origin; edge, of a country, borders. I, 1.

INJUNGŌ, -iungere, -iūnxi, -iunctum, tr. [iungō, join], join to; impose.

INIURIA, -ae, f. [in-+ius, right], wrong, injustice; outrage, injury, harm, violence. I, 7.

INJUSSIUS, abl. of INIUSSSUS, -us, m. [iubeō, order], without command or order. I, 19.

INNASCOR, -nāsci, -nātus sum, intr. [nāscor, be born], be born in, been-gendered; INNATUS, pf. part. as adj., inborn, natural.

INNITOR, -nītī, -nixus sum, intr. [nitori, rest on,], lean upon. II, 27.

INOCENS, -entis, adj. [in-+nocēns, injurious], not injurious; innocent.

INNOCENTIA, -ae, f. [innocēns, innocent], integrity. I, 40.

INOPIA, -ae, f. [inops, needy], need, want, poverty, lack; want of provisions, hunger. I, 27.

INOPINANS, -antis, adj. [in-+opināns, expecting], not expecting, not suspecting, unawares, off one's guard. I, 12.

INQUAM, -is, -it, def. verb, tr., used only with direct quotations and following one or more words of the quotation, say. IV, 25.

INSCIÉNS, -entis, adj. [in-+sciēns, knowing], not knowing, unaware, ignor-ant. I, 19.

INSCIENTIA, -ae, f. [INSCIÉNS, ignorant], ignorance. III, 9.

INSCIUS, -a, -um, adj. [sciō, know], not knowing, ignorant, not aware. IV, 4.

INSEQUOR, -sequi, -secutus sum, tr. and intr. [sequor, follow], follow up or after, follow close upon, pursue. I, 15.

INSECRÉNS, -entis, adj. [INSECRÉNS, inviolable], inviolate, unviolated, none. IV, 17.

INSCIÉNS, -entis, adj. [INSCIÉNS, knowing], not knowing, unaware, igno-rant. I, 19.

INSCIENTIA, -ae, f. [INSCIÉNS, ignorant], ignorance. III, 9.

INSILIÓ, -silire, -siliu, -sultum, tr. [saliō, leap], leap upon. I, 52.

INSIMULÓ, 1, tr., charge, blame, accuse.

INSINUÔ, 1, tr. [sinuō, wind], wind into; make one's way into, penetrate. IV, 33.

INSOLENTIA, -ae, f. [INSOLENS, unwonted], unusually; arrogantly, insolently. I, 14.

INSPICIO, 1, tr. [spectō, look], look at, view.

INSTABILIS, -e, adj. [IN-+stabilis, firm], not firm, unstable. IV, 23.

INSTAR, n., indecl. likeness; with gen., like. II, 17.

INSTIGŌ, 1, tr., urge on, incite.

INSTITUO, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, tr. and intr. [statuō, set up], set up or put in order, draw up; train, educate; procure, prepare; build, construct; begin, determine, decide upon, adopt; INSTITUTUS, pf. part. as adj.,
usual, customary; finished, in addition to definitions above. I, 14.

institutum, -i, n. [Instituō, set up, establish], a fixed course or principle; habit, institution, custom. I. 1.

Instō, -stāre, -stītī, -stātum, intr. [stō, stand], stand upon or near, be at hand, press on; threaten. I. 16.

instrumentum, -i, n. [Instruō, build], tool; apparatus, equipment.

instruō, -strue-, -struxī, -strūctum, tr. [struō, build], build upon, build, construct; form, draw up in battle array; equip, furnish. I. 22.

insuetactus, -a, -um, adj. [suēscō, become accustomed, faciō, make], accustomed, trained. IV. 24.

insuetus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+suētus, accustomed], unaccustomed, not used to.

insula, -ae, f., island. III. 9.

insuper, adv. [super, above], above, on the top from above. IV. 17.

integer, -gra, -grum, adj., untouched, intact, whole, unimpaired; fresh; rē integrā, before anything was done. III. 4.

integō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctum, tr. [tagō, cover], cover over; protect.

intellegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum, tr. [inter+legō, choose, select], select or distinguish between; understand; know; see, perceive, realize; find out, learn. I. 10.

intendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, tr. [tendō, stretch], stretch out or to; intentus, pf. part..intent.on, absorbed in, attentive to. III. 22.

inter, prep. with acc. (sometimes following its noun), (1) of place, among, between: (2) of time, during, within, for; (3) in other relations, among, between, in; in among or between; to; over; along with; (4) with reflex. pron., of reciprocal action, (App. 166), with, to, or from each other or one another, as, inter sē differunt, differ from one another; each other, one another, as, co-hortātī inter sē, encouraging one another. I. 1.

intercedō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, intr. [cēdō, go], go or come between,

lie between, intervene, be between; pass. I. 7.

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [capio, take], take or catch between (one point and another); interrupt; interceot, cut off. II. 27.

interclūdō, -cīdere, -clusī, -clūsum, tr. [claudō, shut], shut or cut off, separate, hinder; with itinera, block. I. 23.

interdicō, -dicere, -dīxi, -dictum, intr. [dicō, say], prohibit, exclude, forbid, interdict; aquā atque igni interdicere, forbid the use of fire and water, banish. I. 46.

interdīu, adv. [dīēs, day], during the day, by day. I. 8.

interdum, adv. [dum, while], in the meantime; at times, sometimes. I. 14.

interea, adv., in the meantime, meanwhile. I. 8.

intereō, -ire, -ii, -itum, intr. [eō, go. App. 81], perish, die.

interesse, see intersum.

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [facciō, make], make away with, kill, destroy. I. 12.

interiō, -iere, -iēci, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], throw or hurl between; put or place between; interiectus, pf. part. as adj., lying between, intervening, interspersed; mediocrī interiectō spatīō, not far away. II. 17.

interim, adv., meanwhile, in the mean time. I. 16.

interior, -ius, adj. (App. 43), interior, inner; as noun, interiōres, inhabitants of the interior; occupants of a town.

interitus, -ūs, m. [interīō, die], destruction, death.

intermittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. and intr. [mittō, send], send between; intervene, separate; abate, cease, let up, discontinue; delay, neglect, omit; let pass. I. 26.

internecio, -onis, f. [necō, destroy], extermination, annihilation, utter destruction. I. 13.

interpellō, I, tr., interrupt, hinder. I. 44.
interpūnō, -pōnere, -posul, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], place between, interpose; allege; cause; fidem interpōnere, pledge. I. 42; IV. 9.

interpres, -etis, m., f., interpreter; mediator. I. 19.

interrogō, 1, tr. [interpres, interpreter], interpret, explain.

interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, tr. [rumpō, break], break off or through; destroy.

interscindō, -scindere, scidī, -scissum, tr. [scindō, cut, -destroy], cut through, cut in two; destroy. II. 9.

intersum, -esse, -ful, intr. [sum, be. App. 66], be or lie between, intervene; be present at, take part in; impers., interest, it concerns, it is important; there is a difference or an interval; magnī interest, it is of great importance. I. 15.

intervallum, -i, n. [vāllus, palisade], the space between two palisades; interval (of space or time); distance. I. 22.

interveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, intr. [venīō, come], come between, come up; arrive.

interruptus, -a, -um, m. [interveniō, come between], coming; aid. III. 15, 16.

intexō, -texere, -texul, -textum, tr. [texō, weave], weave in or together. II. 33.

intoleranter, adv., intolerably; impatiently, eagerly.

intrā, prep. with acc. [inter, between], within; inside; into. I. 32; II. 4.

intritus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+tritus, worn], unwearied. III. 26.

intrō, 1, tr., go or walk into, enter, penetrate. II. 17.

intrōdūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr. [intrō, within+dūcō, lead], lead or bring into. II. 5.

introeō, -ire, -iī,-itum, intr. [intrō, within+iē, go. App. 84], go or come in, enter.

introitus, -a, -um, m. [introeō, go in], entrance, approach.

intrōmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [intrō, within+mittō, send], send or let in. II. 33.

intrōrusus, adv. [intrō, within+versus, pf. part. of vertō, turn], within, on the inside. II. 18.

intrōrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, tr. [intrō, within+rumpō, break], break in or through.

intueor, 2, tr. [tueor, look], look at. I. 32.

intus, adv., within, on the inside.

inustitātus, -ā, -um, adj. [in-+ūstātus, usual], unusual, uncommon, strange, startling. II. 31.

inūtilis, -e, adj. [in-+ūtilis, useful], useless, worthless; disadvantageous. II. 16.

inveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, tr. [venīō, come], come upon, find, meet with; find out, learn. I. 53; II. 16.

inventor, -ōris, m. [inveniō, find], inventor, author.

inveterāscō, -veterāscere, -veterāvī, -veterātum, intr., grow old; become established. II. 1.

invictus, -ā, -um, adj. [in-+victus, conquered], unconquerable, invincible. I. 36.

invideo, -vidēre, -vidī, -visum, intr. [videō, see], look askance at; envy. II. 31.

invidia, -ae, f. [invideō, envy], envy, hatred.

inviolātus, -ā, -um, adj. [in-+violātus, injured], uninjured; inviolate, sacred. III. 9.

invitō, 1, tr., invite, summon; allure, persuade. I. 35; IV. 6.

invitus, -ā, -um, adj., against one's wish or will, unwilling, reluctant; sē invitō, against his will. I. 8.

iovis, see Iuppiter.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen. ipsīus (App. 59) intensive pron., self (as opposed to some one else; not to be confused with the reflexive sē, self. App. 163); himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, it, they; as adj., very; in gen., his, her, its, or their own. I. 1.

iracundia, -ae, f. [irācundus, irritable], irritability, anger.
IRACUNDUS

iracundus, -a, -um, adj. [Ira, anger], irritable. I, 31.
irrideō, -ridère, -risi, -risum, intr. [in-rideō, laugh], laugh, jeer. II, 30.
irridiculē, adv. [in-r-ridicus, witty], without wit, unwittily. I, 42.
irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, tr. [in-rumpē, break], break into, rush into; force a way into, storm. IV, 14.
irruptiō, -ōnis, f. [irrumpē, break into], a breaking into, attack.
is, ea, id, gen. eius (App. 57), weak dem. pron. referring to some person or object named in the context, this, that, these, those; he, she, it, they; the, a; is locus quō, a, or the, place where; ea quae, (the) things which; eō, with comp., the; eō magis, all the more; eō ... quō, with comparatives, the ... the. I, 1.
iste, -a, -ud, gen. istius (App. 55), dem. pron. used of something near the person addressed, that, this.
ita, adv., so, thus, in this way; as follows; ut ... ita, in proportion as ... in such proportion, as ... so; non ita, not so very, not very; ita ... ut, just ... as; so ... that. I, 11.
Italia, -ae, f., Italy, sometimes (in Caesar) including Cisalpine Gaul, but usually including only the rest of the peninsula. I, 10.
Itaque, conj. [ita, so], and so, therefore, accordingly. I, 9.
item, adv., in like manner, so, also, just so. I, 3.
iter, itineris, n. (eō, go), route, road; journey, march; passage; facere iter, march, travel; magnis itineribus, by forced marches. I, 3.
iterum, adv., again, a second time; semel atque iterum, again and again. I, 31.
Itius, -ti, m. (Ad), Itius (Ish/yus), a harbor.
ītūrus, see ēō.
īuba, -ae, f., mane. I, 48.
īubeō, īubēre, iussi, iussum, tr., order, bid, command, enjoin. I, 5.
īūdicium, -cl, n. [īūdex, judge], judicial proceedings, trial; opinion, judgment; īūdiciōm facere, express an opinion; īūdiciō, by design, purposely. I, 4.
īūdicō, 1, tr. [īūdex, a judge], pass judgment on, judge, decide, determine; think, consider. I, 12.
iugum, -i, n. [iungō, join], yoke; ridge, crest. I, 7.
iūmentum, -i, n. [iungō, join, yoke], yoke or draft animal, beast of burden. I, 3.
iūntūra, -ae, f. [iungō, join], joining. IV, 17.
iungō, iungere, iūnxi, iūctum, tr., join or unite together, attach, connect. I, 8.
iūnior, see iuvenis.
iūnius, -ni, m., (1) Decimus Junius Brutus, see Brūtus; (2) Quintus Junius (kwin'tus jū'ni-us), a Spaniard in Caesar's service.
Iuppiter, Iovis (App. 27), m., Jupiter (jū'pl-tēr), or Jove, god of the heavens, the chief god of the Romans.
īūra, -ae, m. (Cg), the Jura (jū'ra) mountains. I, 2.
iūrō, 1, tr. and intr. [īūs, right], take oath; swear. I, 31.
iūs, iūris, n., right, justice, law; rights; power, authority. I, 4.
iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrando, n. [īūs, right-īōrō, swear], an oath. I, 3.
iussū, m., abl. of iussus, -ús, [iubeō, order], by command, by order.
iūstitia, -ae, f. [iūstus, just], justice, fair dealing, uprightness. I, 19.
iūstus, -a, -um, adj. [īūs, right], in accordance with law or right, lawful, valid, just, fair; proper, regular; with funera, appropriate. I, 43; IV, 16.
iuvenis, -e, adj., young; comp., iūnior, in piur. as noun, men of military age.
iuventūs, -ūtis, f. [iuvenis, young], period of youth, from seventeen to forty-five years; the youth, the young men. III, 16.
iuxtā, adv. [iungō, join], next, near. II, 26.
K.

Kal., abbr. for Kalendae, -ärum, f., the Calends, the first day of the Roman month. I, 6.

L.

L., abbr. for Lucius, Lucius (lū'shyūs), a Roman praenomen. I, 6.

L., sign for quinquaginta, fifty.

Laberius, -ri, m., Quintus Laberius Durus (kwin'tūs lā-bēr'-ē-ūs dū'rūs), a tribune.

Labiēnus, -ī, m., Titus Atius Labienus (tū'tūs ā-shyūs lā-bē-i'-ē-nūs), Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War. In the Civil War he aided Pompey and was slain at Munda, 45 B.C. I, 10.

lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, intr., slip; go wrong; häc spē lāpsus, disappointed in this hope.

labor, -ōris, m., toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship. I, 44; III, 5.

labērō, 1, intr. (labor, toil), toil, work hard; be anxious, troubled, or perplexed; labor, suffer, be hard pressed. I, 31; IV, 26.

labrum, -ī, n., lip; edge.

lāc, lactis, n., milk. IV, 1.

laecessō, -ere, -ivi, -itum, tr., arouse, harass, provoke, irritate, attack. I, 15.


lacrimō, 1, intr. [lacrima, tear], weep.

lacus, -ūs, m., lake. I, 2.

laedō, laedere, laesi, laesium, tr., hurt, damage; laedere fidem, to break faith.

laetitia, -ae, f. [laetus, joyful], joy, rejoicing.

laetus, -a, -um, adj., joyful. III, 18.

languidē, adv. [languidus, faint], faintly, sluggishly.

languidus, -a, -um, adj., weak, faint, sluggish. III, 5.

languor, -ōris, m., weakness, faintness, lassitude.

lapis, -idis, m., stone. I, 46; II, 6.

laqueus, -i, m., noose, snare.

largior, 4, tr. [largus, large], give largely or freely; bribe. I, 18.

largiter, adv. [largus, large], largely, freely, much; largiter posse, to have great influence. I, 18.

largitō, -onis, f. [largior, bribe], bribery. I, 9.

lassitudō, -inis, f. [lassus, weary], weariness, faintness, exhaustion, lassitude. II, 23.

lātē, adv. [lātus, wide], widely, extensively; longē lātēque, far and wide. I, 2.

latebra, -ae, f. [lateō, lie hidden], hiding place.

lateō, -ère, -uī, —, intr., escape notice, lurk, lie concealed or hidden. II, 19.

lātitudō, -inis, f. [lātus, wide], width, extent, breadth. I, 2.

Latobrigi, -ōrum, m. (Bh), the Lato-brigi (lā'tō-brij'i), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. I, 5.

latro, -onis, m., freebooter, bandit, robber. III, 17.

latrocinium, -ni, n. [latrō, robber], robbery, brigandage.

lātus, -a, -um, adj. broad, wide, extensive. I, 2.

lātus, see ferō.

latus, -eris, n., side; wing or flank of an army. I, 25.

laudō, 1, tr. [laus, praise], praise.

laus, laudis, f., praise, commendation; renown, popularity, glory. I, 40; IV, 3.

lavō, lavāre, lāvi, lautum, tr., wash; in pass., bathe. IV, 1.

laxō, 1, tr., stretch out, extend, open. II, 25.

lēgātiō, -onis, f. [lēgō, delegate], embassy, legation; commission. I, 3.

lēgātus, -ī, m. [lēgō, delegate], one with delegated powers; ambassador, envoy, legate; lieutenant, legatus. I, 7.

legiō, -onis, f. [legō, choose], a legion. I, 7.

legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj. [legō, legion], relating to a legion, legionary. I, 42; II, 27.

Lemannus, -i (with or without lacus), m. (Cg), Lake Lemannus (lē-mān'ūs), better Lake Leman, or the Lake of Geneva. I, 2.
Lemovicēs, -um, m. (CDd), the Lemovices (lēmōvīsēs). 45

Lemovicens, -um, m. (CDd), the Lemovices (lēmōvīsēs).

Lēnis, -e, adj., gentle, mild, smooth. IV, 28.

Lēnitās, -tātis, f. [lēnis, smōoth], smoothness, gentleness. I, 12.

Lēniter, adv. [lēnis, smooth], softly, smoothly, gently, gradually. II, 8.

Lepontii, -ōrum, m. (Ch), the Lepontii (lē-pōnī/shyī). IV, 10.

Lēpus, -oris, m., hare.

Leuci, -ōrum, m. (Bīg), the Leuci (lū'ī). I, 40.

Levāci, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Levaci (lē-vā'ī).

Lēvis, -e, adj., light (in weight), slight; light-minded, fickle, inconstant. II, 10.

Lēvitās, -tātis, f. [lēvis, light], lightness; fickleness, restlessness. II, 1.

Lēvō, I, tr. [lēvis, light], lighten, ease, relieve.

Lēx, lēgis, f., law, statute, enactment. I, 1.

Lexoviī, -ōrum, m. (Bd), the Lexovii (lēksōvī'-ī). III, 9.

Libentēr, adv. [libēns, willing], willingly, gladly, with pleasure. I, 44; III, 18.

Liber, -era, -erum, adj., unrestrained, free; undisputed. I, 44.

Liberālitās, -tātis, f. [liber, free], freedom in giving, etc.; generosity. I, 18.

Liberālitēr, adv. [liber, free], graciously, kindly. II, 5.

Liberē, adv. [liber, free], freely, without restraint, boldly. I, 18.

Liberī, -ōrum, m. [liber, free], the free members of the household (as opposed to slaves); children. I, 11.

Liberō, I, tr. [liber, free], make or set free, release, deliver. IV, 19.

Liberētās, -tātis, f. [liber, free], freedom, liberty, independence. I, 17.

Librīlis, -e, adj. [libra, a pound], of a pound weight; funda librīlis, a sling for throwing heavy missiles.

Licēns, see liceor.

Licentia, -ae, f. [licet, it is permitted], lawlessness, presumption.

Liceor, 2, intr., bid (at an auction). I, 18.

Licet, licēre, licuit and licitum est, intr., imper., It is lawful, one has permission, it is permitted, one may, one is allowed; licet mihi, I may; petere ut liceat, to ask permission. I, 7.

Liger, -eris, m. (Cee), the river Liger, (līv'jēr), better the Loire. III, 9.

Lignatiō, -ōnis, f. [lignum, wood], the procuring of wood.

Lignatōr, -ōris, m. [lignum, wood], one sent to get wood, wood-forager.

Lilium, -li, n., lily; a kind of pitfall, named from its resemblance to a lily.

Linea, -ae, f. [linum, flax], linen thread; line.

Lingones, -um, m. (Bt), the Lingones (līng'gō-nēz). I, 26.

Lingua, -ae, f., tongue; language. I, 1.

Lingula, -ae, f. [lingua, tongue], a little tongue; a tongue of land. III, 12.

Inter, -tris, f., skiff, rowboat, canoe. I, 12.

Linum, -i, n., flax; linen, canvas. III, 13.

Lis, lītis, f., strife; lawsuit; damages.

Liscus, -i, m., Liscus (līs/kūs), a chief magistrate of the Haeduī. I, 16.

Litaviccus, -i, m. Litavicus (līvā-vīk'ūs), a Haeduan nobleman.

Littera, -ae, f., a letter of the alphabet, a written sign, mark, or character; in pl., letters of the alphabet; letter, epistle. I, 26.

Litus, -oris, n., seashore, beach, shore. IV, 23.

Locus, -i, m. (pl. loca, -ōrum, n.), place, position, locality, situation; topic, subject; condition, state; rank, family; opportunity; obsidum locō, as hostages. I, 2.

Locutus, see loquor.

Longē, adv. [longus, long], far, far away, distant; longē lātēque, far and wide. I, 1.

Longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [longus, long], far off, distant, remote; long, long continued. I, 47; IV, 27.

Longitūdō, -inis, f. [longus, long], length, extent; long duration. I, 2.

Longirius, -ri, m. [longus, long], a long pole. III, 14.
MANIPULUS

longus, -a, -um, adj., long, distant; of long duration; tedious. I, 40; II, 21.
loquor, loqui, locutus sum, intr., speak, talk, converse. I, 20.
lórifica, -ae, f., coat of mail; parapet, breastwork.
Lúcánus, -ni, m. Quintus Lucanius (kwín’tüs lük-kä’ni-üs) a centurion.
Lucterius, -rî, m., Lucterius (lük-të’rî-üs), a chief of the Cadurci.
Lugotorix, -ígis,m., Lugоторix (lük-gôt’-ô-riks), a British chief.
lùna, -ae, f., the moon. I, 50; IV, 29.
Lutetia, -ae, f. (Be), Lutetia (lük-të’-shya), the capital of the Parisii, now Paris.
lûx, lûcis, f., light, daylight; primâ lûce, at daybreak. I, 22.
lûxuria, -ae, f., luxury, high living. II, 15.

M.
M., abbr. for Marcus (mär’küs), a Roman praenomen. I, 2.
M, sign for mille, thousand.
mâceria, -ae, f., wall.
mâchínâtiô, -ônis, f. [mâchinor, contrive], a mechanical contrivance, machine, engine, derrick. II, 30.
maestus, -a, -um, adj. [maereō, be sad], dejected, sad.
Magetobriga, -ae, f. (Cf), Magetobriga (mâj’Ô-tôb’ri-ga), a Gallic town where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls. I, 31.
majis, adv., comp. [magnus, great], more, rather, in a higher degree; sup., maximē, especially, in the highest degree; mostly, mainly. I, 3.
magistrâtus, -ús, m. [magister, master], public office, magistracy; public officer; magistrate. I, 4.
magníficus, -a, -um, adj. [magnus, great + factô, make], magnificent, splendid.
magnitûdô, -înis, f. [magnus, great], greatness, great size, size, extent; stature (corporum); violence (venti); severity (poenæ); magnitûdô animî, courage. I, 39; II, 12.
magnopere, adv. [magnus, great + opus, work], with great labor; especially.

magnus, -a, -um, adj. [magnus, great (in size, quantity, or degree), large, abundant, much; important, extensive; loud (voice); high (title); magni (gen. sing. neut.), of great importance; magnis itineribus, by forced marches. Comp., maior; sup., maximus. I, 2.
maiestôs, -tâtis, f. [maior, greater], greatness, honor, majesty.
maior, mäius, adj. [comp. of magnus, great], greater (in degree, size, time, etc.); older, elder; as noun, maiôrés nátû, elders, old men; maiôrés, ancestors. I, 13.
malacía, -ae, f., a calm at sea. III, 15.
male, adv. [malus, bad], badly, ill, adversely. Comp., pelius; sup., pessimé. I, 40.
malescium, -cî, n. [málum, evil + faciô, do], evil doing, mischief, harm, injury. I, 7.
málô, málle, málui, — (App, 82). tr. and intr. [magis, more + volô, wish], wish more or rather, prefer. III, 8.
malus, -î, m., mast; pole, beam (upright). III, 14.
malus, -a, -um, adj. [málum, evil], evil, bad, injurious; comp., pelor, pelius; n. as noun, a worse thing; sup., pessimus. I, 31.
mandâtum, -î, n. [mandô, command], charge, injunction, order, command; message. I, 35; II, 5.
mandô, i, tr. [manus, hand + dô, give], give into one’s hands; entrust, commit; enjoin, order, command. I, 12.

mandubii, -ôrum, m. (Cf), the Mandubii (mân-du’bî-i).
mandubracius, -cî, m., Mandubracius (mân’du’brâ’shyûs), a British chief.
mâne, adv., in the morning, early. IV, 13.
maneō, manère, mãnsi, mãnsum, intr., remain, continue, abide, stay. I, 36; IV, 1.
manipulāris, -e, adj. [manipulus, maniple], of a maniple; as noun, common soldier; suus manipulāris, a soldier of his own company.

manipulus, -i, m. (manus, hand + pleô, fill), a handful (esp. of hay, about a
pole, anciently used as a standard, a company (of two centuries, the third of a cohort), maniple. II, 25.


mansuefaciō, -facere, -feci, -factum (paes., mansuefīiō), tr. [mansuetūs, tame + faciō, make], tame.

mansuetūdō, -inis, f. [mansuetūs, tame], gentleness, clemency, compassion. II, 14.

manus, -us, f., the hand; in manibus, near at hand; manū, by hand, by art; ferrea manus, a grappling-hook; dare manus, yield; an armed force, troop, band, company. I, 25.

Marcomanni, -ōrum, m. (Bj), the Marcomanni (mār'-kō-mān'i), I, 51.

mare, -is, n., sea; mare Oceanum, the ocean. III, 7.

maritus, -a, -um, adj. [mear, sea], of the sea, sea; maritime, naval, on the sea; oēra, the sea shore. II, 34.

Marius, -rī, m., Gaius Marius (gā'yūs mār'i-ūs), the conqueror of the CIMbrI and Teutoni. I, 40.

Māris, -tis, m., Mars (mār'z), god of war; war; aequō Mārtē, with equal advantage.

mās, maris, adj., male; as noun, a male.

mātara, -ae, f., Celtic javelin. I, 26.

māter, -tris, f., mother; mātres familiæ, matrons. I, 18.

māteria, -ae, f., material; wood, timber. III, 39.

māterior, 1, intr. [māteria, material, wood], procure wood.

Matisco, -ōnis, m. (Cf, Matisco (mā-tis'kō), a city of the Haeduī, now Macon.

mātrinmōnium, -ni, m. [māter, mother], marriage, wedlock, matrimonium; in mātrinmōnium dare, to give in marriage; in mātrinmōnium dūcere, to marry (said of the man). I, 3.

Matrona, -ae, m. (Bett), the river Matro-nna (māt'rō-nā), now the Marne. I, 1.

māturē, adv. [māturus, ripe], early, speedily, soon. I, 33; IV, 6.

māturēscō, māturēscere, māturūi, —, intr. [māturus, ripe], become ripe, ripen.

māturō, 1, tr. and intr. [māturus, ripe], ripen; quicken, accelerate; make haste, hasten. I, 7.

māturus, -a, -um, adj., ripe; early. I, 16.

maximē, see magis.

maximus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of magnus, great. App. 42], greatest, largest. I, 3.

Maximus, -i, m., Quintus Fabius Maximus (quīn'tūs fā'bi-ūs māk'si-mūs), victor over the Gauls., 121 B.C. I, 45.

medeor, medēri, —, intr., remedy, cure.

mediocris, -cre, adj. [mediocris, the middle of], middling, ordinary, moderate. III, 20.

mediocrīter, adv. [mediocris, moderate], moderately; nōn mediocrīter, in no small degree. I, 39.

Mediomatrici, -ōrum, m. (Betg), the Mediomatrici (mēd'ī-ō-māt'rī-sī), IV, 10.

mediterraneus, -a, -um, adj. [medius, middle + terra, land], midland, inland.

medius, -a, -um, adj. In the middle of; in the middle, intervening, intermediate; locus medius utriusque, a place midway between the two. I, 24.

Meldi, -ōrum, m. (Bet), the Meldi (mēl'dē).

melior, comp. of bonus.

membrum, -i, n., member of the body, limb. IV, 24.

memīni, -isse (App. 85), tr., remember, bear in mind. III, 6.

memoria, -ae, f. [memor, mindful], the faculty of memory; recollection, memory, remembrance; tradition; memoria tenère, remember; patrum memoria, in the time of our fathers. I, 7.

Menapii, -ōrum, m. (AfBg), the Menapii (mēn-ā'pī). II, 4.

mendaccium, -ci, n., lie, falsehood.

mēns, mentis, f., the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought; disposition, feelings; mentēs animōsque, minds and hearts; aliēnātā mente, bereft of reason. I, 39; III, 19.

mēnis, -is, m., month. I, 5.

mēnsūra, -ae, f. [mētor, measure], measure.
MENTIO

48

MOBILITAS

mentiō, -ōnis, f. naming, mention.

mercātor, -ōris, m. [mercor, trade], merchant, trader. I. 1.

mercātūra, -ae, f. [mercor, trade], a commercial enterprise, trade.

mercēs, -ēdis, f., pay, hire. I. 31.

Mercūrius, -ī, m., Mercurius (mēr-kū/-rī-ūs), the god Mercury.

merēō, and mēero, 2, tr., deserve, merit, be worthy of; win, earn, incur (odi-um); serve as a soldier (i.e., earn pay). I. 11.

meridiānus, -a, -um, adj. [meridiēs, midday], of midday or noon.

meridiēs, -ēl, m. [for medīdiēs, from medius, middle + diēs, day], the middle of the day, midday, noon; the south. I. 50.

merētō, adv. [meritum, desert], justly, deservedly.

meritum, -i, n. [mercor, deserve], desert, merit, service; favor, kindness, benefit. I. 14.

Messāla, -ae, m., Marcus Valerius Messala (mār-kūs va-lē-rī-ūs mē-sā’lā), consul, 61 B.C. I. 2.

mētior, mētirī, mēnus sum, tr., deal or cut out, distribute. I. 16.

Metiosēdum, -ī, n. (Be), Metiosedium (mē-ō’shē-o-se’dūm), a town of the Senones, now Melun.

Mētius, -ī, m., Marcus Metius (mār’-kūs mē-shē’ūs). I. 47.

metō, metere, messul, messum, tr., mow, reap. IV, 32.

metus, -ūs, m. [metuō, fear], fear, dread, anxiety, apprehension; metū territāre, terrify; hōc metā = metū hulius rei, from fear of this. IV, 4.

meus, -ae, -um, poss. adj. pron. [cf. oblique cases of ego], my, mine, my own. IV, 25.

miles, -itis, m., soldier, private soldier; infantry (opposed to equitēs); militēs imperāre, levy soldiers upon. I. 7.

milia, see mille.

militāris, -ae, adj. [miles, soldier], of a soldier, military, martial; rēs militāris, military matters, warfare, the science of warfare. I. 21.

militia, -ae, f. [miles, soldier], military service, warfare.

mille, indecl. num. adj., a thousand; pl. as noun, milia, -īm, n., thousands, (usually followed by part. gen.); milia passuum, thousands of paces, miles. I. 2.

Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva (mī-nēr’vā), goddess of wisdom and the arts.

minimē, adv. [minimus, least], least, very little; by no means, not at all. I. 1.

minimus, -a, -um, sup. of parvus.

minor, comp. of parvus.

Minucius, -ī, m. Lucius Minucius Basilius (lī’shē-yūs mī-nū’shē-yūs bāsī-lī’ūs), a commander of cavalry.

minūō, minuere, minui, minūtum, tr. and intr. [minus, less], lessen, impair; diminish; settle (contrōversiās); minuente aevū, the tide ebbing. I. 20.

minus, adv. comp. [parvus, little], less; not at all, too little; quō minus, see quōminus. I. 2.

miror, 1, tr. and intr., wonder or marvel at; wonder, be astonished. I. 32.

mirus, -a, -um, adj. [miror, wonder at], strange, astonishing; mirum in modum, surprisingly. I. 34.

miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate; poor, worthless. I. 32; II. 28.

misericordia, -ae, f. [misereō, pity-cor, the heart], pity, mercy, compassion. II. 28.

miseror, 1, tr. [miser, wretched], bewail, lament over, deplore. I. 39.

misī, see mittō.

missus, -ūs, m. [mittō, send], a sending, dispatching; missū Caesarīs, sent by Caesar.

missus, see mittō.

mitissimē, superl. adv. [mitis, mild], very mildly or gently.

mittō, mittere, misī, missum, tr., send, send off, dismiss, let go, dispatch; hurl, discharge. I. 7.

mōbilis, -ae, adj. [moveō, move], changeable. IV. 5.

mōbilītas, -ātīs, f. [mōbilis, movable], movableness, activity, speed;
changeableness, fickleness, inconstancy. II, 1.

mobiliter, adv. [möbilis, movable], readily, easily. III, 10.
moderor, I, tr. [modus, limit], manage, govern, control, guide. IV, 33.
modestia, -ae, f. [modus, limit], moderation, self-control, sobriety of behavior.
modo, adv. [modus, measure], with measure or limit; only, merely; even, just, at least, but; of time, just now, recently; non modo ... sed etiam, not only, ... but also. I, 16.
modus, -i, m., measure, quantity, size; manner, method, style; eius modi, of such a kind, such; abl. modō, with gen., in the character of, like. I, 41; II, 31.
moenia, -ium, n. pl., defensive walls, city walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defenses. II, 6.
mōlēs, -is, f., mass; alike. III, 12.
molestē, adv., with annoyance; molestē ferre, to be annoyed. II, 1.
mŏlimentum, -i, n. [mōlier, exert one's self], effort, difficulty. I, 34.
molitus, -a, -um, see mōlē.
molliō, 4, tr. [mollis, soft], soften, make easy.
mollis, -a, -um, see mollō.
mollitia, -ae, f. [mollis, soft], weakness.
mollitiēs, -ēi, f. [mollis, soft], weakness.
molō, -ere, -ui, -itum, tr., grind. I, 6.
mōmentum, -i, n., weight, influence, importance.
Mona, -ae, f., Mona (mō'na), an island off the coast of Britain, probably the Isle of Man.
moneō, 2, tr., warn, advise, instruct, order. I, 20.
mōns, montis, m., mountain; mountain range; hill, height. I, 1.
mora, -ae, f., delay. II, 15.
morbus, -i, m., illness, sickness, disease.
Morinī, -ōrum, m. (Ae), the Morini (mör'i-ni). II, 4.
morior, morī, mortuus sum, intr. [mors, death], die. I, 4.
Moritasgus, -i, m., Moritasgus (mōr'itās'gūs), a chief of the Senones.
moror, I, tr. and intr. [mora, a delay], delay, hinder; tarry, linger. I, 26.
mors, -tis, f., death; sibi mortem consciiscere, commit suicide. I, 4.
mortuus, see morior.
mōs, mōris, m., manner, custom, practice; pl., customs, habits; character. I, 4.
Mosa, -ae, m. (Afr.), the river Mosa (mō'sa), now the Meuse or Maas. IV, 9.
mōtus, -ūs, m. [moveō, move], movement, motion; political movement, uprising, disturbance. IV, 23.
moveō, movere, mōvi, mōtum, tr., set in motion, move; affect, influence; with castra, move camp from one place to another, or break camp. I, 15.
muller, -eris, f., woman; wife. I, 29.
mulliō, -onis, m. [mulus, mule], mule driver, muleteer.
multitudō, -inis, f. [multus, much], a great number, multitude; the multitude, the common people, the populace. I, 2.
multō, I, tr., fine, deprive one of something as a fine.
multō, adv. [abl. of multus, much], by far, much.
multum, adv. [acc. of multus, much], much, very, greatly, especially; comp. plās, more; plās posse, be more able or powerful, have more influence; sup. plūrimum, most, very; plūri-mum posse, be most powerful; be very powerful or influential. I, 3.
multus, -a, -um, adj., much, great; pl. many; with abl. denoting time when, late; as noun, many persons or things; comp. plās, plūris, more; as noun, more; pl. more, several, many; sup., plūrimus, -a, -um, most; pl. very many. I, 3.
mūlus, -i, m., a mule.
Munātius, -ti, m., Lucius Munatius Plancus (lu'shyūs mūnā'shyūs plān'kūs), a lieutenant of Caesar.
mundus, -i, m., universe, world.
münimentum, -i, n. [mūniō, fortify], defense, fortification. II, 17.

mūniō, i, tr., defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect; mūnitus, pr. part. as adj., fortified, defended, protected. I, 24.

mūnitō, -ōnis, f. [mūniō, fortify], fortifying; fortification, rampart, works, intrenchments. I, 3.

mūnus, -eris, n., duty, service, task; present. I, 43.

mūrālis, -e, adj. [mūrus, wall], pertaining to a wall, mural; mūrale plūm, mural javelin, a heavy javelin to be thrown from the top of a wall. III, 14.

mūrus, -i, m., a wall. I, 8.

musculus, -i, m. [dim. of mus, mouse], shed, mantlet.

mūtilus, -a, -um, adj., mutilated, broken.

N.

nactus, -a, -um, see nanciscor.

nām, conj., for. I, 12.


Namnetēs, -um, m. (Cc), the Namnetes (nāmˈnetēz). III, 9.

nāmque, conj. [nām, for], for. I, 38; III, 13.

nanciscor, nanciscī, nactus sum, tr., get, obtain possession of; meet with, find. I, 53; IV, 23.

Nantuātes, -iūm, m. (CdG), the Nan tuates (nānˈtu-əˈtēz). III, 1.

Narbō, -ōnis, m. (Ee), Narbo (navigator), now Narbonne. III, 20.

nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum, intr., be born or produced; rise, spring up, be reared; be found. II, 18.

nāsua, -ae, m. Nausa (nāsˈhū-ə), a leader of the Suebi. I, 37.

nātālis, -e, adj. [nāscor, be born], pertaining to birth; diēs, birthday.

nātiō, -ōnis, f. [nāscor, be born], race, tribe, people, nation. I, 53; II, 35.

nātivus, -a, -um, adj. [nāscor, be born], native; natural.

nātura, -ae, f. [nāscor, be born], nature; natural disposition, character; constitution. I, 2.

nātus, -ūs, m. [nāscor, be born], birth; maiōres nātū, greater by birth, elders. II, 13.

nātus, -a, -um, see nāscor.

nauta, -ae, m. [for nāvītā; nāvis, ship], sailor. III, 9.

nauticus, -a, -um, adj. [nauta, sailor], pertaining to sailors; nautical, naval. III, 8.

nāvālis, -e, adj. [nāvis, ship], pertaining to ships, naval. III, 19.

nāvicula, -ae, f. [dim. of nāvis, ship], small boat, skiff. I, 53.

nāvīgātiō, -ōnis, f. [nāvīgō, sail], sailing, navigation; voyage. III, 9.

nāvīgium, -gi, n. (nāvīgō, sail), a sailing vessel, ship, craft. III, 14.

nāvīgō, 1, intr. [nāvis, ship], set sail, sail. III, 8.

nāvis, -is, f., ship, boat; nāvis longa, galley, ship of war; nāvis onerāria, transport. I, 8.

nāvō, i, tr., do zealously or well. II, 25.

né (App. 188, b), (1), conj. with subj., that ... not, so that ... not, in order that ... not, lest; after verbs of fearing, that, lest. (2), adv., not; nē ... quidem (enclosing the emphatic word), not even. I, 4.

ne-, nec-, neg-, inseparable negative prefixes.

-ne, interrog. enclitic: in direct questions, simply sign of a question (App. 213, a); in indirect questions, whether; -ne ... -ne, -ne ... an, utrum ... -ne, whether ... or. I, 50; IV, 14.

nec, see neque.

necessāriō, adv. [abl. of necessārius, necessary], necessarily, of necessity, unavoidably. I, 17.

necessārius, -a, -um, adj. [necessē, necessary], necessary, requisite, pressing; with tempus, critical; as noun, kinsman, friend. I, 11.

necesse, indecl. adj., necessary, unavoidable, indispensable. IV, 5.

necessitas, -tātis, f. [necesse, necessary], necessity, constraint, need. II, 11.

necessitūdō, -inis, f. [necessē; cf. necessārius, friend], friendship, alliance. I, 43.
NECNE 51 NOMINO

necne, conj. [nec, nor+-ne], or not. I, 50.
necō, 1, tr. [nex, death], put to death, kill, murder. I, 53; III, 16.
necūbi, conj.-adv. [nē, not+-cūbi, where], that nowhere, lest anywhere.
nefārius, -a, -um, adj. [nēfās, sin], wicked, impious.
nēfās, n., indecl. [ne+-fās, divine right], contrary to divine right; sin, crime.
neg-, see ne-.
neglegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum, tr. [neg+-lēgō, choose, regard], not heed, disregard, neglect. I, 35; III, 10.
negō, 1, tr. and intr., say no, refuse, say... not. I, 8.
negōtor, 1, intr. [negōtium, business], carry on business, traffic, trade.
negōtium, -tium, n. [neg+-tium, leisure], concern, business, undertaking; trouble, difficulty, labor; negōtium dare, employ, direct; quid negōtii, what business; nihil negōtii, no difficulty. I, 34; II, 2.
Nemetēs, -um, m. (Bh), the Nemetēs (nēmē-tez). I, 51.
nēmō, acc. nēmīnem, m. and f. [ne+-homō, man], no man, no one, nobody. I, 18.
nēquāquam, adv. [nē+quāquam, in any way], in no way, by no means, not at all. IV, 23.
neque (nec) (App. 188, a), conj. [ne+-que], and not, not, nor; but not; neque... neque, neither... nor. I, 4.
nēquiquam, adv. [nē+quidquam, anything], in vain, to no purpose. II, 27.
Nervicus, -a, -um, adj. [Nervīus], of the Nervīi. III, 5.
Nervīus, -a, -um, adj. (Aef), of the Nervīi; m. sing. as noun, one of the Nervīi; m. pl. as noun, the Nervīi (nēr'i-vī). II, 4.
nervus, -i, m., sinew; in pl., vigor, strength, power. I, 20.
neu, see neve.
neuter, -tra, -trum (gen. -trius, dat. -trī), adj. used as noun, [ne+-uter, which of two], neither; in pl., neither side, neither party. II, 9.
nēve (neu) (App. 188, b), conj. [nē+-ve, or], and not, nor. I, 26.
nex, necis, f., violent death, death, execution. I, 16.
nihil, indecl. noun, n., nothing; with gen., no, none of; acc. as adv., not, not at all, by no means; nōn nihil, somewhat. I, 11.
nihilō, adv., by no means; nihilō minus, nevertheless; nihilō sētius, none the less, nevertheless. I, 5.
nimius, -a, -um, adj. (nimis, too much), beyond measure, too great, excessive.
nisi, conj. [ne+-si, if], if not, except. unless. I, 22.
Nitiobrogēs, -um, m. (Dd), the Nitiobrogēs (nīsh'-ōb'-ro-jez).
nitor, nīti, nixus sum, intr., rest or rely upon; exert one's self, strive, endeavor. I, 13.
nix, nivis, f., snow.
nōbilis, -e, adj. [nōscō, know], well known, distinguished, noted; of noble birth, noble; as noun, a noble. I, 2.
nōbilitās, -tālis, f. [nōbilis, well known], celebrity; noble birth, nobility, rank; the nobility, the nobles. I, 2.
noceō, nocēre, nocui, nocitum, intr., injure, hurt; nocēns, pres. part. as noun, guilty person. III, 13.
noctū, adv. [nox, night], by night. I, 8.
nocturnus, -a, -um, adj. [nox, night], at night, nocturnal, nightly. I, 38.
nōdus, -i, m., knot; joint.
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, —, (App. 82), tr. and intr. [ne+-volō, wish], not wish, be unwilling; refuse; imp. nōli or nōlite, with inf. (App. 219), do not. I, 16.
nōmen, -inis, n., name, title; reputation, prestige; nōmine with gen., in the name of, as; suō nōmine, on his or their own account, personally. I, 13.
nōminātim, adv. [nōminō, name], by name; expressly; in detail. I, 29.
nōminō, 1, tr. [nōmen, name], call by name, name, mention. II, 18.
nōn (App. 188, a), adv., not; no. I, 3.
nōndum, adv. [nōn, not-dum], not yet. I, 6.
nōnus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj., ninth. II, 23.
Nōrēlia, -ae, f. (Ck) Noreia (nō-rē'ya), a town in Noricum, now Neumarkt. I, 5.
Noricus, -a, -um, adj., pertaining to Noricum (a country between the Danube and the Alps), Norican. I, 5.

nōs, see ego.
nōscē, nōscre, nōvi, nōtum, tr., learn, become acquainted or familiar with; nōvi, pf., have learned, hence, know; nōtus, pf. part. as adj., known, well known, familiar. III, 9.
nōs, see ego met.
nōster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. [nōs, we], our, ours, our own; in pl. as noun, our men, our troops. I, 1.
nōtītia, -ae, f. [nōscō, know], knowledge, acquaintance.
nōtus, -a, -um, see nōscō.
novem, indecl. card. num. adj., nine.
Noviodūnum, -ī, n., Noviodunum (nō'-viō-du'nūm) (1), the capital of the Suevians, the modern Soissons (Be); (2), a city of the Bituriges (Ce); (3), a city of the Haeduvi (Ce). II, 12.
novītās, -tātis, f. [novus, new], newness; strangeness, novelty. IV, 34.
novus, -a, -um, adj., new, novel, unusual; fresh; rēs novae, a change of government, revolution; sup., novissimus, -a, -um, latest, last; as noun or with agmen, those in the rear, the rear. I, 9.
nox, noctis, f., night; media nox, middle of the night, midnight; multā nocte, late at night. I, 26.
noxia, -ae, f., crime, offense.
nūbō, nūbere, nūpsi, nūptum, intr., veil one's self for the marriage ceremony, marry. I, 18.
nūdō, 1, tr. [nūdus, bare], strip, uncover, make bare, expose. II, 6.
nūdus, -a, -um, adj., naked, unclothed, bare; exposed, unprotected. I, 25.
nūlīs, -a, -um, gen., nūlīs, adj. [ne-+ūlīs, any], not any, no; as noun, no one, none; nōn nūlīs, some; as noun, some, some persons. I, 7.
num, interroq. particle implying the expectation of a negative reply. I, 14.
nūmen, -inis, n., divinity; divine will.
numerus, -i, m., number, quantity, amount; account; in numerō, with gen., among, as. I, 3.
Numidiae, -ārum, m., the Numidiae (nū' mi-diē), better the Numidians, a people of North Africa, in modern Algiers. II, 7.
nummus, -ī, m., coin.
numquam, adv. [ne+-umquam, ever], not ever, never; nōn numquam, sometimes. I, 8.
nunc, adv., now, at present, at this time. I, 31; II, 4.
nūntiō, 1, tr. [nūntius, messenger], announce, send news, report, make known; order, direct. I, 7.
nūntius, -tī, m., messenger; message, news, report. I, 26.
nūper, adv., recently, not long ago. I, 6.
nūtus, -ūs, m. [nuō, nod], nod; sign, command; ad nūtum, at one's nod or command. I, 31; IV, 28.

O.

ob, prep. with acc., on account of, for; in compounds, opposed to, to, toward, against; quam ob rem, wherefore, why. I, 4.
obaerātus, -a, -um, adj. [aes, money], in debt; as noun, debtor. I, 4.
obāncō, -ducore, -dūxi, -ductum, tr. [dūcō, lead], lead towards; extend, dig. II, 8.
obēō, -īre, -īi, -ītum, tr. [ēō, go. App. 84], go to or towards; perform, attend to.
obiciō, -icere, -īcēi, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw against or in the way; place in front or opposite, present; expose; objectus, pf. part. as adj., lying in the way or opposite, in the way. I, 26.
obitus, -ūs, m. [obēō, go to death], destruction. II, 29.
obīlātus, see offerē.
obliqué, adv. [obliquus, slanting]. obliquely, slantwise. IV, 17.

obliquus, -a, -um, adj., running obliquely, slanting.

obliviscor, obliviscé, oblivitus sum, intr. [oblivió, forgetfulness], forget. I, 14.

obsecró, 1, tr. [sacer, sacred], implore, entreat, beseech. I, 20.

obsequentia, -ae, f. [obsequor, comply], complaisance, compliance.

observó, 1, tr. [servó, give heed], observe, mark, watch; regard. obey; celebrate. I, 45.

obses, -idis, m. and f. [obsideo, blockade], one that is guarded, hostage; pledge, security. I, 9.

obessiö, -onis, f. [obsideo, blockade], blocking up, blockade, siege.

obsideo, -sideré, -sédí, -sessum, tr. [sedeó, sit], sit in the way of, obstruct, besiege, blockade. III, 23.

obsidió, -onis, f. [obsideo, blockade], siege, investment, blockade; peril, oppression. IV, 19.

obsignó, 1, tr. [signó, mark], seal, sign and seal. I, 39.

obsistó, -sisteré, -stití, -stittum, intr. [sístó, stand], oppose, resist, withstand.

obstinaté, adv., firmly, resolutely.

obstringó, -stringere, -strinxi, -strictum, tr. [stringó, tie], bind, hold under obligations, pledge. I, 9.

obstruó, -struere, -stráxi, -strictum, tr. [strúo, pile up], block up, barricade, obstruct.

obtemperó, 1, intr. [temperó, rule], be subject to rule, comply with, obey. IV, 21.

obtestor, 1, tr. [testor, witness], call to witness; beseech, entreat. IV, 25.

obtineó, -tineère, -tini, -tentum, tr. [teneó, hold], hold, retain, possess, maintain; acquire, obtain. I, 1.

obtuli, see offeró.

obvenió, -veníre, -véní, -ventum, intr. [venió, come], come to, happen upon, meet; fall to by lot. II, 23.

obviam, adv. [via, way], in the way; to meet, towards, against.

occásio, -ónis, f. [occidó, fall, happen], occasion, opportunity. III, 18.

occásus, -us, m. [occidó, fall, set], falling down, setting; with sólis, sunset; the west. I, 1.

occidó, -cidere, -cidi, -cásum, intr. [ob+cædó, fall], fall down, set; happen; be slain, perish; occidéns sól, the-west.

occidó, -cidere, -cidi, -cásus, tr. [ob+cædóting, cut, slay], cut down, kill, slay. I, 7.

occultatiö, -onis, f. [occultó, hide], concealment.

occulté, adv. [occultus, secret], secretly.

occultó, 1, tr. [occultus, secret], hide, keep secret, conceal. I, 27.

occultus, -a, -um, adj., covered, hidden, concealed, secret; n. as noun, a hidden place, an ambush. I, 32; II, 18.

occupatiö, -onis, f. [occupó, seize], seizing; occupation, business, engagement. IV, 16.

occupó, 1, tr. [ob+capió, take], take possession of, seize, occupy; engage, employ. I, 3.

occurreó, -currere, -curri, -cursum, intr. [ob + curró, run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon; go to, come to; oppose, counteract; occur. I, 33; II, 21.

Oceanus, -i, m., the ocean; as adj., with mare, the-ocean. I, 1.

Ocelum, -i, n. (Dg), Ocelum! [ösé:lum]. I, 10.

octávus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [octó, eight], eighth. II, 23.

octingenti, -ae, -a, card. num. adj. [octó, eight], eight hundred. IV, 12.


Octodurus, -i, m. (Cg), Octodurus (okto-dûrús). III, 1.

octógeni, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [octó, eight], eighty each, eighty.

octóginga (LXXX), card. num. adj. indecl. [octó, eight], eighty. I, 2.

octóni, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [octó, eight], eight at a time, eight.
oculus, -l, n., eye. I, 12.


ódium, -dii, n., hatred.

offendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnseum, tr. [ob-fendō, strike], strike against, hurt, harm; animum offendere, hurt the feelings, offend. I, 19.

offensō, -ōnis, f. [offendō, hurt], offence. I, 19.

offereō, offereō, offertō, obūlátem, tr. [ob-ferō, bear], bring before, present; offer, confer upon, give; with sē, expose one's self to, charge upon, encounter. II, 21.

officiēcum, -ci, n., service, allegiance, duty; official duty, business; esse, manière, or permanēre in officīo, to remain faithful. I, 40; III, 11.

Olovico,-ōnis, m., Olovico (ō-loss'i-kō), a king of the Nithobroges.

omittō, -mittere, -misī, -missum, tr. [ob-mittō, send], let go or fall, drop; give up, neglect, disregard. II, 17.

omnīnō, adv. [omnis, all], at all; whatever; altogether, entirely, wholly; in all, only. I, 6.

omnis, -e, adj., all, every, all the, every kind of; the whole, as a whole; m. pl. as noun, all, every one; all the rest; n. pl. as noun, all possessions or goods. I, 1.

onerārius, -a, -um, adj. [onus, burden], fitted for burdens; with nāvis, transport, freight ship. IV, 22.

onerō, I, tr. [onus, load], load.

onus, -ēris, n., load, burden; weight, size. II, 30.

opus, operis, n., work, labor; military work or works, fortifications, defenses; a work of engineering or architecture; natūra et operae, by nature and art; opera, crafts. I, 8.

opinio,-ōnis, f. [ opinor, think], way of thinking, opinion; impression; expectation; reputation; opinio timōris, impression of cowardice. II, 3.

opportet, -ère, -ult, —, intr. imper., it is necessary, needful, becoming, proper; when translated as personal verb, must, ought. I, 4.

oppidūnum, -a, -um, adj. [oppidum, town], of or pertaining to a town; in pl. as noun, townspeople, inhabitants of a town. II, 7.


oppōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr. [ob-pōnō, place], place against or opposite, oppose; oppositus, pf. part. as adj., in front, opposite.

opportune, adv. [opportūnus, fit], opportune, seasonably. IV, 22.

opportunitās, -tātis, f. [opportūnus, fit], fitness; fit time, opportunity; advantage; with loci, favorable situation or position; with temporis, favorable opportunity. III, 12.

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., fit, opportune, lucky, suitable; favorable, advantageous. I, 30; II, 8.

opposītus, see oppōnō.
ing, speech, language, words, address, argument. I, 3.

ōrātor, -ōris, m. [ōrō, speak], speaker; ambassador, envoy. IV, 27.

orbīs, -is, m., orb, ring, circle; orbis terrārum, the world. IV, 37.

Orcynia, -ae, f. Orcynia (ōr-sī'n'ī-a), same as Hercynia.

ōrdō, -ōnis, m., row, tier, layer; rank, line of soldiers; arrangement, order; degree, rank; primi ōrdinēs, centurions of the first rank. I, 40; II, 11.

Orgetorix, -īgis, m., Orgetorix (ōr-jēv-ō-rīks), a chief of the Helvetii. I, 2.

orīor, orīi, oritus sum, intr., arise, begin, spring up, rise, start; be born, descend; oriēns sol, the rising sun, sunrise; the east. I, 1.

ōrnāmentum, -ī, n. [ōrnō, adorn], ornament; mark of honor. I, 44.

ōrnō, 1, tr., adorn; furnish, supply; ornātus, pf. part. as adj., equipped, furnished, fitted out. III, 14.

ōrō, 1, tr. [ōs, mouth], speak; beseech, entreat. I, 20.

oritus, -ūs, m. [orīor, rise], rising. ōs, ōris, n., mouth; face, countenance.

Osismī, -ōrum, m. (Bb), the Osismi (ō-sīs'mi), a Gallic people in modern Brittany. II, 34.

ostendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, tr. [obs-tendō], stretch before; present, show, bring into view, reveal; tell, declare; point out, mention. I, 8.

ostentātiō, -ōnis, f. [ostentō, show], show, display; pretense; pride.

ostentō, 1, tr. [frequ. of ostendō, show], show frequently; show, exhibit.

ōtium, -tī, n., leisure, inactivity, quiet.

ōvum, -ī, n., egg. IV, 10.

P.

P., abbr. for Pūblius, a Roman praenomen. I, 21.

pābulātiō, -ōnis, f. [pābulor, forage], getting fodder, foraging. I, 15.

pābulātor, -ōris, m. [pābulor, forage], forager.

pābulor, 1, intr. [pābulum, fodder], forage.


pāco, 1, tr. [pāx, peace], make peaceful, subdue, pacify; pācātus, pf. part. as adj., peaceful, quiet, subdued. I, 6.

pactum, -ī, n. [paciscor, agree to], agreement; manner.

Padus, -ī, m. (Dh), the Padus (pā'dūs), better, the Po, the largest river of northern Italy.

paene, adv., nearly, almost. I, 11.

paenitētēre, paenituit, —, tr., impers., it causes regret; makes one repent; when translated as pers. verb, repent (App. 109). IV, 5.

pāgus, -ī, m., village; district, province, canton. I, 12.

palam, adv., openly, publicly.

palma, -ae, f., palm of the hand.

palūs, -ūdis, f., marsh, morass, swamp. I, 40; II, 9.

palūster, -tris, -tre, adj. [palūs, swamp], swampy, marshy.

pandō, pandere, pandi, passum, tr., spread or stretch out, extend; passīs capillīs, with disheveled hair; passīs manibus, with outstretched hands. I, 51; II, 13.

pār, paris, adj., equal, like, similar; equal to, a match for; with words of number and quantity, the same; pār atque, the same as. I, 28.

parcē, adv. [parcus, frugal], frugally, sparingly.

parcō, parcere, pēpercī, parsum, intr. [parcus, frugal], be frugal or economical; spare, not injure.

parēns, -entis, m., f. [pariō, bring forth], parent.

parentō, 1, intr. [parēns, parent], make funeral offerings especially for parents; avenge.

pāreō, 2, intr. [cf. pariō, bring forth], appear; obey, yield to, be subject to. I, 27.

pariō, parere, peperi, partum, tr., bring forth; gain, acquire, win.

Parālisii, -ōrum, m. (Be), the Parisii (pa-rīsh'ī-yī), a Gallic tribe about modern Paris.

parō, 1, tr., prepare, get ready; procure, acquire; prepare for, get ready for;
parātus, ps. part. as adj., ready, prepared; equipped. I, 5.

pars, partis, f., part, portion; party, faction; direction, side, place; district. I, 1.

partim, adv. [acc. of pars, part], partly, in part; partim . . . partim, some . . . others. II, 1.

partior, 4, tr. [pars, part], part, share, divide. III, 10.

pars, see pariō.

parum, adv. [parvus, little], little, too little, not sufficiently. III, 18.

parvulus, -a, -um, adj. [dim. of parvus, little], small, insignificant, slight; parvula, children. II, 30.

parvus, -a, -um, adj., little, small, insignificant; comp., minor, minus, lesser, smaller, shorter; minus, as noun, less; sup., minimus, -a, -um, least, very small. I, 8.

passim, adv., in all directions. IV, 14.

passus, -ūs, m. [pandō, extend], a pace, the distance from where the foot leaves the ground to where the same foot strikes it again, a measure of 4 feet, 10½ inches (five Roman feet); mille passus or passuum, a Roman mile, 4851 feet. I, 2.

passus, see pandō and patior.

patefaciō, -facerē, -feci, -factum, tr. [pateō, be open + faciō, make], make or throw open, open. II, 32.

patefō, -ferē, -factus sum, pass. of patefaciō.

patēns, -entis, adj. [pateō, be open], open, unobstructed, accessible. I, 10.

pateō, -ere, -ui, —, intr., lie or be open, be passable; stretch out, extend. I, 2.

pater, -tris, m., father; in pl., forefathers, ancestors; pater familias, father or head of a family. I, 3.

patienter, adv. [patiēns; patior, endure], patiently.

patientia, -ae, f. [patiēns; patior, endure], endurance, patience.

patrior, pati, passus sum, tr. and intr., endure, withstand, suffer; permit, allow. I, 6.

patrius, -a, -um, adj. [pater, father], fatherly; ancestral. II, 15.

patriōnus, -i, m. [pater, father], protector, patron.

patruus, -i, m. [pater, father], a father's brother, uncle.

pauco, -ae, -a, adj. (used rarely in sing.), few; as noun, few persons or things. I, 15.

paucitas, -tātis, f. [paucus, few], fewness, small number. III, 2.

paulātim, adv. [paulus, little], little by little, by degrees, gradually. I, 33; II, 8.

paulisper, adv. [paulus, little], for a short time, for a little while. II, 7.

paulō, adv. [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. I, 54; II, 20.

paululum, adv. [paulus, little], a very little. II, 8.

paulum, adv. [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. I, 50; II, 25.

paulus, -a, -um, adj., little, Paulum, as noun, a little; post paulum, soon after.

pāx, pācis, f., peace; favor. I, 3.

peccō, 1, intr., sin, transgress, do wrong. I, 47.

pectus, -oris, n., the breast.

pecūnia, -ae, f., property, wealth; money.

pecus, -oris, n., cattle, a herd; usually small cattle, sheep, meat, flesh. III, 29.

pedālis, -e, adj. [pēs, foot], of a foot in thickness or diameter. III, 13.

pedes, peditis, m. [pēs, foot], foot soldier; pl., infantry, foot. I, 42; II, 24.

pedester, -tris, -tre, adj. [pēs, foot], on foot, pedestrian; pedestrēs cópi-ae, infantry. II, 17.

peditātus, -ūs, m. [pedes, foot soldier], foot soldiers, infantry. IV, 34.

Pedius, -di, m., Quintus Pedius (kwin'tūs pē'di-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. II, 2.

pelus, comp. of malus.

pellis, -is, f., a hide, a skin (either on or off the body of an animal); tent made of hides. II, 33.

pellō, vellere. pepuli, pulsum, tr.,
beat, defeat, rout; drive out, expel. I, 7.
pen-dō, pendere, pe-pendī, pé-nsum, tr., weigh, weigh out; weigh out money, pay, pay out; with poenās, suffer. I, 36.
penitus, adv., deeply; far within.
per, prep. with acc., through, throughout; by means of, through the agency of, on account of, through the efforts or influence of; per sé, of their own accord, on their own responsibility; sometimes with intensive force, in itself, themselves; in composition, through, very, thoroughly, completely. I, 3.
per-agō, -agere, -ēgī, -actum, tr. [agō, lead], lead through; complete, finish.
perangustus, -a, -um, adj. [angustus, narrow], very narrow.
perciπio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [capiō, take], take completely, obtain; learn of, hear.
percurrō, -currere, -currī, -currsum, intr. [currō, run], run along or over. IV, 33.
percūtiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum, tr., strike or thrust through, slay.
perdiscō, -discere, -didīcī, —, tr. [discō, learn], learn thoroughly, learn by heart.
perdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr. [dō, give], give over, ruin; perditus, pf. part. as adj., desperate, ruined. III, 17.
perdūco, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr. [dūco, lead], lead through or along, conduct, bring over, bring; construct, extend; influence, win over; draw out, prolong. I, 8.
perединus, -a, -um, adj., after to-morrow.
pereō, -īre, -īi, -ītum, intr. [eō, go. App. 84], be destroyed or killed, perish. I, 53; IV, 15.
perequitō, 1, intr. [equītō, ride], ride about, ride through or around. IV, 33.
pereξīguus, -a, -um, adj. [exiguus, little], very little.
persfacilis, -o, adj. [facilis, easy], very easy. I, 2.
perfectus, see perficiō.
perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, tr. [ferō, bear], bear or carry through, convey, deliver; announce, report; submit to, endure, suffer. I, 17.
perficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, tr. [faciō, make, do], make or do thoroughly or completely, complete, finish; construct, build; achieve, accomplish, cause. I, 3.
perfādīa, -ae. f. [perfādus, faithless], treachery, perfidy; falsehood, dishonesty. IV, 13.
perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, tr. [frangō, break], break or burst through. I, 25.
perfuga, -ae, m. [perfugīō, flee for refuge], refugee, deserter. I, 28.
perfugīō, -fugere, -fugi, -fugītum, intr. [fugīō, flee], flee for refuge, take refuge; desert. I, 27.
perfugium, -gī, n. [perfugīō, flee for refuge], place of refuge, refuge. IV, 38.
pergō, pergere, per-rexī, per-rectum, intr. [per+regō, keep straight], go on, proceed. III, 18.
pericīltor, 1, tr. and intr. [periculum, trial, danger], try, test; be in danger or peril. II, 8.
pericūlōsus, -a, -um, adj. [periculum, danger], full of danger, dangerous, perilous. I, 33.
periculum, -ī, n., trial, test, attempt; risk, danger, peril. I, 5.
peritus, -a, -um adj. [cf. experīor, try], tried, experienced, skilled; familiar with, acquainted with. I, 21.
perlātus, see perferō.
perlegō, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctum, tr. [legō, read], read through, read.
perluō, -luere, -lūi, -lūtum, tr. [lūō, wash], wash completely, bathe; pass. as middle voice, bathe one's self.
permagnus, -a, -um, adj. [magnus, large], very large, very great.
permaneō, -maneere, -mānī, -mānsum, intr. [maneō, remain], stay through or to the end, stay, remain; continue, persist. I, 32; III, 8.
permiscō, -miscere, -miscui, -mix-tum, tr. [miscēre, mix], mix thoroughly, mingle.
permitto, -mittere, -missi, -missum, tr. [mitto, send], give up or over, surrender; entrust, commit; permit. allow. I, 30; II, 3.

permixtus, see permisceō.

permoveō, -moveōre, -movēi, -movētum, tr. [moveō, move], move thoroughly, arouse, incite, excite; affect, influence. I, 3.

permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsi, -mulsum, tr. [mulceō, soothe], soothe completely, appease. IV, 6.


perpauci, -ae, -a, adj. [pauci, few], very few, but very few; m. pl. as noun, very few. I, 6.

perpendiculum, -i, n., plummet. plumb-line. IV, 17.

perpetior, -petī, -pessus sum, tr. [patior, suffer], suffer, bear patiently.

perpetuō, adv. [perpetuus, continuous], continuously, constantly; forever. I, 31.

perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., continuous, uninterrupted; permanent, lasting, continual; whole, entire; n. as noun in phrase in perpetuum, forever. I, 35; III, 2.

perquirō, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitum, tr. [quaerō, ask], ask about, make careful inquiry.

perrumpō, -rumpere, -ruptum, tr. and intr. [rumpō, break], break through, force one's way through, force a passage. I, 8.

perscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr. [scribō, write], write out, report, describe.

persecur, -sequī, -secūtus sum, tr. [sequor, follow], follow through, continue in; pursue, follow up; avenge. I, 13.

perseverō, 1, intr. persist, persevere. I, 13.

persolvō, -solvere, -solvi, -solvētum, tr. [solvō, pay], pay in full; suffer (punishment). I, 12.

perspicō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, tr. [speciō, look], look or see through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, realize, learn, find out, ascertain. I, 40; II, 11.

persēndō, -stāre, -stītī, -stātum, intr. [stō, stand], stand firm, persist.

persuadeō, -suādere, -suāsi, -suāsum, tr. and intr. [suādeō, advise], advise prevailingly; convince, persuade, prevail upon; inculcate; sibi persuādēri, be convinced. I, 2.

perterreō, 2, tr. [terrēō, frighten], frighten thoroughly, terrify greatly. I, 18.

pertinācia, -ae, f. [pertineō, hold through or fast], obstinacy, stubbornness, pertinacity. I, 42.

pertinēo, -tinēre, -tinui, —, intr. [teneō, hold], hold or reach to, extend; pertain, have reference to, concern; tend, aim at; eōdem pertinēre, tend to the same purpose or result, amount to the same thing. I, 1.

pertuli, see perferō.

perturbātio, -ōnis, f. [perturbō, disturb], disturbance, disorder, confusion. IV, 29.

perturbō, I, tr. [turbō, disturb] greatly, throw into confusion, embarrass, disturb; alarm, terrify. I, 39; II, 11.

pervagor, 1, intr. [vagor, wander], wander about, scatter.

pervenīō, -venīre, -venī, -ventum, intr. [venīō, come], come through; come to, arrive at, reach; of property, fall, revert. I, 7.

pēs, pedis, m., the foot; a foot, 11.65 inches in length; pedibus, on foot; pedem referre, retreat. I, 8.

petō, -ere, -ivi or -ii, -itum, tr. and intr., seek, hunt for, aim at, make for, attack, go to, direct one's course to or toward; seek to obtain, strive after; ask, request, beseech. I, 19.

Petrocorii, -ōrum, m. (Ced), the Petrocorii (pētrō'rō-kō'ri-i).

Petrōnius, -nī, m., Marcus Petronius (mār'kus pē-trō'niūs), a centurion of the 5th legion.

Petrosidius, -dī, m., Lucius Petrosidius (lū'cius pētrō'sid'iūs), a standard bearer.
phalanx, -ngis, f., a compact body of troops, phalanx. I, 24.
Pictones, -um, m. (Ced), the Pictones (pik'-tō-nēz). III, 11.
pietās, -tātis, f. [plius, dutiful], devotion, loyalty.
pīlus, -ī, m., century of soldiers; pri-
mus pīlus, first century of a legion; 
primi pilī centurīō, or primipilūs, 
the centurion of the first century, 
chief centurion. III, 5.
pīnna, -ae, f., feather; battlement, parapet.
Porro
Porro
Porro
Pīrūstae, -ārum, m., the Pīrūstae (pī-
rūsī-tē), a tribe of Illyricum.
pīscis, -īs, m., fish. IV, 10.
Pīsō, -ōnis, m. (1), Marcus Pīpuīs Pīso 
Calpūrinianus (mār'kūs pū'plūs pī'sō 
kāl-pēr'ni-ā'nīs), consul with Mēssēla, 
61 B.C. I, 2. (2), Lucius Calpūrinianus 
Pīso (lū'shyūs kāl-pēr'ni-ūs pī'sō), 
killed in the defeat of Cassius' army by 
the Tigūrīni, 107 B.C. I, 12. (3), Lucius 
Calpūrinianus Pīso, Caesar's father-in-
law; consul 58 B.C. I, 6. (4), Pīso, an 
Aquītānian. IV, 12.
pīx, pīcis, f., pitch.
placeō, 2, intr. [cf. plaçō, appeasē], 
please, satisfy; often imper., seem 
good to one, hence, decide, resolve, de-
termine. I, 34; III, 3.
plăcēdē, adv. [plăcīdus, calm], calmly.
plăcō, 1, tr., appease.
Plancus, see Munātius.
plānē, adv. [plānūs, even, plain], plain-
plănitīēs, -ēi, f. [plānūs, level], level 
ground, plain. I, 43; II, 8.
plānūs, -a, -um, adj., even, level, flat, 
plain. III, 13.
plēbs, plēbis, or plēbēs, -ēi, f.; popu-
lace, common people. I, 3.
plēnē, adv. [plēnūs, full], fully. III, 3.
plēnūs, -a, -um, adj. [pleō, fill], full, 
whole, complete. III, 2.
plērique, -aeque, -aque, adj. pl., very 
many, the most of; as noun, a great 
many, very many. II, 4.
plērumque, adv. [plērūsque, thegreat-
er part], for the most part, mostly,
generally; again and again, very often. 
I, 40; II, 30.
Plēumoxīli, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Pleu-
mockālī (plū-mōk'śē-ī).
plūbnum, -i, n., lead; plumbum al-
bum, tin.
plūrimum, see multum.
plūrimus, see multus.
plūs, see multus and multum.
plutēs, -i, m., parapet; a mantelet or 
screen of movable shields.
pōculum, -i, n., cup.
pōena, -ae, f., punishment, penalty. I, 
4.
pōlex, -lcis, m., the thumb, with or 
without digitus. III, 13.
pōliceor, 2, tr. and intr. [prō+liceor, 
bid, offer], hold forth, offer, promise, 
pledge. I, 14.
pōlicitātiō, -ōnis, f. [pōliceor,promi-
ise], promise, offer. III, 18.
pōlicitus, see pōliceor.
Pömēlius, -i, m. (1), Gnaeus Pompeius 
(nē'ūs pōm-pō'yu's), better, Pompey, 
triumvir with Caesar and Crassus in 60 
B.C., defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, 
and murdered in Egypt by Ptolemy, 48 
B.C. IV, 1. (2), Gnaeus Pompeius, an 
interpreter of Quintus Titurius.
pŏndus, -erīs, n. [cf. pŏndō, weigh], 
weight. II, 29.
pŏnō, pŏnere, posuī, posītum, tr., 
place, put, place over; lay down, set 
aside; station, post; regard, consider; 
make, build; with castra, pitch: pass., 
be situated; with in and abī, depend 
on, in addition to above meanings. I, 16.
pŏns, pontīs, m., bridge. I, 6.
poposcī, see poscō.
pŏpolūtātiō, -ōnis, f. [populos, ravage], 
ravaging, pillaging. I, 15.
pŏpular, 1, tr., devastate, ravage, lay 
waste. I, 11.
pŏpulus, -i, m., the people, the mass, 
the crowd, as opposed to individuals; a 
people or nation. I, 3.
pŏrrīgō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum, tr. 
[prō-regō, keep straight], extend; 
pŏrrēctus, pl. part. as adj., extended, 
in extent. II, 19.
pŏrrō, adv., farther on; furthermore, then.
porta, -ae, f., gate. II, 24.
portō, I, tr., carry, transport, bring, take. I, 5.
portőrium, -ri, n., toll, tariff on imports or exports. I, 18.
portus, -ūs, m. [cf. porta, gate], harbor, haven, port. III, 8.
poscō, poscerе, posposci, —, tr., ask, demand, request, require. I, 27.
positus, see pōnō.
possessionsōdiēs, -onis, f. [possideō, possess], possession, occupation; a possession, property. I, 11.
possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, tr. [sedeō, sit], occupy, hold, possess. I, 34; II, 4.
possidō, -sidere, -sēdi, -sessum, tr., take possession of, seize. IV, 7.
possimum, posse, potui, —, (App. 80), intr. [potis, able+sum, be], be able, can; to have power or influence, have strength, be strong; with quam and sup., as possible, e.g., quam plurīmās possunt, as many as possible; multum posse, plus posse and plurīmām possitum, most power, with acc. (1) As adv., later, afterwards. (2) As prep., behind, after; post tergum or post sē, in the rear. I, 5.
potestātem facere, grant permission, give a chance. I, 16.
potio, 4, intr. [potis, powerful], become master of, get control or possession of, obtain, capture. I, 2.
potius, adv. [comp. of potis, able], rather. I, 45; II, 10.
potitus, see potior.
praecipue, adv. [praecipus, especial], especially, particularly. I, 40.
postulō, 1, tr., request, ask, demand; require, necessitate. I, 31; II, 4.
potēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of possum, be able], powerful, influential. I, 3.
potentātus, -ās, m. [potēns, powerful], chief power, supremacy. I, 31.
potentia, -ae, f. [potēns, powerful], power, authority, influence. I, 18.
potestās, -tātis, f. [potēns, powerful], ability, power, authority; control, sway, rule; chance, opportunity, possibility; potestātem facere, grant permission, give a chance. I, 16.
potio, 4, intr. [potis, powerful], become master of, get control or possession of, obtain, capture. I, 2.
potius, adv. [comp. of potis, able], rather. I, 45; II, 10.
potitus, see potior.
prae, prep. with abl., before, in front of; on account of; in comparison with; in composition, before, at the head of, in front, very. II, 30.
praecātus, -a, -um, adj. [pāf, part. of praecātus, sharpened at the end], sharp in front or at the end, sharpened, pointed. II, 29.
praebēō, 2, tr. [prae+habeō, hold], hold out, offer, furnish, present. II, 17.
praeceveō, -cāvere, -cāvi, -cautum, intr. [caveō, guard against], guard against before hand, take precautions. I, 38.
praecedō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, tr. [cēdō, go], go before; surpass, excel. I, 1.
praeecepus, -cipitus, adj. [caput, head], head foremost, headlong; steep, precipitous. II, 24.
praeeceptum, -i, n. [praecipīo, instruct], instruction, injunction, command.
praecipīo, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [capiō, take], throw or hurl headlong, precipitate. IV, 15.
praecipitō, 1, tr. [praeeceps, headlong], throw or hurl headlong, precipitate. IV, 15.
praecipuē, adv. [praecipus, especial], especially, particularly. I, 40.
praecipuus, -a, -um, adj., especial.
praecius, -a, -um, adj., fine, choice, choice;
praecipituus, -a, -um, adj., special.
praecurra, -a, -um, adj., fine, choice, choice.
praecurro, -a, -um, adj., fine, choice, choice.
praefectus, -a, -um, adj., Chief, Commander, Leader,
praedico, -i, -eri, -erum, intr. [praedico, proclaimer, proclaim], proclaim publicly or before others; declare, report, tell of. I, 39; IV, 34.
praeductor, -a, -um, intr. [praeductor, proposer, propose], make proposal, propose, offer.
praeducere, -dúcere, -dúci, -dúctum, tr. [praeducere, lead], lead before, conduct before or in front.
praefectus, -i, m. [praefectus, place over, overseer, prefect, commander, officer, captain (usually of cavalry)]. I, 39; III, 7.
praefecerō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, tr. [ferō, bear, bring]. App. 81, place before, esteem above, prefer to with quam; praeferre sē alicui, surpass. II, 27.
praefectus, -i, m. [praefectus, place over, overseer, prefect, commander, officer, captain (usually of cavalry)]. I, 39; III, 7.
praēficio, -ficere, -ficēi, -fēcītum, tr. [fació, make], make before; place over, put in command of, put at the head of, place in charge of. I, 10.
praefigō, -figere, -fīxi, -fīxum, tr. [figō, fix], fix or set in front.
praefuī, see praesum.
praecutere, -metuere, -metuī, —, intr. [metuō, fear], fear beforehand, be apprehensive.
praemittēre, -mittere, -mīsi, -mīssum, tr. [mittō, send], send before or in advance. I, 15.
praemia, -mī, n., distinction, prize, reward. I, 43; III, 18.
praecupō, -cūpō, -cūpere, -clūi, -clūsum, tr. [praecupō, seize], seize upon beforehand, preoccupy, take possession of.
praepōtō, -pōtō, -pōtēs, -pōtum, tr. [pōnō, place], place before or over, put in command of, put in charge of. I, 54.
praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -rup- tum, tr. [rumpō, break], break off, tear away; praeruptum, pf. part. as adj., steep, precipitous. III, 14.
praesaepīō, -saepīre, -saepīs, -saepī- tum, tr. [saepīō, hedge], hedge or block up.
praescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scrip- tum, tr. [scribō, write], write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe, dictate to. I, 36; II, 20.
praescriptum, -i, n. [praescribō, order], order, dictation, command. I, 36.
presēns, -entis, pres. part. of prae- sum.
presēntia, -ae, f. [praesēns; prae- sum, be present], presence; the present moment; in praesentia, for the present; then. I, 15.
presēntiō, -sentire, -sēnsi, -sēn- sum, tr. [sentīō, feel], feel beforehand, foresee.
presēntiām, adv., particularly, especially. I, 16.
presidium, -di, n. [praesideō, guard], guard, garrison; safeguard, protection; fortification, stronghold; help, aid; safety. I, 8.
praestō, adv., at hand, ready; with sum, meet.
presēntiō, -stāre, -stītī, -stātum, tr. and intr. [stā, stand], stand or place before; show, exhibit, supply, furnish; be superior, excel, surpass; impers., praestat, it is better or more advisable. I, 2.
presēnum, -esse, -fui, intr. [sum, be]. App. 77, be before or over, be in command of, rule over, be at the head of: prae- sēns, pres. part. as adj., present, in person; for the present. I, 16.
preakter, prep. with acc. [prae, before], before; beyond, past; contrary to; in addition to, except, besides. I, 11.
pраетера, adv. [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. I, 34; III, 17.
praetereō, -ire, -iī, -itum, tr. and intr [ego, go]. App. 84], go beyond, pass by,
omit; praeteritus, pf. part. as adj., past; n. plu. as noun, the past. I, 20.
praetermittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send by; let pass, overlook. IV, 13.
praetor, -ōris, m., praetor; commander. I, 21.
praetōrius, -a, -um, adj. [praetor, commander], praetorian, belonging to the general. I, 40.
praeūrę, -ūrere, -ussi, -ustum, tr. [ūrō, burn], burn in front or at the end.
praevertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, tr. [vertō, turn], forestall, anticipate.
prāvus, -a, -um, adj., perverse, wrong.
prex, precis, f. (in sing. only in dat., acc. and abl.) [precor, pray], prayer, entreaty; imprecation. I, 16.
pridiē, adv. [diēs, day], on the day before. I, 23.
primipilus, -i, m. [primus, first + pilus, a century], the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. II, 25.
primō, adv. [primus, first], at first, in the first place. I, 32; II, 8.
primum, adv. [primus, first], at first, in the first place, for the first time; cum primum, or ubi primum, as soon as; quam primum, as soon as possible, very soon. I, 25.
primus, -a, -um, adj., sup. (App. 43), first, foremost; first part of; pl. as noun, the first, the front rank or ranks; leaders, chiefs; in primis, especially. I, 10.
princeps, -ipis, adj. [primus, first + capiō, take], taking the first place; chief, most prominent, first; as noun, chief or principal person, leader, chief. I, 7.
principātus, -ūs, m [princeps, chief], chief place or position; chief authority, leadership. I, 3.
prior, prius, adj., comp. (App. 43), former, previous, prior, first; pl. as noun, those in front. II, 11.
priustinus, -a, -um, adj. [for priustius from prior, former], former, original; previous, preceding. I, 13.
prius, adv. [prior, former], before, sooner, previously; prius quam, see priusquam.
priusquam or prius . . . quam, conj., sooner than, before; until. I, 19.
 privātīm, adv. [privatus, private], privately, individually, as private citizens. I, 17.
privātus, -a, -um, adj., private, personal, individual; as noun, person, individual. I, 5.
prō, prep. with abl. [cf. prae, before], before, in front of; for, in behalf of; on account of, in consideration of, in return for; as, in the guise of; in place of, instead of; in proportion to; accordingly to; in compounds (written prō, pro, and prōd), for, before, forward, forth. I, 2.
probō, I, tr. [probus, good], consider good, approve; prove, show, demonstrate. I, 3.
prōcēdō, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum, intr. [céndo, go], go forth or forward, proceed, advance. I, 38; II, 20.
Procillus, see Valerius.
prōclīno, I, tr. [clīno, incline], bend forward, incline; prōclīnātus, pf. part. as adj., tottering, critical.
prōcōnsul, -is, m., a proconsul, one who at the close of his consulship in Rome became governor of a province. III, 20.
procūl, adv., afar off, from afar, in the distance, at a distance. II, 30.
prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubītum, intr. [cubō, lie down], lean forward, fall down, lie down; be beaten down; incline. II, 27.
prōcūrō, I, tr. [cūrō, care], care for, attend to.
prōcurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, intr. [currō, run], run or rush forward, rush out, charge. I, 52.
prōdeō, -ire, -i, -itum, intr. [prō+eō,
PRODESSE

PROPIUS

go. App. 84], go or come forth, go forward, advance. I, 48.

prodesse, see prósum.

próditio, -onis, f. [pródó, betray], betray, treason.

próditor, -órís, m. [pródó, betray], betray, traitor.

pródo, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr. [dó, give], give forth, reveal; betray, give up; transmit, hand down: memoriá próditum, told in tradition, handed down. I, 13.

próducó, -ducere, -dúxi, -ductum, tr. [dúcō, lead], lead out or forth, bring forth; prolong, protract; produce; with cópiás, arrange, draw up. I, 48; III, 17.

proelior, 1, intr. [proelium, battle], join or engage in battle, fight. II, 23.

proelium, -lī, n., battle, contest, engagement; proelium committere, join or begin battle, risk a fight, engage in battle, fight. I, 1.

profectio, -onis, f. [profíciscor, set out], a setting out, start, departure. I, 3.

profectus, see próficiō.

proficiscor, see profícisci.

proférō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, tr. [ferō, bring. App. 81], bring forth or out, produce.

proficiō, -ficere, -fécī, -fectum, tr. and intr. [facció, make], make progress, advance; effect, accomplish, gain. III, 21.

profícisci, proficiscē, profectus sum, intr. [cf. próficiō, advance], set out, start, depart; set out for, start for; go, proceed. I, 3.

proficītor, -ātēri, -fessus sum, tr. [fateor, confess], admit, acknowledge, declare, offer.

profligō, 1, tr. [fligō, strike], strike down; overcome; put to flight. II, 23.

profluō, -fuere, -fluxi, —, intr. [flūō, flow], flow forth, rise. IV, 10.

profugō, -fugere, -fugi, -fugitum, intr. [fugīō, flee], flee, flee from, run away, escape. I, 31; II, 14.

profluī, see prósum.

prōgnātus, -a, -um, adj. [nāscor, be born], born; descended, sprung. II, 29.

prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr. [gradior, step], step or go forward, advance, proceed, go. I, 50; II, 10.

prohibēō, 2, tr. [habeō, have, hold], keep from, keep, restrain, prevent, prohibit; keep out or away from; protect, guard. I, 1.

prōiciō, -iicere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [ia-ciō, throw. App. 7], throw forward or away; throw, cast; reject, give up, sē prōicere, cast one's self; jump. I, 27.

proinde, adv., hence, accordingly, therefore.

prōlātus, see próferō.

prōmineō, -minere, -minuī, —, intr., project, lean out.

prōmiscuē, adv., promiscuously, in common.

prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send forward; let grow.

prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr. [moveō, move], move forward, advance, push forward. I, 48; II, 31.

prōmptus, -a, -um, adj., ready, active. III, 19.

prōmunterium, -ri, n. [prōmineō, project], promontory, headland. III, 12.

prōné, adv. [prōnus, inclined], sloping downwards. IV, 17.

prōnutiō, 1, tr. [nuntiō, announce], announce, give out publicly, tell, relate, report, say; give orders; with sententia, pronounce. IV, 5.

prope, adv. and prep. with acc. (1) As prep., near, close to. (2) As adv., almost, nearly; recently. I, 22.

prōpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsam, tr. [pellō, drive], drive forward, put to flight, rout; dislodge, drive back. I, 15.

properō, 1, intr. [properus, quick], hasten, hurry. II, 11.

propinquitās, -tātis, f. [propinquus, neighboring, near], nearness, vicinity; relationship. II, 4.

propinquus, -a, -um, adj. [prope, near], near, neighboring, close at hand; pl. as noun, relatives. I, 16.

propius, adv. and prep. with acc. (App. 122, b) [comp. of prope, near], nearer. I, 42; IV, 9.
propónō, -pōnerē, -posui, -postum, tr. [pōnō, place, place or put forward, present, offer; relate, tell of, explain; propose, purpose; expose. I. 17.

proprium,-a,-um, adj., one's own, characteristic, indicative.

propter, prep. with acc. [prope, near], on account of, because of, in consequence of. I. 9.

proterea, adv. [propter, because of], on this account; propterēa quod, because. I. 1.

prōpugnātor, -ōris, m. [prōpugnō, fight for], defender.

prōpugnō, 1, intr., fight for, defend; rush out to fight, attack. II. 7.

prōpuli, see prōpellō.

prōpulsō, I, tr. [freq. of prōpellō], drive forward, drive back, repel; ward off. I. 49.

prōra,-ae,f., prow. III. 13.

prōruō,-ruere,-ruī,-rūtum, tr. [ruō, fall], overthrow. III. 26.

prōsequor,-sequī,-secūtus sum, tr. [sequor, follow], follow, accompany; pursue; with grātione, address. II. 5.

prōspectus, -ūs, m. [prōspiciō, look forth], view, prospect; sight. II. 22.

prōspiciō,-spicere,-spexi,-spectum, intr. [spēciō, look], look forward; look to beforehand, see to, provide for, take care. I. 23.

prōsternō,-sternere,-strāvī,-strātum, tr. [sternō, stretch out], prostrate, destroy.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōful, intr. [sum, be. App. 79], be useful, benefit.

prōtēgō,-tegere,-tēxi,-tēctum, tr. [tēgō, cover], cover, protect.

prōterēreō, 2, tr. [terreō, frighten], terrify, frighten off.

prōtīnus, adv. [tenus, as far as], continuously; forthwith, immediately. II. 9.

prōturbō, I, tr. [turō, disturb], drive in confusion; dislodge. II. 19.

prōvehō,-vehere,-vexi,-vectum, tr. [vehō, carry], carry forward; pass., be carried forward, sail. IV. 28.

prōveniō,-venire,-vēnī,-ventum, intr. [veniō, come], come forth, grow; be produced, yield (of grain).

prōventus, -ūs, m. [prōveniō, come forth], a coming forth, result.

prōvideō,-vidēre,-vidī,-visum, tr. [videō, see], see beforehand, foresee; care for, provide. II. 22.

prōvincia, -ae, f., office of governor of a province; province, a territory subject to Rome and governed by a Roman governor; especially the P rov ince, the southern part of France. I. 1.

prōvinciālis,-e, adj. [prōvincia, province], of a province; of the Province.

prōvisus, see prōvideō.

prōvolō, I, intr. [volō, fly], fly or rush forth. II. 19.

proximō, adv. [proximus, last], last; lately. I. 24.

proximus,-a,-um, adj., sup. (App. 43), nearest, next; last, previous; with acc. (App. 123, b), next to. I. 1.

prūdentia, -ae, f. [prūdēns, foreseeing], prudence, foresight. II. 4.

Pitianī,-ōrum, m. (Ec), the Pitianī (ti-ā'nī). III. 27.

puēs,-ēris, adj., grown up, adult; pl. as noun, grown men, adults.

publicē, adv. [publicus, public], publicly, in the name of the state, on behalf of the state. I. 16.

publicō, I, tr. [publicus, public], adjudge to public use; confiscate.

publicus,-a,-um, adj. [populus, people], of the state or people, common, public; n. as noun, public, public view; rēs pública, common weal, state. I. 12.

pudet,-ēre,-uit,-itum, tr., imper., it shames; translated as personal, be ashamed, feel shame.

pudor,-ōris, m. [pudet, it shame], shame, sense of shame; sense of honor. I. 39.

puer,-ēri, m., boy, child, son; in pl., children (of both sexes); à pueris, from childhood. I. 29.

puerīlis,-e, adj. [puer, child], childish.

pugna, -ae, f. [pugnō, fight], fight, battle, contest; genus pugnae, method of fighting. I. 25.

pugnō, 1, intr., fight, give battle, contend; strive; often imper., as pugnātur, it is fought, i.e., they fight. I. 25.
Pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., beautiful; noble, glorious.

Pullo, -önis, m., Titus Pullo (tī'tūs pul'ō), a centurion of Cicero's legion.

Pulsus, see pellō.

pulvis, -eris, m., dust. IV, 32.

puppis, -is, f., stern of a ship. III, 13.

Pūrgō, 1, tr. [pūrus, clean + āgō, do, make], clean, clear, excuse, exonerate; pūrgātus, pf. part. as adj., freed from blame, exonerated. I, 28.

putō, 1, tr., think, consider, believe. I, 7.

Pyrenaicus, -a, -um, adj., Pyrenean;

Pyrenaē montēs (Ecede), the Pyrenean (pyr'ē-ne'i), better, Pyrenees Mountains. I, 1.

Q.

Q., abbr. for Quintus, Quintus (kwī'ntūs), a Roman praenomen. I, 43; II, 2.

quā, adv. [abl. fem. of quō], by which way or road; in which place, where. I, 6.

quadragēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., [quadragintā, forty], forty each. IV, 17.


quadringenti, -ae, -a, card. num. adj., four hundred. I, 18.

quaerō, quaeerere, quaesīvī, quaeśītum, tr. and intr., seek or look for; inquire, ask, ask or inquire about. I, 21.

quaestio, -a, -ae, -ās, card. num. adj., examination.

quaestor, -ōris, m. [quaerō, seek], a quaestor (kwēs'tōr), one of a class of officers in charge of the public revenues or the finances of the army. I, 52; IV, 13.

quaestus, -ūs, m. [quaerō, seek], gain, acquisition.

quālis, -e, interrog. adj., of what sort, kind or nature? I, 21.

quam, (1) adv., (a) interrog., how? (b) rel., as; with sup. and with or without posse, as ... as possible, very; quam diū, as long as; (2) conj. with comp., than; prius ... quam, before; post ... quam, posteā ... quam, after. I, 3.

quamvis, adv. [quam, as + vis, you wish], as you wish, however, very. IV, 2.

quandō, indef. adv., ever, at any time. III, 12.

quantopere, adv. [quantus, how much + opus, work], (1) interrog., how greatly? how much? (2) rel., as much as. II, 5.

quantus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. quam, how? as], (1) interrog., how much? how great? how large? what? quantum, as adv., how much? (2) rel., as much as, as; quantum, as adv., as much as, as.

quantō ... tantō (with comparatives), the ... the. I, 17.

quantusvis, -avis, -umvis, adj. [quantus, as great as + vis, you wish], as great as you wish, however great.

quare, adv. [qui, which + rēs, thing], (1) interrog., why? wherefore? (2) rel., wherefore; on this account, therefore. I, 13.

quārtus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [quattuor, four], fourth. I, 12.

quasi, conj. [qua(m), as + si, if], as if, just as if.

quattuor (IV), card. num. adj., indecl., four. I, 12.


-que, conj. (always affixed to the word or some part of the expression it connects), and; que ... que, or que ... et, both ... and. I, 1.

queror, queri, questus sum, tr. and intr., complain, bewail, lament. I, 16.

qui, quae, quod, rel. pron. (and see quis), who, which, what; often implying an antecedent, he who, those who; with force of dem., this, that; quam ob rem, wherefore; quem ad modum, in what manner, how, as; quō, with comparatives, the; quō ... eō, the ... the. I, 1.

quicquam, see quisquam.

quicunque, quaequumque, quodcumque, indef. (or generalizing) rel. pron., whoever, whatever; whosoever, what-
quiès, -étis, f., quiet, rest, repose.
quiètus, -a, -um, adj., in repose, undisturbed, peaceful, calm, quiet.
quin, conj. [qui, who or how+ne, negative], that not, but that; after negative words of doubt or hindrance, but that, that, from, to; quin etiam, nay even, moreover. I, 3.
quinam, see quisnam.
quinçūnx, -uncis, m., quincunx, an arrangement like the five spots on a die.
quindecim (XV), card. num. adj., indecl. [quinque, five+decem, ten], fifteen. I, 15.
quincenti, -ae, -a (D), card. num. adj. [quinque, five+centum, hundred], five hundred. I, 15.
quin-, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [quinque, five], five each, five at a time, five. I, 15.
quinquāgintā (L), card. num. adj., indecl., fifty. I, 41; II, 4.
quinque (V), card. num. adj., indecl., five. I, 10.
quintus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [quinque, five], fifth. I, 6.
quaepiam, quodpiam, indef. pron. (App. 62), any one, any.
quisquam, quicquam, indef. pron. (App. 62), any; any person or thing. I, 19.
quisque, quidque, and quisque, quaque, quodque, universal indef. pron. (App. 62), each one, each; every one, all. I, 5.
quisquis, quicquid, indef. (or generalizing) rel. pron. (App. 60, a), whoever, whatever. II, 17.
quīvis, quaevís, quidvís, and quīvis, quaevís, quodvís, indef. pron. (App. 62), [qui, who+vis, you wish], whom or what you wish; any one, anything, any whatever, any. II, 31.
quò, adv. [old dat. case form of qui, who, which], (1) interrog., whither? to what place? (2) rel., to which, to whom; where, whither; toward which; where, wherein; (3) indef., to any place, anywhere. I, 48; II, 8.
quò, conj. [abl. case form of qui, who, which], in order that, so that, that. I, 8.
quoad, adv. [quó, whither+ad, to], to where; as long as, as far as; till, until. IV, 11.
quod, conj. [adv. acc. of the neuter of qui, who, which], as to which, in that, that; as to the fact that, in so much as; because; quod si, but if; propter-eā quod, because. I, 1.
quōminus, conj. [quiō, so that+minus, not], so that not, that not; from. I, 31; IV, 22.
quoniam, conj. [quom = cum, since +iam, now], since now, since inasmuch as, because, whereas. I, 35.
quoque, conj., following the word emphasized, also, too, likewise. I, 1.
quoqueversus, adv., in every direction, all around. III, 23.
quot, adj., indecl., (1) interrog., how many? (2) rel., as many as, the number that. I, 29.
quotauninis, adv. [quot, as many as annus, year], every year, yearly. I, 36; IV, 1.
quottiēns, adv. [quot, how many], (1) interrog., how many times? how often? (2) rel., as often as. I, 43.
R

rādix, -i, s. (Lat. Gr. [root]; in pl. with mon-
tis or collis, foot, base. I, 38.

rādō, rādere, rāsī, rāsūm, tr., scrape, shave.

raeda, -ae, s., wagon with four wheels. I, 26.

rāmus, -i, m., branch, bough. II, 17.

raptidās, -tātis, adj. [rapidus, swift], swiftness. IV, 17.

rapina, -ae, f. [rapiō, seize], plunder; pl., plundering. I, 15.

rārās, -a, -um, adj. [rarus, rare], scattered, far apart; in small detachments, a few at a time; few. III, 12.

rāsus, see rádō.

ratīō, -ōnis, f. [reor, reckon], reckoning, account, estimate; design, plan, strategy, science; method, arrangement; cause, reason; regard, consideration; condition, state of affairs; manner, way; condition; terms; in pl., transactions. I, 28.

ratis, -īs, f., raft. I, 8.

Rauraci, -ōrum, m. (Og), the Rauraci (raw'ra-si). I, 5.

re- and red-, inseparable prefixes, again, back, un-, re-

rebelliō, -ōnis, f. [rebellō, renew war], renewal of war, rebellion, revolt. III, 10.

Rebilius, -i, m., see Caninius.

recēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, intr. [re-+cēdō, go], go back, retire.

recēns, -entis, adj., recent, late; fresh, new, vigorous. I, 14.

recēnseō, -cēnsēre, -cēnsūl, -cēn-
um, tr., inspect, review.

receptāculum, -ī, n. [recipiō, receive], retreat, refuge.

receptus, see recipiō.

receptus, -ūs, m. [recipiō, receive], retreat; refuge, shelter. IV, 33.

recessus, -ūs, m. [recēdō, go back], going back, retreat; chance to retreat.

recidō, -cīdere, -cīdi, -cāsum, intr. [cadō, fall], fall back; fall upon; be reduced.

recipiō, -cīpere, -cēpl, -ceptum, tr. [re-+capiō, take], take or get back, recover; admit, receive, receive in surrender or submission; admit of, allow; with sē, withdraw one's self, retreat, escape, flee, run back; recover one's self. I, 5.

recitō, i, tr., read aloud.

reclīnō, i, tr. [re-+clīnō, incline], lean back, recline, lean.

rēctē, adv. [rēctus, straight], properly, rightly.

rēctus, -a, -um, adj. [regō, keep straight], straight.

reclamō, i, tr., recover, regain. III, 8.

recūsō, i, tr. and intr., refuse, reject; object to, make objections, complain; with periculum, shrink from. I, 31; III, 22.

redāctus, see redigō.

reddō, -dere, -dīdi, -ditum, tr. [red-+dō, give], give back, return, restore; give something due; make or cause to be, render. I, 35; II, 5.

redēmpτus, see redimō.

redeō, -ire, -i, -itum, intr. [red-+eō, go]. App. 84], go or turn back, return; come; fall to, descend; be referred. I, 29.

redigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr. [red-+agō, put in motion], bring back, bring under; render, make; reduce. I, 45; II, 14.

redimō, -imere, -ēmi, -ēptum, tr. [red-+emō, buy], buy back; buy up, purchase. I, 18.

redintegρō, i, tr. [red-+integρō, make whole], make whole again, renew, restore, revive. I, 25.

reditiō, -ōnis, f. [redeō, return], return. I, 5.

reditus, -ūs, m. [redeō, return], returning, return. IV, 30.

Redonēs, -um, m. (BCC), the Redones (rēd'ō-nēz). II, 34.

redūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr. [re-+dūcō, lead], lead or bring back; draw back, pull back; extend back. I, 28.

reflectus, see reflciō.

referō, referre, rettuli, relātum, tr. [re-+ferō, bear]. App. 81], bear, carry or bring back, report; pedem referre, go back, retreat; grātiam referre, show one's gratitude, make a requital. I, 25.
reficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fēctum, tr. [re- + faciō, make], remake, repair; allow to rest; with se, refresh one's self, rest. III. 5.

refringō, -fringere, -frēgi, -frāctum, tr. [re- + frangō, break], break in open; break, diminish. II. 33.

refugiō, -fugere, -fugi, -fugitum, intr. [re- + fugiō], flee back, retreat; escape.

Rēginus, -i, m., see Antistius.

regiō, -ōnis, f. [regō, keep straight], line, direction; quarter, region, country, territory, place; e regione, with gen., opposite. I. 44; II. 4.

regius, -a, -um, adj. [rēx, king], of a king, royal.

rēgnō, 1, intr. [rēgnum, royal power], reign, rule.

rēgium, -i, n. [rēx, king], kingly or royal authority, royal power, sovereignty; kingdom. I. 2.

regō, regere, rēxi, rēctum, tr., keep straight; guide, direct, control. III. 13.

rēliciō, -icere, -lēci, -lēctum, tr. [re- + lacō, hurl. App. 7], hurl or drive back, repel; cast down or off; drive off or out. I. 24.

relanguescō, -languēscere, -languē, —, intr. [re- + languescō, become weak], become weak or enfeebled. II. 15.

relātus, see referō.

relēgō, 1, tr. [re- + lēgō, depute], send away; remove.

relictus, -a, -um, see relinquō.

religiō, -ōnis, f., religion; in pl., religious observances, rites; superstitions, relinquō, -līnquer, -līquī, -līctum, tr. [re- + linquō, leave], leave behind, leave, abandon; pass., be left, remain. I. 9.

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. [relinquō, leave], left, remaining, the rest, the rest of; future, subsequent; n. as noun, remainder, rest. I. 1.

remanēo, -manēre, -mānsi, -mānsum, intr. [re- + manēo, remain], stay or remain behind, remain. I. 39; IV. 1.

rēmex, -igis, m. [cf. rēmus, oar], oarsman, rower. III. 9.

rēmigō, 1, intr. [rēmex, rower], row.

remigrō, 1, intr. [re- + migrō, move], move back, return. IV. 4.

reminiscor, -i, intr. [mēns, mind], call to mind, remember. I. 13.

remittō, -mittere, -misī, -missum, tr. [re- + mittō, send], send or despatch back, return, restore, remit; release, relax, give up; remissus, pf. part. as adj., mild. I. 43; II. 15.

remollēscō, -mollēscere, —, —, intr., become weak, become enervated. IV. 2.

removeō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, tr. [re- + moveō, move], move back or away, remove, withdraw; remōtus, pf. part. as adj., remote, far away. I. 19.

remūneror, 1, tr. [re- + mūneror, present], repay, reward. I. 44.

rēmus, -i, m., oar. III. 13.

Rēmus, -a, -um, adj., belonging to or one of the Remi; pl. as noun. Rēmi, m. (Bef), the Remi (rē'ni). II. 3.

rēnō, -ōnis, m., deerskin.

renovō, 1, tr. [re- + novus, new], renew. III. 2.

renuntiō, 1, tr. [re- + nuntius, message], bring back word, bring news, report; declare elected. I. 10.

repellō, repellere, repul·lūs·sum, tr. [re- + pellō, beat, drive], beat or drive back, repel, repulse. I. 8.

repente, adv. [repēns, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. I. 52; II. 33.

repentīnus, -a, -um, adj. [repēns, sudden], sudden, unexpected, hasty. I. 13.

reperiō, reperire, repērī, reperītum, tr. [re- + pāriō, procure], procure; find; find out, discover, ascertain; devise. I. 18.

repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītium, tr. re- + petō, seek, seek or ask again, demand back; with poenās, exact, inflict. I. 30.

repleō, -plērē, -plēvi, -plētum, tr. re- + pleō, fill], fill again, replenish, supply.

reportō, 1, tr. [re- + portō, carry], carry or bring back, convey. IV. 29.

reposcō, -poscere, —, —, tr. [re- +
poscō, demand], demand back, exact, ask for.
reppuli, see repellō.
repraesentō, I, tr. [re-+praesēns, present], make present; do at once. I, 40.
reprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendi, -prehēnsum, tr. [re-+prehēndō (=praēndō), seize], hold back; criticize, blame, censure. I, 20.
reprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, tr. [re-+pressō, press], press or keep back, check, restrain. III, 14.
repudiō, I, tr., reject. I, 40.
repugnō, I, intr. [re-+pugnō, fight], fight back; resist, oppose. I, 19.
repulsus, see repellō.
requirō, -quirere, -quisīvī, -quisītum, tr. [re-+quarērō, seek], seek again; require, demand; miss, desire, long for.
rēs, rē, f., of indefinite meaning; variously translated according to the context; thing, object, matter, event, affair, occurrence; circumstance, case; act, action, deed, reason, ground; rēs familiaris, property; rēs frumentaria, supplies; rēs militāris, warfare; novae rēs, revolution; rēs publica, state; rēs actae, deeds, achievements; quem ob rem, see qui and quis. I, 2.
rescindō, -scindere, -scīdī, -scissum, tr. [re-+scindō, cleave] cut away or down, break down, destroy. I, 7.
resciscō, -sciscere, -scīvī, -scītum, tr. [re-+sciscō, inquire], find out, learn. I, 28.
rescribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scripsitum, tr. [re-+scribō, write], write again; transcribe. I, 42.
reservō, I, tr. [re-+servō, save, keep], keep back, save up, reserve. I, 53; III, 3.
resideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, ---, intr. [re-+sedeō, sit], sit back; remain.
residō, -sidere, -sēdī, ---, intr. [re-+siddō sit down], settle, become calm.
resistō, -sisterē, -stītī, ---, intr. [re-+sistō, stand], stand back, remain behind, halt, stand still; withstand, resist, oppose. I, 25.
respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, tr. [re-+specīō, look], look back; look at, take notice of; consider, regard. II, 24.
respondōe, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, tr. and intr. [spondō, promise], reply, answer. I, 7.
responsūm, -i, n. [respondō, answer], reply, answer. I, 14.
respuō, -spuere, -spuī, ---, tr., reject, spurn. I, 42.
restinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxi, -stinctum, tr., extinguish.
restītī, see resistō.
restituō, -stituere, -stītī, -stītūtum, tr. [re-+statūtō, set up], set up again, rebuild, renew, restore. I, 18.
retineō, 2, tr. [re-+teneō, hold], hold back, detain, keep; restrain, hinder; detain forcibly, seize; retain, preserve, maintain. I, 18.
retrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr. [re-+trahō, drag], drag back; bring back.
rettūlī, see referō.
revellī, -vellere, -velli, -vulsum, tr. [re-+vellō, pluck], pluck or tear away, pull out. I, 52.
revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, intr., used almost exclusively in the perfect tenses, and revertor, -vertī, -versus sum, intr., used in the tenses formed on the present stem [re-+vertō, turn], turn back, come back, return. I, 7.
revincīō, -vincere, -vīnxi, -vincitum, tr. [re-+vīncō, bind], bind back; fasten, bind. III, 13.
revocō, I, tr. [re-+ vocō, call], call back, recall; withdraw. II, 20.
rēx, rēgis, m., king. I, 31; II, 4.
Rhēnus, -i, m. (ABCfg), the river Rhenu(s) (rō'nūs), better the Rhine. I, 1.
Rhodanus, -i, m. (CDfg), the river Rhodanus (rō'da-nūs), better the Rhone. I, 1.
ripa, -ae, f., bank (of a stream). I, 6.
rivus, -i, m., small stream, brook.
rogō, I, tr., ask; request, ask for. I, 7.
ROMANUS, -a, -um, adj. [Rōma, Rome]. Roman; as noun, a Roman. I, 3.

Rōsicius, -ōs, m., Lucius Roscius (lū'-shyūs rōsh'yūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

röstrum, -ī, n. [rōdō, gnaw, consume], beak of a bird; beak or prow of a ship. III, 13.

rota, -ae, f., wheel. IV, 33.

rubus, -i, m., bramble. II, 17.

Rūfus, -i, m. See Sulpicius.

rūmor, -ōris, m., hearsay, report, rumor. II, 1.

rūpēs, -is, f., rock, cliff. II, 29.

rūrsus, adv. [for reversus, frōn revertō, turn back], again, back, anew; in turn. II, 5.

Rutēni, -ōrum, m. (DEde), the Rutēni. (ru-tē'ni). I, 45.

Rutilus, -i, m., Marcus Sempronius Rutilus (mār'kūs sēm-prō'nī-ōs ru-tī'-lūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. *

S.

Sabinus, -ī, m., Quintus Titurius Sabinus (kwin'tūs tī-tū'ri-ōs sā-bī'nūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. II, 5.

Sabīs, -īs, m. (Af), the river Sabīs (sā'-bīs). II, 16.

sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. [sacer, sacred], priest.

sacramentum, -ī, n. [sacrō, sacer, sacred], oath.

sacrificium, -ī, n. [sacer, sacred + fació, make], sacrifice.

saepe, often, frequently; many times, again and again; saepe numerō, often, time and again, frequently; comp. saepius, oftener, more frequently; time and again; too often. I, 1.

saeptēs, -is, f., hedge. II, 17.

saeviō, -ire, -ī, -itum, intr. [saevus, raging], rage; be fierce. III, 13.

sagitta, -ae, f., arrow. IV, 25.

sagittarius, -āri, m. [sagitta, an arrow], Bowman, archer. II, 7.

sagulum; -ī, n., a military cloak.

saltus, -ūs, m., pass, wooded ravine, glade.

salūs, salūtis, f. [salvus, safe], welfare, security, safety; preservation, delivery; place of safety; life (when in danger). I, 27.

Samarobriva, -ae, f. (Be), Samarobrīva (sām'ra-brī'vā).

sanciō, sancire, sānxi, sānctum, tr. [cf. sacer, sacred], make sacred, sanctify; bind; sanctus, pf. part. as adj., sacred, inviolable; established. I, 30; III, 9.

sanguis, -inis, m., blood.

sānitās, -tātis, f. [sānus, sound], soundness of mind, good sense, discretion, sanity. I, 42.

sānō, 1, tr. [sānus, sound], make sound; make good, repair.

Santōni, -ōrum, or Santōnas, -um, m. (Dcd), the Santōni (sān'tō-nī), or Santones (sān'tō-nēz). I, 10.

sānus, -a, -um, adj., sound; sensible, sane.

sānxi, see sanciō.

sapiō, -ere, -īvi, —, intr. taste; be wise, understand.

sarcina, -ae, f., pack, luggage; pl., baggage, packs (of individual soldiers, which they carried). I, 24.

sarcīo, sarcire, sarsi, sartum, tr., make good, repair, compensate for.

sarmentum, -ī, n., brushwood, fagots. III, 18.

satis, adv. and indec. adj. and noun. (1) as adv., enough, sufficiently; rather; very; well; (2) as adj., sufficient; (3) as noun, enough. I, 3.

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, intr. [satis, enough + fació, make], make or do enough for; give satisfaction, satisfy; make amends, apologize; ask pardon. I, 14.

satisfactiō, -ōnis, f. [satisfaciō, give satisfaction], satisfaction; excuse; apology. I, 41.

sancius, -a, -um, adj., wounded. III, 4.

saxum, -ī, n., rock, large stone. II, 29.

scālæ, -ārum, f. [scandō, climb], stairs; scaling ladder.

Scaldis, -īs, m. (Aef), the river Scaldis (skāl'dīs) or Scheldt.

scapha, -ae, f., skiff, boat. IV, 26.

scelerātus, -a, -um, adj. [scelerō, pollute], accursed, infamous; as noun, criminal.

scienter, adv. [sciō, know], knowingly, skillfully.

scientia, -ae, f. [sciō, know], knowledge, science, skill. I. 47; II. 20.

scindō, scindere, scidi, scissum, tr., split; tear down, destroy. III. 5.

sciō, 4, tr., distinguish; know, understand. I. 20.

scorpiō, -ōnis, m., scorpion, a military engine for hurling missiles.

scribō, scribere, scrips!, scripsit, writing.

scutum, n., shield, buckler; oblong, convex (2½x4 ft.), made of wood covered with leather or iron plates, with a metal rim. I. 25.

sē- and sēd- inseparable prefix, apart, away.

sē, see suī.

sēbum, -i, n., tallow.

secō, secāre, secui, sectum, tr., cut, reap.

sēcrētō, adv. [sēcernō, separate], separately, privately, secretly. I. 18.

sectiō, -ōnis, f. [secō, cut], cutting; dividing of captured goods; booty. II. 33.

sector, 1, tr. [freq. of sequor, follow], follow eagerly, chase after.

sectūra, -ae, f. [secō, cut], cutting; shaft, mine. III. 21.

secundum, prep. with acc. [sequor, follow], along; in the direction of; besides, in addition to. I. 33; II. 18.

secundus, -a, -um, adj. [sequor, follow], following, next, second; favorable, successful, prosperous; secundō flūmine, down the river. I. 14.

secūris, -is, f., axe; Roman authority, because the axe and fasces of the lictor were symbols of authority.

secūtus, see sequor.

sēd-, see sē.-

sed, conj., but, but yet (a stronger adverbial than autem or at). I. 12.

rience, undergo; realize, know; decide, judge; sanction, adhere to. I, 18.

sentis, -is, m., briar. II, 17.

separátim, adv. [separō, separate], separately, privately. I, 19.

separō, 1. tr. [sē-+parō, prepare], prepare apart; separate; separatūs, p.f. part. as adj., separate. IV, 1.


septentriónēs, -um, m. [septem, seven + triónēs, plough oxen], the seven plough oxen, the stars of the Great Bear, hence the North. I, 1.

septimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [septem, seven], seventh. I, 10.

septingenti, -ae, -a (DC), card. num. adj. [septem, seven], seven hundred.

septuágintā (LXX), card. num. adj., indecl. [septem, seven], seventy. IV, 12.

sepultura, -ae, f., burial. I, 26.

Sēquana, -ae, m. (BQdfe), the river Sequana (sēk'wā-na), better, Selene. I, 1.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, adj., of or belonging to the Sequani; pl. as noun, Sēquāni (Cfg), the Sequani (sēk'wā-ni). I, 1.

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, tr. and intr., follow, follow after, pursue; accompany, attend; follow in point of time; with poena, be inflicted; fidem sequi, seek the protection. I, 4.

sermō, -onis, m., conversation, interview, speech.

sērō, adv., late, too late.

sērō, serere, sēvī, satum, tr., sow, plant.

Sertōrius, -rī, m., Quintus Sertorius (kwīn'tūs sēr-tōrī-ūs), a partisan of Marius; after the death of the latter, he continued the war in Spain against the senatorial party, until murdered in 72 B.C. III, 23.

servīlī, -ē, adj. [servus, a slave], of or like a slave, servile. I, 40.

servīō, 4, intr. [servus, slave], be a slave to, be subservient to; pay attention to, devote one's self to, follow. IV, 5.

servītūs, -ūtis, f. [servus, a slave], slavery, servitude. I, 11.

Servius, -vi, m., Servius (sērv'vi-ūs), a Roman praenomen. III, 1.

servō, 1. tr., save, preserve; maintain, keep; guard, watch; reserve. II, 33.

servus, -i, m., slave, servant. I, 27.

sescenti, -ae, -a (DC), card. num. adj., [sex, six], six hundred. I, 38; II, 15.

sēsē, see sui.

sēsquipedālis, -e, adj. [sēsequi, one and a half+pes, foot], a foot and a half thick. IV, 17.

sētius, adv., less, otherwise: nihilō sētius, none the less, nevertheless, likewise. I, 49; IV, 17.

seu, see sive.

sevēritās, -tātis, f., sternness, severity.

sēvōcō, 1. tr.[sē-+vōcō, call], call aside or apart.

sex (VI), card. num. adj., indecl., six. I, 27.

sexāgintā (LX), card. num. adj., indecl. [sex, six], sixty. II, 4.

Sextius, -tī, m. (1) Publius Sextius Baculus (pub'u-lī-ūs sēks'tī-ūs bāk'ū-lūs), a centurion in Caesar's army. II, 25. (2) Titus Sextius (tī'tūs sēks'tī-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

si, conj., if, per chance; to see whether or if; whether; quod si, but if, now if. I, 7.

sibi, see sui.

Sibusátēs, -um, m. (Ec), the Sibuates (sīb'ū-tēs). III, 27.

sic, adv., so, thus in this manner: sic . . . ut, so . . . that; so . . . as. I, 38; II, 4.

sicctās, -tātis, f. [siccus, dry], drought, dryness. IV, 38.

sicut or sicuti, adv. [sīc, so+ut(I), as], so as; just as, as; just as if. I, 44.

sidus, -eris, n., star; constellation.

signifer, -erī, m. [signum, standard+ferō, bear], standard-bearer. II, 25.

significātō, -onis, f. [significō, make signs], making of signs, signal; indication, intimation. II, 33.

significō, 1. tr. [signum, sign+faciō, make], make signs; show, indicate, signify. II, 7.

signum, -i, n., mark, sign, signal, watchword; signal for battle, standard, ensign; ab signis discēdere.
withdraw from the ranks; **signa inferre**, advance to the attack; **signa conversa inferre**, face about and advance to the attack; **signa ferre**, advance on the march; direct the attack; **signa convertere**, face or wheel about; **ad signa convenire**, join the army. I, 25.

**Silanus**, -i, m., Marcus Silanus (mär'kūs sīlā'nūs), one of Caesar’s lieutenants.

**silentium**, -ti, n., silence, stillness.

**Silius**, -ii, m., Titus Silius (tī'tūs sīlˈiˈūs), a military tribune in Caesar’s army. III, 7.

**silva**, -ae, f., a wood, forest, woods. I, 12.

**silvestris**, -e, adj. [silva, forest], of a wood, wooded; in a wood or forest. II, 18.

**similis**, -e, adj., like, similar. III, 13.

**similitudō**, -inis, f. [similis, like], likeness, resemblance.

**simul**, adv., at once, at the same time, thereupon; **simul ... simul** both ... and, partly ... partly; **simul atque**, as soon as. I, 19.

**simulacrum**, -i, n. [simulō, make like], image, statute.

**simulātiō**, -onis, f. [simulō, make like], simulation, pretence, deceit, disguise. I, 40; IV, 13.

**simulō**, I, tr. [similis, like], make like; pretend. I, 44; IV, 4.

**simultās**, -tātis, f., jealousy, rivalry.

**sin**, conj., if however, but if. I, 13.

**sincērē**, adv. [sincērus, sincere], sincerely, truthfully.


**singillātim**, adv. [singuli, one each], singly, one by one; individually. III, 2.

**singulāris**, -e, adj. [singuli, one each], one at a time, one by one; single, alone; singular, remarkable, extraordinary, matchless. II, 24.

**singuli**, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., one each, one; one at a time, single, separate; each, every; the several; in annum singulōs, annually. I, 6.

**sinister**, -tra, -trum, adj., left; fem. sing. as noun (sc. manus), the left hand; sub sinistrō, on the left. I, 25.

**sinistrōrsus**, adv. [sinister, left+versus, from vertō, turn], to the left.

**situs**, -ās, m. [sinō, put down], situation, site, position. III, 12.

**sive and seu**, conj. [sī, if+ve, or], if or; or; whether; **sive ... sive**, either ... or, whether ... or, to see if ... or. I, 12.

**socer**, -eri, m., father-in-law. I, 12.

**societās**, -tātis, f. [socius, ally], alliance.

**socius**, -ō, m. [cf. sequor, follow], companion; confederate, ally. I, 5.

**sōl**, sōlis, m., the sun; **ad occidentem sōlem**, toward the setting sun or west; **ad orientem sōlem**, toward the rising sun or east. I, 1.

**sōlācium**, -ō, n. [sōlor, console], comfort, solace.

**soldurium**, -ri, m., vassal. III, 22.

**soleō, solère**, solitus sum (App. 74), intr., be wont, be accustomed.

**sōlitūdō**, -inis, f. [sōlus, alone], loneliness, solitude; a lonely place, wilderness. IV, 18.

**sollertia**, -ae, f. [sollers, skillful], skill, expertness; ingenuity.

**solicitō, ἔ-, tr., move violently, stir up, agitate; incite, tempt, instigate. II, 1.

**solicitūdō**, -inis, f. [solicitus, anxious], anxiety, worry, apprehension.

**solum**, -i, n., bottom; ground, soil, earth. I, 11.

**sōlum**, adv. [sōlus, alone], only, merely. I, 12.

**sōlus**, -a, -um, gen. sōlius (App. 32), adj., alone, only; the only. I, 18.

**solvō, solvere, solvi, solutum, tr., loosen, untie; with or without nāvēs, weigh anchor, set sail, put to sea. IV, 23.

**sonitus**, -ūs, m. [cf. sonō, sound], sound, din.

**sonus**, -i, m. [cf. sonō, sound], sound.


**sors**, sortīs, f., lot, chance, fate; casting or drawing of lots. I, 50.

**Sotiates**, -ium, m. (DeRcd), the Sotiates (sōˈtē-əz). III, 20.

**spatium**, -ti, n., space, distance, extent, length of space; period or length of time, hence time, opportunity. I, 7.
subitus, -a, -um, adj. [subeō, come up, come by stealth], unexpected, sudden. III, 7.

sublātus, see tollō.

sublevō, I, tr. [levō, lift], lift from beneath, lift or raise up, support; assist, aid; lighten, lessen. I, 16.

sublica, -ae, f., pile, stake. IV, 17.

subluō, -luere, —, -lutum, wash, flow around the base.

subministrō, I, tr. [ministrō, wait upon], furnish, supply, give. I, 40; III, 25.

submittō, -mittere, -misī, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send up, send, send to the assistance of. II, 6.

submoveō, -movere, -mōvi, -mōtum, tr. [moveō, move], move away, drive away, dislodge. I, 25.

subruō, -ruere, -rūi, -rutum, tr. [ruō, fall], cause to fall from beneath, overthrow; dig under, undermine. II, 6.

subsequeor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, tr. and intr. [sequor, follow], follow closely, follow up or on, follow. II, 11.

subsidium, -di, n. [subsideō, sit near or in reserve], sitting in reserve; reserve force, reserves; help, aid, assistance. I, 52; II, 6.

subsidō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sēssum, intr. [sedēō, sit], sit down, remain.

substitō, -sisterē, -stitē, —, intr. [stītō, stand], halt, make a stand; be strong enough, hold out. I, 15.

subsum, -esse, -fui, intr. [sum, be. App. 77], be under or below; be near or close at hand. I, 25.

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr. [trahō, draw], draw or carry off from beneath; take away, withdraw. I, 44.

subvectō, -ōnis, f. [subvehō, convey], conveying; transportation.

subvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, tr. [vehō, carry], bring or carry up; convey. I, 16.

subveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, intr. [veniō, come], come or go to help, aid, succor.

succéddō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, intr. [sub+cēdō, go], go or come under; come up to, come up, advance, be next to; succeed, take the place of; succeed, prosper. I, 24.

succeddō, -cēdere, -cēdī, -cēsūm, tr. [sub+cēdō, cut], cut from beneath, cut down, fell. IV, 19.

succumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, intr. [cf. cubō, lie], sink under; yield.

succurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, m. [sub+currō, run], run to help, aid, assist.

sudis, -is, f., pile, stake.

Suēbus, -a, -um, adj., of or pertaining to the Suebi, Sueban; pl. as noun, Suēbi (Bhī), the Suebi (swē'bi), a powerful people of central Germany consisting of several independent tribes, the modern Swabians. I, 37; IV, 1.

Suessionēs, -um, m. (Be), the Suessiones (swē's-i-o'nez). II, 3.

sufficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, intr. [sub+faciō, make], be sufficient.

suffodiō, -fodere, -fōdi, -fossum, tr. [sub+fodiō, dig], dig under; stab underneath. IV, 12.

suffragium, -gi, n., vote, ballot.

Sugambri, -ōrum, m. (Ag), the Sugambri (sū-gām'brī). IV, 16.

suggestus, -ūs, m., platform, stage; tribunal.

suī, sībi, sē, or sēsē, reflex. pron. of sā person (App. 163, 164, 165), himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, they, etc.; inter sē, see inter and App. 165. I, 1.

Sulla, -ae, m., Lucius Sulla (lū'sh-yūs sūl'ya), the dictator; leader of the nobility; engaged in civil war with Marius, leader of the popular party; lived from 138 B.C. to 78 B.C. I, 21.

Sulpicius, -cī, m., Publius Sulpicius Rufus (pū'b-lī-ō sūl-pīsh'yūs rūf'yūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. IV, 22.

sum, esse, ful, (App. 66), intr., be, exist, live; stay, remain; serve for; with gen. in predicate, be the mark or sign of; belong to; be the duty of; with dat. of possessor, have. I, 1.

summa, -ae, f. [summus, highest], the
main thing or point, sum total, aggregate, the whole; general management, control, direction; **summa imperi**, the chief command. I. 29.

**summus**, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of superus, high. App. 44], highest, very high; the highest part of the top of; preeminent, greatest, chief, supreme; all. I. 16.

**sūmō**, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmpsum, tr., [sub+emō, take], take away, take; assume; with **supplicium**, inflict; with **labor**, spend. I. 7.

**sūmptuösus**, -a, -um, adj. [sūmpsum, expense], expensive.

**sūmpsum**, -ūs, m. [sūmō, spend], expense. I. 18.

**sūmpsum**, see sūmō.

**super**, adv. and prep. with acc., above, over, on.


**superior**, -ius, adj. [comp. of superus, high. App. 44], (1) of place, upper, higher, superior; (2) of time, previous, earlier, former. I. 10.

**superō**, 1, tr. and intr. [super, over], go over; overmatch, be superior to, surpass, conquer, master, overcome, prevail; be left over, remain; **vitā superāre**, survive. I. 17.

**supersedeō**, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, intr. [sedēō, sit], sit above, be above, be superior to; refrain from. II. 8.

**supersum**, -esse, -fui, intr. [sum, be]. App. 77, be over or above; be left, remain, survive. I. 23:

**superus**, -a, -um, adj. [super, above], over, above; comp., see **superior**; sup., see **summus**.

**suppetō**, -petere, -petīvi, -petītum, intr. [sub+petō, seek, obtain], be near or at hand; be in store, be supplied, hold out. I. 3.

**supplēmentum**, -i, n. [suppleō, fill up], a filling up; supplies, reinforcements.

**supplex**, -icis, m. and f., suppliant. II. 23.

**supplicātiō**, -ōnis, f. [supplex, suppliant], public prayer to the gods in Thanksgiving for successes, hence Thanksgiving. II. 35.

suppliciter, adv. [supplex, suppliant], as suppliants, humbly. I. 27.

**supplicium**, -ci, n. [sub+plicō, bend], a bending over to receive punishment; punishment, death. I. 19.

**supportō**, 1, tr. [sub+portō, carry], carry or bring up from beneath; bring, convey; supply, furnish. I. 39, III. 3.

**suprā**, adv. and prep. with acc. (1) as adv., before, previously; (2) as prep. with acc., above, before. II. 1.

**suscipīō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [su(b)spicō, take], take or lift up; undertake, assume, take on one’s self, begin, engage in. I. 3.

**suspectus**, -a, -um, adj. [suspicīō, suspect], suspected, distrusted.

**suspicīō**, -ōnis, f. [suspicor, suspect], suspicion, distrust; cause for suspicion; indication, appearance. I. 4.

**suspicor**, 1, tr. [suspicīō, suspect], suspect, distrust; surmise. I. 44; IV. 6.

**sustentō**, 1, tr. and intr. [freq. of sustineō, hold up], hold up, sustain, maintain; hold out; endure, withstand. II. 6.

**sustineō**, 2, tr. and intr. [su(b)spicō+teneō, hold], hold up from below; hold up, sustain; hold back, check, restrain; hold out against, withstand, endure, bear; hold out. I. 24.

**sustulī**, see tollō.

**suus**, -a, -um, reflex. pronominal adj. referring to subject (App. 163, 164, 165, 167,a), [sui, himself, herself, etc.], of or belonging to himself, herself, etc., his, own, their own; his, hers, its; their; **sua**, n. pl. as noun, one’s property; **suī**, m. pl. as noun, their men (friends or countrymen). I. 1.

T.

T. abbr. for Titus (tī’tūs), a Roman praenomen. I. 10.


**tabula**, -ae, f., board; tablet; list. I. 29.

**tabulātum**, -i, n. [cf. tabula, board], flooring of boards; story.

**taceō**, 2, tr. and intr., be silent; keep

tálea, *ae*, f., rod, bar; piece of wood, stake.

tális, *-e*, adj., such, such a; such a great; so great a.

tam, *adv.*, so, very. I, 14.

+tamen, *adv.* (opposed to some expressed or implied concession), yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still, however; at least. I, 7.

Tamesis, *-is*, m. (Acd), the river Tamesis (tām'ē-sis), better, the Thames.

tamēsi, *conj.* [tamen, however+etsi, even if], although, though, notwithstanding. I, 30.

tandem, *adv.*, at last, at length, finally; in interrog. clauses to add emphasis, as quid tandem, what, pray? what then? I, 25.

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tēctum, *tr.*, touch, border on.


tantulus, *-a, -um*, adj. [dim. of tantus, so great], so small or little, so diminutive; trifling. II, 30.

tantum, *adv.* [tantus, so great], so much, so far; only, merely.

tantummodo, *adv.*, only. III, 5.

tantundem, *adv.* [tantus, so great], so much or so far.

tantus, *-a, -um*, adj. [cf. tam, so], so much, so great, so powerful, such; quantō... tantō, *with comparatives, see quantō*. I, 15.


tardē, *adv.* [tardus, slow], slowly; comp. tardius, too slowly. IV, 23.

tardō, I, *tr.* [tardus, slow], make slow; delay; hinder, check. II, 25.

tardus, *-a, -um*, adj., slow, sluggish. II, 25.

Tarusātēs, *-ium*, m. (DEc), the Tarusates (tārūsā'tēs). III, 23.

Taggetiūs, *-ti, m.*, Taggetius (tāg-jē-shyūs), a chief of the Carnutes.

taurus, *-i, m.*, bull.

Taximagulus, *-i, m.*, Taximagulus (tāk-i-māg'ū-lūs), a king of Kent.

taxus, *-i, *-f., yew-tree, yew.

Tectosagēs, *-um*, m. (Ede), the Tectosages (tēk-tōs'ā-jēz).

tēctum, *-i, n.* [tēgō, cover], covering, roof; house. I, 36.

tēctus, *see tegō*.

tegimentum, *-i, n.* [tēgō, cover], a covering. II, 21.

tēgō, tegere, téxi, tēctum, *tr.*, cover, hide; protect, defend.

tēlum, *-i, n.* a weapon for fighting at a distance, missile, dart, javelin. I, 8.

temerārius, *-a, -um*, adj. [temerē, rashly], rash, imprudent, reckless. I, 31.


temerītās, *-tātīs, *f.* [temerē, rashly], rashness, indiscretion.

tēmō, *-onis*, m., pole (of a wagon). IV, 33.

temperantia, *-ae, f.* [temperō, control one's self], prudence, self-control. I, 19.


tempestās, *-tātīs, *f.* [tempus, time], time, season; weather, usually bad weather, storm, tempest. III, 12.

temptō, I, *tr.*, make an attempt upon, try to gain possession of, attack; try, test; try to win over. I, 14.

tempus, *-oris*, n., a division or section of time, a time, time (in general); occasion, crisis; omni tempore, always; in reliquum tempus, for the future; ānō tempore, at the same time, at once. I, 3.

Tēncterī, *-ōrum*, m., the Tēncterī (tēn'kē-tē-rī). IV, 1.

tendō, tendere, tetendi, tentum or tēnsum, *tr.*, stretch, stretch out, extend; stretch a tent, pitch; encamp. II, 13.

tenebrae, *-ārum*, *f. pl.*, darkness.

teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentum, *tr.*, hold, keep, occupy, possess; hold possession of; hold in, restrain, bind; sē tenēre, remain; memoriā tenēre, remember. I, 7.

tener, *-era, -orum*, adj., tender. II, 17.
TENUIS

Tenuis, -e, adj., slim, thin; slight, insignificant; delicate.

Tenuitas, -tatis, f. [tenuis, thin], thinness, poverty.

Tenuiter, adv. [tenuis, thin], thinly. III, 13.

ter, num. adv. [cf. trés, three], three times. I, 53.

terés, -etis, rounded; tapering.

tergum, -i, n., the back; terga vertere, to flee; post tergum or ab tergō, in the rear. I, 53; III, 19.

ternus, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [ter, thrice], three each, three apiece. III, 15.

terra, -ae, f., earth, land, soil, ground; region, district; terrae (pl.) and orbis terrarum, the world. I, 32; III, 15.

Terrasidius, -dī, m., Titus Terrasidius (tī tūs tēr'ā-sū'āī-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar’s army. III, 7.

terrēnus, -a, -um, adj. [terra, earth], of earth. I, 43.

terreō, 2, tr., frightening, terrify.

trettō, 1, tr. [freq. of terreō, frightening], frightened, terrifying, alarm.

terror, -ōris, m. [terreō, frightened], fright, alarm, panic, terror. II, 12.

tertius, -a, -um, num. adj. [ter, thrice], third. I, 1.

testamentum, -ī, n. [testor, be a witness], will. I, 39.

Testimōniun, -īnī, m. [testor, be a witness], testimony, evidence, proof. I, 44.

testis, -īs, m. and f., witness. I, 14.

testūdō, -inis, f., tortoise; shed; a testudo, a column of men, holding their shields overlapped over their heads. II, 6.

Teutomatus, -ī, m., Teutomatus (tūtōm’ā-tūs), son of Ollonico, king of the Nītiobroges; later king himself.

Teutoni, -ōrum or Teutonēs, -um, m., the Teutoni (tūtō-nē) or Teutones (tūtō-nēz). I, 33; II, 4.

tēxi. see tegō.

tignum, -ī, n., log, timber, beam, pile. IV, 17.

Tigurinus, -a, -um, of or belonging to the Tigurini; pl. as noun, Tigurinī (Cg), the Tigurini (tīg’u-rī’īnī). I, 12.

timeō, -ērē, -ui, —, tr. and intr., fear, be afraid of, dread; with dat., be anxious about, be anxious for, dread; nihil timēre, have no fear. I, 14.

timidē, adv. [timidus, fearful], fearfully, cowardly, timidly. III, 25.

Timidus, -a, -um, adj. [timeō, fear], fearful, frightened, timid, cowardly, afraid. I, 39.

timor, -ōris, m. [timeō, fear], fear, alarm, dread. I, 22.

Titūrius, -ri, m., see Sabinus.

tolerō, 1, tr. [cf. tollō, lift up], bear, endure; hold out; nourish, support; with fāmem, appease, alleviate. I, 28.

tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublātum, tr., lift, elevate; take on board; take away, remove; do away with, destroy; cancel; sublātus, pf. part as adj., elated. I, 5.

Tolōsa, -ae, f. (Ed), Tolosa (tō-lō’sā), now Toulouse. III, 20.

Tolōsátēs, -ium, m., the Tolosates (tōlō-sā’tēz), the people of Tolosa. I, 10.

tormentum, -ī, n. [torqueō, twist], means of twisting; an engine for hurling missiles, e.g. catapulta and ballista; windlass, hoist; device for torturing, hence, torment, torture. II, 8.

torreō, torrēre, torrūi, tōstum, tr., scorch, burn.

tot, indecl. adj., so many. III, 10.

totidem, indecl. adj. [tot, so many], just as many, the same number. I, 48; II, 4.

tōtus, -a, -um, gen. tōtius (App. 32), adj., the whole, the whole of; entire, all; with force of adv., wholly, entirely. I, 2.

trabs, trabis, f., beam, timber, pile. II, 29.

tractus, see trahō.

trādō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr. [trāns +dō, give], give over, give up, surrender, deliver; intrust, commit; hand down, transmit; teach, communicate; recommend. I, 27.

trāducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr. [trāns+dūcō, lead], lead across, lead
TRAGULA 79
TRINOVANTES

over; take across, transport; transfer, convey, pass on; win over. I. 11.

trągula, -ae, f., a javelin or dart used by the Gauls. I. 26.

trahō, thahere, trāxī, tractum, tr., drag, drag along. I. 55.

trācīō, -icere, -lēcī, -lectum, tr. [trāns + iacīō, hurl. App. 7], hurl across; pierce, transfix.

trāiectus, -us, m. [trācīō, hurl across], a hurling across; crossing, passage. IV. 21.

trānō, 1, intr. [trāns+nō, swim], swim across. I. 53.

trānquillītās, -ātis, f., calmness, stillness; a calm. III. 15.

trāns, prep. with acc., across, beyond, over; in compounds, trāns or trā, across, over, through. I. 1.

Trānsalpinus, -a, -um, adj. [Alpēs, the Alps], across the Alps, Transalpine.

trānscentō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnī, -scēnūs, tr. and intr. [scandō, climb] climb over; board. III. 15.

trānseō, -iē, -iētum, tr. and intr. [eō, go. App. 84], go across or over, cross; march through, pass through; move, migrate; of time, pass by. I. 5.

trānsferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, tr. [ferō, carry. App. 81], carry or bring over, transfer.

trānsfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, tr. [figō, fix], thrust or pierce through, transfixed. I. 25.

trānsfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, tr. [fodiō, dig], dig through; pierce through, impale.

trānsgreedior, -gredi, -gressus sum, tr. [gradior, [step], step over, cross. II. 19.

trānsitūs, -ūs, m. [trānseō, go across], crossing, passage.

trānslātus, see trānsferō.

trānsmarinus, -a, -um, adj. [mare, sea], across the sea, foreign.

trānsmissus, -ūs, m. [trānsmittō, send across], sending across; passage.

trānsmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send across.

trānspōrtō, 1, tr. [portō, carry], carry across or over, bring over, convey transport. I. 37; IV. 16.

Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, adj., beyond or across the Rhine; pl. as noun.

Trānsrhēnāni, the people across the Rhine. IV. 16.

trānstrum, -i, n., cross-beam, thwart. III. 13.

trānsversus, -a, -um, adj. [trāns-vertō, turn across], turned across, cross. II. 8.

Trēbius, -bī, m., Marcus Trebius Gallus (mār'kūs trē'bi-ūs gāl'ūs), a military tribune in Caesar’s army. III. 7.

Trēbōnīus, -nī, m. (1) Gaius Trebonius (ga'īus trē-bō'nī-ūs), one of Caesar’s lieutenants. (2) Gaius Trebonius, a Roman knight.

trecěnti, -ae, -a (CCC), card. num. adj. [tréés, three+centum, hundred], three hundred. IV. 37.

trepidō, 1, intr., hurry about in alarm; pass., be disturbed or in confusion.

tréš, tríia, gen. trium (III), card. num. adj., three. I. I.

Trēvīr, -eri, m., one of the Treveri; pl. Trēvēri (Bgh), the Treveri (trēvē’ri). I. 37; II. 24.

Trōbōcī, -ōrum, m. (Bgh), the Triboci (trīb’ō-si). I. 51; IV. 10.

trībūnus, -ī, m. [tribus, tribe], tribune, a magistrate elected by the people, voting intribes, to defend the interests of the plebs; trībūnus militūr or militāris, a military tribune. I. 39; II. 26.

trībūno, tribuere, tribūnum, tr. [tribus, a tribe or division], divide, distribute; attribute, assign, allot, ascribe; grant, do for the sake of, render. I. 13.

trībūtum, -ī, n. [tribō, render, pay], tribute, tax.

triduuum, -ī, n. [tréés, three+diēs, day], three days. I. 26.

triennium, -ni, n. [tréés, three+annus, year], three years. IV. 4.

trigintā (XXX), card. num. adj., indecl. [tréés, three], thirty. I. 26.

trīnī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj., three each; three, triple. I. 53.

Trīnovantes, -um, m. (Ad), the Trīnovantes (trīn’ō-vān’tēz).
TRIPERTITO 80 UNIVERSUS

tripertitō, adv. [trēs, three, + partior, divide], in three parts or divisions.

triplex, -icis, adj. [trēs, three, + plicō, fold], three-fold, triple. I, 24.

triquetrus, -a, -um, adj., triangular.

tristis, -e, adj., sad, dejected. I, 32.

trītītīa, -ae, f., sadness. I, 32.

Troucillus, -i, m., see Valerius.

truncus, -i, m., trunk of trees. IV, 17.

tū, tuī (App. 51), pers. pron., you.

tuba, -ae, f., trumpet. II, 20.

tueor, tuērī, tūtus sum, tr., watch, guard, protect. IV, 8.

tuli, see ferō.

Tulingi, -orum, m. (Cgh), the Tulingi (tū-līn'ji), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. I, 5.

Tullius, -i, m., see Cicerō.

Tullius, -i, m., see Volcācius.

tum, adv., then, at this or that time; then, Secondly; then also; cum ... tum, both ... and, not only ... but also: I, 17.

tumultuōr, i. intr. [tumultus, disorder], make a disturbance; impers., there is a disturbance.

tumultuōsē, adv. [tumultus, disorder], with confusion or noise.

tumultus, -ūs, m. [tumeō, swell], uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult; uprising, insurrection. I, 40; II, 11.

tumulus, -i, m. [tumeō, swell], swelling; mound, hill. I, 43; II, 27.

turma, -ae, f., troop or squadron of about thirty cavalrymen. IV, 33.

Turoni, -orum, m. (Cd), the Turoni (tū'rō-nī). II, 35.

turpis, -e, adj., ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable. I, 33; IV, 2.

turpiter, adv. [turpis, disgraceful], disgracefully, cowardly, basely.

turpitudō, -inis, f. [turpis, disgraceful], disgrace. II, 27.

turris, -is, ae, f., tower. II, 12.

tūtō, adv. [tūtus, safe], safely, securely. III, 13.

tūtus, -a, -um, adj. [tueor, protect], protected, safe, secure. II, 5.

tuus, -a, -um, poss. pron. [tū, you], your, yours.

ubi, adv. (1) of place, in which place, where; (2) of time, when, whenever; as soon as; ubi primum, as soon as. I, 5.

Ubii, -ōrum, m. (A/Bh), the Ubii (ū'bi-i). I, 54; IV, 3.

ubique, adv. [ubi, where], anywhere, everywhere. III, 16.

ulciscor, ulciscī, ultus sum, tr., avenge; punish, take vengeance on. I, 12.

ūllus, -a, -um, gen. āūllus (App. ?2), adj., a single, any; as noun, any one, anybody. I, 7.

ulterior, -ius, adj., comp. [ultrā, beyond. App. 43], farther, more remote, ulterior. I, 7.

ultimus, -a, -um, adj., sup. [ultrā, beyond. App. 43], farthest, most distant or remote; as noun, those in the rear. III, 27.

ultrā, prep. with acc., beyond, on the farther side of. I, 45.

ultrō, adv., to or on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without provocation; besides, moreover; ultrō citrōque, back and forth. I, 42; III, 27.

ultus, see ulciscor.

ululātus, -ūs, m., yell, shriek.

umerus, -i, m., the shoulder.

umquam, adv., at any time, ever; neque ... umquam, and never, never. I, 41; III, 28.

ānā, adv. [ānus, one], (1) of place, together, along with, in one place. (2) of time, together, along with, at the same time, also. I, 5.

unde, adv., from which place, whence. I, 28.

ūndecim (XI), card. num. adv., indecl. [ānus, one + decem, ten], eleven.

ūndecimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adv. [ūn-decim, eleven], eleventh. II, 23.

ūndēvīgintī, card. num. adv., indecl. [ānus, one + dé, from + vigintī, twenty], nineteen. I, 8.

undique, adv. [unde, whence], from all parts; on all sides, everywhere. I, 2.

ūniversus, -a, -um, adj. [ānus, one+
VERTÓ, turn], turned into one; all together, whole, universal, all as a mass. II, 33.

ÚNUS, ÓNA, ÓNUM, gen. ÓNIUS (App. 32), card. num. adj., one, the same one; single, alone; the sole, the only; the sole or only one. I, 1.

URBANUS, -e, -UM, adj. [URBS, city], of or in the city.

URBS, URBI, f., city; especially, the city, Rome. I, 7.


ÚRUS, -e, m., wild ox.

USIPETÉS, -UM, m., the Usipetes (ú-slp'-é-téz). IV, 1.

USITATUS, -e, -UM, adj. [USITOR, use often], ordinary, familiar.

USQUE, adv. (1) of place, all the way to, even to, as far as; (2) of time, up to, till; with AD, until. I, 50; III, 15.

USUS, see ÚTOR.

USUS, -ÚS, m. [ÚTOR, use], use, experience, practice, skill; service, advantage; need, necessity; ÚSUS est, there is need; ÚSUI esse or ex ÚSUS esse, be of advantage or service; ÚSUS venire, come by necessity; happen. I, 30; II, 9.

UT and UTI, adv. and conj., (1) as interro-g. adv., how? (2) as rel. adv. and conj., as, in proportion as, just as; insomuch as; as if: (3) as conj. (a) with ind., when, after; (b) with subj., that, in order that, to; that, so that, as so to; though, although; after words of fearing, that not. I, 2.

UTER, UTRA, UTRUM, gen. UTRIUS (App. 32), adj. (1) as interro-g., which one or which of two; (2) as rel., the one who, of two, whichever. I, 12.

UTERQUE, UTRAQUE, UTROMQUE, adj. [Uter, which of two], each of two, either of two; both. I, 34; II, 8.

UTI, see UT.

ÚTILIS, -e, adj. [ÚTOR, use], useful, serviceable. IV, 7.

ÚTILITAS, -TATIS, f. [ÚTILIS, useful], usefulness, advantage, service. IV, 19.

ÚTOR, ÚTI, ÚSUS SUM, intr., make use of, employ, use, avail one's self of, exercise; have, enjoy, experience, possess, show; adopt, accept; ÚSUS, pf. part. often translated with. I, 5.

UTRIMQUE, adv. [UTERQUE, each of two], on each side, on both sides. I, 50; IV, 17.

UTRUM, conj. [UTER, which of two], whether; UTRUM ... AN, whether ... or; UTRUM ... NECNE, whether ... or not. I, 40.

UXOR, -ÓRIS, f., wife. I, 18.

V.

V, sign for quinque, five.

VAERUS, -I, m. (At), the Vaerulus (vák'-a-lús) river, now the Waal. IV, 10.

VAECO, I, intr., be empty or unoccupied; lie waste. I, 28.

VACUUS, -A, -UM, adj. [VACO, be empty], empty, unoccupied; free from, desti-tute of. II, 12.


VAGINA, -AE, /., sheath, scabbard.

VAGOR, I, intr. [VAGUS, roaming], roam about, rove, wander. I, 2.

VALEÔ, 2, intr., be strong or vigorous, have weight, influence or strength; plúRIMUM VALÉRE, be very powerful. I, 17.

VAleriUs, -RI, m. (1) Gaius Valerius TrouciUs (gá'ús va-lé'ri-us try-sil'-ús), a Gallic interpreter and confidential friend of Caesar. I, 19. (2) Gaius Valerius Flaccus (see (1) flák'-ús), Governor of Gaul 83 B.C. I, 47. (3) Gaius Valerius CaprUs (see (1) ka- b ú'rus), a Gaul who had received Roman citizenship. I, 47. (4) Gaius Valerius Pro-ciUs (see (1) pró-sil'-ús), son of No. 3. I, 47. (5) Lucius Valerius Praeconi-nus (lú'ús-šyús va-lé'ri-us prók'-óni'-nús), a Roman lieutenant in Gaul, before Caesar's time. III, 20. (6) Gaius Valeri-us Domnotaurus (see (1) dóm'mó-taw'-rus), son of No. 3.

VALETIACUS, -I, m., Valetiacus (vál'té-ši-lá'kus), a nobleman of the Haeduin.

VALEÔDÔ, -inis, f. [VALEÔ, be strong], health, poor health.

VALLÉS, -IS, f., vale, valley. III, 1.

VALLUM, -I, n. [VALLIS, palisade], wall.
or rampart of earth set with palisades; entrenchments, earthworks. I. 26.

vāllus, -i, m., stake; palisade.

Vangiones, -um, m. (Bgh), the Vangiones (vān-jī-tō-nēz). I. 51.

varietas, -tātis, f. [varius], diversity, variety.

varius, -a, -um, adj., diverse, changing. II. 22.

vāstō, 1. tr. [vāstus, waste], lay waste, ravage, devastate. I. 11.

vāstus, -a, -um, adj., waste; boundless. vast. III. 8.

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, f., divination. I. 50.

-ve, conj., enclitic—vel, or.

vectigal, -ālis, n. [vectigalis, tributary], tax, tribute; pl.; revenues. I. 18.

vectigalis, -e, adj. [vehō, carry], paying revenue or tribute; tributary. III. 8.

vectōrius, -a, -um, adj. [vehō, carry], for carrying; vectōria nāvis, a transport.

vehementer, adv. [vehemēns, violent], violently, severely, strongly, very much. greatly. I. 37; III. 22.

vehō, vehere, vexi, vectum, tr., carry; bring along. I. 43.

vel, conj. and adv. (1) as conj., or; vel ... vel, either ... or; (2) as adv., even. I. 6.

Velānius, -nī, m., Quintus Velanius (wēn'tūs vē-lā'-nī-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. III. 7.

Veliocassēs, -um, m. (Bd), the Veliocasses (vē-lō-kā'sēz). II. 4.

Vellaunodūnum, -ī, n. (Be), Vellaunodūnum (vē-law'nō-dū'nūm or vē-law'nō-dū'nūm), a town of the Senones.

Vellāvi, -ōrum, m. (De), the Vellāvi (vē-lā'vī). Vēlōcitās, -tātis, f. [vēlōx, swift], swiftness, speed.

Vēlōciter, adv. [vēlōx, swift], swiftly, speedily.

Vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., swift, rapid. I. 48.

Vēlum, -ī, n., covering, veil; sail. III. 13.

Velut, adv., as, just as. I. 32.

vēnātiō, -ōnis, f. [vēnor, hunt], hunting, the chase. IV. 1.

vēnātor, -ōris, m. [vēnor, hunt], hunter.

vēndō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr. [vēn-um, sale+dō, give], put to sale, sell; sell at auction. II. 33.

Venelli, -ōrum, m. (Bc), the Venelli (vē-nēl'i). II. 34.

Veneti, -ōrum, m. (Cb), the Veneti (vēnē-tī). II. 34.

Venetia, -ae, f., Venetia (vē-nē'shyā), the country of the Veneti. III. 9.


venia, -ae, f., indulgence, favor; pardon.

veniō, venire, vēnī, ventum, intr., come, arrive, go, advance; in spem venire, have hopes: pass. often imper., as ventum est, they came, it came, etc. I. 8.

ventītō, 1, intr. [freq. of venīō], keep coming, resort; go back and forth, visit. IV. 3.

ventus, -ī, m., wind. III. 13.

vēr, vēris, n., the spring.

Veragri, -ōrum, m. (CDg), the Veragri (vē'r-a-gri). III. 1.

Verbigenus, -ī, m. (Cgh), Verbigenus (vēr-bijē'-ē-nūs), a canton of the Helvetii. I. 27.

verbum, -ī, n., word; pl., speech; entreaty; verba facere, plead. I. 20.

Vercassiveulaunus, -ī, m., Vercassiveulaunus (vēr-kās'ī-vē-law'nūs).

Vercingetorix, -igis, m., Vercingetorix (vēr'ing-jē-tō-riks), an Arverian, the greatest leader produced by the Gauls.

vereor, verēri, veritus sum, tr., reverence, fear, dread, be afraid of. I. 19.

vergō, -ere, —, intr., look or lie towards, be situated; slope. I. 1.

vergobretus, -ī, m., vergobret (vēr-go-brēt), the title of the chief magistrate of the Haedu. I. 16.

veritus, see vereor.

vērō, adv. [vērus, true], in truth, truly, really, indeed; but, however, on the other hand. I. 32; II. 2.

versō, 1, tr., turn; deal with; pass. as
deponent, turn one's self; be, remain; engage in; fight. I, 48; II, 1.

versus, adv. [vertō, turn], turned to; toward.

versus, -ús, m. [vertō, turn], turning; phrase.

Verticō, -ōnis, m., Vertico (vēr'ti-kō), one of the Nervii.

vertō, vertere, verti, versum, tr., turn, turn around; terga vertere, flee. I, 53; III, 19.

Verucloetius,-ti,m.,Verucloetius (vēr'n-ū-kiē'shyūs), an Helvetic envoy, sent to Caesar. I, 7.

vērō, -a, -um, adj., true; n. as noun, the truth; vērī similis, likely, probable. I, 18.

verūtum, -ī, n., dart, javelin.

Vesontiō, -ōnis, n. (Cf), Vesontio (vē-sōn'shyō), the chief town of the Sequani, situated on the Doubs, modern Besançon. I, 38.

vesper, -ērī, m., evening; sub vesperum, towards evening. I, 26.

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. pron. [vōs, you], your, yours.

vēstitum, -ī, n., dress, garment.

vestis, -īs, f. [cf. vestiō, clothe], clothing.

vestitūs, -ūs, m. [vestiō, clothe], clothing. IV, 1.

veterānus, -a, -um, adj. [vetus, old], old, veteran; pl. as noun, veterans. I, 24.

vetō, -āre, -ūi, -itum, tr., forbid. II, 20.

vetus, -eris, adj., old, ancient, former; with militēs, veteran. I, 13.


vexō, 1, tr. [intensive of vehō, carry], carry or drag hither and thither, harass, plunder, waste, overrun. I, 14.

via, -ae, f., way, road, route; journey, march. I, 9.

viātor, -ōris, m. [via, road], traveler. IV, 5.

vicēnī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj., [cf. vigintī, twenty], twenty each, twenty.

vicēsimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [cf. vigintī, twenty], twentieth.

vicēs, num. adv. [cf. vigintī, twenty], twenty times.

vicīnītās, -tātis, f. [vicinus, near], neighborhood; pl., neighbors.

vicis, gen. (no nom.), change; only in the adv. phrase in vicem, alternately, in turn. IV, 1.

victimā, -ae, f., victim; a sacrificial animal.

victor, -ōris, m. [vincō, conquer], conqueror, victor; as adj., victorious. I, 31; II, 24.

victōria, -ae, f. [victor], victory. I, 14.

victus, see vincō.

victus, -ūs, m. [vīvō, live], living, mode of life; provisions, food. I, 31.

vicus, -ī, m., hamlet, village. I, 5.

videō, vidère, vīdī, visum, tr., see, perceive, observe, examine, understand; see to, take care; in pass., be seen; seem, appear; seem proper, seem best. I, 6.

Vienna, -ae, f. (Df), Vienna (vi-ēn'ā), modern Vienne.

vigilia, -ae, f. [vigil, awake], wakefulness, watching; a watch, one of the four equal divisions of the night, used by the Romans in reckoning time. I, 12.


vimen, -inis, n., a pliant twig, switch, osier. II, 33.

vincīo, vincere, vinxi, vincētum, tr., bind. I, 53.

vincō, vincere, vici, victum, tr., conquer, overcome, vanquish; prevail; have one's way or desire. I, 25.

vincitus, see vincīo.

vinculum, -ī, n. [vincīo, bind], bond, fetter, chain. I, 4.

vindicō, 1, tr., assert authority, assert, claim; set free, deliver; inflict punishment. III, 16.

vinea, -ae, f. [vinum, wine], vine arbor, hence, a shed for the defense of a besieging party. II, 12.

vinum, -ī, n., wine. II, 15.

violō, 1, tr., harm, injure; devastate.
vir, viré, m., man; husband; a man of distinction or honor; cf. homō, a human being as distinguished from the lower animals. II. 25.

virēs, see vis.

virgō, -inis, f., maiden, virgin.

virgultum, -i, n., thicket, brush, brushwood. III. 18.

Viridomārus, -i, m., Viridomarus (vir'o-mā-rūs), a chief of the Haedui. II. 4.

Viridovix, -icis, m., Viridovix (vir'i-dō-viks, a chief of the Venelli. III. 17.

virtim, adv. [vir, man], man by man, to each one, individually.

Viromandui, -orum, m. (Be), the Viromandui (vir'o-mān'dū-i). II. 1.

virtus, -ūtis, f. [vir, man], manliness, valor, merit, worth, virtue, courage; strength, energy; pl., good qualities, virtues, merits. I. 1.

vis, vis (App. 27). f., force, might, energy, strength; violence, severity; authority, power; a force, a great number; pl., virēs, strength, force; vim facere, use violence. I. 6.

visus, see vidēō.

vita, -ae, f. [cf. vivō, live], life; manner of living, living. I, 16.

vitō, 1. tr., avoid, shun, evade, escape. I. 20.

vitrum, -i, n., woad, a plant used by the Britons for dyeing blue.

vivō, vivere, vīxi, victum, intr., live; subsist on. IV. 1.

vīvus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. vivō, live], alive, living.

vīx, adv., with difficulty, barely, hardly, scarcely. I. 6.

Vocātēs, -ium, m. (Dcd), the Vocates (vō-kā'tēz). III. 23.

Voccio, -onis, m., Voccio (vōk'shyō), a king of Noricum. I. 53.

vocē, 1. tr. [vōx, voice], call, summon; invite. I. 19.

Vocontii, -ōrum, m. (Df), the Vocontii (vō-kōn'thi). I. 10.

Volcācius, -i, m., Gaius Volcācius Tulūs (gā'yūs vōl-kā'shyūs túl'ūs), a young man in Caesar's army.

Volcae, -ārum, m. (1) Volcae Arecomici (Eef), the Volcae Arécomici (vōl'sē a'rē-kōm'i-sī). (2) Volcae Tec-tosagēs (Ede) (vōl'sē tēk-tōs'a-jēz).

volō, velle, volui, — (App. 82). tr. and intr., wish, be willing, want, desire; prefer, choose; intend; mean; quid sibi vellet, what did he intend or mean? I. 7.

voluntarius, -a, -um, adj. [voluntās, will], willing; pl. as noun, volunteers.

voluntās, -tātis, f. [volō, wish], wish, will, desire, inclination; good will, favor; consent, approval. I. 7.

voluptās, -tātis, f. [volō, wish], what one wishes; pleasure, delight, enjoyment. I. 53.

Volusēnus, -i, m., Gaius Volusēnus Quadrātus (gā'yūs vōlū'sēn'-ūs kwa-drā'tūs), a tribune of Caesar's army, afterward commander of cavalry. III. 5.

Vorēnus, -i, m., Lucius Vorēnus (lu'ē-šyūs vō-rē'ne-us), a centurion in Caesar's army.

vōs, see tū.

Vosegus, -i, m. (BCg), the Vosegus (vōs'-ē-gūs), better, the Voges Mountains. IV. 10.

voveō, vovere, vōvī, votum, tr., vow.

vōx, vocēs, f., voice, tone; outcry, cry; word; pl., words, language. variously translated according to context, as entertainments, complaints, tales, etc. I. 32; II. 13.

Vulcānus, -i, m., Vulcānus (vūl-kā'n-ūs), better Vulcan, the god of fire.

vulgō, adv. [vulgus, the crowd], commonly; everywhere. I. 39; II. 1.

vulgus, -i, n., the common people, the multitude, the public, the masses; a crowd. I. 20.

vulnerō, 1. tr. [vulnus, a wound], wound. I. 26.

Vulnus, -eris, n., a wound. I. 25.

vultus, -ūs, m., countenance, looks. I. 39.

X.

X, sign for decem, ten.
INDEX

TO THE INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND APPENDIX

References in plain-faced type are to pages; in bold-faced type, to sections of the Appendix.

A

Ablative:
absolute, 150: I, 2, 2; 3, 21; 8, 6: II, 1, 6; 2, 2; 7, 7.
of accompaniment, 140: I, 1, 10; 3, 5; 10, 11: II, 3, 5; 5, 6; 11, 11: III, 11, 14.
of accordance, 142, a: I, 4, 1; 8, 8; 14, 3: II, 4, 21; 13, 11; 19, 4.
of agent, 137: I, 3, 11; 7, 13; 14, 17: II, 1, 7; 5, 3; 10, 1.
of attendant circumstance, 142, b: I, 18; 22; 22, 15: II, 1, 14: 23, 13.
of cause, 138: I, 2, 6; 9, 5; 14, 11: II, 1, 10; 4, 7: 9, 10.
of comparison, 139: I, 15, 14; 22, 2; 41, 11: II, 3, 1; 7, 10.
of degree of difference, 148: I, 5, 1; 6; 14, 3: II, 7, 8; 20, 4; 30, 7.
with deponent verbs, 145: I, 2, 5; 5, 9; 16, 5: II, 5, 12; 7, 1; 14, 10.
descriptive, 141: I, 6, 11; 7, 15; 18, 6: II, 6, 10; 15, 3; 18, 4.
with dignus and indignus, 149, a.
duration of time, 152, a: I, 26, 13.
of manner, 142: I, 7, 2; 10, 8; 25, 10: II, 6, 2; 7, 8; 11, 1.
of means, 143: I, 1, 2; 2, 7; 8, 1: II, 1, 2; 3, 7; 8, 3.
for partitive genitive, 101, b: II, 6, 11.
of penalty, 108.
of place from which, 134, a: I, 5, 8; 6, 1; 10, 10.
of place in which, 151: I, 6, 8; 7, 5; 15, 5; 39, 17.
with prepositions, 153.

of separation, 134: I, 1, 13; 2, 8; 8, 11: II, 6, 6; 9, 13; 11, 15.
of source, 135: II, 4, 3; 29, 10: IV, 12, 13.
with special verbs and adjectives, 143, a: I, 13, 16; 53, 4: II, 27, 2: III, 9, 12; 21, 1.
of specification, 149: I, 3, 2; 5, 5; 4: II, 4, 13; 8, 6; 13, 6.
of time, 152: I, 3, 14; 4, 3: 12, 13: II, 2, 10: 4, 18; 6, 3.
of the way, 144: I, 6, 1; 9, 1; 16, 5: II, 19, 21: III, 1, 5: IV, 35, 7.
absum, 78.
Accent, 10-12: in gen. of nouns in -ius and -ium, 16, c.
Accusative:
with adjectives and adverbs, 122, b: I, 46, 2; 54, 3: III, 7, 7: IV, 9, 3.
cognate, 128: I, 38, 1.
direct object, 124: I, 1, 1; 2, 15; 5, 11: II, 1, 4; 2, 1; 7, 2.
in exclamations, 129.
extent of space, 130: I, 2, 16; 8, 4: II, 6, 2; 11, 12; 16, 1.
inner, 125, b: 128, a.
with passive verbs, 125, c: 127, a: II, 4, 3.
place to which, 131: I, 5, 6; 7, 4; 23, 5: II, 10, 12; 11, 3; 18, 2.
as subject of infinitive, 123: I, 1, 14; 2, 15; 7, 1: II, 1, 3; 2, 7; 6, 13.
Coördinate clause, 173; a: I, 1, 11; 2, 13; 11, 13: II, 4, 7; 5, 3; 13, 4; in indirect discourse, 269; a: II, 7, 11.

Council of war, 26: III, 3, 5.

cum, uses as conj., 239-242; causal or adversative, 239: I, 2, 5; 9, 2; 14, 16: II, 3, 2; 11, 3; 22, 4; temporal, rules, 240; indic. temporal, 241: III, 14, 15: IV, 17, 10: V, 19, 7: VI, 12; 1: subjunctive temporal, 242: I, 4, 8; 7, 1; 12, 13, 25, 7: I, 1, 2; 4, 6, 8.

cum primum, 237.

D


Dative:

with adjectives, 106, b; 122: I, 1, 9; 3, 14; 9, 6: II, 2, 5; 3, 2; 9, 6.


double, see Purpose.

with fidem habère, 115, a: I, 19, 15, 41, 11.

indirect object with compound verbs, 116: I, 2, 5; 5, 13; 10, 7; 42, 16: II, 6, 5; 9, 10; 14, 6.

indirect object with intr. verbs, 115: I, 2, 3; 3, 9; 9, 8: II, 1, 11; 10, 18; 16, 5.

indirect object with tr. verbs, 114: I, 3, 15; 4, 1; 10, 1: II, 2, 5; 4, 8; 10, 19.

with passive verbs, 114, c; 115, d: 116, II, c: I, 4, 1; 22, 8.

of possessor, 117: I, 7, 9; 10, 1; 11, 12; 34, 5: II, 6, 9; 15, 9; 16, 9.

of purpose, 119: I, 18, 27; 25, 5; 33, 2: II, 7, 3; 9, 13; 19, 6.

of reference, 120: I, 3, 6; 5, 8; 20, 20; 31, 4: II, 11, 17; 26, 14; 31, 9.

Declensions, of nouns, how distinguished, 14; nouns, 15-30; adjectives, 31-38; pronouns, 51-62; cardinals, 48, 49.

Defective verbs, 86.


Demonstratives, declension, 54-58; uses, 168-171.

Deponent verbs, 73; with abl., see abl.

Desire, subjunctive of, 184, a; in commands and prohibitions, 217; 220; in wishes, 221; in purpose clauses, 225; in substantive clauses, 228.

Clauses: coördinate, 222; coördinate relative in ind. disc., 269, a: II, 17, 11; subordinate, in ind. disc., 269: I, 3, 17; 6, 11; 10, 14: II, 1, 6; 3, 9; 10, 13; see also, Adversative, Causal, Characterizing, Comparison, Conditions, Determining, Generalizing, Indirect questions, Infinitive, Proviso, Purpose, Parenthetical, Result, Substantive, and Temporal.

coepi, 86.

cognōvi, use of tenses, 193, I, a; 194, a; 195, a.

Commands: in 1st person pl., 217; in 2nd person, 218; in 3rd person, 220; in indirect discourse, 267: I, 7, 20; 13, 10. For negative commands see Prohibitions.

Comparatives, declension, 34; occasional meaning, 161.

Comparison, of adj., 39-45; of adverbs, 46; clauses of, 261: I, 32, 11.

Complementary infinitive, 275.

Condemning, verbs of, 108.

Conditions, 249-259:

connectives, 250.

undetermined present or past, 253: I, 31, 44; 34, 6; 40, 24: III, 22, 5.

present or past contrary to fact, 254: I, 34, 5.

more vivid future, 256: I, 31, 7; 35, 12; 40, 9.


mixed, 258.

omitted or implied, 259.

in indirect discourse, 272: I, 34, 5.

confidō, with abl., 143, a: I, 53, 4: III, 9, 12.

Conjugation of verbs: four regular, 67-70; four regular, how distinguished, 63; capiō, 71; sum, 66; irregular, 77-85; deponents, 73; semi-deponents, 74; defective, 86; periphrastic, 75, 76; impersonal, 87.

consuēvi, use of tenses, 193, I, a; 194, a; 195, a.

Consonants, sounds of, 6; doubled, 6, a; division of, into syllables, 8.

consulō, constr., 114, b.

Contracted verb forms, 72: I, 12, 10; 18, 12: II, 3, 6; 14, 13; 17, 6.

Convicting, verbs of, constr., 108.
### INDEX

**Determining clause,** 231: III, 4, 1; 22, 5: IV, 29, 11.
**deus, declension of,** 16.
**dexter, comparison,** 42.
**diēs, gender,** 30, a: I, 4, 3.
**dignus with abl.,** 149, a.
**Domus, declension and gender,** 29, a; 29, d.
**dōnec, with ind.,** 234, b; 235, a; with subj., 235, b.
**dōnō, constr.,** 114, a.
**doubting, expressions of, with subj.,** 229, d.
**Druïds,** VI, 13, 7.
**dubitō, with subj.,** 229, d: II, 2, 8.
**dum: ind. temporal clauses,** 234; 235, a: I, 27, 7; 39, 1; 46, 1: III, 17, 1; subj. temporal clauses, 235, b: IV, 13, 4; 23, 10; proviso clauses, 260.
**dummodo, with subj.,** 260.
**duo,** 49.

---

**E**

**Encylities, effect on accent,** 12; **cum,** with pers. pron., 51, c; **cum,** with reflex. pron. 52, a: I, 5, 5; **cum,** with rel. pron., 60, b: I, 1, 10; **cum,** with interrog. pron., 61, b: **nam,** with interrog. pron., 61, a.
**enim,** 243.
**ēō, conj. of,** 84.
**ēō . . . quō,** 148, a: I, 14, 3.
**et enim,** 243.
**etsī, with ind.,** 246.
**Exhortation** 217: VII, 77, 19.

---

**F**

**Fearing, expressions of,** 228, b: I, 19, 11; 27, 9; 39, 24: II, 1, 7; 26, 5.
**ferō,** 81.
**fidō, with abl.,** 143, a.
**Filling, verbs and adj. of, with abl.,** 143, a.
**fīō,** 83.
**Fleet,** 36, 37.

---

**fore ut, for future inf.,** 205, b: I, 42, 8.
**Forgetting, verbs of, with gen.,** 107: I, 14, 7.
**frētus, with abl.,** 143, a: III, 21, 1.
**fruor, with abl.,** 145; use of gerundive, 289, I, a.
**fungor, with abl.,** 145; use of gerundive, 289, I, a.
**Future tense,** 192; use, 199.
**Future perfect tense,** 195; equivalent to future, 195, a; use, 199.

---

**G**

**Galea,** 24.

**Gallic campaigns, importance,** 9; effect, 9, 10.
**Gauls, first appearance in history,** 20; decline of their power, 20; invasion of Cimbri and Teutoni, 21; their civilization, 22.
**Gaul factions,** 22; geographical divisions in Caesar’s time, 21.

---

**Genitive:**

with adj. 106: I, 14, 4; 18, 8; 21, 9: III, 21, 9.
**appositional,** 97, a.
**with causā and grātiā,** 99, a.
**descriptive,** 100; 104: I, 5, 7; 8, 4; 25, 11: II, 5, 20; 10, 2; 15, 12.
**of material,** 102: I, 24, 4.
**objective,** 98: I, 2, 2; 4, 3; 14, 8; 30, 3: II, 4, 7; 7, 4; 21, 4.
**partitive,** 101: I, 1, 5; 3, 3; 7, 5: II, 2, 4; 4, 19; 10, 5.
**possessive,** 99; 103: I, 1, 13; 2, 7; 10, 15: II, 1, 9; 2, 11; 7, 8: IV, 5, 4.
**subjective,** 98: I, 30, 3: II, 1, 3; 4, 5; 11, 15.
**of value,** 105: I, 20, 14.
**with verbs,** 107-111: I, 3, 22; 13, 11; 14, 7; II, 5, 5: IV, 5, 9.
**Gerund,** 287; 289-294: I, 2, 3; 3, 2; 7, 18: II, 7, 4; 9, 3; 10, 10.
INDEX

Gerundive, 285, II; 288-294: I, 3, 6; 5, 7; 7, 10; 9, 13; 10, 8: III, 4, 12; 6, 4: 14, 13, 14.
gladius, 24.
gratiā, position, 99, a.

H
hic, declension, 54; uses, 168; 170, a.
hindering, verbs of, 228, c.
Historical, tenses, 203; present, 190, a: I, 3, 7; 5, 6, 12; 10, 1: II, 5, 6; 12, 14; Infinitive, 281: I, 16, 2: II, 30, 6; III, 4, 3.
Hollow square, (orbis), 32.

I
ia, consonant and vowel, 5-7.
iam diū, etc., with pres., 190, b; with impt., 191, b: I, 31, 10; III, 5, 1.
idem, 58.
Ides, 298.
idōneus, constr., 122, a.
ille, declension, 56; use, 170, a.
Imperative mood, 185; in commands, 218; in indirect discourse, 267: I, 7, 20; 13, 10; 26, 17.
imperō, constr., 115, b.
Impersonal verbs, 87; with substantive clauses of result, 229, b: I, 2, 12: II, 11, 5; 17, 11; with infinitives, 278; gen. with, 109: IV, 5, 9.
Implied indirect discourse, 273: I, 16, 1: 16, 14; 22, 9; 23, 8: II, 2, 6.
Indicative mode, 183; in statements, 206; in questions, 209; in relative clauses, 231; 232; in causal clauses, 244; in adversative clauses, 246; in temporal clauses, 234; 235, a; 236, a; 237; 241; in conditions, 253; 254, a; 256.
indignus, constr. with, 149, a.
Indirect discourse:
discussion of, 265: I, 13, 7.
conditional sentences in, 272: I, 34, 5.
coördinate relative clauses in, 269, a: II, 17, 11.
declarative sentences in, 266: I, 1, 14; 2, 5; 7, 1: II, 1, 4; 2, 8; 6, 13.
imperative sentences in, 267: I, 7, 20; 13, 11; 26, 17.
interrogative sentences in, 268: I, 8, 13; 14, 8; 44, 24.
subordinate clauses in, 269: I, 3, 17; 6, 11; 10; 4: II, 1, 6; 3, 9; 10, 13.
Indirect questions, 262-264: I, 8, 13; 12, 3; 15, 4.
Infantry, 27.
Infinitive, 186; 275-281; tenses of, 205: I, 31, 11; 31, 36; 35, 18; complementary, 275; historical, 281: I, 16, 2: II, 30, 6; III, 4, 3; as subject, 276; clause, 186; 277-280; in indirect discourse, 266: I, 1, 14; 2, 5, 7; 1: II, 1, 4; 2, 8; 6, 13.

Intensive pronoun, (ipse), declension, 59; use, 172.
interest, with genitive, 110: II, 5, 5.
Interrogative pronoun, declension, 61; uses 212; 264, a.
Interrogative particles, 213; 264, b.
ipse, declension, 59; use, 172.
Irregular verbs, conjugation, 66; 77-85.
is, declension, 57; use, 171.
iste, declension, 55; use, 169.
Iuppiter, declension, 27

J
Judicial action, verbs of, 108.

L
lacessō, constr., 143, a.
légātus, 25; Plate II, 2.
Legion, number of men in, 23; baggage of, 27; officers of, 25, 26; organization of, 23; standards and signals of, 26.
Legionary soldiers, clothing and arms, 24; baggage, 25. See also Plate I, 3.
Locative, of 1st declension, 15, b; of second declension, 16, b, used to express place, 151, a: I, 18, 13; 20, 4; 28, 6.
lōrica, 24.

M
magis, comparison with, 45.
magnus, comparison, 42.
malō, 82.
malus, comparison, 42.
INDEX

March line of, 31; length of, 31.

mare, declension, 25, a.
maximē, comparison with, 45.
memini, conjugation, 86; with gen., 107.
metuō, constr., 114, b.
mille, milla, 48.
minus, constr., 139, b: II, 7, 8.
miseror, constr., 109.
miseret, constr., 109.
modo, with subj., 260.
Modes, 182-185. See also Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative.
multus, comparison, 42.
musculus, 34, 35.
Musical instruments, 27.

N

nam, 243; see also Enclitics.
-ne, 213, a; 264, b.
ne, 188, b; conj.: with purpose clause, 225, b: I, 4, 7: II 5, 7; with substantive purpose clause, 228: I, 19, 11; 27, 9: II, 1, 7; 26, 5; in commands and prohibitions, 216-220.
ne . . . quidem, 188, b.
necne, 264, c.
Negatives, 188.
neque, 188, a.
nesciō quis, 178.
nève, with subjunctive of desire, 188, b.
nisi, 250.
nitor, constr., 143, a: I, 13, 16.
nōili, or nōlite, to express prohibition, 219: I, 35, 7; 43, 24; VII, 77, 23.
nōlo, 82.
Nominative, as subject, 96: in predicate, 95, a: I, 1, 3; 2, 1.
nōn, 188, a.
Nones, 298.
nōnne, 213, b.
Nouns, 1st declension, 15; 2nd declension, 16; 3rd declension, 17-27; 4th declension, 29; 5th declension, 30; gender of, 13; 15, a; 16, a; 29, a; 30, a; predicate, 95, a: I, 1, 3; appositive, 95, b: I, 1, 4; 3, 10; 6, 2; II, 2, 3, 3, 11; 9, 11.
nōvi, translation of tenses 193, I, a;
194, a; 195, a.
num, 213, c; 264, b.
Numerals, 47-50.

O

Object, direct, see accusative; indirect, see dative.
oblivisor, with gen., 107: I, 14, 7.
ōdi, 86.
onager, 36; Plate III, 4.
Optative subjunctive, 184, a. See also wishes.
Ordinal numerals, 47.
ōs, declension, 27.

P

paenitet, with gen., 109: IV, 5, 9.
Parenthetical relative clauses, 232.
Participles, used attributively, 157; used predicatively, 157; used substantively, 158; tenses of, 205; used for clause 283: I, 4, 3; future active, 285, I; future passive, 285, II: I, 13, 2; 19, 3: III, 11, 10: IV, 22, 18: V, 1, 4; 23, 9; see also Periphrastic; perfect passive 286: I, 15, 3; 18, 9; 44, 38: II, 4, 9: present, 284; see also Ablative absolute.

parvus, comparison, 42.
Passive voice, 181; intransitive verbs in, 115, d; dative retained with, 114, c; 115, d; 116, II, c: I, 4, 1; 22, 8; constr. of passive verbs of saying, 279, a.
Perfect tense, with force of pres., 193, I, a; historical, 193, II.
Periphrastic conj., 75, 76; active, 285, I; passive, 285, II, a: I, 11, 13: 14, 7; 23, 4: II, 17, 21: 20, 1; 31, 8; with dat. of agent, 118; with abl. of agent, 118, a.
Personal pronouns, declension, 51; uses, 162; as partitive or objective genitives, 51, b; with similis and dissimilis, 106, b.
persuādeo, constr., 115: I, 2, 3; 3, 9: II, 10, 18, 16, 5.
Phalanx, I, 24, 11.
pilum, 24.
piget, with gen., 109.
Place, from which, 134, a: I, 5, 8; 6, 1; 10, 10; in which, 151: I, 6, 8; 7, 5, 15, 5; 39, 17: to which, 131: I, 5, 6; 7, 4, 23, 5: II, 10, 12; 11, 3; 18, 2.
plēnus, with gen., 106, a.
INDEX

Pluperfect tense, 194; with force of imperfect, 194, a: III, 1, 6; in narration, 197, 198.
plús, declension, 34, a; constr., 139, b.
Pompey, 14.
Possessive pronouns, declension, 53; used for possessive gen., 99; position with causā or grátīa, 99, a; with interest, 110; omission of, 167.
possim, 80.
postquam, with ind., 237: I, 24, 1; 27, 5: II, 5, 12; as two words, 236, c.
Potential subjunctive, 184, b; 208; 209.
potior, with abl., 145: I, 2, 5; with gen., 111: I, 3, 22; use of gerundive, 289, I a: III 6, 4.
prefectus fabrum, 25.
presaetim, 245.
predicate, accusative, 126: I, 16, 12; 38, 13: II, 2, 7; 3, 3; adjectives, 156; 157, a, 2; 275, a; 276, a: I, 2, 1; 7, 7: II, 1, 3; 3, 2; 10, 1; noun, 95, a; 126; 275, a; 276, a: I, 1, 3.
Prepositions, with abl., 153, a; with acc., 155; with acc. or abl., 154; verbs compounded with, 116, I; 124, c; 127.
Present tense 190; historical present, 190, a: I, 3, 7; 5, 2; 10, 1: II, 5, 5; 6; 12; 14, 12; with iam diū and iam prīdem, 190, b; with dum, 234, a: I, 27, 7; 39, 1; 46, 1: III, 17, 1.
Principal parts of verbs, 65.
Principal tenses, 203.
plusquam, with ind., 236, a; with subj. 236, b: II, 12, 1: III, 10, 9; 18, 15: IV, 14, 2: VII, 71, 1; as two words, 236, c: III, 26, 8.
Prohibitions negative in, 216; expressed by subj., 217, 220; expressed by nōlī or nōlite with inf., 219: I, 35, 7; 43, 24: VII, 77, 23; in indirect discourse, 267: I 26, 17.
Pronouns, 51-62; 162-178; in indirect discourse, 271; see also Demonstrative, Generalizing Indefinite, Intensive, Interrogative, Personal, Possessive, Reflexive, and Relative.
Pronunciation, 1-12; of proper names, I, 1, 1.
propior, comparison of, 43, with acc., 122, b.
propius, with acc., 122, b: I, 46, 2: IV, 9, 3.
prōsum, 79.
Proviso clause 260.
prōvincia, 9.
proximus, with acc., 122, b: I, 1, 9; 54, 3: III, 7, 7.
proximē, with acc., 122, b.
pudet, with gen., 109.
Purpose clauses, 225: I, 3, 4; 4, 7; 6, 14: II, 2, 3; 5, 7; 9, 4; 17, 15: V, 3, 18; substantive, 228: I, 2, 4; 3, 12; 7, 11: 19, 11; 28, 9; 31, 24; 39, 24: II, 2, c: 10, 19.
Q
Quaestor, 25.
quam, with comparatives, 139, a: with superlatives 161, a.
quam diū, with ind., 234, b.
quam si, with subj., 261.
quamquam, with ind., 246.
quamvis, with subj., 247.
quandō, in causal clause, 244.
Quantity, of syllables, 9; of vowels. 1-3.
quasi, with subj., 261.
Questions, introductory words, 212, 213; modes in, 209; deliberative, 210: I, 40, 6: III, 14, 9; double, 214; indirect, 262-264: I, 12, 3, 15, 4, 20, 17, 53, 20: II, 4, 2, 5, 3; 11, 6; double indirect, 264, c: I, 40, 43; 50, 12: IV, 14, 5; rhetorical, 211.
quī, relative, 60; indefinite, 62; interrogative, 61. See also Relative.
quia, in causal clause, 244.
quicquam, 60, a.
quidam, 62, b.
quīlibet, 62.
quĭs, indefinite, 62; interrogative, 61; with si, nisi, nē, and num, 174: I, 7, 19; 18, 21; 20, 2: II, 14, 13; 32, 5.
quīsipiam, 62; 176.
quīsequ, 62.
quīquis, 60, a.
quovis, 62.
quō, in purpose clauses, 225, a, 2: i, 8, 6: II, 17, 15: V, 3, 18.
quōdam, with ind., 234, b; 235, a; with subj., 235, b.
quod, in causal clauses, 244: i, 1, 7; 2, 6; 7, 12; 16, 14: II, 1, 13; 8, 8; 15, 2; 30, 7; in substantive clauses, 248; 248, a: I, 14, 8; 19, 2; 25, 6; 36, 14; 40, 36: II, 10, 18; 17, 12; 20, 10.
quōminus, with substantive clause of desire, 228, c: I 31, 24: IV, 22, 16.
quonium, in causal clause, 244.

R

Reciprocal expression, 166.

réfert, constr., 110.

Reflexive pronouns, declension, 52; use, 163; to express reciprocal idea, 166; direct reflexive, 164: I, 30, 6; 33, 14; 40, 11; indirect reflexive, 165: I, 30, 3; 33, 11; 40, 5.

Relative clauses, adverbative, 247: V, 4, 13; causal 245: II, 15, 13; 31, 4: IV, 23, 14; characteristic, 230: I, 6, 4; 14, 6; 19, 6; 28, 7; 29, 4; 31, 26; 39, 12: II, 4, 7; 16, 9; 21, 6: IV, 34, 9; 38, 3; conditions, 250; coordinate, 173, a: I, 1, 11; 2, 13; 11, 13: II, 4, 7; 5, 3; 13, 4; coordinate in indirect discourse, 269, a: II, 7, 11; determining, 231: III, 4, 1; 22, 5: IV, 29, 11; parenthetical, 232; of purpose 225, a, 1: I 6, 14: II, 2, 3; result, see Characterizing.

Relative pronouns, declension, 60; agreement of, 173; see also Relative clauses.

reminiscor, constr., 107: I, 13, 11.

Repeated action, 191, a.

repraesentātiō, 270, a: I, 14, 14; 31, 26; 40, 20: II, 14, 11.

Result clauses 226: I 6, 4; 11, 6; 12, 2: II, 3, 13; 18, 6; 21, 12; sequence of tenses in, 204, a: II, 21, 12; V, 15, 3; substantive, 229: I, 2, 12; 10, 5; 13, 4; 31, 51; 33, 15: II, 3, 14; 4, 8; 17, 11.

Rhetorical question, 211.

S

scorpiō, 36.

scūtum, 24.

Semi-deponent verbs, 74.

sēnex, declension, 27.

Sentences, defined, 88; simple, 89; complex 91; compound, 90.

Separation, see Dative and Ablative.

Sequence of tenses, 202, 203: I, 12, 2; 13, 7; 19, 1: II, 12, 14; 17, 2; exceptions to, 204: II, 21, 12: V, 15, 3.

si, in conditions, 250, see also Conditions; meaning to see whether, 264, b.

signum, 27.

similis, with gen. 106, b; with dat., 122; comparison of, 41.

simul ac, with ind., 237.

sin, with conditions, 250.

Spain, Caesar’s idea of location, V, 13, 5.

Subjective:


of desire, 184, a; in commands and prohibitions, 217; 220; in wishes, 221; in purpose clauses, 225; in substantive clauses, 228.

of contingent futurity, 184, b; in conclusion of conditional sentences, 207; 254; 257; 259; in questions, 209; in characterizing clauses, 230, a, b.

of fact, 184, c; in result clauses, 226; in substantive clauses, 229; in characterizing clauses, 230, a, b.

See also ac, si, antequam, cum, dōnec, dum, dummodo, modo, nē, nève, prīlusquam, quam si, quamvis, quāsi, quīn, quō, quod, quōminus, tamquam, ut, and ut si.

Subordinate clauses, see Clauses.

Substantive clauses, see Indirect questions, Infinitive clauses, Purpose, quod, and Result.

Substantives, agreement of, 95.

Sulla, 11, 12.

sum, conjugation, 66; compounds of, 77-80.

Supine, acc., 295: I, 11, 4; 18, 17; 30, 2; abl., 296: IV, 30, 6.

suus and sui, declension, 52; reflexives, 163-168.

Syllables, 8; quantity of, 9.
INDEX

T

taedet, with gen., 109.
tametsi, with ind., 246.
tamquam, with subj., 261.
Temporal clauses, 233-242; see cum, dum, postquam, priusquam, quoad, ubi, ut.
Tenses, stems of, 64; of ind., 190-199; of subj., 200, 201; of infinitive and participle, 205; sequence of, 202-204; see also Sequence of tenses, Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future perfect.
testūdō, 33; Plate III, 3.
testūdō arietāria, 35; Plate III, 2.
Cimbri and Teutoni, invasion of, 21.
Time, at which, 152: I, 3, 14; 4, 3, 12; 13: II, 2, 10; 4, 18; 6, 3; duration of, 130; 152; a: I, 3, 11; 26, 13: II, 29, 14; see also Temporal clauses.
trés, declension, 49.
Tower, 33; Plate III, 1.
tribūnus, 26.
Triumvirate, 13; IV, 1, 1.
tū, 51.

U

ubi, with ind., 237: I, 16, 9; II, 6, 6, 10.
ūlius, 177.
ūnus, declension, 32.

ut, in purpose clause, 225, a, 1: I, 3, 4; II, 9, 4; in result clause, 226: I, 6, 4; 11, 6; 12, 2: II, 3, 13; 18, 6; 21, 12; in substantive clauses of purpose, 228, a, b: I, 2, 4, 3, 12; 7, 11; 39, 24; in substantive clauses of result, 229, b: I, 2, 12; 10, 5; 13, 4: II, 4, 8; 17, 11; in adversative clause, 247: III, 9, 16; omitted, 228, a: I, 20, 13: III, 11, 2.

ut nōn, in result clauses, 226; in substantive result clauses, 229.

ut sī, with subjunctive, 261.

utinam, with subjunctive of desire, 221.
ūtor, with abl., 145: I, 5, 9; 16, 5: II, 3, 12; 7, 1; 14, 10; gerundive of, 289, I, a.

utrum . . . an, 214.

V

vāgina, 24.
vēlūt, with subj., 261.
vēlūt sī, with subj., 261: I, 32, 11.
Verbs, 1st conj., 67; 2nd conj., 68; 3rd conj., 69; 3rd conj., in -īō, 71; 4th conj., 70; irregular, 66; 77-85; deponent, 73; semi-deponent, 74; defective, 86; impersonal, 87; act. periphrastic, 75; pass. periphrastic, 76; principal parts, 65; three stems of, 64; agreement of, 179, 180; voices of, 181; modes, 182-185; tenses, 189-205; contracted forms, 72: I, 12, 10; 18, 12: II, 3, 6; 14, 13; 17, 6; singular with plural subject, 180, b: I, 1, 5; intransitive in passive voice, 115, d: I, 33, 18; 40, 7: III, 14, 2.
Verbal adjective, 187.
Verbal nouns, 187.

vēscor with abl., 145; gerundive of, 289, I, a.

vinēa, 35.

vīs, declension, 27.

Vocative, 132.

Voices, 181; see Active and Passive.
Volitive subjunctive, 184, a.

volō, 82.

Vowels, sounds of, 4; quantity of, 1-3.

W

Wishes, subjunctive in, 221; introduced by utinam, 221.

Wall, Gallic, 32, 33.